OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 56

Lancelot of the Lake

Le Livre de Lancelot del Lac

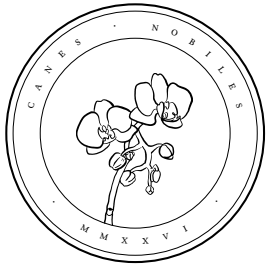
Lancelot of the Lake

Part Two: Galehaut

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

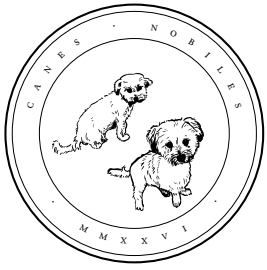


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 56 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows H. Oskar Sommer's text, The Vulgate Version of the Arthurian Romances, vol. III: Le Livre de Lancelot del Lac, part I (Washington, Carnegie Institution, 1910), pages 154–303

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

Sommer prints British Library Additional MS 10293 as the scribe wrote it, with his spelling, his capitals, and his point, and so it is printed here, with the letters Sommer supplies and without his references to the manuscripts' columns. The reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · Gawain at the Dolorous Guard 7
II · Gawain a Prisoner 19
III · The Escape of Brandin 31
IV · The White Knight and the Hermit 38
V · Kay and the King at the Castle 50
VI · The Prisoners Restored 63
VII · The Knight in the Litter 68
VIII · Gawain's Quest 82
IX · The First Assembly 93
X · Brun Without Pity 110
XI · The False Message 121
XII · The Enchantments of the Dolorous Guard 134
XIII · The Second Assembly 144
XIV · The Host at the Ford 160
XV · Arthur's Two Dreams 169
XVI · Galehaut's Defiance 177
XVII · Daguenet and the Giants 187
XVIII · The Causeway and the Cage 200
XIX · Galehaut Invades 208
XX · The Prisoner's Parole 217
XXI · The Vermilion Knight 223
XXII · Arthur's Confession 233
XXIII · The Counsel on Largesse 240

XXIV · The Lion in the Water 248
XXV · The Truce of a Year 257
XXVI · The Quest of the Forty 267
XXVII · The Lady and Her Prisoner 275
XXVIII · The Three Ransoms 279
XXIX · The Assembly Against Galehaut 288
XXX · The Black Knight at the Ford 297
XXXI · The Ladies Send Word 305
XXXII · Hervi of Rivel 313
XXXIII · Galehaut Becomes His Squire 322
XXXIV · Galehaut's Guest 333
XXXV · The Gift Asked 342
XXXVI · The Peace 348
XXXVII · Galehaut's Promise to the Queen 359
XXXVIII · The Meeting Arranged 378
XXXIX · The Meeting in the Meadow 386
XL · The Kiss 398
XLI · The Company of Four 407
XLII · The Lady of Malehaut and Galehaut 414
XLIII · Sorelois 426
XLIV · The Companions of the Quest 433
XLV · The Knight Under the Pine 452
XLVI · The Dwarf's Tale 468
XLVII · Hector 482
XLVIII · The Lady of Roestoc 493
XLIX · Segurades 508
L · Gawain Vanishes 519
LI · Helain of Taningues 529
LII · The Dwarf's Niece 537

Gawain at the Dolorous Guard

I

Gawain's company lodges with a hermit who says no one will enter the castle until one enters it who will be the son of a king who died of grief, and a lay brother joins them to read letters. The second gate is shut, and next day the clerk reads tombs the townspeople have newly lettered, naming many knights of Arthur's house as dead and the best of the good, the conqueror of the castle; a weeping damsel describes him, and Aiglin sends his brother to tell the king. Arthur rides toward the castle with the queen; the lord of the Dolorous Guard rides into the river to kill him and turns back. An old man tells the king to send a knight to the gate at each hour, and for three days each is turned away.

Atel compaignie sen va mesire gauuain de carlyon.
With-such company himself-thence goes my-lord Gawain from carlyon
& chele nuit iurent chis .j. ermite qui auoit este de la
and that night lay-they at a hermit who had been of the
maison le roi artu quant il fu rois nouelement. si lor
house (of-)the king Arthur when he was king newly so to-them
fist moult bel ostel por che que de la maison le roi
made very fair lodging for this that of the house (of-)the king
artus estoient. Apres mengier dist li ermites a monsignor
Arthur they-were After eating says the hermit to my-lord
gauuain. sire ou ales vous. & il dist a la dolerouse garde.
Gawain lord where go you and he says to the dolorous guard
sire fait il la que queres. len nous a dit fait mesire
lord says he there what seek-you one to-us has said says my-lord
Gauuain cuns cheualiers i est entres a forche darmes.
Gawain that-a knight there is entered by force of-arms
Che ne puet estre fait li hermites. si est fait li valles
This not can be says the hermit yes it-is says the youth
car ie le vi ens entrer a mes iex. bien sachies fait li
for I him saw in enter with my eyes well know says the

hermites que se tous li mondes i venoit ni enterroit
hermit that if all the world there came not-there would-enter
il nus. tant que vns i sera entres. & chil sera fiex
it anyone until that one there will-be entered and that-one will-be son
au roi mort de duel che dient li anchien homme La
of-the king dead of grief this say the ancient men The
nuit iurent laiens. & al matin sapareillierent apres la
night lay-they in-there and at-the morning prepared-themselves after the
messe & errerent .iij. Iors. & au quart endroit eure de
mass and traveled three Days and on-the fourth toward hour of
tierche si trueuent en lor voie .j. homme qui cheuauchoit
tierce so find-they on their way a man who rode
.j. mulet vne cape bleue afublee. Mesire gauuain le salue
a mule a cape blue donned My-lord Gawain him greets
& li dist. biax sire quels hons estes vous. Sire fait
and to-him says fair lord what man are you Lord says
il ie sui vns rendu. Et saues vous lettres fait mesire
he I am a lay-brother And know you letters says my-lord
gauuain. sire fait il oil dieu merchi. & saues vous la
Gawain lord says he yes God thanks and know you the
voie a la dolerouse garde. sire oil bien porcoi le demandes
way to the dolorous guard lord yes well wherefore it ask
vous. por che fait il quil couient que vous nous i
you for this says he that-it behooves that you to-us there
fachies compaignie. Compaignie sire fait il & qui estes
make company Company lord says he and who are
vous. Ie sui fait il vns cheualiers. & comment aues vous
you I am says he a knight and how have you
non sire fait il. Iai non Gauuain. ha! sire fait il estes
name lord says he I-have name Gawain ah lord says he are
vous che. Auoec vous irai ie moult volentiers. Mais ie ne
you this With you shall-go I very willingly But I not

sai que vous i querres. Ia nous a on dit fait mesire
know what you there seek Already to-us has one said says my-lord
Gauuain cuns cheualiers la conquise. Chertes fait li clers
Gawain that-a knight it-has conquered Certainly says the clerk
ie nen sai rien. Mais chou est fort chose a croire.
I not-thereof know anything But this is hard thing to believe
Atant oirent iusca langarde. & quant il lorent montee.
Thereupon traveled-they up-to the-height and when they it-had mounted
si troeuent la premiere porte ouerte & il entrent ens. Et
so find the first gate open and they enter in And
si troeuent lautre porte close. si veoient .j. homme sor la
so find the-other gate closed so saw a man on the
porte & mesire Gauuain li dist. biax sire poriens nous
gate and my-lord Gawain to-him says fair lord could we
entrer laiens. Et il respont que nenil. Mais dites moi qui
enter in-there And he answers that no But tell me who
vous estes. Ie sui fait il Gauuain le nies le roi artus.
you are I am says he Gawain the nephew (of-)the king Arthur
& cist autre sont compaignon de la table reonde. sire
and these others are companions of the table round lord
fait li hons or vous ales herbergier en chel bourc la
says the man now yourself go to-lodge in that borough there
aual anuit mais & le matin reuenes cha. Il sen
below tonight more and the morning come-back here They themselves-thence
vont herbergier el borc aual & les noueles vienent au
go to-lodge in-the borough below and the news come to-the
cheualier blanc & li dient que mesire Gauuain a este
knight white and to-him say that my-lord Gawain has been
a la porte soi disime de compaignons. Et il desfent
at the gate himself tenth of companions And he forbids
que la porte ne soit ouuerte a nul homme ne anuit ne
that the gate not be opened to any man either tonight or

demain. & chil del castel qui bien vausissent que li rois
tomorrow and those of-the castle who well would-wish that the king
artus i venist a tout son pooir por les males costumes
Arthur there came with all his power for the evil customs
abatre. vienent al chimentiere sor vne partie des tombes
to-overthrow come to-the cemetery on a part of-the tombs
font lettres. ou il ni auoit onques mais lettres eues.
make letters where it not-there had ever more letters had
& a chascun crenel qui estoit encontre metent .j. hiaume.
and at each crenel which was against put a helm

Au matin reuient mesire Gauuain & sa compaignie.
In-the morning comes-back my-lord Gawain and his company
& quant il vient a la porte si la troeue encore fremee
and when he comes to the gate so it finds-he still fastened
autresi com il auoit fait la nuit quil vint. Il demande
just as he had done the night that-he came He asks
al homme qui fu sor la porte en haut sil pooit laiens
to-the man who was on the gate on high if-he could in-there
entrer. nenil sire fait il. Mais se vous aues nului en vostre
enter no lord says he But if you have anyone in your
compaignie qui sache lettres dites le moi. & il dient
company who know letters tell it to-me and they say
que oil. Or matendes dont fait il. la gaite descent des
that yes Now me-await then says he the watchman descends from-the
murs & vient a la chimentiere par le posterne. si oeure
walls and comes to the cemetery by the postern so opens
monsignor gauuain le postis. & il entre tout ens. Li clers
to-my-lord Gawain the postern and he enters all in The clerk
commenche les lettres a lire sor les tombes. Et trueue sor
begins the letters to read on the tombs And finds on
vne des tombes escrit. Chi gist chil & vees la sa teste.
one of-the tombs written Here lies that-one and see there his head

& en pluseurs lieus dist ensi & noume cheualiers asses de
and in several places says-it thus and names knights many of
la maison le roi artu & de sa terre. Et quant mesire
the house (of-)the king Arthur and of his land And when my-lord
Gauuain ot quil sont ensi mort si en pleure moult
Gawain hears that-they are thus dead so thereof weeps very
durement. Car il quide bien & tout li autre que che soit
hard For he thinks well and all the others that this be
voirs. & si estoit il de tex i auoit. & de tex i auoit il
true and so was it of such there were and of such there was it
menchoigne dont les lettres estoient faites la nuit deuant.
lie of-which the letters were made the night before
Quant il ont longuement plore si vient li clers a vne
When they have long wept so comes the clerk to an
autre tombe qui estoit el chief. & trueue lettres. puis
other tomb which was at-the head and finds letters then
commence a plorer moult durement si tost com il les a
begins to weep very hard so soon as he them has
lutes. Et mesire Gauuain li demande que il auoit. Coi
read And my-lord Gawain of-him asks what he had What
sire fait il trop grant dolor. & quel dolor fait il dites le
lord says he very great sorrow and what sorrow says he tell it
nous. Chi gist fait il la merueille. qui sont il. Li mieudre
to-us Here lies says he the marvel who are they The best
des boins fait il qui ceste garde auoit conquise. Et quant
of-the good says he who this guard had conquered And when
li cheualier loient si batent lor palmes & font trop grant
the knights it-hear so beat their palms and make very great
duel. & dist li vns al autre biaus sire diex qui puet
grief and says the one to-the other fair Lord God who can
chil estre. & chascuns dist quil ne seit. se che nest li
that-one be and each says that-he not knows if this not-is the

cheualiers nouiax que li rois fist le ior de la feste saint
knight new whom the king made the day of the feast (of-)Saint
Iehan. Car chis valles font il le vit entrer chaiens. Or si
John For this youth say they him saw enter in-here Now so
poes veoir que il lont mort. Moult en font grant
can-you see that they him-have killed Much thereof make-they great
duel. & mesire yewains en fait grignor duel que tout
grief and my-lord Yvain thereof makes greater grief than all
li autre. si le regretent moult doucement & dient que
the others so him lament very sweetly and say that
onques mais ne virent homme qui si boin commenchement
ever more not saw-they man who so good beginning
eust com il auoit. & sil vesquist. merueilles fust de
had as he had and if-he lived marvels would-be of
sa proeche. Quant il ont este illuec grant pieche. si
his prowess When they have been there great while so
sen issent hors del chimentiere. & reuienent par
themselves-thence go out of-the cemetery and come-back by
deuant la porte qui estoit fremee. si trueuent ouert luis
before the gate which was fastened so find open the-door
del gardin. Il entrent ens & vienent as loges dune
of-the garden They enter in and come to-the lodges of-a
moult bele sale. si i veoient vne moult bele damoisele qui
very fair hall so there saw a very fair damsel who
ploroit moult durement. & si est tres bele che lor est
wept very hard and so is very fair this to-them is
auis. Mesire Gauuain li demande moult deboinairement
opinion My-lord Gawain of-her asks very gently
que ele a qui si durement pleure. Que iai fait ele. Iai
what she has who so hard weeps What I-have says she I-have
moult grant droit. Car il a chaiens mort le plus biax
very great right For it has in-here dead the most fair

cheualiers del monde & le plus preu qui onques fust. si
knight of-the world and the most brave who ever was so
estoit iones enfes sans barbe. Damoisele fait mesire Gauuain
was-he young child without beard Damsel says my-lord Gawain
quels armes portoit il. vnes armes blances fait ele & .j.
what arms bore he some arms white says she and a
cheual blanc. & lors recommenchent tuit lor duel. &
horse white and then begin-again all their grief and
dient que iamais ne sen iront. tant quil sachent
say that ever-more not themselves-thence will-go until that-they know
del couine de laiens aucune chose. si se remainent ensi
of-the condition of in-there some thing so themselves remain thus
& regardent comment les choses se prendront. Mais
and watch how the things themselves will-take But
atant laise li contes a parler daus tous & del castel &
thereupon leaves the tale to speak of-them all and of-the castle and
de chex qui i sont. tant que liex en resoit de parler.
of those who there are until that place thereof be-again to speak
Aleure que mesire Gauuain ot fait lire les lettres. qui
At-the-hour that my-lord Gawain had made read the letters which
disoient que mors estoit li cheualiers as blanches armes.
said that dead was the knight with-the white arms
si renuoia aiglyns des vaus son frere au roi artu. por
so sent-back Aiglin of-the vales his brother to-the king Arthur for
les noueles dire. Si erra tant par ses iornees quil troua
the news to-tell So traveled-he so-far by his journeys that-he found
le roi si li dist. Rois artus fait il ie menai ton neueu
the king so to-him says King Arthur says he I led thy nephew
& ses compaignons a la dolerouse garde. si trouerent vne
and his companions to the dolorous guard so found-they a
chimentiere ou il gist maint de tes boins cheualiers mors
cemetery where there lies many of thy good knights dead

& de ta terre. Et che fu dedens la premiere porte. & li
and of thy land And this was within the first gate and the
nouiax cheualiers meismes qui fist le secors de nohaut & qui
new knight himself who did the succor of nohaut and who
langarde auoit conquise. ichil i gist mors. Quant li rois
the-height had conquered he there lies dead When the king
lot si en est moult dolans & pleure moult durement
it-heard so thereof is-he very sorrowful and weeps very hard
& por li & por les autres. & la cours en est toute
both for him and for the others and the court thereof is all
troublee & dist li rois que il ira la. si dist a la roine.
troubled and says the king that he will-go there so says to the queen
Dame prenes de vos dames & de vos damoiseles cheles
Lady take of your ladies and of your damsels those
qui miex vous plaisent. Car vous en uenres auoec moi.
who best you please For you thence will-come with me
Al matin murent. si alerent .ij. Iornees. & au tierch
At-the morning moved-they so went two Days and on-the third
ior herberga li rois & sa compaignie sor vne riuiere. en
day lodged the king and his company on a river in
tres & en paueillons. & il faisoit moult grant caut. si se
tents and in pavilions and it made very great heat so himself
fu assis au serain desor liauwe & ot mises ses iambes
was sat in-the evening-air upon the-water and had put his legs
dedens. & .iiij. cheualier le tenoient sor le chief .j. drap
within and four knights for-him held over the head a cloth
de soie. & il commencha a penser. Et tantost vint de
of silk and he began to think And at-once came from
lautre part de la riuiere .j. cheualier tout arme & se mist
the-other part of the river a knight all armed and himself put
en liaue. & quant il vient deuant le roi. si demanda as
into the-water and when he comes before the king so asked to-the

autres. qui est chis cheualiers. Ie sui le roi artu. Chertes
others who is this knight I am the king Arthur Certainly
fait il vous querroie ie. Il fiert le cheual des esperons
says he you was-seeking I He strikes the horse with-the spurs
& aloigne le glaiue por li ferir. & liaue fu parfonde
and lengthens the lance for him to-strike and the-water was deep
si couint le cheual noer. Et quant il aproche del roi. li
so behooved the horse to-swim And when he approaches to-the king the
cheualier ietent les mains si aerdent le glaiue & li
knights throw the hands so seize the lance and from-him
tolent. & chil qui le tient en fiert si le cheualier que
take and that-one who it holds therewith strikes so the knight that
par .j. poi quil nest tous enclos en liaue. Et vns autres
by a little that-he not-is all enclosed in the-water And an other
se lanche ens & laiert au fraim. ha! fait li rois mar
himself throws in and him-seizes by-the bridle ah says the king ill
i faites. car il noieroit ia. & il laist le fraim. & quant
there you-do for he would-drown now and he leaves the bridle and when
li cheualiers oit quil ot che dit si sentorne & dist.
the knight hears that-he had this said so himself-thence-turns and says
Chertes voirement est il voirs. Atant sen ist de
Certainly truly is it true Thereupon himself-thence goes from
liaue. si sen va si com il estoit venus. chis cheualiers
the-water so himself-thence goes so as he was come this knight
estoit li sires de la dolerouse garde. si auoit tel duel de son
was the lord of the dolorous guard so had such grief for his
castel quil auoit perdu que li ne caloit quil deuenist.
castle which-he had lost that to-him not mattered what-he became
Si estoit apenses quil ochiroit le roi artu. por che quil
So was-he resolved that-he would-kill the king Arthur for this that-he
quidoit par li auoir perdu son castel. qui soloit iustichier
thought by him to-have lost his castle which was-wont to-rule

& destraindre toute sa terre. or le couenra repairier a la
and to-constrain all his land now him will-behoove to-return to the
subiection des autres. & la ou il sestoit uantes le ior
subjection of-the others and there where he himself-was boasted the day
deuant quil ochiroit le roi. respondi vns cheualiers que ia
before that-he would-kill the king answered a knight that ever
li rois artus ne seroit par homme desiretes. ne maluaisement
the king Arthur not would-be by man disinherited nor badly
ne morroit. Tant auoit & honors & bien fais en sa
not would-die So-much had-he both honors and good deeds in his
vie. & por che dist il certes voirement dist il voir. Si
life and for this says he certainly truly said he truth So
se tient por fols por che quil lauoit empris a ochire.
himself holds-he for fool for this that-he it-had undertaken to kill

Chele nuit iut li rois les la riuiere. & lendemain se
That night lay the king beside the river and the-next-day himself
leua bien matin. si erra tant que lendemain vint a la
raised well early so traveled until that the-next-day came-he to the
dolerouse garde. si lont montee iusca la premiere porte
dolorous guard so it-have-they mounted up-to the first gate
quil troeuent bien fremee. si en est li rois moult
which-they find well fastened so thereof is the king very
dolans. Et dist a la roine & a ses hommes que chele
sorrowful And says to the queen and to his men that that
porte quidoit il trouer ouuerte. Ore ne sai fait il que mes
gate thought he to-find open Now not know-I says he what my
nies est deuenus. ne mi compaignon. Lors demande au
nephew is become nor my companions Then asks-he to-the
vallet qui les noueles ot aportees. frere dont ne me dis
youth who the news had brought brother then not to-me saidst
tu que ceste porte estoit ouerte. sire fait il oil. & si estoit
thou that this gate was open lord says he yes and so was

ele quant ie much de chaiens. & demandes le encore a
it when I moved from in-here and ask it still to
chel homme de la sus. Li rois regarde sor la porte en
that man from there up The king looks on the gate on
haut. & voit .j. homme qui sambloit estre gaite. Il li
high and sees a man who seemed to-be watchman He of-him
demande biax sire ceste porte a ele este ouuerte. Oil sire
asks fair lord this gate has it been opened Yes lord
fait il. Et biax sire nous pories vous conseillier dentrer
says he And fair lord us could you counsel to-enter
laiens. Qui estes vous fait chil. Ie sui dist il li rois artus.
in-there Who are you says that-one I am says he the king Arthur
Sire fait il a vous donroie ie tout le conseil que ie poroie
Lord says he to you would-give I all the counsel that I could
com al plus preudomme del monde. Et qui est chele
as to-the most worthy-man of-the world And who is that
dame la. cest fait il la roine. Sire fait il & por vous
lady there it-is says he the queen Lord says he and for you
& por la roine ferai ie quanque iou porai faire. Lors
and for the queen shall-do I whatever I shall-be-able do Then
sen torne & ne demoura gaires quil amena .j. viel
himself-thence turns-he and not tarried much that-he brought an old
homme tout quenu. & quant li rois le voit. si li dist
man all hoary and when the king him sees so to-him says
sire preudom car nous laissies entrer laiens. Sire fait il non
lord worthy-man now us let enter in-there Lord says he not
ferai ore. Mais or vous herbergies hui mais. & demain
shall-I-do now But now yourself lodge today more and tomorrow
endroit prime si menuoies vn cheualier. & se ie li puis
toward prime so to-me-send a knight and if I to-him can
la porte ourir ie li ouuerrai. & se ie ne puis men
the gate open I to-him shall-open and if I not can to-me-thence

enuoies .j. autre endroit tierce. & se lors nest ouerte si
send an other toward tierce and if then not-is-it opened so
men enuoies .j. autre endroit miedi & puis .j. autre
to-me-thence send an other toward midday and then an other
a vespres. tant que chil i viegne qui ie le porai
at vespers until that that-one there may-come to-whom I it shall-be-able
ourir. volentiers fait li rois. Mais por dieu itant me dites.
open willingly says the king But for God so-much to-me tell
se vous saues de Gauuain mon neueu nule nouele. Sire fait
if you know of Gawain my nephew any news Lord says
il vous en orres bien noueles & si ne demoura mie
he you thereof will-hear well news and so not will-tarry-it at-all
grantment. Lors deschent li rois aual & se herberge
greatly Then descends the king down and himself lodges
en la plaigne desous sor les fontaines qui i sont.
in the plain below by the springs which there are

Au matin a eure de prime enuoia li rois .j. cheualier
In-the morning at hour of prime sent the king a knight
a la porte. & on li renuoia ariere. Et quant li preudom
to the gate and one him sent-back back And when the worthy-man
li ot demande a qui il estoit & comment il auoit
of-him had asked to whom he was and how he had
non. Et il reuient ariere au roi si li dist. sire par
name And he comes back to-the king so to-him says lord by
moi ni enterres vous mie. Car len ne me veut ourir
me not-there will-enter you at-all For one not to-me wishes to-open
la porte. A eure de tierce i renuoia li rois .j. autre. &
the gate At hour of tierce there sent-again the king an other and
len li renuoie. & a eure de miedi vn autre. & on li
one him sends-back and at hour of midday an other and one him
renuoia. & a eure de noune autresi. & a eure de vespres.
sent-back and at hour of nones likewise and at hour of vespers

Et ensi fist par .iij. iors que a toutes les eures les i
And thus did-he for three days that at all the hours them there
enuoioit tous iors. Mais or se taist chi endroit li contes
sent all days But now itself is-silent here in-place the tale
del roi & de toute lor compaignie. & retorne a parler de
of-the king and of all their company and returns to speak of
monsignor Gauuain & de ses compaignons & des auentures
my-lord Gawain and of his companions and of-the adventures
qui lor auindrent puis quil furent el castel venus.
which to-them befell after that-they were into-the castle come

Gawain a Prisoner

II

A vavasor offers Gawain lodging and promises to show him the king's companions alive. He leads the ten to an island fortress in the Humber, where forty armed men seize them; Galegantin alone fights and is wounded, and later kicks the treacherous vavasor into the fire. In the prison they find King Yder, Guivret, Kehedin, Girflet, Dodinel, Mador of the Gate, Lohot, the king's son, and others. A weeping youth tells Lancelot of a damsel lamenting Gawain; he overtakes her, finds she is the Lady's damsel, hears her lady's warning against a love that makes the heart slothful, and is led to the island. From ambush he routs fifteen knights coming out and drives them back.

Li Contes dist chi endroit que quant mesires Gauuain &
The Tale says here in-place that when my-lord Gawain and
si compaignon orent aprise la mort au blanc cheualier &
his companions had learned the death of-the white knight and
des autres compaignons le roi & par les lettres des
of-the other companions (of-)the king both by the letters of-the
tombes. & par la damoisele qui estoit as loges a qui il
tombs and by the damsel who was at-the lodges to whom they

parloient. Si furent si dolant com li contes a deuise. Iluec
spoke So were-they as sorrowful as the tale has described There
demorerent iuscal auesprer. Et lors aualent del castel
stayed-they until-the evening And then descend-they from-the castle
por aler herbergier. si encontrerent .j. vauassor melle de
for to-go to-lodge so met-they a vavasor mixed of
caignes. qui moult sambloit estre preudom. Cil demanda
grays who very seemed to-be worthy-man That-one asked
a monsignor Gauuain qui il estoit. porcoi le demandes vous
to my-lord Gawain who he was wherefore it ask you
fait mesire Gauuain. Sire fait il ie nel demant se por
says my-lord Gawain Lord says he I not-it ask except for
vostre preu non che sachies. Et ie le vous dirai fait il.
your profit not this know And I it to-you shall-tell says he
car bien sambles preudomme. Ie sui Gauuain. & quant li
for well you-seem worthy-man I am Gawain and when the
vauassors voit les larmes qui li caioient encore des iex
vavasor sees the tears which to-him fell still from-the eyes
si li demande porcoi il pleure. & il dist que il pleure
so of-him asks wherefore he weeps and he says that he weeps
por la mort des compaignons le roi quil a veus
for the death of-the companions (of-)the king whom-he has seen
la sus en chel castel. Sire fait il or ne vous dolouses
there up in that castle Lord says he now not yourself grieve
pas tant deuant que vous sachies porcoi. Car vous estes
at-all so-much before that you know wherefore For you are
si preudom que vous ne vous deues mie si tost esmaier.
so worthy-man that you not yourself ought at-all so soon dismay
Mais bien sachies que ie sui cha venus de mon ostel
But well know that I am here come from my house
por vous. Car ceste terre nest ore mie bien seure hors
for you For this land not-is now at-all well sure outside

de fortereche. Tant com li sires de cest castel est en sa
of fortress As-long as the lord of this castle is in his
grant ire. por che vous loe que vous en uengies o
great wrath for this you counsel-I that you thence come with
moi herbergier anuit mais. & tant com vous demoreres
me to-lodge tonight more and as-long as you will-stay
en chest pais. Et saues vous en quel lieu. al biau castel
in this country And know you in what place at-the fair castle
& al fort ou vous aures quanke mestier sera a cors
and at-the strong where you will-have whatever need will-be to body
de cheualier. & chascun matin tant com vous vaudres chi
of knight and each morning as-long as you will-wish here
estre si i porres venir apres la messe. ou deuant disner
to-be so there can-you come after the mass or before dinner
ou apres. Et sachies que le plus de che que vous aues veu
or after And know that the most of this that you have seen
la sus nest se menchoigne non & encantemens. Mais
there up not-is except lie not and enchantments But
ie vous monsterai verite. Car ie vous ferai veoir des
I to-you shall-show truth For I you shall-make see of-the
compaignons le roi vne partie tous sains & tous vis. de
companions (of-)the king a part all sound and all alive of
tex que les lettres de la sus tesmoignent a estre mors.
such as the letters of there up witness to be dead

Quant mesire Gauuain loit. si en est trop lies. & dist
When my-lord Gawain it-hears so thereof is-he very glad and says
que dont ira il Car il nest nule terre ou il nalast
that then will-go he For there not-is any land where he not-would-go
por tant de preudommes veoir. Li vauassors sen ala
for so-many of worthy-men to-see The vavasor himself-thence went
auant & li .x. compaignon apres. & quant il est loing de
ahead and the ten companions after and when he is far from

la dolerouse garde vne grant arbalestee si conselge a .j. sien
the dolorous guard a great crossbow-shot so whispers-be to a his
fil en loreille qui auoec lui estoit. Et chil sen ala
son in the-ear who with him was And that-one himself-thence went
auant grant aleure. & il cheuauchent apres tout belement.
ahead great pace and they ride after all gently
tant quil vienent aprochant dun castelet petit. qui estoit
until that-they come approaching of-a little-castle small which was
en vne ille dedens le hombre sor vne roche grande la
on an island within the humber on a rock great the
plus fort de son grant que nus seust. Quant il vienent
most strong of its size that anyone knew When they come
a liaue si lor fu amenee vne neif. & il entrent ens
to the-water so to-them was brought a boat and they enter in
& nagent tant que il vienent en lille. Si maine len les
and row until that they come into the-island So leads one the
.x. compaignons en vne cambre pour desarmer. & quant
ten companions into a chamber for to-disarm and when
il sont desarme si vont veoir amont & aual la roche
they are disarmed so go-they to-see up and down the rock
& la forterece qui moult est bele. Et quant il vienent
and the fortress which very is fair And when they come
el moien estage si troeuent plus de .xl. cheualiers &
into-the middle story so find more than forty knights and
serians qui les assaillent tous armes. Et quident resortir
sergeants who them assail all armed And think-they to-draw-back
mais li huis lor sont moult bien freme apres les dos.
but the doors to-them are very well fastened behind the backs
Il voient que desfense ni a mestier. si desfent mesire
They see that defense not-there has need so forbids my-lord
Gauuain que nus ne sen desfende. ne il ne font.
Gawain that anyone not himself-thereof defend nor they not do

fors galegantis li galois qui se lancha a lvn daus
except Galegantin the Welsh who himself flung at the-one of-them
si le porta desous lui a terre & li esracha lespee
so him bore beneath him to ground and from-him tore the-sword
des puins. Si se desfendi tant quil deut estre ochis
from-the fists So himself defended-he until that-he was-like-to be killed
& naures fu il. Lors le corut mesire Gauuain meismes
and wounded was he Then him ran my-lord Gawain himself
prendre. & il li ont les mains lijes deriere le dos &
to-take and they to-him have the hands tied behind the back and
a tous les autres ausi. Et gasoains destrangot qui moult
to all the others also And Gasoain of-estrangot who very
estoit preus & de boines paroles dist. que sil i ait
was valiant and of good words said that if-it there may-have
tex galegantis nauoit mie tort. sil voloit miex morir que
such Galegantin not-had at-all wrong if-he wished better to-die than
estre pris. Car ie ne vi onques fait il si outrageuse
to-be taken For I not saw ever says he so outrageous
traison. Quar nous estions herbergie & ore sommes prins
treason For we were lodged and now are taken
& loie. anchois que nous aions ne mangie ne beu.
and bound before that we have either eaten or drunk
Atant les ont amenes aual. & yeuuains lauoltres
Thereupon them have-they led down and Yvain the-bastard
voit le vauassor qui laiens les auoit amenes si faisoit le
sees the vavasor who in-there them had brought so made the
mengier. haster en la quisine & il li dist. a hi! fiex
meal hasten in the kitchen and he to-him says ah hey son
a putain traitres. Ia nous auies vous a foi herbergies.
of whore traitor Already us had you in faith lodged
sire cheualiers fait il ie ne vous oi onques nul couent que
lord knight says he I not to-you had ever any covenant that

moult bien ne vous soit tenus. Car vous seres herbergies
very well not to-you be kept For you will-be lodged
en vne des plus fors maisons qui soit en toute bretaigne.
in one of-the most strong houses which be in all britain
& si seres ia mis auoec vos compaignons que ie
and so will-be-you now put with your companions whom I
vous creantai a monstrer. Dehais ait fait gasoains qui
to-you promised to show Ill-luck may-have says Gasoain who
autre ostel quiert auoir. Car chist valent autant comme
other lodging seeks to-have For these are-worth as-much as
reuescu. Atant sen passent outre. Mais galegantis
come-back-to-life Thereupon themselves-thence pass beyond But Galegantin
na pas oublie lire de che quil lont naure. si li
not-has at-all forgotten the-wrath of this that-they him-have wounded so to-him
est moult poi des ore mais que len fache de lui. car paor
is very little from now more what one do of him for fear
a de morir en la prison. Mais volentiers se vengeroit
has-he to die in the prison But willingly himself would-avenge
tant com il vit. Lors auise le traitor a qui yeuuains auoit
as-long as he lives Then spies-he the traitor to whom Yvain had
reprochie la traison. si se lanche a lui la ou il estoit
reproached the treason so himself flings at him there where he was
deuant les autres estant al fu. sel fiert del pie si
before the others standing at-the fire so-him strikes with-the foot so
durement quil le porte tout estendu en mi le brasier.
hard that-he him bears all stretched into middle the brazier
& sil neust les mains lijes il nen releuast iamais se
and if-he not-had the hands tied he not-thence would-rise ever-more except
tous ars non. & lors est leuee la noise si saillent a
all burned not and then is raised the noise so leap-they at
galegantin a haches & a espees. & se ne fust li sires
Galegantin with axes and with swords and if not were the lord

dax mort le eusent. Atant les ont tous auales
of-them dead him would-have-they Thereupon them have-they all lowered
en .j. sosterin moult fort. Dont les huis estoient de
into an underground-room very strong Whereof the doors were of
fer & li mur moult espes de quariax ioins a fer & a
iron and the walls very thick of stones joined with iron and with
plon. Laiens estoit en prison li rois ydres. & guiures de
lead In-there was in prison the king Yder and Guivret of
lambale. & ywains de loenel. & karadoains de karamurain.
lamballe and Yvain of loenel and Caradoain of karamurain
& kehendis li petis. & kex destrox. & girfles le fiex
and Kehedin the little and Kay of-estrax and Girflet the son
do. & dodiniax li sauages. & li dus tollas. & mador
(of-)Do and Dodinel the wild and the duke Tollas and Mador
de la porte. & lohot li fiex le roi artu quil engendra
of the gate and Lohot the son (of-)the king Arthur whom-he begot
en la bele damoisele qui auoit non lisanor. deuant che quil
on the fair damsel who had name Lisanor before this that-he
espousa la roine. Et en chele prison prist il le mal de la
wedded the queen And in that prison took he the illness of the
mort. & auoec aus estoit gaharis de karaheu. & tout chil
death and with them was Gaheris of karaheu and all those
estoient en prison laiens. & quant mesire Gauuain & si
were in prison in-there and when my-lord Gawain and his
compaignon les virent si orent asses grant ioie. Car grant
companions them saw so had-they very great joy For great
pieche auoient este perdu. & chil refurent lie & dolant
while had-they been lost and those were-in-turn glad and sorrowful
que il les virent laiens amener. lie de che que iamais ne
that they them saw in-there brought glad of this that ever-more not
les quidoient veoir. & dolant de che quil venoient en
them thought-they to-see and sorrowful for this that-they came into

male prison. Mais chi endroit laisse ore li contes a parler
evil prison But here in-place leaves now the tale to speak
daus & retorne au cheualier qui le castel auoit conquis.
of-them and returns to-the knight who the castle had conquered
Apres che que mesire Gauuain & si compaignon furent
After this that my-lord Gawain and his companions were
pris. demora grant piece que li cheualiers qui la dolerouse
taken stayed-it great while that the knight who the dolorous
garde auoit conquise nen sot mot. Et quant il le sot
guard had conquered not-thereof knew word And when he it knew
si en fu tant dolant que plus ne pooit estre. vn Ior
so thereof was-he so sorrowful that more not could-he be one Day
auint quil seoit au mangier en vne haute torele el chief
befell that-he sat at-the eating in a high turret at-the head
del palais. & manioit si richement que moult sen
of-the palace and ate so richly that much himself-thereof
merueillast qui veist & les seruans & le vaisselemente.
would-marvel who saw both the servants and the plate
La ou il menioit ensi entra laiens vns valles. si plouroit
There where he ate thus entered in-there a youth so wept
moult durement. Et la damoisele del lac qui auoec li blanc
very hard And the damsel of-the lake who with the white
cheualier mengoit li demanda que il auoit. Chertes fait
knight ate of-him asked what he had Certainly says
il damoisele iai eue la grignor pitie que ie onques mais
he damsel I-have had the greatest pity that I ever more
eusse dune damoisele qui sen va par desous cele roche.
had of-a damsel who herself-thence goes by beneath that rock
si fait si grant duel que len ne puet faire grignor. & dist
so makes so great grief that one not can make greater and says
ele porcoi fait li cheualiers. ele regrete fait il monsignor
she wherefore says the knight she laments says he my-lord

Gauuain & monsignor ywain & ne sai quans autres
Gawain and my-lord Yvain and not know-I how-many other
cheualiers. Et quel part vait ele fait li cheualiers. sire fait
knights And what part goes she says the knight lord says
il ele tient la voie galeche. ha mesire yeuuain fait li blans
he she holds the way Welsh ah my-lord Yvain says the white
cheualiers Ia me fustes vous si boins maistres & si boins
knight Once to-me were you so good master and so good
compains. & faisies quantque ie voloie. & mesire Gauuain
companion and did whatever I wished and my-lord Gawain
me refist auoir le premier don que ie demandai le roi
me made-again have the first gift that I asked (of-)the king
mon signor. & dist quil quidoit que ie le feisse moult
my lord and said that-he thought that I it would-do very
bien. Asses ot chi haut tesmoig. Ne ia diex ne mait
well Enough was-there here high witness Nor ever God not me-may-help
se iamais serai a aise deuant que ie saurai ou vous estes.
if ever-more shall-I-be at ease before that I shall-know where you are
Lors saut hors de la table. & commande que len li
Then leaps-he out from the table and commands that one to-him
aport ses armes. Eles li sont aportees si se fait
bring his arms They to-him are brought so himself makes-be
armer de chief en chief. & la damoisele li demande
arm from head to head and the damsel of-him asks
ou il vaudra aler. Ie irai fait il apres la damoisele pour
where he will-wish to-go I shall-go says he after the damsel for
sauoir ou mesire Gauuain est & sa compaignie. Girai
to-know where my-lord Gawain is and his company I-shall-go
fait ele auoec vous por oir que che sera. non feres fait
says she with you for to-hear what this will-be not will-you says
il vous ni vendrois mie anchois matenderois chaiens
he you not-there will-come at-all rather me-will-await in-here

tant que ie reuendrai. Et si vous coniur foi que vous
until that I shall-come-back And so you conjure-I by-faith that you
deues ma dame que vous nissies de chaiens deuant que
owe my lady that you not-go from in-here before that
vous me reuerres. & chou sera orendroit. Chele li
you me will-see-again and this will-be right-now She to-him
otrie sa volente & il sen part. Et cheuauche apres la
grants his will and he himself-thence parts And rides after the
damoisele qui por monsignor Gauuain pleure. Si cheuauche
damsel who for my-lord Gawain weeps So rides-he
tant que il lataint a lentree de la forest. si li demande
until that he her-reaches at the-entry of the forest so of-her asks
ke por dieu li die de monsignor Gauuain noueles. Ie
that for God to-him she-tell of my-lord Gawain news I
vous dirai que gaires piors ne poroient estre. Car il est
to-you shall-tell that much worse not could be For he is
soi disime de compaignons en la prison a celui qui a
himself tenth of companions in the prison of him who has
este sires de la dolerouse garde. ha! damoisele fait il puis
been lord of the dolorous guard ah damsel says he since
que tant men aues dit. dites moi ou chele prison
that so-much to-me-thereof have-you said tell me where that prison
est. Et chele le regarde si li dist. Ostes vostre hiaume
is And that-one him looks-at so to-him says Remove your helm
si vous verrai. & il loste. Et chele li cort les bras
so you shall-I-see and he it-removes And that-one to-him runs the arms
tendus & il la connoist. si voit que chest vne damoisele
stretched and he her knows so sees that this-is a damsel
qui est a sa dame del lac. si li fait moult grant
who is of his lady of-the lake so to-her makes-he very great
ioie. Et ele li conte que sa dame lauoit a lui enuoie
joy And she to-him tells that her lady her-had to him sent

por vne chose quele auoit oubliee a dire a lautre pucele
for a thing that-she had forgotten to say to the-other maiden
qui auant vint. Mais len me dist fait ele la ou mesire
who before came But one to-me said says she there where my-lord
Gauuain est pris que vous gisies mors en la dolerouse
Gawain is taken that you lay dead in the dolorous
garde. & por che ni vaudroie ie onques entrer. Car ie
guard and for this not-there would-wish I ever to-enter For I
ne la pooie veoir. Quele fu la chose fait il que madame
not it could see What was the thing says he that my-lady
moblia a mander. Che fu fait ele que vous ne metes vo
me-forgot to send-word This was says she that you not put your
cuer en amor qui vous fache aprechier. Mais amender. Car
heart in love which you make grow-slothful But amend For
cuers qui por amors deuient perecheus ne puet a haute
heart which for loves becomes slothful not can to high
chose ataindre. car il nose. Mais cil qui tous iors bee
thing attain for it not-dares But that-one who all days aims
a amender. puet ataindre a toutes hautes choses autresi
to amend can attain to all high things just
com il lose emprendre. & il li redist. Mesire Gauuain
as he it-dares undertake and he to-her says-again My-lord Gawain
bele douce amie ou est il en prison. Ie vous i menrai
fair sweet friend where is he in prison I you there shall-lead
fait ele. Lors retornent andui & vienent en .j. brueillet
says she Then return both and come into a thicket
qui est dessus lille ou messires Gauuain estoit. Si li
which is above the-island where my-lord Gawain was So to-him
dist la damoisele. chi fait ele vous enbucheres. Ne ia nus
says the damsel here says she yourself will-ambush Nor ever anyone
ne porra issir de laiens que nous nel veions &
not will-be-able to-go-out from in-there that we not-him see and

nous ni serons ia veu. Et chil le fait issi. & quant
we not-there shall-be ever seen And that-one it does thus and when
il orent grant pieche atendu si virent issir hors cheualiers
they had great while waited so saw-they go out knights
iusca .xv. tous armes. & passerent liaue a vne grant neif.
up-to fifteen all armed and passed the-water in a great boat
si acuellent lor voie a la dolerouse garde. Et li cheualiers
so take-up their way to the dolorous guard And the knight
les laisse aprochier auques pres. si lor laisse coure si
them lets approach somewhat near so at-them lets run as
tost com li cheuax li puet aler. & met deuant son
fast as the horse to-him can go and puts before his
pis lescu as .iij. bendes. Car la damoisele quil auoit
breast the-shield with-the three bands For the damsel whom-he had
laissie el chastel li faisoit porter. Mais si tost com il
left in-the castle for-him made carry But so soon as they
le virent si ni ot onques si hardi qui ne tornast le
him saw so not-there was ever so bold who not turned the
dos. & li sires de la dolerouse garde tous premiers. Car
back and the lord of the dolorous guard all first For
a lui estoient tout li autre. & quant il vindrent a liaue
to him were all the others and when they came to the-water
arriere si ne porent mie a tans entrer en la neif. Car il les
back so not could-they at-all in time enter into the boat For he them
sieuoit de pres. Si ochist de son glaiue le premier quil
followed from near So killed-he with his lance the first whom-he
ataint. puis mist la main a lespee & corut as autres
reached then put the hand to the-sword and ran at-the others
sus. si en retint .iiij. que ochis que mehaignies. & li
upon so thereof kept-he four both killed and maimed and the
autre se mistrent par liaue dedens lille a garant.
others themselves put through the-water into the-island to safety

The Escape of Brandin

III

The lord of the castle, Brandin of the Isles, escapes. Lancelot returns by a false postern. When the hour passes the people cry out to the king; Lancelot has the gate opened for the queen, but is so lost in gazing at her from the wall that he does not see the porter close it again, and Kay reproaches him with having mocked her. Lancelot threatens the porter for not obeying him and rides off by the postern, and the queen goes away angered. The gate is opened, Arthur's clerks read the tombs bearing Gawain's name, and the king's company spends the night in grief.

Ensi escapa brandis des illes li sires de la dolerouse garde.
Thus escaped Brandin of-the isles the lord of the dolorous guard
Car il auoit issi non. Et li cheualiers reuient a la dolerouse
For he had thus name And the knight comes-back to the dolorous
garde moult dolans. & entra ens par vne fausse posterne.
guard very sorrowful and entered in by a false postern
Et lendemain fu li quars iors que li rois estoit venus a
And the-next-day was the fourth day that the king was come to
la dolerouse garde. & quant vint a prime si enuoia a la
the dolorous guard and when came-it to prime so sent-he to the
porte .j. cheualier por le couent que li auoit este fait.
gate a knight for the covenant which to-him had been made
Mais il ne fu qui li osast ourir deuant que li blans
But there not was who to-him dared open before that the white
cheualiers le commandast. Li cheualiers reuient au roi. &
knight it commanded The knight comes-back to-the king and
li dist chou quil a troue. & li rois en est moult
to-him says this which-he has found and the king thereof is very
corechies. Lors sest assis sor le riu dune fontaine.
vexed Then himself-is-he sat by the brook of-a spring
& commencha a penser moult durement. tant que tierche
and began to think very hard until that tierce

commencha a passer. & li cheualier dient a la roine dame
began to pass and the knights say to the queen lady
tierche passe & li rois nenuoie nului a la porte que
tierce passes and the king not-sends anyone to the gate what
ferons nous. Chertes fait ele ie ne sai. Ie ni oseroie
shall-do we Certainly says she I not know I not-there would-dare
enuoier se il nel commandast. & il pense trop durement.
send if he not-it commanded and he thinks very hard
Et li cheualiers qui le castel auoit conquis sen estoit
And the knight who the castle had conquered himself-thence was
reissus par le fause posterne por veoir les gens le
gone-out-again by the false postern for to-see the people (of-)the
roi. & il auoit commande au portier que se li rois i
king and he had commanded to-the porter that if the king there
enuoioit a tierche con li ourast la porte. Mais que
sent at tierce that-one to-him should-open the gate But that
hors de laiens nissist nus hom. Mais de cheus del
out from in-there not-should-go any man But of those of-the
castel auoit sor les murs asses qui moult volsissent que
castle were-there on the walls many who much would-wish that
les dolerouses costumes fussent remeses. Et li portiers qui
the dolorous customs were ceased And the porter who
nosoit dire mot ne hors metre nului fait signe au viel
not-dared say word nor out put anyone makes sign to-the old
homme. quil apiaut le roi artu. & chil crie rois artus
man that-he call the king Arthur and that-one cries king Arthur
eure passe eure passe. Et autresi commenchent a crier tout
hour passes hour passes And likewise begin to cry all
li autre. si que toute la valee en retentist. Quant la roine
the others so that all the valley thereof resounds When the queen
& li cheualier oient la vois si vienent en haut deuant la
and the knights hear the voice so come on high before the

porte. & sont moult angoisseus del roi qui son penser
gate and are very anxious for-the king who his thinking
ne laisse. Et lors vient par deuant eus li cheualiers qui le
not leaves And then comes by before them the knight who the
castel auoit conquis. & ot a son col lescu dargent a
castle had conquered and had at his neck the-shield of-silver with
le bende vermeille. si vient a grant oirre iusca la porte.
the band red so comes-he at great speed up-to the gate
Et quant il vit la roine si li dist. Dame diex vous
And when he saw the queen so to-her says Lady God you
beneie. & ele respont moult matement que diex beneie lui.
may-bless and she answers very dejectedly that God may-bless him
Dame fait il voldries vous laiens entrer. Chertes fait ele
Lady says he would-wish you in-there to-enter Certainly says she
oil moult volentiers. En non dieu fait il por vous sera
yes very willingly In name (of-)God says he for you will-be
la porte ouerte. grant merchis sire fait ele. Li cheualiers
the gate opened great thanks lord says she The knight
apele tantost la gaite & dist. Oeure la porte. volentiers
calls at-once the watchman and says Open the gate willingly
sire fait il. Chil oeure la porte & li cheualiers entre
lord says he That-one opens the gate and the knight enters
ens. Mais il est tant esbahis de la roine quil sen
in But he is so amazed by the queen that-he himself-thereof
oublie tous. ne a riens nentent fors a li veoir. Si est
forgets all nor to anything not-attends except to her to-see So is-he
montes en haut desus la porte & de la lesgarde. Et la
mounted on high above the gate and from there her-looks-at And the
porte fu reclose si tost com il fu ens. si ot iete vn si
gate was reclosed so soon as he was in so had-it thrown a so
grant brait que li rois en laissa son pense. si demande
great cry that the king thereat left his thought so asks

que che auoit este. & il fu asses qui li conta. Et
what this had been and there were enough who to-him told And
il dist a kex le senescal que il aille sauoir sil porroit
he says to Kay the seneschal that he go to-know if-he could
laiens entrer. Et il i vient si encontre sa dame qui
in-there enter And he there comes so meets his lady who
ia sen voloit reuenir. Car ele quidoit que li rois
already herself-thence wished to-come-back For she thought that the king
leust gabee & li conte comment. Lors esgarde keus
her-had mocked and to-him tells how Then looks Kay
contermont si voit le cheualier desus la porte. si li dist.
up so sees the knight above the gate so to-him says
Ha sire cheualiers vous aues fait com vilains qui ma
Ah lord knight you have done as churl who my
dame aues gabee. Mais il ne lentent mie. & lors vient a
lady have mocked But he not it-hears at-all and then comes to
li la puchele qui lauoit amene a la dolerouse chartre ensi
him the maiden who him-had led to the dolorous prison thus
auoit non li castiax ou mesire Gauuain estoit en prison.
had name the castle where my-lord Gawain was in prison
Et quant ele oi che que kex li reprochoit si le bouta
And when she heard this that Kay to-him reproached so him pushed
& dist. Dont noes vous che dont chis cheualiers vous
and says Then not-hear you this whereof this knight you
blasme. liqueus fait il & ele li monstre. Sire fait il que
blames which-one says he and she to-him shows Lord says he what
dites vous. Ie di fait il que vous tenes bien por musars moi
say you I say says he that you hold well for fools me
& madame. Car vous ne li deignies la porte ouurir &
and my-lady For you not to-her deign the gate to-open and
si li creantastes. Ne a moi ne deingies parler. Qui estes
so to-her promised Nor to me not deign to-speak Who are

vous fait li cheualiers. Ie sui fait il kex li senescaus. lors
you says the knight I am says he Kay the seneschal then
esgarde li cheualiers si voit la roine qui ia sen aloit
looks the knight so sees the queen who already herself-thence went
par anui. & il en est si dolans que par .j. poi que il
for vexation and he thereof is so sorrowful that by a little that he
nenrage. por che quil voit bien quele sest courechie. Et
goes-mad for this that-he sees well that-she herself-is angered And
il vient a la gaite si li dist. Dont ne te commandai
he comes to the watchman so to-him says Then not thee commanded
ie que tu laissasses madame la roine laiens entrer. Onques
I that thou let my-lady the queen in-there enter Ever
nen parlastes fait chil. & il met la main a lespee
not-thereof spoke-you says that-one and he puts the hand to the-sword
& iure moult durement. & bien sachies fait il que se tu
and swears very hard and well know says he that if thou
ne fusses si viex ie te coperoie orendroit la teste por
not wert so old I to-thee would-cut right-now the head for
ta folie. & moi por ma soldee se ie nen eusse si boin
thy folly and me for my pay if I not-thereof had so good
garant. Or leuvre tost & garde que plus ne soit fremee.
warrant Now it-open quickly and take-care that more not be fastened
Atant li est ses cheuax amenes & il monte dolans
Thereupon to-him is his horse brought and he mounts sorrowful
& pensis. puis est reuenus a la fausse posterne si issi
and thoughtful then is come-back to the false postern so went
hors. ne la pucele ne li sot tant demander ou il va
out nor the maiden not of-him knew so-much ask where he goes
quil li voelle respondre. fors tant quil reuendra ia.
that-he to-her will answer except so-much that-he will-come-back soon
& gardes fait il que ne me sieues .j. tout seul pas. Et ele
and take-care says he that not me follow a all single step And she

le laisse atant & la gaite oeure la porte. & la nouele
him leaves thereupon and the watchman opens the gate and the news
vient au roi. & il vient la moult tost. si entre & il
comes to-the king and he comes there very quickly so enters and he
& la roine & tout li autre apres que onques ni ot
and the queen and all the others after for ever not-there was
honor gardee. Mais qui plus tost i pot entrer si entra.
honor kept But who more quickly there could enter so entered
Et quant il furent ens si trouerent lautre porte fremee.
And when they were in so found the-other gate fastened
Et lors vont el chimentiere. si commande li rois a
And then go-they into-the cemetery so commands the king to
ses clers que il lisent les lettres. Et il commenchent
his clerks that they read the letters And they begin
a lire & a noumer asses des cheualiers de sa maison &
to read and to name many of-the knights of his house and
dautres terres. Et tant quil vienent a vne tombe ou li
of-other lands And until that-they come to a tomb where the
nons monsignor Gauuain estoit escris. Si i auoit chi gist
name (of-)my-lord Gawain was written So there had here lies
mesire gauuain. & vees la sa teste. & autretel dient de
my-lord Gawain and see there his head and the-same say-they of
tous les compaignons que mesires Gauuain auoit amenes
all the companions whom my-lord Gawain had brought
auoec lui. Quant li rois ot cheus noumer. a poi quil
with him When the king hears those named by little that-he
nesrage de duel & la roine & tout li autre. Quant il
goes-mad of grief and the queen and all the others When they
ont grant pieche fait lor duel. Si demande li rois a la
have great while made their grief So asks the king to the
gaite qui estoit sor le mur. se chele premiere porte lor
watchman who was on the wall if that first gate to-them

sera iamais close. & chil dist que nenil. Et en chele
will-be ever-more closed and that-one says that no And into that
autre fait li rois comment i porons nous entrer. Sire fait
other says the king how there can we enter Lord says
il enuoies cha autresi com vous aues fait ches .iiij. iors. le
he send here just as you have done these four days the
soir se remist li rois en ses loges & sa compaignie.
evening himself put-back the king into his lodges and his company
& la nuit ot si grant dolor entre ses gens que onques
and the night was-there so great sorrow among his people that ever
ni ot ne beu ne mangie. Mais ore reparole .j. poi
not-there was either drunk or eaten But now speaks-again a little
li contes del blanc cheualier ensi con il se parti del
the tale of-the white knight thus as he himself parted from-the
castel la ou la porte fu veee a la roine.
castle there where the gate was refused to the queen

The White Knight and the Hermit

IV

Lancelot, in despair at angering the queen, meets a hermit coming from the island fortress, where Galegantin and Lohot lie sick, and learns that Brandin will attack the king's host by night. He follows the hundred and fifty attackers, falls on them from behind, and in the confusion they think the whole host is upon them. He unhorses Brandin, and Brandin, calling him the best knight in the world, pledges to free Gawain and twenty-two of the king's companions if Lancelot will not put him in the castle. Lancelot takes him toward the hermitage, and Kay, recognizing Brandin, rides after them.

Li contes dist chi endroit que li blans cheualiers cheuauche
The tale says here in-place that the white knight rides
mas & pensis por sa dame la roine quil a courechie.
downcast and thoughtful for his lady the queen whom-he has angered
Car il lamoit de si grant amor des le premier Ior quil fu
For he her-loved with so great love from the first Day that-he was
tenus por cheualiers quil namoit tant ne soi ne autrui.
held for knight that-he not-loved so-much either himself nor another
Et pour che quil doutoit le haine sa dame a tous
And for this that-he feared the hatred (of-)his lady for all
iors mais. si pense en son cuer tant a faire darmes quil
days more so thinks-he in his heart so-much to do of-arms that-he
raura monsignour Gauuain ou il moura. & par che
will-have-back my-lord Gawain or he will-die and by this
sil le puet faire bee a recourer lamor sa dame. Ensi
if-he it can do aims-he to recover the-love (of-)his lady Thus
cheuauche mas & pensis tout droit vers la dolerouse
rides-he downcast and thoughtful all straight toward the dolorous
chartre. si se remet el bruelet. si pooit bien estre
prison so himself puts-again into-the thicket so could well be

bas miedis. Et quant il vint la si i fu longuement si
low midday And when he came there so there was-he long so
que ia auesproit. Et il esgarde si voit venir vn ermite
that already it-grew-evening And he looks so sees come a hermit
desus vn grant aisne & entra el bois moult pres de
upon a great ass and entered into-the wood very near of
lui. si aloit cantant ses eures vers son hermitage qui pres
him so went singing his hours toward his hermitage which near
diluec estoit. Li hermites estoit de grant eage. si auoit este
thence was The hermit was of great age so had been
cheualiers .j. des plus biaus del monde. si sestoit rendus
knight one of-the most fair of-the world so himself-was yielded
en son millor eage por vne perte qui auenue li estoit de
in his best age for a loss which befallen to-him was of
.xij. fiex que il auoit eus. Si les vit morir tous dedens
twelve sons that he had had So them saw-he die all within
.j. an. Et quant il entra dedens le bois. si li vint li
one year And when he entered within the wood so to-him came the
blans cheualiers a lencontre & li demande dont il vient.
white knight to the-meeting and of-him asks whence he comes
& il laisse a dire quanquil disoit si li respont moult
and he leaves-off to say whatever-he said so to-him answers very
doucement quil vient de chel castelet. Sire fait li cheualiers
sweetly that-he comes from that little-castle Lord says the knight
que feistes vous la. & li boins hons commenche a parler.
what did you there and the good man begins to speak
Chertes sire fait li hermites ie i alai a grant besoig. por
Certainly lord says the hermit I there went at great need for
.ij. cheualiers qui moult sont malades. lors li monstre
two knights who very are sick then to-him shows-he
le calisse quil portoit sous sa cape. & li cheualiers
the chalice which-he carried under his cape and the knight

li demande qui sont chil doi. & il dist quil sont de
of-him asks who are those two and he says that-they are of
la maison le roi artu. Si a non li vns galegantis li
the house (of-)the king Arthur So has name the one Galegantin the
galois. & chil est malades de che que on li a fait
Welsh and that-one is sick from this that one to-him has done
laiens. & li autres est lohot li fiex le roi artu qui est
in-there and the other is Lohot the son (of-)the king Arthur who is
malades dune enfremete quil a prinse dedens le cartre.
sick of-an infirmity that-he has taken within the prison
Lors commenche li blans cheualiers moult durement
Then begins the white knight very hard
a plorer. & a souspirer. si li demande de monsignor
to weep and to sigh so of-him asks of my-lord
Gauuain & de monsignor ywain son cousin. Et li ermites
Gawain and of my-lord Yvain his cousin And the hermit
dist quil les vit tout sain & tous haities. Et vous sire
says that-he them saw all sound and all well And you lord
qui estes vous fait chil. Sire fait il vns cheualiers errans
who are you says that-one Lord says he a knight errant
sui. ha fait li hermites ie sai auques qui vous estes. vous
am-I ah says the hermit I know somewhat who you are you
aues conquis la dolerouse garde. & chi quatendes vous. &
have conquered the dolorous guard and here what-await you and
li cheualiers dist que moult volentiers meteroit paine as
the knight says that very willingly would-put-he pain to-the
cheualiers le roi deliurer sil pooit estre. Et ie vous en
knights (of-)the king to-deliver if-it could be And I you thereof
conseillerai moult bien fait li ermites se vous en voles
shall-counsel very well says the hermit if you thereof wish
croire mon conseil Et li cheualiers dist que si fera. Ie vous
to-believe my counsel And the knight says that so will-he I to-you

di fait li hermites que quant ie voloie ore monter si oi
say says the hermit that when I wished now to-mount so heard-I
.ij. escuiers parler de lor harnois quil ne se prenoient
two squires speak of their harness who not themselves took
garde de moi. si dist li vns a lautre. quil monteroit del
heed of me so said the one to the-other that-they would-mount at-the
premier somme por assaillir le roi artu par nuit. & Ie sai
first sleep for to-assail the king Arthur by night and I know
bien que chis qui la dolerouse garde fu heit plus le roi que
well that he whose the dolorous guard was hates more the king than
nul homme fors vous. Car il crient quil ne mete forche
any man except you For he fears that-he — put force
& paine a abatre les perilleuses coustumes de cel castel.
and pain to overthrow the perilous customs of that castle
& bien quide quil ni soit venus por autre chose. por
and well thinks-he that-he not-there be come for other thing for
che loeroie ie que vous garnesissies monsignor le roi de
this would-counsel I that you warned my-lord the king of
cheste chose. Car ensi poroient estre tout pris. Et se vous
this thing For thus could they-be all taken And if you
ne len garnisies si len garnirai iou. & li cheualiers
not him-thereof warn so him-thereof shall-warn I and the knight
dist que il len garnira. Mais ie voeil auant sauoir fait
says that he him-thereof will-warn But I wish first to-know says
il vostre hermitage. Che mest moult bel fait li boins
he your hermitage This to-me-is very fair says the good
hons. Lors sen va auant & li cheualiers apres tant
man Then himself-thence goes ahead and the knight after until
quil vienent al hermitage. si le voit trop bien seant. Et
that-they come to-the hermitage so it sees very well situated And
siet sor haut tertre reont. & ert clos de haut palis tout
it-sits on high hill round and was enclosed with high palisade all

enuiron. & apres de grans fosses galois & par dehors est
around and after with great ditches Welsh and by outside is
li plaisseis espes & grans. li cheualiers prent atant congie
the hedge thick and great the knight takes thereupon leave
del hermite. & dist quil ira garnir le roi de ses anemis.
of-the hermit and says that-he will-go to-warn the king of his enemies
biax sire fait li hermites se vous aues de nous mestier
fair lord says the hermit if you have of us need
tout seurement venes chaiens. Et il dist que si feroit il.
all surely come in-here And he says that so would-do he
Atant sen part & retorne la ou il auoit
Thereupon himself-thence parts-he and returns there where he had
troue lermite. & atent illuec moult longuement. & la
found the-hermit and waits there very long and the
nuis aproche. Et il pense que en nule maniere il nen
night approaches And he thinks that in any manner he not-thereof
garnira le roi. Car il i quide tous seus mettre conseil.
will-warn the king For he there thinks all alone to-put counsel
si atent ensi tant que il est nuis de grant pieche. &
so waits thus until that it is night by great while and
lors commenche la lune a leuer. & se lieuent partout
then begins the moon to rise and themselves rise throughout
le castel & satornent. & tantost issent hors & passent
the castle and themselves-array and at-once go out and pass
liaue. Et il les lait cheuauchier tant que tout sont passe.
the-water And he them lets ride until that all are passed
& il les sieut de loing tant quil sont pres de la
and he them follows from far until that-they are near of the
dolerouse garde. si se metent el couert del tertre &
dolorous guard so themselves put into-the cover of-the hill and
cheuauchent tout belement quil ne fuissent apercheu. Ne
ride all gently that-they not were perceived Nor

ia cil de lost ne sen preissent garde tant quil
ever those of the-host not themselves-thereof would-take heed until that-they
fuissent ens feru. Quant il furent si pres quil ni ot
were in struck When they were so near that-it not-there had
que lesperoner. si descendent & restraignent lor cheuaus.
but the-spurring so dismount-they and tighten-again their horses
puis remontent & sen vienent pour ferir en lost.
then remount and themselves-thence come for to-strike into the-host
Mais li cheualiers les sieut de pres si ot cheual fort &
But the knight them follows from near so had-he horse strong and
isnel. & tient .j. glaiue a hanste grosse & corte & a
swift and holds a lance with shaft thick and short and with
fer trenchant. Et il ot cuer asses. car il baoit a descomfire
iron cutting And he had heart enough for he aimed to discomfit
chaus quil sieuoit. qui estoient encore .C. & .l. Et
those whom-he followed who were still hundred and fifty And
il lor laisse coure si les escrie moult durement. & il
he at-them lets run so them cries-at very hard and they
quident estre trai. si sont si durement esbahi quil ni
think to-be betrayed so are-they so hard amazed that-it not-there
a chelui qui mete nul conroi en sa desfense. & il fiert
has that-one who put any order in his defense and he strikes
le premier quil ataint si durement que il le iete mort
the first whom-he reaches so hard that he him throws dead
& il li laisse le glaiue el cors. si a traite lespee
and he to-him leaves the lance in-the body so has-he drawn the-sword
& doune grans cols a destre & a senestre a chex quil
and gives great blows to right and to left to those whom-he
ataint & qui atendre losent. Mais il ni demorerent
reaches and who to-await him-dare But they not-there stayed
gaires. Car li ost est estormie por le cri. Et les gaites
much For the host is roused for the cry And the watchmen

qui orent veues les armes commenchent a crier as armes.
who had seen the arms begin to cry to-the arms
Et chil se metent a la voie maintenant pardesous le
And those themselves put to the way at-once below the
castel. & chil les encauce qui grans caus lor doune. si
castle and that-one them chases who great blows to-them gives so
lor detrenche lor escus & lor hiaumes si lor desmaille
to-them hacks their shields and their helms so to-them unmails
les haubers sor bras & sor espaules. & il se hurte a
the hauberks on arms and on shoulders and he himself knocks against
els de cors & de cheual si les porte a terre. si les prent
them with body and with horse so them bears to ground so them takes
par les penes des escus & par les cols & par les hiaumes.
by the edges of-the shields and by the necks and by the helms
Ensi les maine li blans cheualiers. & il sont si esbahi
Thus them drives the white knight and they are so amazed
por les merueilles quil a fait quil quident bien que che
for the marvels that-he has done that-they think well that this
soit toute lost le roi artu. Et lors sont venu endroit
be all the-host (of-)the king Arthur And then are-they come at
le porte del castel. & li gaites qui fu sor le mur
the gate of-the castle and the watchman who was on the wall
commenche a crier as armes as armes. & li cheualiers
begins to cry to-the arms to-the arms and the knight
qui les encauchoit si auise chelui qui plus samble estre
who them chased so spies him who most seems to-be
riches daus tous & qui plus est cointement armes. si li
rich of-them all and who most is elegantly armed so to-him
sanble quil est sires de tous les autres & si estoit il. Et
seems that-he is lord of all the others and so was he And
il sen vient par lui. si li doune tel colp de lespee
he himself-thence comes by him so to-him gives such blow with the-sword

parmi le hiaume que tout lestoune. & le fait pendre au
through the helm that all him-stuns and him makes hang at-the
col del cheual dans .ij. les bras. Et lors venoient a desroi
neck of-the horse both two the arms And then came in disarray
les gens le roi artu. & chil les oient venir. si fierent
the people (of-)the king Arthur and those them hear come so strike
des esperons & senfuient quanques il peuent des
with-the spurs and themselves-flee as-fast-as they can from-the
cheuax traire. Mais chis que li blans cheualiers ot feru
horses draw But he whom the white knight had struck
estoit estordis & ses cheuaus sadreche vers le hombre.
was stunned and his horse itself-directs toward the humber
qui dautre part del castel coroit. si lenporte grant
which on-other part of-the castle ran so him-carries-off great
aleure. & li blans cheualiers le sieut de pres qui laissier
pace and the white knight him follows from near who to-leave
nel vaut. si sen vient par lui. & il est si estordis
not-him wished so himself-thence comes by him and he is so stunned
quil ne voit goute. & li blans cheualiers laiert au col
that-he not sees drop and the white knight him-seizes by-the neck
sel sache a terre & li va par desus le cors tant
so-him pulls to ground and to-him goes by over the body so-much
que tout le debrise. Lors est descendus si li esrache
that all him breaks Then is-he dismounted so from-him tears
le hiaume de la teste. & li manache a colper. Mais
the helm from the head and to-him threatens to cut But
chil ne puet respondre car il gist pasmes. Et lors quide
that-one not can answer for he lies fainted And then thinks
li cheualiers que il soit mors. si en est trop dolans por
the knight that he be dead so thereof is-he very sorrowful for
monsignor gauuain. & por les autres. Car par che les
my-lord Gawain and for the others For by this them

quide bien auoir perdus. Grant pieche fu en paumison. si
thinks-he well to-have lost Great while was-he in swoon so
en a moult grant duel li blans cheualiers & en pleure
thereof has very great grief the white knight and thereof weeps
des iex del chief & dist que iamais nira par desus
from-the eyes of-the head and says that ever-more not-will-go over above
cheualier sochire ne le veut. Car bien quide que chist
knight if-to-kill not him wishes For well thinks-he that this-one
ait le cuer creue. A chief dune grant pieche reuient li
may-have the heart burst At end of-a great while comes-back the
cheualiers de paumison si se plainst moult durement &
knight from swoon so himself laments very hard and
li blans cheualier ne fait samblant que lui en poist.
the white knight not makes semblance that to-him thereof weigh
ains dist que la teste li colpera. si li abat la ventaille
rather says that the head to-him will-cut so to-him lowers the ventail
& hauche lespee. Et chil crie merchi qui moult est
and raises the-sword And that-one cries mercy who very is
blechies. si comnoist le cheualier a lescu quil porte. &
hurt so knows the knight by the-shield which-he bears and
chou estoit chil a la seule bende. ha ientiex cheualiers
this was that-one with the single band ah noble knight
fait il ne mochies mie se vous ames de rien le roi artu.
says he not me-kill at-all if you love in anything the king Arthur
Car trop feries grant folie. dont fianchies prison a
For very would-do-you great folly then pledge prison to
tenir la ou ie voldrai. volentiers fait il en tous liex fors
hold there where I shall-wish willingly says he in all places except
quen chel castel la dedens. Mais la niroie ie en nule
than-in that castle there within But there not-would-go I in any
guise. si feres fait il. Car ie vous i menrai a forche.
guise so will-you says he For I you there shall-lead by force

Se vous tant faites fait li autres que vous mi menes.
If you so-much do says the other that you me-there lead
dont mi menres vous mort. Car vis ni enterai ie
then me-there will-lead you dead For alive not-there shall-enter I
ia. Et saues vous que vous i perderes. vous i perderes
ever And know you what you there will-lose you there will-lose
monsignor gauuain & .xxij. autres des compaignons
my-lord Gawain and twenty-two others of-the companions
le roi artu. & se vous en autre prison me metes. Ie
(of-)the king Arthur and if you in other prison me put I
les vous rendrai tous demain ains que il soit anuitie.
them to-you shall-render all tomorrow before that it be night
Car ie voi bien que vous estes li mieudres cheualiers del
For I see well that you are the best knight of-the
monde & le plus auentureus. Quant chil lentent. si en
world and the most adventurous When that-one it-hears so thereof
ot tel ioie que onques mais not si grant. & dist
had such joy that ever more not-had-be so great and says
que sil volt ce faire. ia nentrera par lui el castel.
that if-he wishes this to-do ever not-will-he-enter by him into-the castle
& chil li fianche ensi. & li rent sespee. Sire fait
and that-one to-him pledges thus and to-him gives his-sword Lord says
il ou me voldrois vous mettre en prison. chis .j. hermite
he where me will-wish you to-put in prison at a hermit
fait il qui chi est pres en ceste forest. & vous mi
says he who here is near in this forest and you me-there
menrois auoec vous et chil dist que voire volentiers &
will-lead with you and that-one says that truly willingly and
la droite voie. Li blans cheualiers le fait monter deriere
the right way The white knight him makes mount behind
lui & chil monte a moult grant paine. Car moult
him and that-one mounts with very great pain For very

estoit blechies. Ensi sen vont la droite voie al
was-he hurt Thus themselves-thence go the right way to-the
hermitage. & ia repairoient les gens le roi artu de
hermitage and already returned the people (of-)the king Arthur from
la cache ou il nauoient rien fait. Car chil qui il
the chase where they not-had anything done For those whom they
cachoient sestoient tout flati en la forest. & li rois
chased themselves-were all thrown into the forest and the king
lor fu ales a lencontre si se retornoit auoec aus. Et li
to-them was gone to the-meeting so himself returned with them And the
blans cheualiers sen fu reuenus par le plache ou li
white knight himself-thence was come-back by the place where the
poigneis auoit este. si ot prins vne glaiue que vns des
skirmish had been so had-he taken a lance which one of-the
cheualiers qui senfuioit auoit laissiet chaior. si coisi le roi
knights who himself-fled had let fall so perceived the king
& ses compaignons. & li rois les vit autresi ans .ij. moult
and his companions and the king them saw likewise both two very
bien. ha! sire fait li cheualiers conquis vees chi les gens
well ah lord says the knight conquered see here the people
le roi. Ne en nule maniere ne voldroie chaoir en la
(of-)the king Nor in any manner not would-wish-I to-fall into the
soie prison. si gardes que ie ne viegne en autrui main que
his prison so take-care that I not may-come into another's hand than
en la vostre. Car ie me sui a vous fies. naies doute fait
into the yours For I myself am to you trusted not-have fear says
il. Car sil vous enmaine il menmenra auoec. ou ie serai
he For if-he you leads-off he me-will-lead with or I shall-be
tex conrees que ie ne me porai aidier. Lors cheuauche
such arrayed that I not myself shall-be-able help Then rides-he
sa droite aleure & kex vient apres li. si li escrie. estes
his right pace and Kay comes after him so to-him cries stop

sire cheualiers. car mesire li rois volt sauoir qui vous estes.
lord knight for my-lord the king wishes to-know who you are
& chil ne respont mie ains cheuauche tout auant. &
and that-one not answers at-all rather rides all forward and
kex vient a lui si li dist. sire cheualier vous estes trop
Kay comes to him so to-him says lord knight you are too
orguelleus qui ne deignies a moi parler. Que voles fait il.
proud who not deign to me to-speak What wish-you says he
Ie voeil sauoir qui vous estes. Ie sui fait il vns cheualiers.
I wish to-know who you are I am says he a knight
& chil deriere vous fait kex est il prisons. Oil fait il
and that-one behind you says Kay is he prisoner Yes says he
que en voles vous dire. Lors connut kex que chestoit
what thereof wish you to-say Then knew Kay that it-was
chil qui auoit faite la porte ourir. O fait kex vous estes
that-one who had made the gate open O says Kay you are
chil qui feistes ier muser madame deuant la porte.
that-one who made yesterday wait my-lady before the gate
Et chis cheualiers que vous enmenes vaut auant ier
And this knight whom you lead-off wished before yesterday
ochire monsignor le roi. Ie le connois bien as armes.
to-kill my-lord the king I him know well by-the arms

Kay and the King at the Castle

v

Kay demands Brandin and is unhorsed, and Lancelot tells him that the Lady of Nohaut would have been deceived had she let Kay fight her battle. At the hermitage Brandin sends the hermit for his seneschal, who brings Gawain and the prisoners; Brandin releases them to Lancelot and departs. Lancelot, bearing the shield of two bands, has the porter open the gate only to Kay, and gazes at the queen until it shuts before her. The king, having promised to force no one to speak, enters a castle of weeping people who keep silent to dismay him, and when Lancelot comes near they cry to the king to seize him. The king lets him go, and he cannot for grief tell the queen the castle's secret; the people send word that by that knight alone could the king have learned it. Lancelot frees Gawain and the others, sends them to thank the king and queen, and rides away unnamed.

Li cheualiers ne respont a rien quil die ains cheuauche
The knight not answers to anything that-he says rather rides
ades. & kex le tient a despit si li dist. Sire cheualiers
ever-on and Kay it holds in scorn so to-him says Lord knight
chis est anemis le roi & ie sui ses iures. si seroie
this-one is enemy (of-)the king and I am his sworn-man so would-be-I
pariures se ie souffroie que vous lenmainissies issi arriere.
forsworn if I allowed that you him-led-off thus back
baillies le moi sel renderai le roi monsignor. Encore
hand him to-me so-him shall-render-I to-the king my-lord Yet
nest mie chil venus fait il qui a forche lenmaint. Ce serai
not-is at-all that-one come says he who by force him-leads-off This shall-be
ie fait kex. lors veut saisir le cheualier conquis. Mais li
I says Kay then wishes-he to-seize the knight conquered But the
autres li dist que sil i met la main il li trenchera
other to-him says that if-he there puts the hand he to-him will-cut-it
ia. voire fait kex or le metes dont a terre. & qui a forche
now truly says Kay now him put then to ground and who by force

le pora enmener si lenmaint. Mait diex fait il ia por
him will-be-able lead-off so him-may-lead-off Me-help God says he ever for
vous ni descendra. & kex sesloigne puis vient ariere
you not-there will-he-dismount and Kay himself-withdraws then comes back
grant aleure. & li blans cheualiers lauise au rai de la lune.
great pace and the white knight him-spies by-the ray of the moon
kex brise sa lanche. & chil fiert li en bas par desous
Kay breaks his lance and that-one strikes him in low by beneath
larchon deuant. si li met parmi la senestre quisse & fer
the-saddlebow front so to-him puts through the left thigh both iron
& fust si quil le ruit a larchon de la sele. Il lenpaint
and wood so that-he him pins to the-saddlebow of the saddle He him-thrusts
bien sel porte a terre. au parcaoir. brise sa lanche. & li
well so-him bears to ground at-the falling breaks his lance and the
blans cheualiers li dist. sire keu or poes veoir se madame
white knight to-him says lord Kay now can-you see if my-lady
de nohaut fust engignie se ieusse faite la bataille a par moi.
of nohaut were deceived if I-had done the battle on by me
Atant sen part & li rois & ses gens vienent
Thereupon himself-thence parts-he and the king and his people come
la ou kex gist si le troeuent pasme. Et il le portent
there where Kay lies so him find fainted And they him carry
as tentes en son escu. & li blans cheualiers se fu mis
to-the tents on his shield and the white knight himself was put
en la forest si cheuauche tant quil est chis lermite venus.
into the forest so rides so-far that-he is at the-hermit come
si apele li cheualiers conquis a la porte. & li cheualiers
so calls the knight conquered at the gate and the knight
hermites li oeure. Quant il furent descendu. si fist
hermit to-him opens When they were dismounted so made
li blans cheualiers ourir luis de la capele. & conta al
the white knight open the-door of the chapel and told to-the

hermite lor couenenches. & fist iurer au cheualier conquis
hermit their covenants and made swear to-the knight conquered
que il loiaument li tenroit ses couenences. & ie vous
that he loyally to-him would-keep his covenants and I you
iur fait il apres que se ie voi que vous me voles trechier.
swear says he after that if I see that you me wish to-trick
Ie vous coperai la teste. Com il furent reuenu si enuoie
I to-you shall-cut the head When they were come-back so sends
li cheualiers conquis ens en leure lermite a la dolerouse
the knight conquered in in the-hour the-hermit to the dolorous
chartre por amener son senescal. Mais auant li fait iurer
prison for to-bring his seneschal But first him makes swear
li blans cheualiers sor sewangile quil en esploiteroit a foi.
the white knight on his-gospel that-he thereof would-act in faith
Et li hermites est montes sor .j. asne. & vient au castel si
And the hermit is mounted on an ass and comes to-the castle so
enmaine le senescal tout seul par les enseignes que il li
leads-off the seneschal all alone by the tokens that he to-him
a mandees. & chil i est venus. Si li dist ses sires
has sent and that-one there is come So to-him says his lord
voiant le blanc cheualier quil amaint monsignor Gauuain &
seeing the white knight that-he bring my-lord Gawain and
tous les autres compaignons le roi. Et quil viegnent tout
all the other companions (of-)the king And that-they come all
arme. Apres le fait Iurer au senescal que ensi le fera.
armed After him makes-he Swear to-the seneschal that thus it he-will-do
Li senescaus sen part atant & ia estoit grans
The seneschal himself-thence parts thereupon and already was-it great
iors. si fist ensi com ses sires li ot commande. & quant
day so did-he thus as his lord to-him had commanded and when
il furent venu si estoit bien haute prime. li sires demande
they were come so was-it well high prime the lord asks

au senescal. comment amenastes vous ches cheualiers. Il
to-the seneschal how brought you these knights They
me fianchierent fait il quil ne se partiroient de
to-me pledged says he that-they not themselves would-part from
ci se par vostre congie non. Signeur fait li sires a eus
here except by your leave not Lords says the lord to them
ie vous commant par vos fiances que vous fachies che que
I you command by your pledges that you do this that
chis cheualiers vous commandera comme si prison & ie
this knight you will-command as his prisoners and I
vous quit dendroit moi. Et li blans cheualiers se tient
you quit as-regards me And the white knight himself holds
tous enbrons quil nel connoissent. & si estoit il tous
all bowed that-they not-him know and so was he all
armes nis de hiaume. Lors sotroient tout li cheualier a
armed even of helm Then themselves-grant all the knights to
lui comme prison. & li sires les quite de lor fianches.
him as prisoners and the lord them quits of their pledges
puis sen part de laiens & li hermites dist au blanc
then himself-thence parts from in-there and the hermit says to-the white
cheualier. Comment sire laires vous ent aler brandis. Dont
knight How lord will-let you thence go Brandin Then
aues vous tout perdu. Car iamais li enchantement de la
have you all lost For ever-more the enchantments of the
dolerouse garde ni remanront se par lui non. Ie nen
dolorous guard not-there will-cease except by him not I not-thereof
doi plus faire fait il car ie lai creante. & li hermites
ought more do says he for I it-have promised and the hermit
en pleure moult durement. Lors apele li cheualiers tous
thereof weeps very hard Then calls the knight all
les compaignons le roi si lor dist. Signor ie vous
the companions (of-)the king so to-them says Lords I you

pri & por vostre preu & por monor que vous ne vous
beg both for your profit and for my-honor that you not yourselves
moues de chaiens deuant que vous me reuerres. & che
move from in-here before that you me will-see-again and this
sera anquenuit ou le matin. & il li creantent. Atant
will-be tonight or the morning and they to-him promise Thereupon
sen part & vient a la dolerouse garde. si estoit
himself-thence parts-he and comes to the dolorous guard so was-it
ia pres de tierche. Et li rois auoit enuoie a prime .j.
already near of tierce And the king had sent at prime a
cheualier a la porte. & len li auoit enuoiet ariere. li blans
knight to the gate and one him had sent back the white
cheualiers entre el castel par la fausse posterne. & vient
knight enters into-the castle by the false postern and comes
el palais ou les .ij. puceles latendent. & chele qui les
into-the palace where the two maidens him-await and that-one who the
escus li auoit aportes li dist. biax sire ai iou ore
shields to-him had brought to-him says fair lord have I now
asses prison tenue. bele douce amie nenil encore deuant que
enough prison kept fair sweet friend no yet before that
iou aurai trait a chief de monsignor Gauuain & que li
I shall-have drawn to end of my-lord Gawain and that the
rois sera chaiens entres. & lors nous en irons entre moi
king will-be in-here entered and then we thence shall-go between me
& vous ensamble. lors a oste lescu de son col si i
and you together then has-he removed the-shield from his neck so there
pent cheli as .ij. bendes. puis en uient au portier si
hangs that-one with-the two bands then thence comes-he to-the porter so
li demande se li rois enuoia hui a la porte. Oil fait il
of-him asks if the king sent today to the gate Yes says he

des prime. Or garde fait il que quant il i enuoiera mais
from prime Now take-care says he that when he there will-send more
que tu dies que tu ne louerras se a keu le senescal non.
that thou say that thou not it-wilt-open except to Kay the seneschal not
Atant sen ist del castel & vient tout
Thereupon himself-thence goes-out-he from-the castle and comes all
entor le tertre. Tant quil vient par deuant lost le roi.
around the hill Until that-he comes by before the-host (of-)the king
& ia passoit tierche. Et chil du castel commenchent a
and already passed tierce And those of-the castle begin to
crier eure passe eure passe. & li rois fu apoies sor le riu
cry hour passes hour passes and the king was leaning on the brook
dune fontaine si pensoit. & com il oi le cri si enuoia .j.
of-a spring so thought and when he heard the cry so sent a
cheualier. Et la gaite li dist quil ne loueroit se a
knight And the watchman to-him says that-he not it-would-open except to
keu le senescal non. & chil lala dire au roi. & li rois
Kay the seneschal not and that-one it-went to-tell to-the king and the king
dist que il li fera porter ains que il ni entrent. Car
says that he him will-make carry before that they there enter For
il gisoit malades de la plaie quil auoit la nuit eue. Et li
he lay sick of the wound which-he had the night had And the
rois le fait porter deuant la porte. & la roine & maint
king him makes carry before the gate and the queen and many
des cheualiers vienent deuant le castel. Et li cheualiers qui
of-the knights come before the castle And the knight who
portoit lescu dargent as .ij. bendes vermeilles sen
bore the-shield of-silver with-the two bands red himself-thence
vient par deuant la roine si le salue & ele lui. Dame fait
comes by before the queen so her greets and she him Lady says
il ou ales vous. Sire cheualier fait ele ie vois a chele porte
he where go you Lord knight says she I go to that gate

sauoir se mesire li rois i entera. Et vous dame fait il
to-know if my-lord the king there will-enter And you lady says he
i enterries vous volentiers. Chertes fait ele oie. & vous
there would-enter you willingly Certainly says she yes and you
i enterres fait il. lors vient a la porte si apele le portier.
there will-enter says he then comes-he to the gate so calls the porter
& il vient la porte ourir. Et li cheualiers ne fait sesgarder
and he comes the gate to-open And the knight not does except-look
non la roine tout a cheual si com ele vient contremont
not the queen all on horse so as she comes up
la roche. si pense tant a li que tout sen oublie.
the rock so thinks so-much of her that all himself-thence forgets
li portiers le semont dentrer ens. & li cheualiers regarde
the porter him summons to-enter in and the knight looks
tous iors ariere tant que li portiers reclot la porte & ele
all days back until that the porter recloses the gate and it
iete vn grant bret. & li rois qui pensoit sor la fontaine
throws a great cry and the king who thought by the spring
demande que chou est quil a oi. & lors vient kex a
asks what this is that-he has heard and then comes Kay to
la porte que .iiij. vallet portent en .j. escu si troeuent la
the gate whom four youths carry on a shield so find the
gaite desus la porte en haut. Si li demande qui il est
watchman above the gate on high So of-him asks-he who he is
& il se noume. Dont i enteres vous fait la gaite.
and he himself names Then there will-enter you says the watchman
Atant desferme la porte. & com li rois & sa compaignie
Thereupon unfastens-he the gate and when the king and his company
vienent deuant. si li dient chil damont sire voles vous
come before so to-him say those from-above lord wish you
chaiens entrer. & il dit que oil. Dont vous couient fait il
in-here to-enter and he says that yes Then you behooves says he

loiaument creanter comme rois que vous ne vostre compaignie
loyally to-promise as king that you nor your company
ne feres force de parler chaiens a homme ne a feme. &
not will-do force to speak in-here to man nor to woman and
il li creante issi. lors sont les portes ouertes si entrent
he to-him promises thus then are the gates opened so enter
tout ens & voient dedens moult bel chastel. Et en toutes
all in and see within very fair castle And in all
les maisons de laiens auoit loges deuant ou en bas ou en
the houses of in-there were lodges before either on low or on
haut. & sont toutes couertes de dames & de damoiseles
high and are all covered with ladies and with damsels
& de cheualiers & dautres gens. & pleurent tuit. ne ne
and with knights and with-other people and weep all nor not
dient mot en tout le castel. Et che faisoient il pour che
say word in all the castle And this did they for this
que le roi voloient esmaier. si que tout bel li fust que il
that the king wished-they to-dismay so that all fair to-him were that they
deignassent a li parler. Car il natendoient que nus meist
deigned to him speak For they not-expected that anyone put
conseil en lor angoisse se li rois non. & por che li auoit
counsel in their anguish except the king not and for this him had
on fait creanter; quil ne seroient esforchie de parler ne
one made promise that-they not would-be forced to speak either
par li ne par sa compaignie. Li rois deschent en vne sale
by him or by his company The king dismounts in a hall
moult bele & moult grant. Mais ni trueue homme ne
very fair and very great But not-there finds-be man nor
feme. Et chou auoient fait les gens del castel tout de gre.
woman And this had done the people of-the castle all of will

De che est li rois moult esbahis. si a dit a la roine
At this is the king very amazed so has-he said to the queen
& as cheualiers or sui ie ens. & si ne sai del couine
and to-the knights now am I in and so not know-I of-the condition
fors tant com ien sauoie la fors. Sire fait la roine il
except as-much as I-thereof knew there outside Lord says the queen it
ni a que del souffrir. Car chil qui tant nous en
not-there has but of-the enduring For that-one who so-much to-us thereof
a monstre. espoir nous en monstera plus. Sire font li
has shown perhaps to-us thereof will-show more Lord say the
autre madame dist bien & voir. & li blans cheualiers
others my-lady says well and truth and the white knight
sen fu entres el palais si oste lescu del col
himself-thence was entered into-the palace so removes the-shield from-the neck
& prent chelui a .iij. bendes. si laisse cheli as .ij.
and takes that-one with three bands so leaves that-one with-the two
puis ist de la sale por aler a monsignor Gauuain.
then goes-out-he from the hall for to-go to my-lord Gawain
& il vient en mi les rues. si leua vns cris parmi le
and he comes into middle the streets so rose a cry through the
castel. & crient prenes le prenes le. Et lors saut hors
castle and they-cry take him take him And then leaps out
li rois & la roine & tout li autre & il voient les
the king and the queen and all the others and they see the
portes moult bien fremees. Quant li blans cheualiers uoit
gates very well fastened When the white knight sees
fremer les portes. si regarde chele part ou li rois est
fasten the gates so looks that way where the king is
a ostel. si voit la roine deuant luis de la sale. & il
at lodging so sees the queen before the-door of the hall and he
se pense que sans li veoir ne sen ira il mie.
himself bethinks that without her seeing not himself-thence will-go he at-all

Lors vait chele part. & quant il est pres de lui si
Then goes-he that way and when he is near of her so
deschent & le salue. Et toutes les gens commenchent a
dismounts and her greets And all the people begin to
crier. Rois prenes le rois prenes le & li rois vient vers
cry King take him king take him and the king comes toward
le cheualier & le salue & il lui. Ches gens fait li rois
the knight and him greets and he him These people says the king
mescrient que ie vous preigne. ha sire faites lor demander
to-me-cry that I you take ah lord have them asked
porcoi. Car ie ne quit rien auoir mesfait. li rois i
wherefore For I not think anything to-have misdone the king there
enuoie por sauoir. & les gens se furent tous mis en
sends for to-know and the people themselves were all put into
lautre baille. & li rois dist a la roine & as cheualiers
the-other bailey and the king says to the queen and to-the knights
Ie sui moult esgares. Car ie ne sai riens del couine de
I am very bewildered For I not know anything of-the condition of
laiens. Sire fait li cheualiers vaudries le vous sauoir. Sire
in-there Lord says the knight would-wish it you to-know Lord
fait il nous en auons bien le pooir se nous quidiens
says he we thereof have well the power if we thought
bien faire. Et porcoi fait li rois me crient ches gens que
well to-do And wherefore says the king to-me cry these people that
ie vous preigne. le vaudries vous oir fait li cheualiers.
I you take it would-wish you to-hear says the knight
Chertes fait la roine moult volentiers le sauroit. & li
Certainly says the queen very willingly it would-know-he and the
cheualiers est moult angoisseus quil na lieu & aise de
knight is very anguished that-he not-has place and ease of
lui faire le sauoir. si len vienent les larmes as iex.
him to-make it know so to-him-thereof come the tears to-the eyes

& il dist au roi sire laissies ment aler sil vous plaist.
and he says to-the king lord let me-thence go if-it you pleases
& li rois fu cortois si len laisse aler. & quant il
and the king was courteous so him-thence lets go and when he
fu montes si dist a la roine. & vous dame sauries vous
was mounted so says to the queen and you lady would-know you
volentiers le couigne de chaiens. Chertes fait ele oil. &
willingly the condition of in-here Certainly says she yes and
il monte si sen commenche a aler. ha sire cheualiers
he mounts so himself-thence begins to go ah lord knight
fait ele iel vaudroie moult sauoir. & il respont en plorant
says she I-it would-wish much to-know and he answers in weeping
Chertes dame che poise moi. car trop me mesfait del
Certainly lady this grieves me for too to-me misdoes of-the
cuer. ne li liex nest mie de dire. Atant sen est
heart nor the place not-is at-all of saying Thereupon himself-thence is
reissus par la fausse posterne & fiert des esperons
gone-out-again by the false postern and strikes with-the spurs
tant com il puet traire del cheual. si est venus a
as-much as he can draw from-the horse so is-he come to
la forest & se fiert ens. & li message le roi sont
the forest and himself strikes in and the messengers (of-)the king are
reuenu de demander as gens pourcoi il auoient crie que
come-back from asking to-the people wherefore they had cried that
il preist le cheualier. Il li dient sire ches gens vous
he take the knight They to-him say lord these people to-you
mandent. que par chel cheualier poes sauoir le couine
send-word that by that knight can-you know the condition
de chaiens. ha! fait li rois engingniet sommes. Car iou
of in-here ah says the king deceived are-we For I
len ai laissie aler. en che quil parloient en la porte
him-thence have let go in this that-they spoke in the gate

del castel oeure la porte & cheualiers entrent ens &
of-the castle opens the gate and knights enter in and
dames & damoiseles. & portent le mangier le roi tout
ladies and damsels and carry the meal (of-)the king all
conree. & che estoient les gens de la vile si auoient crije
prepared and these were the people of the town so had-they cried
por che que ses gens preissent le cheualier. Car il ni
for this that his people take the knight For they not-there
deuoient main mettre. Et encore quidoient il que li rois
ought hand put And still thought they that the king
leust retenu. & quant il sorent que il lot laissie aler
him-had held and when they knew that he him-had let go
si en firent trop grant duel. & li rois dist que il ne
so thereof made-they very great grief and the king says that it not
len pesoit mie mains que eus Mais ie ne men
to-him-thereof weighed at-all less than them But I not myself-thereof
prins fait il garde. Chele nuit fu li rois moult bien
took says he heed That night was the king very well
herbergies & toutes ses gens. & par deriere la sale ou il
lodged and all his people and by behind the hall where he
iut estoit vne tornele haute. Mais entre .ij. estoit li murs
lay was a turret high But between two was the wall
del castel. En chele tornele auoit .j. gaite qui moult
of-the castle In that turret was a watchman who very
matin corna le ior. & maintenant leua li rois & la roine
early horned the day and at-once rose the king and the queen
& tout li autre & sont venu hors en la cort. Mais ore
and all the others and are come out into the court But now
conte li contes del blanc cheualier com il se departi
tells the tale of-the white knight how he himself departed
del castel par le congie le roi qui lauoit areste.
from-the castle by the leave (of-)the king who him-had stopped

Quant li blans cheualiers se fu partis del roi &
When the white knight himself was parted from-the king and
de la roine. si ala tout droit a monsignor Gauuain. &
from the queen so went-he all straight to my-lord Gawain and
as autres compaignons & lor dist. Signeur ie vous quit
to-the other companions and to-them says Lords I you quit
che dont vous estes en ma baillie. par .j. couent que vous
this whereof you are in my keeping by a covenant that you
demorres chaiens anuit mais. & le matin vous en ires a
will-stay in-here tonight more and the morning you thence will-go to
la dolerouse garde. si troueres iluec le roi & madame si le
the dolorous guard so will-find-you there the king and my-lady so them
mes salues ans .ij. & lor merchies de che que vous estes
for-me greet both two and them thank for this that you are
hors de prison. Car bien sachies que chest par eus. ha sire
out of prison For well know that it-is by them ah lord
fait mesire Gauuain dites nous qui vous estes. sire fait il .j.
says my-lord Gawain tell us who you are lord says he a
cheualiers sui. ne plus nen poes vous sauoir ore. si vous
knight am-I nor more not-thereof can you know now so you
pri quil ne vous en poist. Atant les commande a dieu
beg-I that-it not you thereof weigh Thereupon them commends-he to God
si cheuauche chele nuit tant com il puet tout droit vers
so rides that night as-much as he can all straight toward
la maison de religion ou il auoit laissiet ses escuiers. la
the house of religion where he had left his squires the
nuit iut chis vn vauassor & lendemain commencha moult
night lay-he at a vavasor and the-next-day began-he very
main a cheuauchier si comme li vauassors li monstra
early to ride so as the vavasor to-him showed

la voie. Ne de li ne sera ore plus parle ains retorne li
the way Nor of him not will-be now more spoken rather returns the
contes a parler de monsignor Gauuain & del roi son oncle.
tale to speak of my-lord Gawain and of-the king his uncle

The Prisoners Restored

VI

At morning the king does not know what to do. In the turret two of the Lady of the Lake's maidens are lodged; one hails the queen, complains of a bad night, and says the queen could help her, but will not say how, since she suspects the white knight and the queen love each other. Gawain and his companions ride in: a knight with a silver shield and three red bands freed them and bade them thank the king and queen, and the queen knows him for her knight. The maiden in the turret reproaches Arthur for leaving her in prison: only the knight he let go can free her, and news of him will come at the first assemblies in Logres. Gawain swears to lie no more than one night in a town until he knows who the knight is; on his counsel the king summons the King of Beyond the Marches of Galone to an assembly a month hence, and Gawain sets out on his quest.

Quant li rois se fu matin leues & venus en la cort
When the king himself was early risen and come into the court
deuant son ostel si ne sot que faire. Et en la tornele ou
before his lodging so not knew-he what to-do And in the turret where
la gaite auoit corne le ior auoit .ij. puceles en vne cambre
the watchman had horned the day were two maidens in a chamber
desous lestage a la gaite. & chestoient celes que la dame
beneath the-story of the watchman and these-were those whom the lady
del lac auoit enuoies au cheualier. Et chele qui auoit aportes
of-the lake had sent to-the knight And that-one who had brought
les escus fu venue as fenestres. & quant ele vit la roine
the shields was come to-the windows and when she saw the queen

si lapele & dist. Dame boin ostel eustes anuit & ie loi
so her-calls and says Lady good lodging had-you tonight and I it-had
moult maluaise. la roine lieue le chief si les garde. Chertes
very bad the queen raises the head so them looks-at Certainly
damoisele fait ele ie ne vous i sauoie mie. & vous en
damsel says she I not you there knew at-all and you thereof
peusse iou aidier. dame oil moult bien. Et comment fait la
could I help lady yes very well And how says the
roine. Ie nel vous dirai ore mie fait la pucele. & ce disoit
queen I not-it to-you shall-tell now at-all says the maiden and this said
ele por che quele soupechonoit que li blans cheualiers amoit
she for this that-she suspected that the white knight loved
la roine. & quidoit bien que ele amast lui autresi. por che
the queen and thought well that she loved him likewise for this
quil ne se voloit partir del chastel deuant quil leust
that-he not himself wished to-part from-the castle before that-he her-had
veue. Et que lautre li auoit conte comment ele lauoit veu
seen And that the-other to-her had told how she him-had seen
esbahi por li. le ior que li rois entra en la premiere porte.
amazed for her the day that the king entered into the first gate
Endementres que la roine & la damoisele parloient issi.
While that the queen and the damsel spoke thus
estes vous vne grant route de cheualiers & entrent parmi
behold you a great company of knights and enter through
la porte. & chou estoit mesire Gauuain & sa compaignie.
the gate and this was my-lord Gawain and his company
Lors fu grans la ioie que li rois ot. si baise son
Then was great the joy that the king had so kisses his
neueu & tous les autres & lor demande ou il ont
nephew and all the others and of-them asks where they have
este. par foi fait mesire Gauuain. nous ne sauons pas
been by faith says my-lord Gawain we not know at-all

ou. fors tant que nous fumes mene en .j. chastelet. &
where except so-much that we were led into a little-castle and
com nous quidames este herbergie si fumes pris. Mais vns
when we thought to-be lodged so were-we taken But a
cheualiers nous a deliures. & nous dist que nous en
knight us has delivered and to-us said that we thereof
merchisiens vous & madame. & saues vous qui il est fait
should-thank you and my-lady and know you who he is says
li rois. & il dist que nenil. Mais il porte .j. escu dargent
the king and he says that no But he bears a shield of-silver
a .iij. bendes vermeilles. O! fait la roine cest vostre
with three bands red O says the queen it-is your
cheualiers qui de vous se parti ier soir apres qui les
knight who from you himself parted yester evening after whom the
gens crierent. Et le veistes vous desarme fait li rois a
people cried And him saw you disarmed says the king to
monsignor Gauuain. nenil fait il car onques son hiaume ne
my-lord Gawain no says he for ever his helm not
vaut oster. & par che soupechoune ie bien que aucuns
wished-he to-remove and by this suspect I well that someone
de chaiens le connoist sil fust desarmes. par foi fait li
of in-here him knows if-he were disarmed by faith says the
rois des ore mais men puis ie bien aler. & la puchele
king from now more myself-thence can I well go and the maiden
loit qui est en sos de la tornele si li crie. Comment
it-bears who is in top of the turret so to-him cries How
rois artus fait ele ten vas tu & me lairas en prison.
king Arthur says she thyself-thence goest thou and me wilt-leave in prison
& si ne sauras rien del couine de chaiens. Damoisele
and so not wilt-know anything of-the condition of in-here Damsel
fait li rois che poise moi quant ie nel sai. Et mesire
says the king this grieves me when I not-it know And my-lord

Gauuain demande que chou est. & li rois li conte &
Gawain asks what this is and the king to-him tells and
il sen merueille moult. Damoisele fait li rois. poroie
he himself-thereof marvels much Damsel says the king could
ie vous deliurer. oil sire fait ele Mais grant paine i
I you deliver yes lord says she But great pain there
couenroit. paine fait il. & ie li metrai moult volentiers
would-be-needed pain says he and I there shall-put very willingly
se ie sai comment. Damoisele fait mesire Gauuain puis
if I know how Damsel says my-lord Gawain since
que messires li rois la dit il i metera paine. Mais
that my-lord the king it-has said he there will-put pain But
dites comment. & par quoi vous poes estre deliuree. Ie ne
say how and by what you can be delivered I not
puis estre deliuree se par le cheualier non que li rois
can be delivered except by the knight not whom the king
laissa aler. & comment le connistriens nous fait mesire
let go and how him would-know we says my-lord
Gauuain. A le premiere melee fait ele qui sera el
Gawain At the first fray says she which will-be in-the
roialme de logre ores de li noueles & a le seconde
kingdom of logres will-hear-you of him news and at the second
& a la tierche. Damoisele fait mesire Gauuain. sil vous
and at the third Damsel says my-lord Gawain if-he to-you
mandoit que vous en uenissies isteries vous de laiens.
sent-word that you thence came would-go-out you from in-there
Chertes fait ele naie se ie ne veioie son cors. Sire fait il
Certainly says she no if I not saw his body Lord says he
tant sachies vous bien. que ie ne ierrai en vne vile que
so-much know you well that I not shall-lie in a town but
vne nuit. se prins ou malades ne sui tant que ie sache qui
one night if taken or sick not am-I until that I know who

chis cheualiers est. Quant li rois loit si len poise
this knight is When the king it-hears so to-him-thereof grieves
moult. & mesire Gauuain li dist. sire. li rois doutre les
much and my-lord Gawain to-him says lord the king of-beyond the
marches a couru sor vous & vous guerroie. Mandes li
marches has run upon you and you wars Send-word to-him
que vous seres en sa terre de hui en .j. mois & che
that you will-be in his land from today in a month and this
sera au tier ior de la feste nostre dame en septembre
will-be on-the third day of the feast (of-)Our Lady in September
si se porcast de desfendre. Car mestiers li est. A
so himself may-he-provide to defend For need to-him is At
chele assamblee se diex vieut & li vient a plaisir ores
that assembly if God wishes and to-him comes to pleasure will-hear
vous noueles de cheste chose. Et li rois dist tout soit a
you news of this thing And the king says all may-be at
vostre volente. Mais vous remanres iusques la fait li rois.
your will But you will-remain until then says the king
Che ne puet estre fait mesire Gauuain. Lors enuoie li rois
This not can be says my-lord Gawain Then sends the king
son message au roi doutre les marches de galone & li
his messenger to-the king of-beyond the marches of galone and to-him
demande le ior de lassamblee issi com il lorent deuise.
asks the day of the-assembly so as they it-had devised
& lors sen ist de la vile. & mesire Gauuain
and then himself-thence goes-out-he from the town and my-lord Gawain
prist congie de lui si entre en sa queste. Mais atant en
took leave of him so enters on his quest But thereupon thereof
taist ore li contes de lui & del roi artu. & retorne
is-silent now the tale of him and of-the king Arthur and returns
a parler del cheualier qui conquist la dolerouse garde.
to speak of-the knight who conquered the dolorous guard

The Knight in the Litter

VII

Lancelot meets the queen's messenger announcing the assembly between Arthur and the King of the Marches and asking the conqueror of the Dolorous Guard to come; he says the knight will be there. He rescues a knight of the queen being dragged to death, and sends him to thank her, describing his shield. His horse falls in a marsh and he is hurt; at a house of religion the brothers keep him ten days. Leaving behind the shield of three bands for a green one, he meets a knight who reviles Arthur's court for the wounded knight's oath, fights him, kills him, and is badly wounded; his squires carry him away in a litter.

Quant li cheualiers qui conquist la dolerouse garde se fu
When the knight who conquered the dolorous guard himself was
partis de la maison au vauassor qui le herberga la nuit
parted from the house of-the vavasor who him lodged the night
quil laissa monsignor Gauuain & ses compaignons chis
that-he left my-lord Gawain and his companions at
lermite de la forest. Si erra tant par ses iornees quil
the-hermit of the forest So traveled-he so-far by his journeys that-he
vint a la maison de religion ou si escuier estoient. Mais il
came to the house of religion where his squires were But he
ni iut que vne nuit. & asses auoient oi parler laiens
not-there lay but one night and much had-they heard speak in-there
del cheualier qui conquist la dolerouse garde. & si ne
of-the knight who conquered the dolorous guard and so not
sauoit nus que che fust il. Al matin sen parti de
knew anyone that this were he At-the morning himself-thence parted-he from
laiens & cheuaucha toute ior sans auenture trouer dont
in-there and rode all day without adventure finding whereof
a parler fache. Et lendemain leua matin & cheuaucha
to speak be-fitting And the-next-day rose-he early and rode

iusquendroit tierche. & lors encontra vne damoisele sor .j.
until-toward tierce and then met-he a damsel on a
palefroi tot tressue. li cheualiers auoit sa ventaille abatue
palfrey all sweating the knight had his ventail lowered
& ses manicles & si escuier portoient son glaiue &
and his gauntlets and his squires carried his lance and
son hiaume & son escu couert dune hauche. Il salue la
his helm and his shield covered with-a cover He greets the
damoisele & ele lui. Damoisele fait il quels besoins vous
damsel and she him Damsel says he what need you
amaine si tost. Sire dist ele ie port noueles qui doiuent
brings so fast Lord says she I carry news which ought
plaire a tous les cheualiers qui voelent conquerre los &
please to all the knights who wish to-win praise and
pris. Queles sont fait il. Madame la roine mande a tous
prize Which are-they says he My-lady the queen sends-word to all
les cheualiers que au tier ior apres la feste nostre dame
the knights that on-the third day after the feast (of-)Our Lady
en septembre sera la grans assamblee du roi artu & du
in September will-be the great assembly of-the king Arthur and of-the
roi doutre les marches de galone entre leur .ij. terres. en la
king of-beyond the marches of galone between their two lands in the
plache qui est entre godorone & la maine. Laquele roine
place which is between godorone and the maine Which queen
fait il le mande issi. La feme fait ele le roi artu. Et
says he it sends-word thus The wife says she (of-)the king Arthur And
pour dieu se vous saues noueles del cheualier qui conquist
for God if you know news of-the knight who conquered
la dolerouse garde si le me dites. Car madame li mande
the dolorous guard so it to-me tell For my-lady to-him sends-word
que sil atent iamais a auoir sacointance ne sa compaignie
that if-he expects ever-more to have her-acquaintance or her company

que il i soit. Car moult le verroit volentiers. Lors
that he there be For much him would-see-she willingly Then
fu li cheualiers tous esbahis si ne dist mot dune grant
was the knight all amazed so not said-he word for-a great
pieche. & chele li prie toute vois sil seit nule nouele
while and that-one him begs all ways if-he knows any news
del cheualier que il li die. & il a trop grant paor
of-the knight that he to-her tell and he has very great fear
quele nel connoisse. si se tient enbrons & si li dist.
that-she him know so himself holds bowed and so to-her says

Damoisele par la rien que vous plus ames conoissies vous
Damsel by the thing that you most love know you
le cheualier. & ele dist que nenil. & ie vous di fait il que
the knight and she says that no and I to-you say says he that
ie gui anuit la ou il iut. & bien sache madame que il a
I lay tonight there where he lay and well may-know my-lady that he at
chele assamblee sera sil nest mors entre .ij. Car nus autres
that assembly will-be if-he not-is dead between two For any other
essoines nel retenroit. Diex fait ele com ore sui garie.
excuse not-him would-hold-back God says she how now am-I healed
Atant sen part & li cheualiers entre en son chemin
Thereupon herself-thence parts-she and the knight enters on his road
& erra toute la semaine iuscal samedi apres eure de prime.
and traveled all the week until-the Saturday after hour of prime

Lors encontra vne grant route de gent. si fu en vne
Then met-he a great company of people so was-he in a
grant forest espese. & en chele route auoit asses gent a
great forest thick and in that company were many people on
pie & a cheual. Et entre tous les autres auoit .j. grant
foot and on horse And among all the others was a great
cheualier a cheual & auoit a la coe de son palefroi
knight on horse and had at the tail of his palfrey

atachie .j. homme par le col a vne delie corde. li hons
tied a man by the neck with a thin cord the man
estoit en chemise & en braies tous descaus si auoit les iex
was in shirt and in breeches all unshod so had the eyes
bendes & les mains lijes deriere le dos. & chou estoit .j.
bandaged and the hands tied behind the back and this was one
des plus biax hommes que on peust trouer. Issi lenmenoit
of-the most fair men that one could find Thus him-led
li grans cheualiers. Et si li auoit au col pendu vne
the great knight And so to-him had at-the neck hung a
teste de feme par les treches. Li blans cheualiers voit
head of woman by the tresses The white knight sees
chelui qui moult est de grant biaute si lareste & li
him who very is of great beauty so him-stops and of-him
demande qui il est. sire fait il vns cheualiers madame sui.
asks who he is lord says he a knight (of-)my-lady am-I
si me heient ceste gent & me mainent a ma mort issi
so me hate these people and me lead to my death thus
honteusement comme vous vees. Car il ne mosent ochire
shamefully as you see For they not me-dare kill
sen repost non. & li blans cheualiers li demande de
except in-secret not and the white knight of-him asks on
par laquele roine il se claime. & il dist de par
behalf-of which queen he himself claims and he says on behalf-of
chele de bertaigne. Lors dist li blans cheualiers. chertes len
that-one of britain Then says the white knight certainly one
ne deust mie mener si honteusement cheualier com vous
not ought at-all lead so shamefully knight as you
le menes. Si doit fait li grans cheualiers qui le traine
him lead So ought-one says the great knight who him drags
puis quil est traitres & desloiaus. Car puis a il cheualerie
since that-he is traitor and disloyal For since has he chivalry

renoie. & chestui fait li blans cheualiers porcoi le traines
renounced and this-one says the white knight wherefore him drag
vous issi. que vous a il forfait. Il ma tant forfait que
you thus what to-you has he misdone He me-has so-much misdone that
ie lai repris de traison si en ferai la iustice selonc
I him-have accused of treason so thereof shall-I-do the justice according-to
che quil a forfait. & li blans cheualiers li dist.
what that-he has misdone and the white knight to-him says
Biaus sire il nafiert mie a cheualier quil destruie ensi
Fair lord it not-befits at-all to knight that-he destroy thus
.j. cheualier par soi. Mais sil est vostre traitres si len
a knight by himself But if-he is your traitor so him-thereof
esproues bien & en vne cort & lors en pores auoir
prove well and in a court and then thereof can-you have
ueniance a vostre honor. Ie ne li ferai ia esprouer fait
vengeance to your honor I not to-him shall-make ever prove says
il en autre cort que en la moie car ie lai tout ataint. &
he in other court than in the mine for I him-have all convicted and
de quoi fait li blans cheualiers. de ma feme fait il dont
of what says the white knight of my wife says he wherewith
il me hounisoit. Et encore en a il la teste pendue au
he me shamed And still thereof has he the head hung at-the
col a tout les treches. & li cheualier qui estoit lies
neck with all the tresses and the knight who was bound
respont & iure moult durement. que onques a nul ior nel
answers and swears very hard that ever on any day not-it
pensa. que il sa honte li porcachast. ha sire fait le blanc
thought-he that he his shame to-him sought ah lord says the white
cheualier puis quil noie le forfait si durement. vous naues
knight since that-he denies the misdeed so hard you not-have
droit en li destruire. Et ie vous lo que por dieu & por
right in him to-destroy And I you counsel that for God and for

vostre honor le laissies aler atant. & por moi qui onques
your honor him let go thereupon and for me who ever
mais ne vous priai de rien. Et sil vous a de rien forfait
more not you prayed of anything And if-he you has in anything misdone
si enqueres la iustice issi com ie vous ai dit. & chil dit
so seek the justice so as I to-you have said and that-one says
& iure que ia en auant nen ira querre iustice puis
and swears that ever in forward not-thereof will-go-he to-seek justice since
quil le tient. par foi fait li blans cheualiers vous mesferes
that-he him holds by faith says the white knight you will-misdo
trop de li desfaire puis quil est cheualiers madame la
too-much of him to-undo since that-he is knight (of-)my-lady the
roine. & il dist que por la roine nen laira il nient
queen and he says that for the queen not-thereof will-leave he anything
quil nel ochie. non fait li blans cheualier or sachies
that-he not-him kill not says the white knight now know
quil ni moura mais hui par vous. Car ie le preng
that-he not-there will-die more today by you For I him take
enuers tous cheus que ie voi chi a conduire & a garantir.
against all those whom I see here to conduct and to protect
Atant li ront les bendes dentor les iex. & ront
Thereupon to-him breaks-he the bands from-around the eyes and breaks
la corde dont il estoit lijes par le col. & les gens au
the cord wherewith he was tied by the neck and the people of-the
grant cheualier saillent as ars & as saietes & font
great knight leap to-the bows and to-the arrows and make
samblant que il le voeillent ochire. & il dist al grant
semblance that they him wish to-kill and he says to-the great
cheualier. biax sire traies vos gens arriere. Car sil fierent
knight fair lord draw your people back For if-they strike
ne moi ne mon cheual Ie vous ochirai tous premiers &
either me or my horse I you shall-kill all first and

euls apres. & cil estoient desarme le plus daus. lors a
them after and those were disarmed the most of-them then has
li cheualiers lachie son hiaume. & arme ses mains. &
the knight laced his helm and armed his hands and
prinst son glaiue & son escu. & de tex i ot qui a
took his lance and his shield and of such there were who at
lui traisent. non mie por lui ochire mais por lor signor
him shot not at-all for him to-kill but for their lord
qui lor commandoit. Et il failloient a li tout de gre.
who them commanded And they missed at him all of will
Car moult lor pesoit de la mort au cheualier. & il
For much to-them weighed of the death of-the knight and he
saperchoit bien quil nont talent de li ochire si ne lor
perceives well that-they not-have desire of him killing so not to-them
vaut faire nul mal. Et il laisse coure au signor dels
wished-he to-do any harm And he lets run at-the lord of-them
qui lor commande a traire sel fiert de larestuel del
who them commands to shoot so-him strikes with the-butt of-the
glaiue en mi le ventre si durement quil le porte a terre
lance in middle the belly so hard that-he him bears to ground
tout estendu. & par .j. poi quil ne la tout debrisie.
all stretched and by a little that-he not him-has all broken
& lors senfuient tout li autre. & il a prins le cheual
and then flee all the others and he has taken the horse
dont il a chelui abatu si le maine au cheualier
from-which he has that-one struck-down so it leads to-the knight
quil auoit deslije & dist. Or montes sire cheualiers si
whom-he had unbound and says Now mount lord knight so
vous en uendres auoec moi. Li cheualier monte & vient
yourself thence will-come with me The knight mounts and comes
a lautre cheualier si li dist. Sire ie sui moult pres de
to the-other knight so to-him says Lord I am very near of

ma sauuete. Car pres de chi a .j. rechet ou ie nauroie
my safety For near of here is a refuge where I not-would-have
garde se iou i estoie. & la iroie ie se vous volies.
fear if I there were and there would-go I if you wished
Che voeil moult fait li cheualiers & chil dist sire de
This wish-I much says the knight and that-one says lord on
par qui merchierai ie madame la roine de chou que
behalf-of whom shall-thank I my-lady the queen for this that
vous maues garanti. Car ie ne sai comment vous aues
you me-have protected For I not know how you have
non. Mon escu li deuises fait il. Car mon non ne poes
name My shield to-her describe says he For my name not can
vous sauoir. & bien li dites que par li estes deliures.
you know and well to-her say that by her are-you delivered
Li cheualiers sen vait a la roine & li merchie del
The knight himself-thence goes to the queen and her thanks for-the
cheualier. si li deuise son escu. & ele seit bien tantost
knight so to-her describes his shield and she knows well at-once
que chestoit chil qui la dolerouse garde auoit conquise si
that it-was that-one who the dolorous guard had conquered so
en fist grant ioie. & li cheualiers erra toute se voie
thereof made-she great joy and the knight traveled all his way
tant quil auespri moult durement. & il estoit samedis ce
until that-it grew-evening very hard and it was Saturday this
dist li contes. si passe par deuant vnes bertesques si oi
says the tale so passes-he by before some bartizans so heard
canter vne damoisele moult haut & moult cler Et quant
sing a damsel very high and very clear And when
il fu outre si commenca a penser moult durement &
he was beyond so began to think very hard and
ses cheuax le porta la ou il volt. & la terre seoit en
his horse him carried there where it wished and the land sat in

mares si estoit sechie. Car li estes auoit este moult grans
marshes so was dried For the summer had been very great
& moult caus & estoit encore. Car che fu le semaine
and very hot and was still For this was the week
de la mi aoust. si furent grans & parfondes les creueures.
of the mid August so were great and deep the cracks
& li cheuax ne fu mie fres car il ot ale grant iornee
and the horse not was at-all fresh for it had gone great day's-journey
si sencombra des pies deuant & cai en vnes creuaches
so stumbled-it of-the feet front and fell into some crevices
moult grans. li cheualiers iut desous moult longement.
very great the knight lay beneath very long
Tant que si escuier len releuerent. & lors se senti
Until that his squires him-thence raised-again and then himself felt-he
moult blechies & se dolut trop & remonta a trop
very hurt and himself grieved very-much and remounted with very
grant paine. & ses archons deriere estoit tous brisies &
great pain and his saddlebows behind were all broken and
li escus fendus en .iij. pieches. lors a tant cheuauchie
the shield split in three pieces then has-he so-far ridden
quil est venus a vne chementiere & voit .j. homme de
that-he is come to a cemetery and sees a man of
religion a ienols deuant la crois. & il le salue & il lui.
religion on knees before the cross and he him greets and he him
Biax sire fait .j. des escuiers au boin homme.
Fair lord says one of-the squires to-the good man
chis cheualiers est moult blechies. & por sainte charite
this knight is very hurt and for holy charity
enseignies moi ou il porroit anuit mais auoir ostel. Car
show me where he could tonight more have lodging For
li cheuauchiers li grieue moult. Iel vous enseignerai fait
the riding to-him grieves much I-it to-you shall-show says

li boins hons de par dieu. Or me sieues. lors sen
the good man on behalf-of God Now me follow then himself-thence
va deuant & il le sieuent. Lors demande au cheualier
goes-he before and they him follow Then asks-he to-the knight
comment il auoit este blechies. & il li conte. Sire fait
how he had been hurt and he to-him tells Lord says
li boins hons vn conseil vous donroie ie moult bon se
the good man a counsel to-you would-give I very good if
vous men volies croire & il dist que moult volentiers
you me-thereof wished to-believe and he says that very willingly
len querra. Ie vous lo fait il & vous casti
him-thereof will-be-believe I you counsel says he and you admonish
que iamais puis noune en samedi ne cheuauchies se por
that ever-more after nones on Saturday not ride except for
vostre affaire nest. & sachies que mains vous en vendra
your affair not-be and know that less to-you thereof will-come
de maus & plus de biens. Et il li creante que iamais
of ills and more of goods And he to-him promises that ever-more
ne li auenra quil puisse. Et vous sire questes vous
not to-him will-befall that-he may And you lord what-are you
venus querre la ou nous vous trouames a teil eure.
come to-seek there where we you found at such hour
Sire fait il mes peires & ma meire i gisent. Car chest
Lord says he my father and my mother there lie For it-is
une chimentiere. & iou i vois chascun ior por me
a cemetery and I there go each day for my
patrenostre dire & che que diex ma enseignie de bien.
paternoster to-say and this that God me-has taught of good
& proier por les ames dels. Atant sont venu a vne
and to-pray for the souls of-them Thereupon are-they come to a
maison de relegion dont chis preudons estoit. si i furent
house of religion whereof this worthy-man was so there were-they

a grant ioie recheu. & demoura laiens li cheualiers .x.
with great joy received and stayed in-there the knight ten
Iors entiers par la proiere des freres. si fu baignies &
Days whole by the prayer of-the brothers so was-he bathed and
medichines car moult estoit blechies durement.
doctored for very was-he hurt hard
Al onzime ior sen parti & laisse laiens lescu
On-the eleventh day himself-thence parted-he and leaves in-there the-shield
as .iij. bendes car il ne voloit estre conneus. si enporta
with-the three bands for he not wished to-be known so carried-off
.j. que si escuier auoient fait faire a vne chitei pres
one which his squires had had made at a city near
del hermitage ou il auoit este malades. chis escus estoit
of-the hermitage where he had been sick this shield was
de sinople a vne bende blance de bellic. issi oirre grant
of green with a band white of bend thus travels great
pieche li cheualiers. Tant que .j. ior auint quil encontra vn
while the knight Until that one day befell that-he met a
cheualier arme. si li demande li cheualiers qui il estoit.
knight armed so of-him asks the knight who he was
vns cheualiers sui fait il au rei artu. au roi artu; fait
a knight am-I says he of-the king Arthur of-the king Arthur says
il. si poes bien dire que vous estes au plus fel roi del
he so can-you well say that you are of-the most cruel king of-the
monde. porcoi fait li cheualiers qui auoit este malades. por
world wherefore says the knight who had been sick for
che fait il que sa maison est plaine de fol orguel. porquoi
this says he that his house is full of mad pride wherefore
le dites vous fait il. Ia auint fait li autres cuns cheualiers
it say you says he Once befell says the other that-a knight
naures i ala awan. Si li iura vns cheualiers quil le
wounded there went this-year So to-him swore a knight that-he him

vengeroit de tous chels qui diroient quil ameroient miex
would-avenge on all those who would-say that-they would-love better
chelui qui che li auoit fait que lui. Et sil auoit la proece
him who this to-him had done than him And if-he had the prowess
monsignor & a tex .iiij. si i faudroit il bien. porcoi fait
(of-)my-lord and of such four so there would-fail he well wherefore says
li autres. Ia nestes vous mie de cheus qui miex aiment le
the other Ever not-are you at-all of those who better love the
naure que lautre. Chertes fait il si sui. voire fait li autres
wounded than the-other Certainly says he so am-I truly says the other
che doit vous peser. porcoi fait il. estes vous li cheualiers
this ought you weigh wherefore says he are you the knight
qui che emprist. Ien ferai fait il mon pooir. Mais toute
who this undertook I-thereof shall-do says he my power But all
voies anchois ca vous me conuiegne meller vous pri que
ways before that you me behooves fight you beg-I that
vous dijes que vous ames miex le naure que cheli qui le
you say that you love better the wounded than him who him
naura. Dont mentiroie ie fait chil que ia diex ne mait
wounded Then would-lie I says that-one that ever God not me-may-help
quant ie ia en mentirai. par foi fait il dont me couendra
when I ever thereof shall-lie by faith says he then me will-behoove
il a vous combatre. Et ie ne quier miex fait li autres.
it with you to-fight And I not seek better says the other
Lors sentresloignent ambedui. & mueuent de si tres
Then withdraw-each-other both and move with so very
grant aleure com li cheual lor porent courre. si sentrefierent
great pace as the horses them could run so strike-each-other
sor les escus si durement quil ni a si fort que
on the shields so hard that-there not-there is so strong that
lesquine ne soit ploie desor larchon. Li cheualiers qui
the-spine not be bent upon the-saddlebow The knight who

ot este malades le fiert si durement. que li escus ne
had been sick him strikes so hard that the shield nor
li haubers ne le garandirent. si li met parmi le cors
the hauberk not him protected so to-him puts through the body
& fer & fust. Et chil refiert lui si bien que parmi
both iron and wood And that-one strikes-back him so well that through
lescu outre li met son glaiue. Il furent fort & preu
the-shield beyond to-him puts his lance They were strong and brave
si senpaignent durement si quil sentreportent a terre. &
so thrust-each-other hard so that-they bear-each-other to ground and
au parcaior sont li glaiue brisie. li cheualiers qui malades
at-the falling are the lances broken the knight who sick
fu ne fu mie naures a mort. si sali sus car moult tient
was not was at-all wounded to death so leapt up for much holds-he
chelui a preu qui le millor colp li a doune quil
him for brave who him best blow to-him has given that-he
onques mais recheust. si sesforche moult de grant proeche
ever more received so himself-strives much of great prowess
moustrer. & vient sor chelui lespee traite. Mais chest por
to-show and comes upon him the-sword drawn But it-is for
noient. Car il est mors. que ferus estoit parmi les entrailles
nothing For he is dead for struck was-he through the entrails
del cors. Et quant chil voit quil est mors si en
of-the body And when that-one sees that-he is dead so thereof
pleure de duel. Car moult le tenoit a preu cheualier. Lors
weeps-he for grief For much him held-he for brave knight Then
essaie sil porroit cheuauchier. Mais il nel puet souffrir
tries-he if-he could ride But he not-it can endure
& neporquant montes est. si cheuauche a grant haschiee
and nevertheless mounted is-he so rides with great pain
dusques a vne forest qui pres estoit. si li font si
as-far-as to a forest which near was so for-him make his

escuier vne litiere & latornent moult richement de toutes
squires a litter and it-array very richly with all
les choses quil i couient. Et lencortinerent dun moult
the things that-it there needs And it-curtained with-a very
riche drap de soie. Car sa dame del lac len auoit
rich cloth of silk For his lady of-the lake him-thereof had
doune de moult biax. & le plus riche lit quil couenist
given of very fair and the most rich bed that-it needed
querre a cheualier. Com il orent lor litiere apparellie
seek for knight When they had their litter prepared
si couchierent lor signor dedens. & cheuauchierent lor
so laid-they their lord within and rode their
chemin tout belement. & la litiere aloit moult soef. Car
road all gently and the litter went very gently For
doi des millors ronchis quil couenist querre le portoient.
two of-the best nags that-it needed to-seek it carried
Ensi sen va li cheualiers en la litiere. Mais chi
Thus himself-thence goes the knight in the litter But here
endroit laisse li contes .j. petit a parler de lui. si retorne
in-place leaves the tale a little to speak of him so returns
a parler de monsignor Gauuain. qui le quiert.
to speak of my-lord Gawain who him seeks

Gawain's Quest

VIII

Gawain searches fifteen days without news. He meets the damsel who reproaches him for leaving a damsel in prison, sees the litter pass but does not know its knight, and hears of a knight killed for refusing to say he loved the wounded man more. He lodges with his companion Helys and watches the Lady of Nohaut's company pass; when the King of the Hundred Knights' men try to take her, Gawain and Helys part the fight and lead her to the king, who lets her go. Lancelot, in the litter, rides to help her, and at Orkenise takes a red shield.

Chi dist li contes que puis que mesire Gauuain fu
Here says the tale that since that my-lord Gawain was
entres en la queste del cheualier qui la dolerouse garde
entered on the quest of-the knight who the dolorous guard
ot conquis. si erra .xv. Iors tous entiers que onques
had conquered so traveled-he fifteen Days all whole that ever
noueles nen aprist. Tant que .j. Ior auint quil encontra
news not-thereof learned-he Until that one Day befell that-he met
vne damoisele sor .j. palefroi si la saluee. & ele lui.
a damsel on a palfrey so her-has greeted and she him
Damoisele fait il saues vous nule nouele del cheualier qui
Damsel says he know you any news of-the knight who
conquist la dolerouse garde. Ha! fait ele Ie sai bien que
conquered the dolorous guard Ah says she I know well that
tu es Gauuain li nies le roi artu. qui laissases la
thou art Gawain the nephew (of-)the king Arthur who leftest the
damoisele en prison. Chertes damoisele fait il che poise
damsel in prison Certainly damsel says he this grieves
moi. Mais damoisele por dieu dites moi. se vous saues
me But damsel for God tell me if you know
rien de che que ie quier. Naie fait ele. Mais on le vous
anything of this that I seek No says she But one it to-you

diroit bien en la dolerouse garde. Dires vous plus fait
would-say well in the dolorous guard Will-say you more says
il. naie fait ele. Il sen part & ele autresi. & il
he no says she He himself-thence parts and she likewise and he
oirre iusca lissue dune forest. & la pucele qui a lui auoit
travels up-to the-exit of-a forest and the maiden who to him had
parle. estoit chele qui daarainement auoit este enuoie al
spoken was that-one who lately had been sent to-the
cheualier que mesire Gauuain querroit de par sa dame
knight whom my-lord Gawain sought on behalf-of her lady
del lac. Et ele meismes le querroit. car lautre pucele li
of-the lake And she herself him sought for the-other maiden her
enuoioit. Quant il fu hors de la forest si voit deuant li
sent When he was out of the forest so sees before him
en vne praerie pauellons tendus moult biax. si a bien
in a meadow pavilions pitched very fair so is-there well
herbergerie a .ijc. cheualiers. & il esgarde a destre si
lodging for two-hundred knights and he looks to right so
voit venir hors de la forest les .ij. palefrois qui portoient
sees come out of the forest the two palfreys which carried
le blanc cheualier en la litiere. & la voie par ou il
the white knight in the litter and the way by where they
vienent assamble a la soie. Mesire Gauuain atent la litiere
come joins to the his My-lord Gawain awaits the litter
si li plaist moult. Car onques mais ne vit si riche. lors
so to-him pleases-it much For ever more not saw-he so rich then
demande as valles que chou est. Sire font il .j. cheualier
asks-he to-the youths what this is Lord say they a knight
naure. & li cheualier naures fait hauchier le drap. &
wounded and the knight wounded makes raise the cloth and
demande a monsignor Gauuain qui il est. Et il dist quil
asks to my-lord Gawain who he is And he says that-he

est vns cheualiers de la maison le roi artu. Et quant il
is a knight of the house (of-)the king Arthur And when he
loit si a paor quil ne le connoisse si se recueure.
it-hears so has-he fear that-he — him know so himself covers-again
& mesire Gauuain li demande qui il est. & il dist quil
and my-lord Gawain of-him asks who he is and he says that-he
est vns cheualiers qui vait en vn sien affaire. li cheualiers
is a knight who goes on a his affair the knight
sen vait outre. & mesire Gauuain atent encore a
himself-thence goes beyond and my-lord Gawain waits still at
lentree de la forest por sauoir qui sont li pauillon. &
the-entry of the forest for to-know whose are the pavilions and
il dient au roi des .C. cheualiers qui vait a chele
they say of-the king of-the hundred knights who goes to that
assamblee. De quel part fait mesire Gauuain sera il. deuers
assembly On what part says my-lord Gawain will-be he toward
le roi doutre les marches font il. & vous qui estes. Ie sui
the king of-beyond the marches say they and you who are I am
.j. cheualiers qui vois en mon affaire. Chis rois des .C.
a knight who go on my affair This king of-the hundred
cheualiers estoit issi appeles. por ce quil ne cheuauchoit
knights was thus called for this that-he not rode
nule fois hors de sa terre quil ne menast .C. cheualiers.
any time out of his land that-he not led hundred knights
& quant il voloit il en auoit moult plus. Car il estoit
and when he wished he thereof had many more For he was
riches & poestis & cousins galahot le fil a la bele
rich and powerful and cousin (of-)Galehaut the son of the fair
Iaiande. si estoit sires de la terre destrangor qui marchist
Giantess so was lord of the land of-estrangor which borders
au roialme de norgales. & a le duchee de cambenync.
to-the kingdom of north-wales and to the duchy of cambenic

Mesire Gauuain se part des .ij. cheualiers si les
My-lord Gawain himself parts from-the two knights so them
comande a dieu. Et lors esgarde si voit escuiers qui
commends to God And then looks-he so sees squires who
aportoient hors de la forest .j. cheualier mort. Il guenchist
brought out of the forest a knight dead He turns
chele part si lor demande qui lochist. & il dient que
that way so of-them asks who him-killed and they say that
vns cheualiers lochist iuhui qui porte vn escu de sinople
a knight him-killed today who bears a shield of green
a vne bende blanche. & li dient que che fu por che
with a band white and to-him say that this was for this
quil ne voloit dire quil amast miex .j. cheualier naures
that-he not wished to-say that-he loved better a knight wounded
que chelui qui naure lauoit. & il meismes font il est
than him who wounded him-had and he himself say they is
moult naures. lors sapense mesire Gauuain que chou est
very wounded then himself-bethinks my-lord Gawain that this is
li cheualiers de la litiere. & quide que che soit chil qui
the knight of the litter and thinks that this be that-one who
desferra a camalot le cheualier. lors guenchist apres par
unfastened at camelot the knight then turns-he after by
deuant les paueillons au roi des .C. cheualiers. Chil
before the pavilions of-the king of-the hundred knights Those
des paueillons quidierent que il venist cheualerie querre.
of-the pavilions thought that he came chivalry to-seek
si li enuoierent .j. cheualier arme. & il dist quil ne
so to-him sent a knight armed and he says that-he not
venoit mie por che. Car il auoit el a faire. Atant passe
came at-all for this For he had else to do Thereupon passes-he
outre. & quant il a vne piece ale si voit .j. paueillon tout
beyond and when he has a while gone so sees a pavilion all

seul moult bel. & voit asses lanches apoies environ. Il
alone very fair and sees many lances leaned around He
vient al paueillon si troeue valles asses dehors. & escus
comes to-the pavilion so finds youths many outside and shields
iusca .v. auoit apoie au paueillon lespies deseure. Lors
up-to five were leaned at-the pavilion the-points above Then
demande as valles qui li paueillons est. Sire font il
asks-he to-the youths whose the pavilion is Lord say they
a .j. cheualier qui chaiens gist. Il deschent & entre el
of a knight who in-here lies He dismounts and enters into-the
paueillon. Et voit en .ij. couches gesier .iiij. cheualiers. Et
pavilion And sees in two couches lie four knights And
en la tierche qui plus est grans gist vns autres tous seus;
in the third which more is great lies an other all alone
sor vne couce painte a or. Et fu couers dun couertor
on a couch painted with gold And was covered with-a coverlet
dermines. Il demande qui estes vous sire cheualier qui la
of-ermines He asks who are you lord knight who there
gisies. & chil se dreche & vous qui estes fait il qui
lie and that-one himself raises and you who are says he who
le demandes. lors connut mesire Gauuain que chou estoit
it ask then knew my-lord Gawain that this was
helys. si saut sus & dist. vous soies li bien venus. lors
Helys so leaps up and says you be the well come then
se fisent moult grant ioie comme compaignon qui
themselves made-they very great joy as companions who
sentramoient. Et ou ales vous issi fait helys. Ie sieuoie
loved-each-other And where go you thus says Helys I followed
fait il vne litiere qui par chi passa ore. Il est hui mais
says he a litter which by here passed now It is today more
trop tart. herbergier vous couient fait helis. & il lotrie. En
too late lodge you behooves says Helys and he it-grants In

che quil parloient issi. & li escuier helys si vindrent
this that-they spoke thus and the squires (of-)Helys so came
dehors. Sire font il vous ne vees mie merueilles. tous li
outside Lord say they you not see at-all marvels all the
mondes va par chest chemin. si fais pueples ne fu onques
world goes by this road so great people not was ever
mais veus. Lors ont desarme monsignor Gauuain. sire
more seen Then have-they disarmed my-lord Gawain lord
fait helys car alons veoir ches cheualiers qui passent & en
says Helys now let-us-go see these knights who pass and in
tel maniere quil ne vous voient. Comment sera ce fait
such manner that-they not you see How will-be this says
mesire Gauuain. Nostre escuier fait helis nous feront vne
my-lord Gawain Our squires says Helys for-us will-make a
foillie si serons dedens. & mesire Gauuain dist que chou
bower so shall-we-be within and my-lord Gawain says that this
est boins. Li escuier font la foeillie & il entrent ens &
is good The squires make the bower and they enter in and
voient tous cheus qui entrent & passent par le chemin.
see all those who enter and pass by the road
Si com il esgardoient issi si voient venir .ij. routes de
So as they looked thus so see-they come two companies of
cheualiers tous armes. si i a .x. cheualier en chascune
knights all armed so there are ten knights in each
route. Et en milieu cheuauchent .iiij. vallet qui tienent .j.
company And in middle ride four youths who hold a
paile a .iiij. verges. & desous chel paille cheuaucha vne
canopy on four rods and beneath that canopy rode a
dame moult cointement achesmee de palefroi & dautre ator.
lady very elegantly adorned of palfrey and of-other attire
Ele fu vestue dun samit vermeil cote & mantel a pene
She was clad in-a samite red coat and mantle with fur

dermine. si fu toute deslije. & ele estoit de merueilleuse
of-ermine so was all unbound and she was of marvelous
biaute. Lors dist helys a monsignor Gauuain. vees chi vne
beauty Then says Helys to my-lord Gawain see here one
des plus beles femes que ie onques mais veisse Ie ne sai
of-the most fair women that I ever more saw I not know
se ele est dame ou pucele. Mais por voir fait il moult
if she is lady or maiden But for truth says he very
est bele. Apres voient venir apres els .xx. des cheualiers
is-she fair After see-they come after them twenty of-the knights
au roi des .C. cheualiers. & il dient a cheus qui
of-the king of-the hundred knights and they say to those who
la mainent. signor li rois vous mande que vous li
her lead lords the king to-you sends-word that you to-him
menes chele dame veoir. Et il dient que non feront. Si
lead that lady to-see And they say that not will-they Yes
feres font li autre ou nous nous mellerons a vous.
will-you say the others or we ourselves shall-fight with you
Li cheualier a la dame oient que autrement ne puet
The knights of the lady hear that otherwise not can-it
estre. Il guenchissent li .xx. as .xx. Tex i ot
be They wheel the twenty against-the twenty Such there were
qui sentrabatirent. & tex i ot qui briserent lor lanches
who struck-down-each-other and such there were who broke their lances
sans caoir. Il traient les espees si commenchent la mellee
without falling They draw the swords so begin the melee
a pie & a cheual. & mesire Gauuain & helys furent
on foot and on horse and my-lord Gawain and Helys were
issu de la foeillie por els esgarder. Et mesire Gauuain
gone-out from the bower for them to-watch And my-lord Gawain
dist helys departons les. Car mesire li rois i a de ses
says Helys let-us-part them For my-lord the king there has of his

millors cheualiers. & chil a la dame espoir ne seiuent mie
best knights and those of the lady perhaps not know at-all
tant darmes. Lors vienent a els si les departent & lor
so-much of-arms Then come-they to them so them part and to-them
dient quil laissent la mellee. & il menront la dame au
say that-they leave the melee and they will-lead the lady to-the
roi & il le laissent. Et mesire Gauuain & helys montent
king and they it leave And my-lord Gawain and Helys mount
sor .ij. cheuax si mainent la dame au roi. & il vient hors
on two horses so lead the lady to-the king and he comes out
del paueillon encontre els si le voit moult bele & moult
of-the pavilion to-meet them so her sees very fair and very
li samble haute dame. Sire fait mesire Gauuain. nous
to-him seems high lady Lord says my-lord Gawain we
vous auons amene cheste dame por veoir. si le remenrons.
to-you have brought this lady for to-see so her shall-lead-back-we
Dame fait li rois dites moi auant qui vous estes. & ele
Lady says the king tell me first who you are and she
dist quele est la dame de nohaut. Chertes fait il bien
says that-she is the lady of nohaut Certainly says he well
le poes estre. & se iel seusse ie meismes fuisse ales
it can-you be and if I-it had-known I myself would-have gone
pres vous. Lors en ramainent helys & mesire Gauuain la
near you Then thence lead-back Helys and my-lord Gawain the
dame iusques outre le paueillon & ele se part dax.
lady as-far-as beyond the pavilion and she herself parts from-them
atant se remainent il dui. & ele oirre son chemin
thereupon themselves remain they two and she travels her road
vers lassamblee. Car a chel tans i aloient les dames
toward the-assembly For at that time there went the ladies
qui de pris estoient. Mais chi endroit laist li contes .j.
who of prize were But here in-place leaves the tale a

petit a parler de li & de monsignor Gauuain & retorne
little to speak of her and of my-lord Gawain and returns
a parler del blanc cheualier qui sen va en la litiere.
to speak of-the white knight who himself-thence goes in the litter
Quant li cheualiers de la litiere se fu partis de
When the knight of the litter himself was parted from
monsignor Gauuain si cheuaucha iusca vne moult bele
my-lord Gawain so rode-he up-to a very fair
lande qui nestoit mie plus de .iij. lieues loig diluec. En
heath which not-was at-all more than three leagues far thence In
chele lande sordoit vne moult bele fontaine. desous vn des
that heath rose a very fair spring beneath one of-the
grignors sagremors que il ot onques veu. lors deschendi
greatest sycamores that he had ever seen then dismounted
li cheualiers si dormi .j. petit & reposa. & diluec enuoia
the knight so slept a little and rested and thence sent
.ij. escuiers a vne chite por son ostel atorner. Quant il ot
two squires to a city for his lodging to-prepare When he had
dormi si trait vers le vespre & lors remonta & tantost
slept so it-drew toward the evening and then remounted-he and at-once
passa par deuant lui vns escuiers sor .j. ronchi les grans
passed by before him a squire on a nag the great
galos. Li cheualiers ot la noise. si soslieue le paile &
gallops The knight heard the noise so lifts the canopy and
demande a lescuier ou il vait a tel aleure. Ie quier fait il
asks to the-squire where he goes at such pace I seek says he
aide. Car li rois des .C. cheualiers a chi arestee la dame
aid For the king of-the hundred knights has here stopped the lady
de nohaut. Tantost fait li cheualiers retorner la litiere &
of nohaut At-once makes the knight turn the litter and
dist que il li voldra aidier. & com il a vne pieche ale si
says that he her will-wish to-help and when he has a while gone so

lencontre. Et ele demande a ses escuiers qui est en chele
her-meets And she asks to his squires who is in that
litiere. Dame font il chest vns cheualiers naures qui auoit
litter Lady say they it-is a knight wounded who had
oi dire que vous esties arestee si vous venoit aidier. Lors
heard say that you were stopped so you came to-help Then
descueure ele meismes la litiere. & il senuolepe moult
uncovers she herself the litter and he himself-wraps much
que ele nel connoisse. Sire fait ele venies me vous aidier.
that she not-him know Lord says she came me you to-help
Dame fait il oil. La vostre merchi fait ele quant vous aidier
Lady says he yes The your mercy says she when you to-help
me venies. Dont remandres vous o moi. Dame fait il non
me came Then will-remain you with me Lady says he not
ferai. Car vous ires plus tost que ie ne feroie qui sui
shall-I-do For you will-go more fast than I — would-do who am
deshaities. La dame sen part atant sans le cheualier
unwell The lady herself-thence parts thereupon without the knight
connoistre. & la litiere va moult soef tant que de bas
knowing and the litter goes very gently until that at low
vespre est venus a la chite qui auoit non orkenise. en
evening is-he come to the city which had name orkenise in
chele chite prist li cheualiers vn escu vermeil & le sien
that city took the knight a shield red and the his
i laissa. Car il ne vaut estre conneus a lassamblee. Ne
there left For he not wished to-be known at the-assembly Nor
diluec nauoit que vne petite iornee. La nuit li furent
thence not-was-it but a little day's-journey The night to-him were
ses plaies moult bien regardees. Car vns viex cheualiers les
his wounds very well looked-at For an old knight them
regarda qui moult en sauoit. Et li iors de lassamblee
looked-at who much thereof knew And the day of the-assembly

ne deuoit estre deuant le .Vime. iour. Si demoura puis
not was-to be before the fifth day So stayed-he then
en la vile par le conseil au cheualier. & moult li
in the town by the counsel of-the knight and much to-him
fu sa plaie alegie. Au quint ior mut li cheualiers &
was his wound eased On-the fifth day moved the knight and
ala toute vois en la litiere quil vint a godosaire de
went all ways in the litter so-that-he came to godosaire at
bas vespre. Et ia estoit li pais si herbergies que on
low evening And already was the country so lodged that one
ni pooit trouer ostel. Mais desous auoit vne maison
not-there could find lodging But below was a house
de rendus ou on le herberga por che que malades
of lay-brothers where one him lodged for this that sick
estoit. Si fu herbergies en vne cambre bele & aisie.
he-was So was-he lodged in a chamber fair and comfortable
Al matin oi li cheualiers messe. & tantost se fist
At-the morning heard the knight mass and at-once himself made
armer. Et li rois artus estoit venus moult esforchiement.
arm And the king Arthur was come very strongly
si ne se pot el castel herbergier. ains se loia
so not himself could-he in-the castle lodge rather himself lodged
dehors. Et fait crier au matin que nus de son ostel ne
outside And makes cry at-the morning that any of his house nor
de chels qui o lui estoient venu. ne portast le ior armes.
of those who with him were come not bore the day arms

The First Assembly

IX

At the assembly Arthur, forbidding his household to bear arms, keeps from the field, and the queen watches from the walls. The knight in red arms jousts better than anyone, unhorses knights, is wounded by the King of the Hundred Knights, and faints. The queen comes to see him; he says he is well, then faints again and is carried to his lodging. Gawain learns from the physician that the knight has an old wound as well as a new one, but cannot make him speak, and in the night Lancelot leaves with his physician. Next morning Arthur arms and routs the other side; the two kings ask for a second assembly, which Gawain sets for the Monday before Advent. Gawain meets a damsel who loves the red knight and will learn his name, and the Lady of Nohaut finds Lancelot and takes him to her castle.

De che furent moult dolant maint boin cheualier de son
Of this were very sorrowful many good knight of his
ostel. Mais dautres i estoient qui mie nestoient venu
house But of-others there were who at-all not-were come
por lui ne en son ost. Mais li .j. por pris conquerre &
for him nor in his host But the ones for prize to-win and
li autre pour gaaignier. & chil sarmerent des le matin
the others for to-gain and those themselves-armed from the morning
& alerent en la plache. Et li rois doutre les marches fu
and went into the place And the king of-beyond the marches was
issus des tentes por assaillir. Mais quant il vit que li
gone-out from-the tents for to-assail But when he saw that the
rois ne portoit armes si se retraist ariere. Et pluseur des
king not bore arms so himself drew back And several of-the
legiers bachelers de sost alerent iouster a chels qui en la
light bachelors of his-host went to-joust with those who in the
plache les atendoient. si commenchent le tornoi moult bon.
place them awaited so begin the tourney very good

Car deuers le roi artu en auoit moult de preudommes
For on-the-side-of the king Arthur thereof was very-many of worthy-men
qui ne sestoient mie fait veoir por auoir loisir de tornoier.
who not themselves-were at-all made see for to-have leisure to tourney
Mesire Gauuain i fu & helys li blois & li bons &
My-lord Gawain there was and Helys the blond and the good and
li biax ses freires. gales li gais. & thors li fiex ares. &
the fair his brother Gales the gay and Tor the son (of-)Ares and
maint autre boin cheualier. Et par dela fu malaguis li rois
many other good knight And by yonder was Malaguin the king
des .C. cheualiers. & helains li dragons. & li dus galos
of-the hundred knights and Helain the dragon and the duke Galos
de yberge & maint autre qui moult estoient preu. Les
of yberge and many other who very were brave The
ioustes commenchent dune part & dautre. & la roine est
jousts begin on-one part and on-other and the queen is
entree el castel & monte sor les murs por le tornoiement
entered into-the castle and mounts on the walls for the tourneying
veoir; Et auoec li dames & damoiseles asses & cheualiers
to-see And with her ladies and damsels many and knights
& esgardent plusors cheualiers qui moult le font bien. Lors
and watch several knights who very it do well Then
vient li cheualiers de la litiere & ot au col lescu vermeil.
comes the knight of the litter and had at-the neck the-shield red
Il sen vient par deuant la roine puis se met en renc.
He himself-thence comes by before the queen then himself puts in rank
& muet a iouster a .j. cheualier. Il sentrefierent si que
and moves to joust with a knight They strike-each-other so that
toutes lor lanches volent en pieces. & sentrehurtent de cors
all their lances fly in pieces and knock-each-other with body

& de vis. Li cheualiers de la litiere remest es archons.
and with face The knight of the litter remained in-the saddlebows
& li autres vole par desus la crupe del cheual a terre.
and the other flies over above the croup of-the horse to ground
Or ai veu font li plusor faire a .j. nouel cheualiers
Now have-I seen say the most do to a new knight
vne moult bele iouste. Et li cheualiers se traist ariere
a very fair joust And the knight himself draws back
& prent vne lanche dun de ses escuiers & reuient
and takes a lance from-one of his squires and comes-back
el renc. si fiert .j. cheualier quil le porte a terre.
into-the rank so strikes a knight that-he him bears to ground
Lors commenche cheualiers a abatre. & escus a porter
Then begins-he knights to strike-down and shields to carry
de cols & lanches a brisier. & le fait si bien que tout
from necks and lances to break and it does so well that all
li cheualier sen merueillent. & dient a monsignor
the knights themselves-thereof marvel and say to my-lord
Gauuain. connoissies vous chel cheualier naie fait il. Mais il
Gawain know you that knight no says he But he
le fait si bien que ie men delai por li esgarder. Car
it does so well that I myself-thereof delight for him to-watch For
moult fait cheualerie a mon talent. Chil des murs dient
much does-he chivalry at my desire Those of-the walls say
que chis as armes vermeilles vaint tout. & li rois
that this-one with-the arms red conquers all and the king
des .C. cheualiers demande qui il est. & len dist que
of-the hundred knights asks who he is and one says that
chest vns cheualiers qui tout vaint. & si a vnes armes
it-is a knight who all conquers and so has some arms
vermeilles. Et li rois prent son escu & demande vne
red And the king takes his shield and asks a

lanche. & laisse coure tout le renc. Et cil a lescu
lance and lets run all the rank And that-one with the-shield
vermeil encontre lui. si sentrefierent si durement que toutes
red against him so strike-each-other so hard that all
lor lanches volent em pieches. Mais ne sentrebatent
their lances fly in pieces But not strike-down-each-other
mie. Moult pesa le roi de che quil ne lot abatu.
at-all Much weighed the king of this that-he not him-had struck-down
Et plus chelui de che que il not abatu le roi. Il
And more that-one of this that he not-had struck-down the king They
reprendent lanches & laissent coure lun vers lautre &
take-again lances and let run the-one toward the-other and
li cheual vont tost si sentrefierent moult durement. Li
the horses go fast so strike-each-other very hard The
cheualiers au vermeil escu fiert le roi parmi lescu &
knight with-the red shield strikes the king through the-shield and
parmi les plois del hauberc & parmi le coste. Mais il ne
through the folds of-the hauberk and through the side But he not
la mie grant blechie. Et li rois fiert lui a descouert
him-has at-all greatly hurt And the king strikes him at uncovered
sor le hauberc entre le mamele & lespaule se li met
on the hauberk between the breast and the-shoulder so to-him puts
le fer parmi. & les lances brisent & hurtent ensamble
the iron through and the lances break and knock together
de cors & de cheuax si se portent a terre. Li rois
with body and with horses so themselves bear to ground The king
resaut en pies & trait son escu auant si sache lespee.
leaps-again on feet and draws his shield forward so pulls the-sword
& au chaoir que li cheualiers fist adens si li passe
and at-the falling that the knight made face-down so to-him passes
li fers de la lance tout hors parmi lespaule. Et chele
the iron of the lance all out through the-shoulder And that

plaie li escrieue a sainier. & la vies resaine moult.
wound to-him begins to bleed and the old-one bleeds-again much
Comme il vit le roi qui ot son escu pris & lespee traite.
When he saw the king who had his shield taken and the-sword drawn
si saut sus moult iries & met son escu auant & sache
so leaps-he up very angry and puts his shield forward and pulls
lespee si sen vient vers le roi. Si sentredounent
the-sword so himself-thence comes toward the king So give-each-other-they
grans cols. Li cheualiers as armes vermeilles saigne
great blows The knight with-the arms red bleeds
moult durement. & la gent le roi poignent moult
very hard and the people (of-)the king spur very
durement & mesire Gauuain & chil qui estoient deuers
hard and my-lord Gawain and those who were on-the-side-of
le cheualier poignent apres le roi & lencauchent vne
the knight spur after the king and him-chase a
grant pieche. puis ameinent au cheualier son cheual. Et
great while then lead-they to-the knight his horse And
comme il dut monter si chiet pasmes. Il voient le sanc
when he was-to mount so falls-he fainted They see the blood
entor lui si dist chascuns mors est. Et il descendent si
around him so says each dead is-he And they dismount so
le desferrent & voient quil a .ij. plaies moult grandes.
him unfasten and see that-he has two wounds very great
Les noueles vienent au roi des .C. cheualiers quil a
The news come to-the king of-the hundred knights that-he has
le boin cheualier mort. Il en est moult dolant si iete ius
the good knight killed He thereof is very sorrowful so throws down
son escu & sa lanche. & dist quil ne portera mais hui
his shield and his lance and says that-he not will-bear more today
armes ne espoir iamais car trop est mesauenu & mesqueu
arms nor perhaps ever-more for too-much is-it mishappened and misbefallen

com il .j. tel cheualier a mort. Li cheualiers iut pasmes
when he a such knight has killed The knight lay fainted
si lont desarme & ses plaies bendees. Et la roine &
so him-have-they disarmed and his wounds bandaged And the queen and
chil & cheles qui auoec li furent virent bien que tout fu
those and those who with her were saw well that all was
remes por chel cheualier qui estoit naures. apres le vaut
remained for that knight who was wounded after him wished
ele veoir. ele monte & vient hors de la porte. Et la noise
she to-see she mounts and comes out of the gate And the noise
commenche & dist chascuns tornes vous. vees chi la roine.
begins and says each turn yourselves see here the queen
li cheualiers fu reuenus de paumison & oi che quil
the knight was come-back from swoon and heard this that-they
disoient. Il oeure les iex & voit la roine. & il sesforche
said He opens the eyes and sees the queen and he himself-strives
tant que il se lieue en son seant. biax sire fait la roine
so-much that he himself raises in his sitting fair lord says the queen
comment vous est. Dame fait il moult bien. ie nai nul
how to-you is-it Lady says he very well I not-have any
mal & en che quil disoit che li rompent les bendes &
ill and in this that-he said this to-him break the bands and
ses plaies commenchent a sainner. & il se repasme. Mors
his wounds begin to bleed and he himself faints-again Dead
est fait chascuns & la roine sen reua en lost &
is-he says each and the queen herself-thence goes-back into the-host and
li cheualier li demandent ou li cheualiers naures est a
the knights of-her ask where the knight wounded is at
ostel. & si escuier dient en vne maison de religion. Il li
lodging and his squires say in a house of religion They for-him
quierent moult boin mire & len font porter a son ostel.
seek very good physician and him-thence make carry to his lodging

Li mires cherque les plaies. & dist quil nen moura
The physician searches the wounds and says that-he not-thereof will-die
ia. Mais il desfent que nus ne viegne mais hui entor lui.
ever But he forbids that anyone not may-come more today around him
Car de cuiure na mestier. & li cheualier sen
For of annoyance not-has-he need and the knights themselves-thence
vont tout. Mais mesire Gauuain se pense quil na oie
go all But my-lord Gawain himself bethinks that-he not-has heard
nule nouele de che quil quiert. Et a ceste assamblee en
any news of this that-he seeks And at this assembly thereof
deuoit il oir enseignes. Ne ien nai rien veu ne oi.
ought he hear tokens Nor I-thereof not-have anything seen nor heard
fors tant que chis cheualiers a tout vencu. Ie deusse aler
except so-much that this knight has all conquered I ought go
plus a lui por sauoir & por oir & por enquerre sil
more to him for to-know and for to-hear and for to-inquire if-he
sauroit rien de che que ie quier. Il vient a son ostel si
would-know anything of this that I seek He comes to his lodging so
demande au mire que li en samble Ie quit fait il
asks to-the physician what to-him thereof seems I think says he
quil garira. si ont ses plaies moult saignees. ses plaies fait
that-he will-heal so have his wounds much bled his wounds says
mesire Gauuain. quantes en a il dont. Il en a .ij.
my-lord Gawain how-many thereof has he then He thereof has two
moult grans fait li mires. vne de hui & vne de deuant.
very great says the physician one of today and one of before
Quant mesire Gauuain ot parler de la viex plaie si pense
When my-lord Gawain hears speak of the old wound so thinks-he
.j. poi & dist au mire. Dites vous voir que il en a
a little and says to-the physician Say you true that he thereof has
.ij. oil fait il sans faille. ha! maistre fait il or enquerres
two yes says he without fail ah master says he now inquire

comment il vint. Il le demande a ses escuiers & il ne
how he came He it asks to his squires and they not
li osent cheler. Si dient quil vint en la litiere. &
from-him dare conceal So say-they that-he came in the litter and
il le dient monsignor Gauuain. Et il prie moult que on
they it say to-my-lord Gawain And he begs much that one
le fache a li parler. & on le maine deuant lui. sire
him make to him speak and one him leads before him lord
fait li mires vees chi monsignor Gauuain qui vous vient
says the physician see here my-lord Gawain who you comes
veoir. Mesire Gauuain sassiet deuant lui & li enquert
to-see My-lord Gawain himself-sits before him and of-him inquires
sil seit noueles del cheualier qui le roi artu fist entrer
if-he knows news of-the knight who the king Arthur made enter
en la dolerouse garde. Chil li respont petit. & toutes
into the dolorous guard That-one to-him answers little and all
vois dist. biax sire. Ie sui malades si ne me caut de
ways says fair lord I am sick so not to-me matters of
che que vous me demandes. Et quant mesire Gauuain oit
this that you me ask And when my-lord Gawain hears
quil nen porra ore plus aprendre. si se lieue &
that-he not-thereof will-be-able now more learn so himself raises and
sen va atant. & voit quil est si malades quil ne
himself-thence goes thereupon and sees that-he is so sick that-he not
li puet tenir parole. Mais demain le venra veoir si
to-him can hold word But tomorrow him will-come-he to-see so
li enquerra plus. Il sen va a son ostel & quant
of-him will-inquire more He himself-thence goes to his lodging and when
il fu anuitie. li cheualiers naures apele son mire &
it was grown-night the knight wounded calls his physician and
li dist. ha! sire ie ne puis plus chi demorer. Car se ie
to-him says ah lord I not can more here stay For if I

i estoie conneus. Ie i auroie damage. Si vous pri por
there were known I there would-have harm So you beg-I for
dieu que vous en uenes o moi. & se vous ni plaist
God that you thence come with me and if you not-there please
a venir si me dites chou que ie ferai. Car ie men
to come so to-me tell this which I shall-do For I myself-thence
irai anuit. Remanries vous fait li mires por nule rien.
shall-go tonight Would-remain you says the physician for any thing
naie fait il. Et en quel maniere vous en ires vous.
no says he And in what manner you thence will-go you
En litiere fait il que ie ai boine & bele. Ie men
In litter says he which I have good and fair I myself-thence
irai auoec vous fait li mires. que se ie ni aloie vous
shall-go with you says the physician for if I not-there went you
pories tost morir. & che seroit trop grant damages. Et
could soon die and this would-be too great harm And
il en a trop grant ioie. Lors sentornent lor oire
he thereof has very great joy Then themselves-thence-turn-they their way
si sen vont moult priueiement. Mais ore se taist
so themselves-thence go very privately But now itself is-silent
li contes .j. petit de lui & de sa compaignie & parole
the tale a little of him and of his company and speaks
del roi artu & de monsignour Gauuain.
of-the king Arthur and of my-lord Gawain

Au matin vient mesire Gauuain parler au cheualier &
In-the morning comes my-lord Gawain to-speak to-the knight and
on li dist quil sen est ales des mie nuit; Et il en
one to-him says that-he himself-thence is gone from mid night And he thereof
est moult dolans si sen reuait. & trueue le roi arme
is very sorrowful so himself-thence goes-back and finds the king armed
& ses compaignons & il sen va armer sans li
and his companions and he himself-thence goes to-arm without himself

faire connoistre. Quant il furent fors del castel si alerent
making know When they were out of-the castle so went-they
assambler a chels de dela. Mais li estors ne dura gaires
to-join-battle with those from yonder But the onset not lasted much
car il ne porent soffrir la force le roi. Et quant il i
for they not could endure the force (of-)the king And when he there
paruint onques puis ne se desfendi nus senfuiant non. &
arrived ever after not himself defended anyone save-fleeing not and
li rois les encauche iuscal chastel & les i fist flatir
the king them chases to-the castle and them there made flee-for-shelter
a force. Et com il sen retornoit en lost si encontra
by force And when he himself-thence returned into the-host so met-he
monsignor Gauuain sespee en sa main toute nue. & il
my-lord Gawain his-sword in his hand all bare and he
connut sespee si li demande. Gauuain biax nies comment
knew his-sword so of-him asks Gawain fair nephew how
aues vous esploitie de vostre queste. Sire fait il noient encore.
have you fared of your quest Lord says he nothing yet
Endementiers quil parloient issi. es vous .j. cheualiers
While that-they spoke thus behold you a knight
moult richement achesmes qui dist au roi. Sire li rois doutre
very richly adorned who says to-the king Lord the king of-beyond
les marches & li rois des .C. cheualiers vous mandent.
the marches and the king of-the hundred knights to-you send-word
car che seiuent il bien que vostre effors ne sofferroit nus.
for this know they well that your force not would-endure anyone
Mais se vous volies vne assamblee auoir a els .j. autre
But if you wished an assembly to-have with them an other
ior. & venisies en tel maniere que li cheualier qui i
day and came in such manner that the knights who there

vendroient peussent armes porter. Il le prendroient de hui
would-come could arms bear They it would-take from today
en .vij. semaines. De che ne mentremetrai ie ia fait li rois.
in seven weeks Of this not myself-will-meddle I ever says the king
Biax sire fait mesire Gauuain. le maisnie monsignor le
Fair lord says my-lord Gawain the household (of-)my-lord it
prendra encontre aus .ij. sil veulent a .j. plus lontain ior.
will-take against them two if-they wish at a more distant day
Au lundi deuant les auens. Et chil dist quil le voelent
On-the Monday before the Advent And that-one says that-they it wish
bien. & mesire Gauuain enuoie lucan le boutellier as .ij.
well and my-lord Gawain sends Lucan the butler to-the two
rois por sauoir sil le vaudront issi. Et il lotroient. Li
kings for to-know if-they it will-wish thus And they it-grant The
rois artus sen reua en son pais & la roine &
king Arthur himself-thence goes-back into his country and the queen and
les os se departent. Et li cheualier satendent au ior
the hosts themselves part And the knights themselves-hold to-the day
qui est nomes. & mesire Gauuain entre en sa queste. Si
which is named and my-lord Gawain enters on his quest So
tost com il sest partis du roi si trueue vne damoisele
soon as he himself-is parted from-the king so finds-he a damsel
moult tost cheuauchant sor vne mule corsiere. Il le salue
very fast riding on a mule swift He her greets
& ele lui. Si li demande sele a besoig. Oil fait ele
and she him So of-her asks-he if-she has need Yes says she
moult doleros. & vous ou ales issi. Dame fait il ie vois
very grievous and you where go thus Lady says he I go
en vn mien affaire ou ie nai mie encore tant esploitie
on a my affair where I not-have at-all yet so-much achieved
com ie vausisse. bele douce amie fait il sauries me vous
as I would-wish fair sweet friend says he could me you

dire noueles del cheualier qui fist le roi artu entrer
tell news of-the knight who made the king Arthur enter
en la dolerouse garde. de ce fait ele vous dirai ie bien
into the dolorous guard of this says she to-you shall-tell I well
noueles. se vous madrechies de che que ie quier Dites fait
news if you me-direct to this that I seek Say says
il & ie vous en adrecherai se ie sai. est il voirs que li
he and I you thereto shall-direct if I know is it true that the
cheualiers as armes vermeilles est mors cest chil qui
knight with-the arms red is dead that-is that-one who
a vencue ceste assamblee noiens est fait il. ains me dist
has conquered this assembly nothing is says he rather to-me said
ses mires quil gariroit bien. Quant ele loit si li esuani
his physician that-he would-heal well When she it-hears so to-her vanished
li cuers & ele se pasme sor le col de la mule. Et il
the heart and she herself faints upon the neck of the mule And he
le cort soustenir. & com ele reuint de paumison si li
her runs to-hold-up and when she came-back from swoon so of-her
demande porcoi ele sest pasmee. sire fait ele de ioie.
asks-he wherefore she herself-is fainted lord says she from joy
Damoisele fait il connoissies vous le cheualier. oil sire fait
Damsel says he know you the knight yes lord says
ele. Or me redites de cheli dont ie demant. chest il fait
she Now to-me tell-again of that-one whom I ask it-is he says
ele che sachies. Et comment aues vous non fait ele. Iai
she this know And how have you name says she I-have
non Gauuain fait il. ha! sire vous soies li bien venus. &
name Gawain says he ah lord you be the well come and
por dieu voles vous que ie voise auoec vous. De che sui
for God wish you that I go with you Of this am
ie moult lies fait il. Ensi cheuauchent entrax .ij. & il
I very glad says he Thus ride-they between-them two and he

li dist. Damoisele ames vous le cheualier. sire oil fait ele
to-her says Damsel love you the knight lord yes says she
plus que nul homme. & ne mie de tele amor com vous
more than any man and not at-all of such love as you
quidies. Ie ne vaudroie mie quil meust espousee. si ne
think I not would-wish at-all that-he me-had wedded so not
sera il mie mal maries qui maura. Car ie sui asses riche
will-be he at-all badly married who me-will-have For I am very rich
feme. Mais se dieu plaist il sera asses miex maries. Sire
woman But if God please he will-be much better married Lord
fait ele menbre vous dune damoisele que vous encontrastes
says she remember you of-a damsel whom you met
lautre ior. Oil fait il estes vous ce. vous me reprochastes
the-other day Yes says he are you that-one you me reproached
que iou auoie laissie la damoisele en la dolerouse garde. &
that I had left the damsel in the dolorous guard and
lors vi ie cheualier qui nous querrons. vous aues fait ele
then saw I knight whom we seek you have says she
voir dit. & pour cheli dui ie estre morte. Car len me
truth said and for him was-to I be dead For one to-me
dist que il estoit a mort naures. si en acouchai malade
said that he was to death wounded so thereof took-I-to-bed sick
& puis me refu dit que il seroit a ceste assamblee.
and then to-me again-was said that he would-be at this assembly
Et iehui me redist vns escuiers que il estoit ochis.
And today to-me said-again a squire that he was killed

Damoisele fait il puis que vous le connoissies. Dont me
Damsel says he since that you him know Then to-me
poes vous bien dire comment il a a non. si mavres
can you well say how he has to name so me-will-have-you
de ceste queste deliure. si mait diex fait ele ie nel
of this quest delivered so me-may-help God says she I not-it

sai. Mais iel saurai si tost com ie serai la ou il est.
know But I-it shall-know so soon as I shall-be there where he is
& lors le vous ferai sauoir. & il len merchie.
and then it to-you shall-I-make know and he her-thereof thanks
Or me dites fait il cha dont venes. ne oistes vous nules
Now to-me tell says he here whence you-come not heard you any
enseignes. naie fait ele. Ne ie fait il la dont ie vieng.
tokens no says she Nor I says he there whence I come
si lo que nous querons vne voie qui aille aillors. cest
so counsel-I that we seek a way which may-go elsewhere it-is
bien fait ele. Et ne demoura gaires quil trouerent en
well says she And not tarried-it much that-they found in
trauers de la forest vne vies voie. Et dales .j. moustier
across of the forest an old way And beside a minster
gaste & vne chimentiere en la voie. Et quant il vienent
wasted and a cemetery on the way And when they come
au moustier si descendent & entrent ens pour aurer.
to-the minster so dismount-they and enter in for to-pray
Dales le moustier auoit vne rencluse a vne fenestre deuers
Beside the minster was a recluse at a window toward
lauteil ou ele lisoit son sautier. Quant il le voient si
the-altar where she read her psalter When they her see so
li demandent sele set nule nouele. Ie ne sai nules fait
of-her ask-they if-she knows any news I not know any says
ele a monsignor Gauuain. qui mestier vous peuent auoir.
she to my-lord Gawain which need to-you can have
fors tant que se vous menes cele pucele si nales mie ceste
except so-much that if you lead this maiden so not-go at-all this
voie. porcoi fait il. por che fait ele que pres de chi a vn
way wherefore says he for this says she that near of here is a
cheualier qui le vous taudra & bien tost vous ochiroit.
knight who her from-you will-take and very soon you would-kill

Qui est il fait mesire Gauuain. Chest fait ele bruns sans
Who is he says my-lord Gawain It-is says she Brun without
pitie. sire fait la puchele alons autre voie. voire fait il.
pity lord says the maiden let-us-go other way truly says he
en bele voie seroie ore entres. se a chascune parole que
in fair way would-be-I now entered if at each word that
ioroie guerpisoie mon chemin. Mais or se taist li
I-would-hear I-abandoned my road But now itself is-silent the
contes daus .j. petit. & retorne au cheualier de la litiere.
tale of-them a little and returns to-the knight of the litter
Quant li cheualiers de la litiere sen parti de
When the knight of the litter himself-thence parted from
lassamblee par nuit. si errerent entre lui & sa compaignie
the-assembly by night so traveled-they between him and his company
les plus estraignes parties que il trouerent. & que il
the most strange parts that they found and that they
sorent entre lui & son maistre & sa compaignie. Car
knew between him and his master and his company For
il quidoient estre conneu. lendemain fist aspre caut. &
they thought to-be known the-next-day made-it harsh heat and
quant vint apres tierche si fu descendus en vn quarefor
when came-it after tierce so was-he dismounted in a crossroads
en lombre dune grant orme por dormir. lors vient par
in the-shade of-a great elm for to-sleep then comes by
iluec vne dame a grant cheualerie. Et quant ele vint la
there a lady with great chivalry And when she came there
si demanda au mire. qui est chis cheualiers. Dame fait
so asked-she to-the physician who is this knight Lady says
il cest vns cheualiers malades. La dame descent si li
he it-is a knight sick The lady dismounts so of-him
descueure le vis. & tantost commenche a plorer moult
uncovers the face and at-once begins to weep very

durement. biax amis fait ele au mire garira il. Oil dame
hard fair friend says she to-the physician will-heal he Yes lady
fait il che sachies. Lors sesueille li cheualiers & ele li
says he this know Then himself-awakes the knight and she to-him
baise les iex & la bouche. & il esgarde si connoist que
kisses the eyes and the mouth and he looks so knows that
chou est la dame de nohaut si se veut courir. Che na
this is the lady of nohaut so himself wishes to-cover This not-has
mestier fait ele vous en venres auoec moi. si seres plus
need says she you thence will-come with me so will-be-you more
richement gardes que en lieu del monde. Et vous sire fait
richly guarded than in place of-the world And you lord says
ele au mire por dieu loes li. Quant li cheualiers
she to-the physician for God counsel-it to-him When the knight
voit quil ne puet escaper si li otrie. & ele en est
sees that-he not can escape so to-her grants-it and she thereof is
moult lie. lors le remontent en la litiere & cheuauchent
very glad then him remount-they in the litter and ride
ensamble. & la dame li conte comment ele laloit
together and the lady to-him tells how she him-went
querrant. Ne iamais ne finast de terre cherquier
seeking Nor ever-more not would-have-ceased-she of land to-search
tant quele le trouast. Issi cheuauchent a petites iornees &
until that-she him found Thus ride-they at little journeys and
gisent les plus de nuis en paueillons. Car la dame en auoit
lie the most of nights in pavilions For the lady thereof had
.ij. moult biax. Si uindrent par deuant la dolerouse garde.
two very fair So came-they by before the dolorous guard
& quida la dame iesir el borc aual. Mais li cheualiers
and thought the lady to-lie in-the borough below But the knight
dist que por rien il ni enterroit. porcoi fait ele. & il
says that for anything he not-there would-enter wherefore says she and he

ne li respont mot ains regarde la porte si commenche
not to-her answers word rather looks-at the gate so begins
a plorer moult durement & dist. ha porte porte porcoi ne
to weep very hard and says ah gate gate wherefore not
fustes vous a tans ouuerte. Et che disoit il de la porte
were you in time opened And this said he of the gate
ou il fist muser la roine. comme il fu esbahis sor les
where he made wait the queen when he was amazed on the
murs si quidoit que la roine le seust autresi com il sauoit.
walls so thought-he that the queen it knew just as he knew
& quele len haist a tous iors mais. Fustes i vous
and that-she him-thereof hated for all days more Were there you
onques mais fait la dame. & il fu si troubles que il ne
ever before says the lady and he was so troubled that he not
puet respondre. Et ele pense tantost que chestoit il qui la
can answer And she thinks at-once that it-was he who the
dolerouse garde auoit conquis. si nen osoit plus parler
dolorous guard had conquered so not-thereof dared-she more speak
por che que courechie le voit. Tant ont ale quil
for this that angered him she-sees So-far have-they gone that-they
sont venu el castel a la dame qui estoit a .x. lieues
are come into-the castle of the lady which was at ten leagues
pres de nohaut. En chel castel fait la dame compaignie
near of nohaut In that castle keeps the lady company
au cheualier tant com il fu malades & ot quanques il
to-the knight as-long as he was sick and had whatever he
li fu mestiers. si laisse ore li contes .j. petit a parler
to-him was needful so leaves now the tale a little to speak
de lui & retorne a monsignor Gauuain. & a la pucele.
of him and returns to my-lord Gawain and to the maiden

Brun Without Pity

x

Brun Without Pity demands Gawain's damsel and is unhorsed; he promises news of the red knight in fifteen days and then leads Gawain to the castle where Lancelot lies. There the damsel knows Lancelot by his hand and gives him a letter from the prisoner at the Dolorous Guard calling him churlish; he sends her his ring to free her. At the Dolorous Guard the prisoner, freed by the ring, shows Gawain the tombs and tells him the name is under the slab, but he cannot lift it. Brun claims the freed damsel as his reward; Gawain refuses, and their quarrel waits for the assembly. Lancelot, not yet healed, recovers at the hermit of the hedge.

Entre monsignor Gauuain & la pucele se sont parti
Between my-lord Gawain and the maiden themselves are parted
de la rencluse. & chevauchent tant que il vienent hors
from the recluse and ride until that they come out
de la forest. Et trouerent en vne grande lande .j. paueillon
of the forest And found-they in a great heath a pavilion
moult bel. Il ni arestent pas ains passent outre. Et
very fair They not-there stop at-all rather pass beyond And
ne demora gaires capres aus vint .j. escuier sor .j. cacheor
not tarried-it much that-after them came a squire on a hunter
moult tost. si les ataint. & dist a monsignor Gauuain. sire
very fast so them reaches and says to my-lord Gawain lord
cheualiers mesire vous mande que vous li enuoies ceste
knight my-lord to-you sends-word that you to-him send this
pucele ou vous li amenes. qui est tes sires fait il. bruns
maiden or you to-him bring who is thy lord says he Brun
sans pitie fait li escuiers. Ne ie ne la li enuoierai ne
without pity says the squire Nor I not her to-him shall-send nor
menrai fait il sele ni va de son gre. Ains irai ie fait
shall-lead says he if-she not-there goes of her will Rather shall-go I says

ele que vous vous combates a lui. vous nires mie hui
she than you yourself fight with him you not-will-go at-all today
fait il. li escuiers sen torne. & quant mesire Gauuain
says he the squire himself-thence turns and when my-lord Gawain
& la pucele orent vne grant pieche alei. si vint apres aus
and the maiden had a great while gone so came after them
bruns tous armes & crie moult haut. vous me laires la
Brun all armed and cries very loud you to-me will-leave the
damoisele v vous le comperes moult chier. Ie ne la vous
damsel or you it will-pay very dear I not her to-you
larai mie fait mesire Gauuain. Il guenchisent en mi
shall-leave at-all says my-lord Gawain They wheel into middle
la lande. si fiert bruns si monsignor Gauuain que toute sa
the heath so strikes Brun so my-lord Gawain that all his
lance vole em pieces. Et mesire Gauuain fiert lui si quil
lance flies in pieces And my-lord Gawain strikes him so that-he
le porte a terre & prent son cheual si li ramaine.
him bears to ground and takes his horse so to-him brings-back
Tenes fait il vostre cheual. que ie ai autre chose a faire
Take says he your horse for I have other thing to do
si men irai. Qui estes vous fait il qui mon cheual
so myself-thence shall-go Who are you says he who my horse
me rendes. & abatu maues. Ie sui fait il Gauuain &
to-me render and struck-down me-have I am says he Gawain and
que ales vous querrant fait bruns. Nous querrons fait il le
what go you seeking says Brun We shall-seek says he the
cheualier as armes vermeilles qui lassamblee a vencue.
knight with-the arms red who the-assembly has won
ne vous dirai ore mie fait bruns che que ie sai. Car ie
not to-you shall-tell now at-all says Brun this that I know For I
vois en vn mien affaire. Mais si vous esties de hui en
go on a my affair But if you were from today in

.xv. iors en ceste place. Ie vous en diroie vraies noueles.
fifteen days in this place I to-you thereof would-say true news
Nous i serons fait il se nous nen oions noueles dedens
We there shall-be says he if we not-thereof hear news within
ce. Atant sen departent. & mesires Gauuain oirre
this Thereupon themselves-thence part and my-lord Gawain travels
toute la quinzaine que nules enseingnes nen oi. Si
all the fortnight that any tokens not-thereof heard-he So
reuint en la place & la pucele auoec li & trueuent
came-he-back into the place and the maiden with him and find
brun. Que me dires vous fait mesire Gauuain. Ie vous
Brun What to-me will-say you says my-lord Gawain I to-you
dirai fait bruns noueles. par si que vous me donres che
shall-tell says Brun news by so that you to-me will-give this
que ie vous demanderai. Ie lotri fait mesire Gauuain. se
that I of-you shall-ask I it-grant says my-lord Gawain if
chest chose que ie le vous puis douner & doie.
it-is thing that I it to-you can give and ought

Sachies fait il que il est en .j. castel que la dame
Know says he that he is in a castle which the lady
de nohaut a en baillie de .ij. freres a qui il est &
of nohaut has in keeping of two brothers to whom it is and
il sont si neueu. Si iai puis este par .iij. fois si vi
they are her nephews So I-have since been by three times so saw-I
premierement quil escremisoit & ses mires li disoit
first that-he fenced and his physician to-him said
quant il auoit .j. poi escremi or est asses sire. Lendemain
when he had a little fenced now is-it enough lord The-next-day
le vi la ou il le laissoit plus esforchier. hui a tier
him saw-I there where he him let more exert today is third
ior que ie i refui si le vi hors del castel vn escu
day that I there was-again so him saw-I out of-the castle a shield

a son col. vne lanche en sa main & assaioit sil poroit
at his neck a lance in his hand and tried if-he could
encore armes porter. Ore ni a fait il que de laler.
yet arms bear Now not-there has says he but of the-going
& se chou est il si me rendes mon gueredon & sil
and if this is he so to-me render my reward and if-it
nest che si en soies quites. Lors sen vont. &
not-is this so thereof be quit Then themselves-thence go-they and
cheuauchent par lor iournees tant quil vienent au castel.
ride by their journeys until that-they come to-the castle
& bruns remaint defors & il vont el castel iusques
and Brun remains outside and they go into-the castle as-far-as
as maisons a la dame. & li cheualiers malades oi dire
to-the houses of the lady and the knight sick heard say
que mesire Gauuain venoit. si dist a son mire Maistres
that my-lord Gawain came so says to his physician Master
mesire Gauuain vient chi. si vous pri que vous li dites
my-lord Gawain comes here so you beg-I that you to-him say
que ie sui trop malades. volentiers sire fait il. lors le
that I am very sick willingly lord says he then him
couche en .j. lit dedens vne cambre obscure & puis reuient
lays in a bed within a chamber dark and then comes-back
hors. & mesire Gauuain & la pucele vienent. Et la dame
out and my-lord Gawain and the maiden come And the lady
del castel les rechoit moult bien. monsignor Gauuain puis
of-the castle them receives very well my-lord Gawain then
dist au mirre en conseil que en toutes amors li face
says to-the physician in counsel that in all loves to-him he-make
veoir le cheualier sire fait il che ne puet estre car trop
see the knight lord says he this not can be for too
est malades. Quant ie ne le puis veoir fait mesire Gauuain
is-he sick When I not him can see says my-lord Gawain

sel faites veoir a ceste damoisele. volontiers fait chil qui
so-him make see to this damsel willingly says that-one who
garde ne sen prist. Il lenmaine en la cambre & ele
heed not himself-thereof took He her-leads into the chamber and she
oeure vne fenestre. & quant li cheualiers le voit si cueure
opens a window and when the knight her sees so covers
son vis. & ele cort por le descourir & il iete sa main
his face and she runs for it to-uncover and he throws his hand
encontre si le prent par le brac. & ele voit la main
against so him takes-she by the arm and she sees the hand
si le connoist si le baise tant quele se pasme desus.
so him knows so him kisses so-much that-she herself faints upon-it
& quant ele reuint de paumison. ni a mestier fait
and when she came-back from swoon not-there has need says
ele couertors. lors trait vnes lettres si les a brisies. &
she covering then draws-she some letters so them has broken and
list que la pucele qui remest en la dolerouse garde salue
reads that the maiden who remained in the dolorous guard greets
lancelot del lac le fil au roi ban de benoyc. & si li
Lancelot of-the lake the son of-the king Ban of benoic and so to-him
mande quele tenra tant prison com lui plaira. Mais
sends-word that-she will-hold so-long prison as to-him will-please But
bien sache que il a este vilains vers li & ele loiaus.
well may-he-know that he has been churlish toward her and she loyal
Comme il oit chou si a trop grant duel lors apela la
When he hears this so has-he very great grief then called-he the
pucele si li dist. Ma douce suer ales tost si li dites
maiden so to-her says My sweet sister go quickly so to-her say
que ie li cri merchi car trop li ai mesfait. & des
that I to-her cry mercy for too-much to-her have-I misdone and from
ore mais sen isse car ie le voeil. Che ne puet
now more herself-thence may-she-go-out for I it wish This not can

estre fait ele. Car ele nen istra sele ne vous uoit
be says she For she not-thence will-go-out if-she not you sees
ou chel anel de vostre doit. ele a droit fait il. Car la
or that ring from your finger she has right says he For there
ou li aniaus est ie i sui. Or le tenes si li portes.
where the ring is I there am Now it take so to-her carry
La damoisele sen ist riant de la cambre. &
The damsel herself-thence goes laughing from the chamber and
il li prie que a nului ne die son non. & ele vient
he her begs that to anyone not she-tell his name and she comes
fors & mesire Gauuain li dist. amie que me dires
out and my-lord Gawain to-her says friend what to-me will-say
vous. bien fait ele. dires me vous le non del cheualier.
you good says she will-tell me you the name of-the knight
Ie vous menrai la vous le saures fait ele. Et chest
I you shall-lead there you it will-know says she And it-is
chil qui venqui lassamblee. lors sen partent &
that-one who won the-assembly then themselves-thence part and
trueuent brun a la porte qui les atendoit. Sire Gauuain
find Brun at the gate who them awaited Lord Gawain
fait il deues me vous nul guerredon. Oil fait il. or vous
says he owe me you any reward Yes says he now you
sieuerai ie tant que vous aies chose qui me plaise. Issi
shall-follow I until that you have thing which me please Thus
sen vont tout .iij. Tant que au tier ior vienent a
themselves-thence go all three Until that on-the third day come-they to
la dolerouse garde. Et mesire Gauuain connoist le castel.
the dolorous guard And my-lord Gawain knows the castle
Ie sai bien fait il a la pucele ou vous me menes. Ie
I know well says he to the maiden where you me lead I
ne vous menrai fait ele se bien non. Il vienent a la
not you shall-lead says she except well not They come to the

porte si la troeuent fremee. Lors vont a la porte deuers
gate so it find fastened Then go-they to the gate toward
la tor si apelent la damoisele. Et li portiers dist quele
the tower so call the damsel And the porter says that-she
ni enterra. Dont tenes fait ele ces enseingnes si les
not-there will-enter Then take says she these tokens so them
portes a la damoisele de cele tor. Il oeure le guichet
carry to the damsel of that tower He opens the wicket
& chele li baille lanel au cheualier de la litiere. &
and that-one to-him hands the-ring of-the knight of the litter and
il le reclot. & puis apres vient a la damoisele de la tor
he it recloses and then after comes to the damsel of the tower
si li dist. Dame il a la hors vne damoisele & .j.
so to-her says Lady there is there out a damsel and a
cheualier si vous enuoient ches enseignes por entrer chaiens.
knight so to-you send these tokens for to-enter in-here
Chele regarde lanel si li a dit. ales tost laissies
She looks-at the-ring so to-him has said go quickly let
les venir chaiens. Chil vient a la porte si leuure & il
them come in-here He comes to the gate so it-opens and they
entrent ens. Et chele de la tor vient encontre & lor
enter in And that-one of the tower comes to-meet and to-them
dist bien veignies. Or men irai iou auoeques vous de
says well come Now myself-thence shall-go I with you at
quel eure que vous voldres. & bruns estoit remes dehors
what hour that you will-wish and Brun was remained outside
la porte. Damoisele fait mesire Gauuain encore ne sai
the gate Damsel says my-lord Gawain yet not know
ie mie le non del cheualier qui fist monsignor le roi
I at-all the name of-the knight who made my-lord the king
artu entrer chaiens. Et la pucele qui laiens lauoit amene
Arthur enter in-here And the maiden who in-there him-had brought

conseille a lautre. & chele dist a monseignor Gauuain. Ie
whispers to the-other and that-one says to my-lord Gawain I
vous dirai le non del cheualier. Mais vous venres anchois
to-you shall-tell the name of-the knight But you will-come first
la ou ie vous menrai. Lors le maine en le chimentiere
there where I you shall-lead Then him leads-she into the cemetery
& li monstrent les tombes. Chi aues vous este fait ele
and to-him show the tombs Here have you been says she
autres fois. voire fait il. lors lenmaine a vne tombe. sor
other times truly says he then him-leads-she to a tomb on
ceste tombe fait ele ot ia escrit chi gist Gauuain li nies
this tomb says she was once written here lies Gawain the nephew
le roi artu. & vees la la teste. & de tous vostre
(of-)the king Arthur and see there the head and of all your
compaignons autresi. Ne onques riens de tout chou ni
companions likewise Nor ever anything of all this not-there
trouastes quant vous i uenistes. Et comment fu che dont
found-you when you there came And how was this then
fait il. che sont fait ele li enchantement de chaiens. Or
says he these are says she the enchantments of in-here Now
me dites fait il le non au cheualier. Desous en le lame
to-me tell says he the name of-the knight Beneath in the slab
fait ele de metal le troueres. Il vient a le lame se si assaie
says she of metal it will-find-you He comes to the slab so so tries
mais il ne le puet leuer ne tant ne quant & il en
but he not it can raise either so-much nor how-much and he thereof
est trop dolans. Damoisele fait il porai iou autrement
is very sorrowful Damsel says he shall-be-able I otherwise
sauoir le non au cheualier. Oil fait ele se vous me menes
know the name of-the knight Yes says she if you me lead
tant que ie le truise iel vous ferai sauoir. Comment
until that I him find I-it to-you shall-make know How

en serai ie seurs. Iel vous creant fait ele loiaument.
thereof shall-be I sure I-it to-you promise says she loyally
& ie vous i menrai fait il. lors sen issent de
and I you there shall-lead says he then themselves-thence go-out from
le chimentiere & la damoisele monte en .j. palefroi qui
the cemetery and the damsel mounts on a palfrey which
amenes li fu. Et quant il vienent hors de la porte si
brought to-her was And when they come out of the gate so
trouerent brun. sire Gauuain fait il or vous demant ie mon
found-they Brun lord Gawain says he now of-you ask I my
don. quel fait il. chele pucele que vous aues laiens trouee.
gift which says he that maiden whom you have in-there found
Brun fait il Ie ne la puis pas douner car ele nest pas
Brun says he I not her can at-all give for she not-is at-all
moie. Ne ie ne vous promis chose se che non que ie
mine Nor I not to-you promised thing except this not which I
vous poroie douner & deuroie. Il ni ot nul arest fait
to-you could give and ought It not-there was any stay says
bruns. si ot fait mesire Gauuain cestui. & se vous
Brun yes was-there says my-lord Gawain this-one and if you
voles ie sui pres que ie me mete el iugement des
wish I am ready that I myself put in-the judgment of-the
compaignons mon oncle. si en soit cou quil diront
companions (of-)my uncle so thereof be this which-they will-say
ou la bataille ou autre chose. bruns dist quil nen fera
either the battle or other thing Brun says that-he not-thereof will-do
nient. Mais orendroit sen combatera. & neporquant
anything But right-now himself-thereof will-fight and nevertheless
tant li prient les puceles quil doune le respit iusques a
so-much him pray the maidens that-he gives the respite until to
lassamblee. quil demanderont as cheualiers & sil ne
the-assembly which-they will-ask to-the knights and if-it not

siet a brun il reuendra a sa bataille. & mesire Gauuain
suits to Brun he will-come-back to his battle and my-lord Gawain
lotrie. Mais ore ne parole plus li contes dels chi endroit.
it-grants But now not speaks more the tale of-them here in-place
deuant quil ait parlei del cheualier de la litiere.
before that-it may-have spoken of-the knight of the litter
Tant a este li cheualiers en la garde a la dame de
So-long has been the knight in the keeping of the lady of
nohaut. que auques est respasses. Si desire moult les armes
nohaut that somewhat is-he recovered So desires-he much the arms
dont il a este longuement en repos. Il vient a la dame
from-which he has been long in rest He comes to the lady
si prent congie. puis sen part entre li & son mire
so takes leave then himself-thence parts between him and his physician
qui la dame ot moult richement paies de son seruice. &
whom the lady had very richly paid for his service and
li cheualier li demande. Maistres dont ne sui ie asses
the knight of-him asks Master then not am I enough
garis por porter armes. nenil fait il. car vous ne porries
healed for to-bear arms no says he for you not could
emprendre tel fais. Car tout seroit a recommenchier. Tel
undertake such burden For all would-be to begin-again Such
fais maistre de che ne se puet nus amesurer quant
burden master of this not himself can anyone measure when
li besoins vient. si vous i gardes fait li mires au
the need comes so yourself there guard says the physician at-the
commenchier. Chertes fait il se ie de tous mes menbres
beginning Certainly says he if I of all my limbs
me peusse aidier si mest auis que ie sui garis. Dont ne
myself could help so to-me-is opinion that I am healed Then not
baes vous fait li mires a aler a lassamblee. oil fait il. &
aim you says the physician to go to the-assembly yes says he and

lequel fait il vaudries vous miex. ou a estre sains a la
which says he would-wish you better either to be sound at the
mellee ou estre malades entre .ij. ou estre lors malades &
melee or to-be sick between two or to-be then sick and
entre tant haities. Ie ne vaudroie fait li cheualiers por
between so-much well I not would-wish says the knight for
nule riens que iou ne portasse armes a lassamblee. Dont
any thing that I not bore arms at the-assembly Then
vous lo ie fait li mires que vous soies en pais iusques
you counsel I says the physician that you be in peace until
lors. si sereis sains & haities & en vostre dure force.
then so will-be-you sound and well and in your hard strength
puis que vous le me loes fait li cheualiers ie le ferai.
since that you it to-me counsel says the knight I it shall-do
Mais la dont ie vieng ne retornerai ie mie. ains irai
But there whence I come not shall-return I at-all rather shall-go-I
chis .j. hermite moult boin homme que ie sai. Il acuellent
to a hermit very good man whom I know They take-up
lor voie ensamble Car li mires nel vaut guerpir deuant
their way together For the physician not-him wished to-leave before
lassamblee. Si ont tant ale quil sont venu chis lermite
the-assembly So have-they so-far gone that-they are come to the-hermit
del plaisseis issi auoit il a non. & chestoit chil la
of-the hedge thus had he to name and it-was that-one there
il auoit mis brandin des illes en prison. chelui qui estoit
he had put Brandin of-the isles in prison him who was
sires de la dolerouse garde. Grant ioie en fist li hermites
lord of the dolorous guard Great joy thereof made the hermit
& a grant honor le rechut. Mais moult sesmaia
and with great honor him received But much himself-dismayed-he
des plaies au cheualier. Tant demoura laiens li cheualiers
of-the wounds of-the knight So-long stayed in-there the knight

que ses mires li dist quil estoit plus sains & plus
that his physician to-him said that-he was more sound and more
haities de cors & de menbres quil nauoit a nul ior
well of body and of limbs than-he had on any day
este. Et bien auoit encore .xv. iors iusques a lassamblee.
been And well was-there still fifteen days until to the-assembly
Ore relaisse li contes vne pieche a parler de lui & de
Now leaves-again the tale a while to speak of him and of
sa compaignie. & retorne a parler de monsignor Gauuain.
his company and returns to speak of my-lord Gawain

The False Message

XI

Gawain, Brun, and the two damsels travel on; two knights attack Gawain, set on by Brun, until the damsel cries out his name and they beg his pardon, and Gawain spurns Brun. At a bridge twenty knights fight Gawain while the damsels are carried into a castle, and with a knight who guards a port he rides toward a castle of evil custom. Lancelot, sending away his physician, learns from a squire that the queen is held prisoner at the Dolorous Guard until he returns.

Mesire Gauuain quant il se parti de la dolerouse garde. si
My-lord Gawain when he himself parted from the dolorous guard so
erra entre lui & ses .ij. puceles & brun sans pitie. Tant
traveled between him and his two maidens and Brun without pity Until
quil vindrent au castel ou li cheualiers naures auoit
that-they came to-the castle where the knight wounded had
ieu. Et quant il nel trueuent si furent moult dolant. &
lain And when they not-him find so were-they very sorrowful and
dist mesire Gauuain quil nen quidoit mais oir noueles
said my-lord Gawain that-he not-thereof thought more to-hear news

deuant lassamblee. Comment fait la pucele qui auoit este en
before the-assembly How says the maiden who had been in
prison aura il assamblee par tans Oil fait il mamie .j. mois
prison will-be it assembly by time Yes says he my-friend a month
a venir. la fait ele sera il se del cors na essoine.
to come there says she will-be he if of-the body not-has-he hindrance
Atant cheuauchent si com bruns les conduist qui dist
Thereupon ride-they so as Brun them led who said
que il seit miex les voies que nus. vne chose voeil ie
that he knows better the ways than anyone one thing wish I
que vous sachies fait il a monsignor Gauuain que ches .ij.
that you know says he to my-lord Gawain that these two
pucheles vous seroient ia moult fort a tolir par si que
maidens from-you would-be now very hard to take by so that
ie vous vausisse aidier. cest voirs fait mesire Gauuain & se
I you would-wish to-help this-is true says my-lord Gawain and if
vous ne maidisies vous series desloiax. Issi oirrent iuscal
you not me-helped you would-be disloyal Thus travel-they until-the
vespre & voient .j. pauellon & pres de chel pauellon auoit
evening and see a pavilion and near of that pavilion was
vne riuiere. a chele riuiere estoit vns chers afuians & li
a river in that river was a stag fleeing and the
chien lauoient prins en la riue. Apres venoit vns cheualiers
dogs it-had taken on the bank After came a knight
.j. cor a son col & .j. veneor o lui & cornoient prise.
a born at his neck and a huntsman with him and they-borned the-taking
Et mesire Gauuain & sa compaignie vienent la. &
And my-lord Gawain and his company come there and
comme li cheualiers les voit si les salue. Signor fait il sil
when the knight them sees so them greets Lords says he if-it
vous plaisoit de cest cherf ie vous en dounroie. Et sil
you pleased of this stag I to-you thereof would-give And if-it

vous plaisoit a herbergier chis paueillons est miens si vous
you pleased to lodge this pavilion is mine so you
herbergerai se vous voles. Sire fait mesire Gauuain grans
shall-lodge-I if you wish Lord says my-lord Gawain great
mercis & nous herbergerons. Il deschendent & vallet
thanks and we shall-lodge They dismount and youths
prendent lor armes. Com il furent desarmes bruns conseille
take their arms When they were disarmed Brun whispers
au cheualier. & cil vient a monsignor Gauuain. sire
to-the knight and that-one comes to my-lord Gawain lord
fait il ie vous ai herbergie ne anuit naues vous garde.
says he I you have lodged nor tonight not-have you fear
Mais demain puis que vous en seres ales ne vous asseur
But tomorrow after that you thence will-be gone not you assure
ie mie. biax sire fait mesire Gauuain quant me feres
I at-all fair lord says my-lord Gawain when to-me will-do-you
mal che pesera moi. li cheualiers lor fait moult bel
harm this will-weigh me the knight to-them makes very fair
ostel. Au matin sen part mesire Gauuain & bruns
lodging At-the morning himself-thence parts my-lord Gawain and Brun
& les .ij. puceles & oirrent grant piece de ior. Tant
and the two maidens and travel great piece of day Until
quil encontrent .ij. cheualiers tous armes. Chil cheualier
that-they meet two knights all armed Those knights
nes mistrent onques a raison. ains prinsent les escus
not-them put ever to reason rather took the shields
par les enarmes & laissent coure a monsignor Gauuain
by the straps and let run at my-lord Gawain
& il a euls. & il quida que bruns feist autretel mais il
and he at them and he thought that Brun would-do the-same but he
se tient tous cois. li vns des cheualiers fiert monsignor
himself holds all still the one of-the knights strikes my-lord

Gauuain en lescu que toute sa lance vole em pieces. &
Gawain on the-shield that all his lance flies in pieces and
il fiert li que il le porte a terre. Et li autres fiert le
he strikes him that he him bears to ground And the other strikes the
cheual monsignor Gauuain. si lochist & il remaint a pie.
horse (of-)my-lord Gawain so it-kills and he remains on foot
Et quant chil qui son cheual li ot ochis vit que
And when that-one who his horse to-him had killed saw that
il fu a pie si descent. si sont tout .iij. a pie. li doi
he was on foot so dismounts-he so are all three on foot the two
courent sus a monsignor Gauuain & il se desfent a
run upon to my-lord Gawain and he himself defends against
aux moult bien & plus les damage quil ne font lui. vne
them very well and more them harms than-they — do him a
grant piece se combatent issi. conques li doi ne porent
great while themselves fight thus that-ever the two not could
a monsignor Gauuain tolir terre & il les fait souent
from my-lord Gawain take ground and he them makes often
reculer. quant la pucele qui monsignor Gauuain mena en
draw-back when the maiden who my-lord Gawain led into
la dolerouse garde voit que si est atires si a paor de
the dolorous guard sees that so is-he arrayed so has-she fear for
lui. & commenche a crier moult durement. lors seslaisse
him and begins to cry very hard then herself-lets
ius de son palefroi & se fiert entrax & crie comme
down from her palfrey and herself throws between-them and cries as
feme desuee. fil a putain failli qui voles ochire le plus
woman out-of-her-wits son of whore failed who wish to-kill the most
preudomme cheualier del monde si desloiaument Damoisele
worthy knight of-the world so disloyally Damsel
fait li vns qui est il. Qui fait ele cest mesire Gauuain
says the one who is he Who says she it-is my-lord Gawain

li nies le roi artu. & chil regarde son compaignon.
the nephew (of-)the king Arthur and that-one looks-at his companion
En non dieu fait il a lui ie ne me combaterai plus. &
In name (of-)God says he to him I not myself shall-fight more and
dehais ait ore qui chi nous fist venir. Sire fait li autres
ill-luck may-have now who here us made come Lord says the other
par la riens que vous plus ames estes vous mesire Gauuain.
by the thing that you most love are you my-lord Gawain
& il respont que oil. ha sire por dieu font il pardounes
and he answers that yes ah lord for God say they pardon
nous che que nous vous auons mesfait. Car issi com nous
us this that we to-you have misdone For as as we
vous tenons ore au plus preudomme del monde. issi vous
you hold now for-the most worthy-man of-the world so you
teniemes ore au plus desloial. Et nous vous lairons atant.
held-we now for-the most disloyal And we you shall-leave thereupon
Estraignement fait mesire Gauuain me laissies vous qui
Strangely says my-lord Gawain me leave you who
mon cheual maues mort. Sire fait chil qui li ochist
my horse me-have killed Lord says that-one who it killed
ie vous renderai le mien por le vostre & il le prent.
I to-you shall-render the mine for the yours and he it takes
& chestoit chil qui monsignor Gauuain auoit herbergie
and it-was that-one who my-lord Gawain had lodged
& ses puceles. Mais bruns li auoit fait entendant
and his maidens But Brun to-him had made understand
de monsignor Gauuain toutes les desloiautes del monde.
of my-lord Gawain all the disloyalties of-the world
li doi cheualier montent sor .j. cheual. & bruns les
the two knights mount on one horse and Brun them
conuoie vne pieche. puis reuient apres monsignor Gauuain
escorts a while then comes-back after my-lord Gawain

& fait sanblant daler auoec lui encore. Mesire Gauuain
and makes semblance to-go with him still My-lord Gawain
le regarde. brun fait il auoec moi ne venres vous mie.
him looks-at Brun says he with me not will-come you at-all
Car desloialment vous estes menes vers moi si nai
For disloyally you are behaved toward me so not-have-I
cure de vostre compaignie. & sui pres que ie vous ataigne
care of your company and am ready that I you convict
orendroit de desloiaute. si aures la bataille que tant
right-now of disloyalty so will-have-you the battle which so-much
aues couoitie. ne me combaterai ore mie fait bruns.
have-you coveted not myself shall-fight now at-all says Brun
Mais vous aues toute uois paor eue. Atant sen
But you have all ways fear had Thereupon himself-thence
vait & mesire Gauuain & ses .ij. puceles oirrent tant
goes-he and my-lord Gawain and his two maidens travel until
quil vienent sor vne riuiere. a chele riuiere auoit .j. pont
that-they come on a river on that river was a bridge
auques estroit. & el chief del pont de lautre part auoit
somewhat narrow and at-the head of-the bridge on the-other part was
vne bertesque & vne porte fremee. Deuant la porte auoit
a bartizan and a gate fastened Before the gate were
.ij. seriant a .ij. haches danoises. Mesire Gauuain fait
two servants with two axes Danish My-lord Gawain makes
les .ij. puceles deuant passer. & il se met el pont
the two maidens before pass and he himself puts on-the bridge
apres. Et li seriant li dient pour noient i venes.
after And the servants to-him say for nothing there come
vous ni passeres mie. Dont ne porai ie fait il. Lors
you not-there will-pass at-all Then not shall-be-able I says he Then
deschent si met auant lui son cheual & il va apres a
dismounts-he so puts before him his horse and he goes after on

pie. Et il escoute si oit vne noise. & il se regarde
foot And he listens so hears a noise and he himself looks
si voit .xx. cheualier qui le sieuent. & il li est auis
so sees twenty knights who him follow and it to-him is opinion
quil vienent por li mal faire. Il se met el chief
that-they come for him harm to-do He himself puts at-the head
del pont si les atent. Si trait auant son escu & tient
of-the bridge so them awaits So draws-he forward his shield and holds
sa lanche en sa main. Et chil vienent moult tost. & chil
his lance in his hand And those come very fast and those
ki vindrent deuant le fierent en lescu. Il lassalent a
who came first him strike on the-shield They him-assail on
pie & a cheual. & il se desfent si bien quil bleche
foot and on horse and he himself defends so well that-he hurts
plusors dels & ochist asses de lor cheuax a sa lance.
several of-them and kills many of their horses with his lance
ne tant com sa lanche dure naproce nus a lui. Et
nor as-long as his lance lasts not-approaches anyone to him And
com ele li faut il met la main a lespee & lor cort
when it to-him fails he puts the hand to the-sword and to-them runs
sus & les fait flatir a terre del pont. Et quant il
upon and them makes dash to ground from-the bridge And when they
voient que si bien se desfent & que plus les damage
see that so well himself defends-he and that more them harms
que il ne font lui si se traient ariere. & la porte del
than he — do him so themselves draw back and the gate of-the
castel deriere lui oeure. & cheualier vienent par illuec &
castle behind him opens and knights come by there and
prenent les .ij. pucheles si les enmainent. Quant che voit
take the two maidens so them lead-off When this sees
mesire Gauuain si en est moult iries. Signor fait il cest
my-lord Gawain so thereof is-he very angry Lords says he it-is

moult viex chose & couardise que vous faites. que dune
very base thing and cowardice that you do that on-one
part vous combates .xx. a moi. & dautre part me
part you fight twenty with me and on-other part from-me
taut len mes puceles. cest a boin droit fait vns cheualiers.
takes one my maidens it-is with good right says a knight
que vous vous estes desloiaument menes vers moi de mes
for you yourself are disloyally behaved toward me in my
couenences. ha! bruns vous mentes comme traitres. & si le
covenants ah Brun you lie as traitor and so it
vous prouerai se vous voles voiant tous chex qui chi sont
to-you shall-I-prove if you wish seeing all those who here are
que vous aues chi amenes. Chertes fait la damoisele qui
whom you have here brought Certainly says the damsel who
lauoit amene a la dolerouse garde voirement est il traitres.
him-had led to the dolorous guard truly is he traitor
& se vous ne fuissies le plus preudom del monde Il
and if you not were the most worthy-man of-the world He
vous eust hui fait morir par .ij. fois. lors demandent
you would-have today made die by two times then ask
chil qui les puceles amainent. qui est chil cheualiers. cest
those who the maidens lead who is that knight it-is
fait lune mesire Gauuain. Dont vient li .j. dax & dist.
says the-one my-lord Gawain Then comes the one of-them and says
Mesire Gauuain or vous en ales par la ou il vous
My-lord Gawain now yourself thence go by there where it you
plaira fors par chi. & ie vous asseur anuit mais. & de
will-please except by here and I you assure tonight more both of
moi & de tous chels qui chi sont. & naies soig des
me and of all those who here are and not-have care of-the
puceles. car ie vous creant sor marme queles seront autresi
maidens for I to-you promise on my-soul that-they will-be as

bien gardees a honor. com se eles estoient mes serors.
well guarded in honor as if they were my sisters
Et se ie les pooie rendre sans pariurer ie nes menroie
And if I them could render without forswearing I not-them would-lead
en auant. Mesire Gauuain len merchie & il li fait
in forward My-lord Gawain him-thereof thanks and he to-him makes
baillier vne lance. & commande a tous les cheualiers que
hand a lance and commands to all the knights that
il sen aillent. & il sen va apres les puceles
they themselves-thence go and he himself-thence goes after the maidens
quil fait enmener & mesire Gauuain se depart del
whom-he makes lead-off and my-lord Gawain himself departs from-the
pont & va contremont la riue sor son cheual. & com il
bridge and goes up the bank on his horse and when he
trueue gue si passe outre & va moult tost tous les esclos
finds ford so passes-he beyond and goes very fast all the tracks
quil a troues. Tant quil vient a lentree dune forest. lors
that-he has found Until that-he comes to the-entry of-a forest then
a troue vne damoisele qui tient .j. cheualier naurei en
has-he found a damsel who holds a knight wounded in
son deuant. Mesire Gauuain la saluee & li demande
her lap My-lord Gawain her-has greeted and of-her asks
sele vit .ij. cheualiers qui enmainent .ij. puceles. Oil fait
if-she saw two knights who lead-off two maidens Yes says
ele a maleur les veisse ie. Car il mont mon ami mort.
she in ill-hour them saw I For they me-have my friend killed
Damoisele quel part vont il. sire fait ele souffres vous .j.
Damsel what part go they lord says she allow you a
poi. & ie vous monsterai la ou il sont. Atant vint
little and I to-you shall-show there where they are Thereupon came
iluec vns escuiers vne hache en sa main sor .j. cacheor.
there a squire an axe in his hand on a hunter

Que est che dame fait il. Ie criem fait ele que tes sires ne
What is this lady says he I fear says she that thy lord —
se mure. Or pense de lui & ie menrai cest cheualier
himself die Now think of him and I shall-lead this knight
apres cheli qui la mort. Ele monte en son palefroi
after that-one who him-has killed She mounts on her palfrey
si va auoec monsignor Gauuain. & oirrent tant quil
so goes with my-lord Gawain and travel until that-they
vienent a vne grant riuiere si ni auoit point de pont.
come to a great river so not-there was any of bridge
Mais vne neif i trouerent & .j. auiron. Il metent ens
But a boat there found-they and an oar They put in
lor cheuax & entrent apres. & mesire Gauuain nage tant
their horses and enter after and my-lord Gawain rows until
que il furent outre. quant il vint dautre part si trueue
that they were beyond when he came on-other part so finds
.j. cheualier arme qui li dist. nen issies mie. Car
a knight armed who to-him says not-thence go-out at-all For
a moi vous couenroit combatre. Car ie gart cest port.
with me you would-behoove to-fight For I guard this port
Se combatre fait il me couient ce pesera moi. Car iai
If to-fight says he me behooves this will-weigh me For I-have
moult el afaire. Qui estes vous fait li cheualier. Ie sui vns
much else to-do Who are you says the knight I am a
cheualiers de la maison le roi artu. Comment aues vous
knight of the house (of-)the king Arthur How have you
non fait il. Iai non Gauuain. Or vous lairai passer fait
name says he I-have name Gawain Now you shall-I-let pass says
il. & ou voles vous aler. Ie sui fait il autres cheualiers
he and where wish you to-go I am says he after knights
qui enmainent .ij. puceles. par foi fait il il sen
who lead-off two maidens by faith says he they themselves-thence

vont tout droit a chel port la. si li monstre el cief
go all straight to that port there so to-him shows at-the head
del tertre loig .j. castel moult fort. puis li dist que
of-the hill far a castle very strong then to-him says that
el castel a moult male gent. Mais se vous i voles
in-the castle are very evil people But if you there wish
fait il aler ie irai o vous. & vous aiderai a mon pooir
says he to-go I shall-go with you and you shall-help to my power
& mesire Gauuain len merchie. Mesire Gauuain fait
and my-lord Gawain him-thereof thanks My-lord Gawain says
li cheualiers ie vous dirai se vous voles le coustume del
the knight I to-you shall-tell if you wish the custom of-the
castel. A tant cheualiers com nous serons conuenra
castle With as-many knights as we shall-be it-will-behoove
combatre & se nous les conquerons por ce ne serons
to-fight and if we them conquer for this not shall-we-be
mie quite. Chi a maluaise coustume fait mesire Gauuain.
at-all quit Here is evil custom says my-lord Gawain
Issi cheuauchent ensamble & la damoisele auoec aus. si
Thus ride-they together and the damsel with them so
se taist ore li contes .j. petit daus .iij. & retorne a
itself is-silent now the tale a little of-them three and returns to
parler del cheualier de la litiere.
speak of-the knight of the litter

Tant a li cheualiers de la litiere ieu chis lermite que tous
So-long has the knight of the litter lain at the-hermit that all
est garis & sains. & moult desirans darmes porter Ne iuscal
is-he healed and sound and very desirous arms to-bear Nor until-the
ior de lassamblee nauoit mais que .xv. Iors. lors a prins
day of the-assembly not-was-there more than fifteen Days then has-he taken
congie del hermite si sen part entre lui & son mire
leave of-the hermit so himself-thence parts between him and his physician

qui moult la bien garde & ses .iiij. escuiers. Et quant
who very him-has well guarded and his four squires And when
il a eslongie lermite entor .vj. lieues si apele son maistre.
he has gone-far-from the-hermit about six leagues so calls-he his master
Maistres fait il aler men couient en .j. mien affaire ou
Master says he to-go myself-thence behooves-it on a my affair where
vous ne poes mie venir. Car trop seroit loing a vostre oels.
you not can at-all come For too would-be-it far for your need
& si i uoel aler tous seus. & ie vous pri que il ne vous
and so there wish-I to-go all alone and I you beg that it not you
en poist. Et ie vous merchi moult de la grant amiste que
thereof weigh And I you thank much for the great friendship that
vous maues faite. & sachies que ie sui vostres partout. Li
you me-have done and know that I am yours everywhere The
mires sen part atant. & li cheualiers oirre toute ior
physician himself-thence parts thereupon and the knight travels all day
comme chil qui ne veut estre conneus & pour che sest
as that-one who not wishes to-be known and for this himself-is
partis del mire quil ne fust par li conneus de nule
parted from-the physician that-he not were by him known of any
chose en lieu ou il vausist estre cheles. si fait son escu
thing in place where he would-wish to-be hidden so makes-he his shield
courir que nus ne le voie. & chestoit encore li vermax escus.
cover that anyone not it see and it-was still the red shield
Issi cheuauche en autre voie que la ou lassamblee
Thus rides-he on other way than there where the-assembly
deuoit estre por le mire desuoier. Et com il ot erre
was-to be for the physician to-mislead And when he had traveled
iusquendroit noune. si latainst vns escuiers sor .j. grant
until-toward nones so him-overtakes a squire on a great
cacheor tressue. & li cheualiers li demande. valles ou
hunter sweating and the knight of-him asks youth where

vas si tost. Ie ai fait il besoig trop angoisseus. quel fait
goest so fast I have says he need very anguished which says
li cheualiers. Ia est madame la roine en prison en la
the knight Now is my-lady the queen in prison in the
dolerouse garde. laquel roine fait li cheualiers. la feme le
dolorous guard which queen says the knight the wife (of-)the
roi artu fait li valles. porcoi i est ele fait li cheualiers.
king Arthur says the youth wherefore there is she says the knight
por che fait il que li rois artus en laissa aler le cheualier
for this says he that the king Arthur thence let go the knight
qui le castel auoit conquis. & madame auoit este menee a
who the castle had conquered and my-lady had been brought to
chele assemblee. si se herberga ier soir el castel. &
that assembly so herself lodged-she yester evening in-the castle and
ore si la on prinse & dient que iamais por pooir que li
now so her-has one taken and they-say that ever-more for power that the
rois artus ait nen istera. deuant quele aura fait
king Arthur may-have not-thence will-she-go-out before that-she will-have made
venir le cheualier arriere que li rois laissa aler. Et madame
come the knight back whom the king let go And my-lady
enuoie par tous les chemins ses messages. & mande au
sends by all the roads her messengers and sends-word to-the
cheualier quil le secoure ou ele est hounie. Car il le
knight that-he her succor or she is shamed For they her
rendront a chelui qui fu sires del castel sil vient depechier
will-render to him who was lord of-the castle if-he comes to-break
les enchantemens. & il le fera volentiers por le roi artu
the enchantments and he it will-do willingly for the king Arthur
honir. biax amis fait li cheualiers seroit la roine deliuree
to-shame fair friend says the knight would-be the queen delivered

se li cheualiers venoit en la dolerouse garde. Oil sans
if the knight came into the dolorous guard Yes without
faille fait li escuiers. pour che fait il ne remanra il mie.
fail says the squire for this says he not will-remain it at-all

The Enchantments of the Dolorous Guard

XII

Lancelot rides to the Dolorous Guard and is shut in a vault by the squire, who has lied: the queen was never there. A damsel tells him he must end the enchantments. He enters a cave beneath the chapel, passes two copper knights with swords, throws a man with a black head and burning eyes into a stinking well, takes the keys from a damsel cast in copper, and opens a pillar and a coffer of crying voices, from which devils rush out. The enchantments fall, the tombs and helms vanish, and the castle is named the Joyous Guard. He leaves and makes a white shield with a black band.

Or va tost & si di a la roine que le matin ou anchois
Now go quickly and so say to the queen that the morning or before
aura le cheualier. & toute seure en soit. sire fait
she-will-have the knight and all sure thereof may-she-be lord says
li valles ie noseroie retourner se ie nauoie parle a lui.
the youth I not-would-dare return if I not-had spoken to him
va tent fait il & seurement li di que tu as a li
go thyself-thence says he and surely to-her say that thou hast to him
parle. Iestes vous chou fait li valles se ie nel sauoie de
spoken Are you this says the youth if I not-it knew of
voir ie ne li oseroie dire. va tent fait il que che sui
truth I not to-her would-dare say go thyself-thence says he for this am
ie. si mas tu fait dire vilounie. Li valles sen part
I so me-hast thou made say baseness The youth himself-thence parts

atant si tost ke le cheuax li pot aler. Et li cheualiers
thereupon as fast as the horse him could go And the knight
croist saleure & va apres si est nuis quant il i vient. Et
increases his-pace and goes after so is-it night when he there comes And
si tost com il est dedens les portes. si voit toutes alumees
so soon as he is within the gates so sees-he all lit
de gros chierges & de tortins. & la porte rest tantost
with great tapers and with torches and the gate is-again at-once
fremee. lors li vient a lencontre li escuiers qui lauoit
fastened then to-him comes to the-meeting the squire who him-had
ale querre. Et quant li cheualiers le voit si li demande
gone seek And when the knight him sees so of-him asks
ou est la roine madame. Sire fait il ie vous i menrai. Il
where is the queen my-lady Lord says he I you there shall-lead He
va auant & li cheualiers apres tant quil vindrent el
goes ahead and the knight after until that-they came into-the
palais. Desos le palais estoit la roche trenchie a chisel
palace Beneath the palace was the rock cut with chisel
si ni auoit que vne seule entree. & li huis estoit de
so not-there was but one single entry and the door was of
fer si espes que nule riens nel desconfesist. li cheualiers
iron so thick that any thing not-it could-undo the knight
ot oste son hiaume. Mais il not pas abatu sa ventaille.
had removed his helm But he not-had at-all lowered his ventail
& li valles li baille plain poing de candeilles. & li
and the youth to-him hands full fist of candles and to-him
dist alumes deuant vous & ie refermerai ches huis. &
says light before you and I shall-close-again these doors and
il quide que chil li die voir. mais non fait anchois
he thinks that that-one to-him says truth but not does-he rather
la trai. Car la roine ni estoit pas. Si tost com
him-has betrayed For the queen not-there was at-all So soon as

il pot refrema chil la porte. & com li cheualiers se
he could reclosed that-one the gate and when the knight himself
voit entrepris si en est dolans. Car il seit bien que de
sees caught so thereof is-he sorrowful For he knows well that from
laiens ne istera il pas a son voloir. toute nuit fu laiens
in-there not will-go-out he at-all at his will all night was in-there
li cheualiers. Et al matin vint a lui vne damoisele
the knight And at-the morning came to him a damsel
auques deage & parla a li par vne fenestre si li dist.
somewhat of-age and spoke to him by a window so to-him says
Sire cheualier vous poes bien veoir comment il est. vous
Lord knight you can well see how it is you
ne poes de chaiens issir sans faire plait. Quel plait dame
not can from in-here go-out without making plea What plea lady
fait il. vous estes fait ele chil qui conquistes lonor de
says he you are says she that-one who conquered the-honor of
cest castel. Si deussies auoir mis le castel en pais. & vous
this castle So ought-you have put the castle in peace and you
en partistes en repost. Dame fait il est encore madame
thence parted in hiding Lady says he is yet my-lady
la roine deliuree. Oil fait ele & vous estes por lui remes.
the queen delivered Yes says she and you are for her remained
Si couient que par vous remaignent li enchantement del
So behooves-it that by you cease the enchantments of-the
castel. Comment fait il les porai ie faire remanoir. Se
castle How says he them shall-be-able I make cease If
vous iures que vous en feres vostre pooir selonc che
you swear that you thereof will-do your power according-to this
que lauenture aportera. vous seres de chaiens ietes. Et
that the-adventure will-bring you will-be from in-here cast And
il lotrie. lors sont aporte li saint a la fenestre. & li
he it-grants then are brought the relics to the window and the

cheualiers iure si com ele a deuise. & on oeure luis
knight swears so as she has devised and one opens the-door
de fer & il ist fors. Si li ont aporte a mengier
of iron and he goes out So to-him have-they brought to eat
moult bel. Car il nauoit onques mengie des le matin
very fair For he not-had ever eaten from the morning
del ior deuant. Comme il ot mengie si li deuisent
of-the day before When he had eaten so to-him describe-they
lauenture. & dient que .xl. Iors le couient demorer el
the-adventure and say that forty Days him behooves to-stay in-the
castel ou aler querre les cleis des enchantemens. Et il
castle or to-go seek the keys of-the enchantments And he
dist quil ira querre les cles sil seit ou eles sont.
says that-he will-go seek the keys if-he knows where they are
Mais hastes moi fait il ma besoigne car iai asses a faire
But hasten for-me says he my business for I-have much to do
aillors. Il li aportent ses armes. Et com il est armes
elsewhere They to-him bring his arms And when he is armed
si lenmainent en le chimentiere ou les tombes estoient.
so him-lead-they into the cemetery where the tombs were
De le chimentiere entrent en vne capele qui estoit el
From the cemetery enter-they into a chapel which was at-the
chief deuers la tour. Et quant il sont ens si li monstrent
head toward the tower And when they are in so to-him show-they
lentree dune caue desous terre. & dient que laiens est
the-entry of-a cave beneath ground and say that in-there is
la cles des enchantemens. Il se saigne si entre ens &
the key of-the enchantments He himself crosses so enters in and
porte son escu deuant son vis & sespee nue. Ne il ne voit
carries his shield before his face and his-sword bare Nor he not sees
goute fors que de la bee del huis. & voit auant moult
drop except that of the opening of-the door and sees ahead very

grant clarte. Il vient a chel huis. & com il i uient si
great brightness He comes to that door and when he there comes so
ot vne moult grant noise entor lui. Et il va toutes voies
hears-he a very great noise around him And he goes all ways
outre. & lors li est auis que toute la caue doie fondre
beyond and then to-him is opinion that all the cave ought collapse
& que toute la terre tornoit. Et il se prent au mur &
and that all the earth turned And he himself takes to-the wall and
va tout selonc iusca .j. huis qui est outre a lentree dune
goes all along up-to a door which is beyond at the-entry of-an
autre cambre. Com il vient al huis si voit .ij. cheualiers
other chamber When he comes to-the door so sees two knights
de coiure tresietes. & tient chascuns vne espee dachier si
of copper cast and holds each a sword of-steel so
grans & si pesant que asses eussent. doi. homme a leuer
great and so heavy that enough would-have-had two men to raise
en vne & gardent lentree del huis. Et ietent des espees
in one and they-guard the-entry of-the door And they-throw the swords
si menuement que nule riens ni passast sans colp
so rapidly that any thing not-there would-pass without blow
auoir. Li cheualiers nes redoute mie. ains iete lescu
having The knight not-them fears at-all rather throws the-shield
sor la teste si se lanche outre. Et li vns li doune tel
over the head so himself flings beyond And the one to-him gives such
cop que lescu li trenche doutre en outre. & li cols
blow that the-shield to-him cuts from-beyond to beyond and the blow
descent sor la destre espaule si len rest les mailles
descends on the right shoulder so to-him-thereof is-again the mails
del hauberc tout contreual rompus si felenessement que li
of-the hauberk all down broken so cruelly that the
sans vermax lencoule tout contreual le cors. & il fiert dans
blood red him-flows all down the body and he strikes both

.ij. les paumes a terre. Mais tost resali sus & reprent
two the palms to ground But quickly leapt-he-again up and takes-again
sespee qui li fu chaoite & prent son escu si sareste.
his-sword which to-him was fallen and takes his shield so himself-stops
ne onques ne regarda sauant li non. Si est venus a
nor ever not looked-he except-before him not So is-he come to
.j. autre huis. & voit a lentree vn puis dont la flairors
an other door and sees at the-entry a well whose the stench
est moult puans. Et del puis issoit toute la noise qui
is very foul And from-the well came-out all the noise which
par laiens estoit oie. si auoit de le .vij. grans pies.
through in-there was heard so had-it of breadth seven great feet
Li cheualiers voit le puis noir & hideus & dautre
The knight sees the well black and hideous and on-other
par tiert vns hons qui ot la teste noire com arremens.
part stands a man who had the head black as ink
& parmi la bouche li vole flambe toute perse. & li
and through the mouth to-him flies flame all blue and the
oeil li luisent comme carbon ardant. & ses dens sont
eyes to-him shine as coal burning and his teeth are
tous autreteles. li hons tenoit en sa main vne hache. &
all likewise the man held in his hand an axe and
com li cheualiers aproche si le prent as .ij. poins &
when the knight approaches so it takes-he with-the two fists and
le lieue en haut pour lui desfendre. & li cheualiers ne
it raises on high for himself to-defend and the knight not
voit comment il i puist entrer. Car sil ni auoit que
sees how he there could enter For if-it not-there had but
seul le puis si i auoit il moult felon trespas a cheualier
alone the well so there had it very cruel passage for knight
arme. Lors a remise lespee el fuerre & sache lescu
armed Then has-he put-back the-sword in-the scabbard and pulls the-shield

del col si le prent a le destre main par les enarmes.
from-the neck so it takes with the right hand by the straps
& puis sesloigne en mi le cambre & sen cort
and then himself-withdraws into middle the chamber and himself-thence runs
si tost com il pot aler. iusque sor le puis si iete auant
so fast as he could go up-to on the well so throws before
lui lescu & en fiert en mi le uis chelui qui le
him the-shield and therewith strikes in middle the face him who the
hache tenoit si durement que tous li escus est esquarteles.
axe held so hard that all the shield is quartered
ne onques chil ne se mut. Et il se lanche apres
nor ever that-one not himself moved And he himself flings after
de si grant forche com il venoit. si se fiert en chelui
with so great force as he came so himself strikes into him
si durement quil fust voles el puis sil ne se
so hard that-he would-have flown into-the well if-he not himself
fust a lui tenus. Lors laisse chil chaoir le hache. Car
were to him held Then lets that-one fall the axe For
le cheualiers la prins parmi la gorge as puins quil
the knight him-has taken by the throat with-the fists which-he
auoit fors & roides. Si la li destraint quil ne se
had strong and stiff So it to-him constrains that-he not himself
pot sor pies soustenir ains chiet a terre; ne na pooir
could on feet sustain rather falls to ground nor not-has power
de releuer. Et li cheualiers le traine sor le puis parmi la
to rise-again And the knight him drags over the well by the
gorge si le lanche ens. Lors a sespee retraite del
throat so him flings in Then has-he his-sword drawn-again from-the
fuerre. & voit deuant lui vne damoisele tresietee de cueure
scabbard and sees before him a damsel cast of copper
moult richement. si tient les cleis des enchantemens en
very richly so holds the keys of-the enchantments in

sa main destre. Et il les prent. puis vient au piler
her hand right And he them takes then comes to-the pillar
de coiure qui est en milieu de chele cambre. si list les
of copper which is in middle of that chamber so reads the
lettres quil i vit qui disoient. Ichi desferme la grosse
letters that-he there saw which said Here unfastens the great
clef & le menue desferme le coffre perilleus.
key and the small unfastens the coffer perilous

Li cheualiers desferme le piler a le cleif grosse. &
The knight unfastens the pillar with the key great and
com il vient au coffre si escoute & oit dedens si grant
when he comes to-the coffer so listens and hears within so great
noise & si grans cris que tous li pilers en trambloit.
noise and so great cries that all the pillar thereof trembled
Il se saigne puis vait le coffre desfremer. Si voit quil
He himself crosses then goes the coffer to-unfasten So sees that-there
en issoient .xxx. tuiel de coiure. & de chascune toiel
thence came-out thirty pipes of copper and from each pipe
vient vne asses hideuse vois. si estoit lune plus grosse que
comes a very hideous voice so was the-one more loud than
lautre. Et de ches vois venoient li enchantement & les
the-other And from these voices came the enchantments and the
merueilles de laiens. & il met el cofre la cleif. & com
marvels of in-there and he puts in-the coffer the key and when
il lot ouuert si en sailli .j. grans estorbellons & vne si
he it-had opened so thence leapt a great whirlwind and a so
grant noise quil fu auis que tout li diable i ffussent.
great noise that-it was opinion that all the devils there were
Et por voir si estoient il deable. & chil cai pasmes.
And for truth so were they devils and that-one fell fainted
Et com il fu reuenus si prent la clef del coffre si les
And when he was come-back so takes-he the key of-the coffer so them

emporte & chele del piler autresi. & com il vient au
carries-off and that-one of-the pillar likewise and when he comes to-the
puis si treuue le plache autresi plaine comme en mi lieu
well so finds the place as level as in middle place
de la cambre. Et il se regarde si voit le piler fondre
of the chamber And he himself looks so sees the pillar melt
tot ius quen terre. & la damoisele de coeure autresi.
all down into ground and the damsel of copper likewise
& les .ij. cheualier qui luis gardoient tous debrisies. Et
and the two knights who the-door guarded all broken And
il vient hors a tous les cles. si voit toutes les gens
he comes out with all the keys so sees all the people
del castel qui li vienent a lencontre. Et com il vint
of-the castle who to-him come to the-meeting And when he came
en le chimentiere si ne voit nule des tombes ne des
into the cemetery so not sees-he any of-the tombs nor of-the
hiaumes qui sor les creniax soloient estre. Lors font tout
helms which on the crenels were-wont to-be Then make all
de lui moult grant feste. Et il offre les cles sor lautel de
of him very great feast And he offers the keys on the-altar of
la capele. & il le mainent iuscal palais. Si ne seroit
the chapel and they him lead to-the palace So not would-be-it
pas la ioie legiere a dire con fait de lui & li
at-all the joy light to tell which-they make of him and to-him
connoissent comment il lauoient fait sieuir a lescuier.
acknowledge how they him-had made follow by the-squire
pour dire coment la roine estoit laiens en prison. Car
for to-say how the queen was in-there in prison For
nous pensiens que vostre grant proece vous feroit por li
we thought that your great prowess you would-make for her
metre en prison. Et com il voit que la roine ni auoit
put in prison And when he sees that the queen not-there had

pas este. si se tient a decheu. Et neporquant nel
at-all been so himself holds for deceived And nevertheless not-it
vaudroit pas encore auoir a ffaire. Chele nuit demoura
would-wish-he at-all still to-have to do That night stayed-he
en la dolerouse garde. & al matin sen parti. que
in the dolorous guard and at-the morning himself-thence parted-he for
plus ne porent detenir. & des lors en auant fu apeles li
more not could-they detain-him and from then in forward was called the
chastiax la ioiouse garde. Issi sen part li cheualiers
castle the joyous guard Thus himself-thence parts the knight
si oire tant a petites iournes que a lassamblee vint. Ne
so travels so-far by little journeys that to the-assembly came-he Nor
de chose qui entre .ij. li auint ne parole li contes chi.
of thing which between two to-him befell not speaks the tale here
fors tant que a la chite ou il auoit fait lescu uermeil
except so-much that at the city where he had made the-shield red
fist .j. escu blanc a vne bende noire. Et chelui porta il
made-he a shield white with a band black And that-one bore he
a lassamblee. Ore retorne li contes a monsigneur Gauuain.
to the-assembly Now returns the tale to my-lord Gawain

The Second Assembly

XIII

The knight of the port turns out to be Gawain's brother Gaheriet, and together they win back the damsels from an old knight; Brun again demands the maidens, and Gaheriet wounds him. At the second assembly the white knight with the black band wins everything, unhorsing Gawain's brothers Agravain and Guerrehet. Gawain follows him into the forest with the damsel, who tells him that the knight is Lancelot of the Lake, son of King Ban of Benoic. Lancelot will neither confirm nor deny it, and rides away angry. Gawain carries his name to Arthur's court.

Or sen vait mesire Gauuain entre lui & le cheualier
Now himself-thence goes my-lord Gawain between him and the knight
del port & la damoisele qui son ami auoit laissie naure. si
of-the port and the damsel who her friend had left wounded so
oirent iuscal castel que li cheualiers li auoit monstre.
traveled-they up-to-the castle which the knight to-him had shown
A lentree del castel auoit .j. pont moult estroit & moult
At the-entry of-the castle was a bridge very narrow and very
mal mis desor vne iaue noire & parfonde. Et cil qui
badly set over a water black and deep And that-one who
estoit auoec monsignor Gauuain venu deschent a pie & si
was with my-lord Gawain come dismounts on foot and so
li dist. Sire ie irai avant & vous remandrois decha.
to-him says Lord I shall-go ahead and you will-remain on-this-side
& se ie vous apel si me venes aidier. & il dist que si
and if I you call so me come to-help and he says that so
fera il. Li cheualiers passe le pont tous armes a pie. Et
will-do he The knight passes the bridge all armed on foot And
com il fu outre si vienent a lui doi cheualier desarme &
when he was beyond so come to him two knights disarmed and
li dient que combatre le couient. lun oeure la porte
to-him say that to-fight him behooves the-one opens the gate

& vns cheualiers ist fors tous armes. & laisse coure au
and a knight goes out all armed and lets run at-the
cheualier & il a lui & se combatent moult longement.
knight and he at him and themselves fight very long
li cheualiers del castel ne pot longuement lautre souffrir
the knight of-the castle not could long the-other endure
si li dist. ie ne me combaterai plus a vous. Che veul
so to-him says I not myself shall-fight more with you This wish
ie fait il. & il li fait amener .j. cheual. Montes fait il.
I says he and he to-him makes bring a horse Mount says he
lors est montes. Et li cheualiers issent hors a cheual &
then is-he mounted And the knights go out on horse and
laissent coure vers lui. Il sentrefierent si durement quil
let run toward him They strike-each-other so hard that-they
sentreportent a terre. Et resalent en pies lor espees traites
bear-each-other to ground And leap-again on feet their swords drawn
si se courent sus. Et lors vient hors vns cheualiers
so themselves run upon And then comes out a knight
tous armes a pie si aide au cheualier de laiens. Et li
all armed on foot so helps to-the knight of in-there And the
autres se desfent a aus .ij. moult durement.
other himself defends against them two very hard

Quant il ot combatu a aus vne pieche. si regarde li
When he had fought with them a while so looks the
cheualiers monsignor Gauuain & dist. biaus frere venes moi
knight at-my-lord Gawain and says fair brother come me
aidier. Mesire Gauuain passe le pont a pie si li vint
to-help My-lord Gawain passes the bridge on foot so to-him came
aidier. Et puis quil i fu venus norent chil a euls
to-help And after that-he there was come not-had those against them
duree. ains se metent ens parmi la porte. & ele clost
lasting rather themselves put in through the gate and it closes

apres aus. Et li cheualiers qui aidoit monsignor Gauuain.
after them And the knight who helped my-lord Gawain
ot chaut si oste son hiaume. Si connoist mesire Gauuain
had heat so removes his helm So knows my-lord Gawain
que chest gaharies ses frere si ot moult grant ioie. li
that this-is Gaheriet his brother so had-he very great joy the
cheualiers qui ot dit a gahariet ie ne me combaterai plus
knight who had said to Gaheriet I not myself shall-fight more
a vous fu en la place. Et mesire Gauuain dist. que ferons
with you was in the place And my-lord Gawain says what shall-do
nous de nos cheuax passer & de chele puchele la. faites
we of our horses to-pass and of that maiden there make
venir auant fait li cheualiers le palefroi a la pucele & li
come forward says the knight the palfrey of the maiden and the
cheual venront apres. issi les passerent. Et la puchele ua
horses will-come after thus them passed-they And the maiden goes
apres. & mesire Gauuain demande au cheualier sil seit
after and my-lord Gawain asks to-the knight if-he knows
nule nouele des puceles qui li furent tolues. Eles sont
any news of-the maidens who from-him were taken They are
fait il la sus en chele sale. lors li doune ghaharies
says he there up in that hall then to-him gives Gaheriet
son cheual quil li auoit doune. Et il monte sus &
his horse which-he to-him had given And he mounts upon and
la puchele sour son palefroi si sen vont issi tout
the maiden on her palfrey so themselves-thence go thus all
.iiij. iusquen la sale. Com il entrent ens si voient .j.
four as-far-into the hall When they enter in so see-they a
cheualier deage qui seoit en vne caiere couerte dune moult
knight of-age who sat in a chair covered with-a very
riche queute pointe. & deuant li seoient les damoiseles.
rich quilt stitched and before him sat the damsels

Et quant eles veoient monsignor Gauuain si ont moult
And when they saw my-lord Gawain so have-they very
grant ioie & il dist au cheualier qui seoit en la caiere.
great joy and he says to-the knight who sat in the chair
biax sire ces pucheles me furent tolues a tort si les
fair lord these maidens from-me were taken in wrong so them
enmenrai. Sire vous feries outrage fait li cheualiers.
shall-I-lead-off Lord you would-do outrage says the knight
Sire fait mesire Gauuain nous sommes troi cheualier
Lord says my-lord Gawain we are three knights
& chi a .iij. pucheles. si vous combates a nous vous
and here are three maidens so you fight with us you
tiers & se conquerre nous poes si les aies toutes quites.
third and if to-conquer us you-can so them have all quit
nen ferai noiant fait li cheualiers. Mais or vous
not-thereof shall-I-do anything says the knight But now yourself
herbergies o moi huimais & ie vous ferai ostel moult
lodge with me today-more and I you shall-make lodging very
boin & moult bel. lostel fait mesire Gauuain prendrons
good and very fair the-lodging says my-lord Gawain shall-take
nous volentiers. li cheualiers les herberge moult bien. &
we willingly the knight them lodges very well and
al matin sen partent & enmainent les pucheles.
at-the morning themselves-thence part-they and lead-off the maidens
biax sire fait li sires de laiens a monsignor Gauuain vous
fair lord says the lord of in-there to my-lord Gawain you
enmenes ches pucheles a forche & quant ie porrai ie
lead-off these maidens by force and when I shall-be-able I
men vengerai. Chertes fait mesire Gauuain ie les en
myself-thereof shall-avenge Certainly says my-lord Gawain I them thereof
quit a droit mener comme les moies. & si vous en ai
think by right to-lead as the mine and so you thereof have-I

asses offert. Il sen vont & cheuauchent que il
enough offered They themselves-thence go and ride until they
vienent a lentree dune forest si ont coisi .x. cheualiers
come to the-entry of-a forest so have-they perceived ten knights
armes qui trauersent vne lande & vienent vers aus. Et
armed who cross a heath and come toward them And
la damoisele qui auoit eu lami naure les connoist.
the damsel who had had the-friend wounded them knows
& dist a monsignor Gauuain. vees les traitors qui mon
and says to my-lord Gawain see the traitors who my
ami mochistrent. & vo pucheles vous tolirent. Et chil
friend me-killed and your maidens from-you took And those
aprochent toute voies & li vns daus dist Gauuain. gauwain
approach all ways and the one of-them says Gawain Gawain
laissies les pucheles que vous les enmenes maluaisement.
leave the maidens for you them lead-off badly
Or vous ai .ij. fois repris de maluaistie de chesti & de
Now you have-I two times reproved of wickedness of this and of
mon couent que vous me faussastes. lors connut mesire
my covenant which you to-me broke then knew my-lord
Gauuain que chestoit bruns sans pitie.
Gawain that it-was Brun without pity

Brun fait il ie ne vous resamble mie qui me vausistes
Brun says he I not you resemble at-all who me wished
faire ochire en traison. Et se vous vous en oses
to-make kill in treason And if you yourself thereof dare
desfendre ie le monsterroie contre vo cors orendroit. Lors
defend I it would-show against your body right-now Then
conte a gaheriet comment li doi cheualier li falirent
tells-he to Gaheriet how the two knights to-him failed
la ou bruns li failli. Comment fait gaharies. bruns si
there where Brun to-him failed How says Gaheriet Brun so

ne seres mie si hardis que vous vous oses desfendre de
not will-be-you at-all so bold that you yourself dare defend of
traison. Ie men desfenderoie bien fait il a .j. millor
treason I myself-thereof would-defend well says he against a better
cheualier que vous nestes. Si mait diex fait ghaharies
knight than you are So me-may-help God says Gaheriet
mestiers vous est. & bruns sen commenche a aler &
need to-you is and Brun himself-thence begins to go and
li sien. Tant sachies vous bien fait ghaharies que ie vous
the his So-much know you well says Gaheriet that I you
deffi. & se vous ne retornes ie vous ferrai par derriere. si
defy and if you not return I you shall-strike from behind so
i aurois honte. lors li laisse courre. & chil loit
there will-have-you shame then at-him lets run and that-one him-bears
venir & se tourne si sentredounent grans cols sor lescus.
come and himself turns so give-each-other great blows on the-shields
bruns brise sa lanche & gaharies le fiert tres parmi lescu
Brun breaks his lance and Gaheriet him strikes right through the-shield
& parmi le hauberc si le point en la mamele. Il lempaint
and through the hauberk so him pricks in the breast He him-thrusts
durement si le porte a terre. Et tout li autre .ix. fierent
hard so him bears to ground And all the other nine strike
sor gahariet & sor son cheual & sor son escu. si li
on Gaheriet and on his horse and on his shield so to-him
ochient son cheual & portent lun & lautre a terre. lors
kill his horse and bear the-one and the-other to ground then
lor adrechent entre monsignor Gauuain & le cheualier
at-them direct-themselves between my-lord Gawain and the knight
si en fierent .ij. Mais mesire Gauuain ochist le sien &
so thereof strike-they two But my-lord Gawain kills the his and
li autres cheualiers si en ochist .j. autre. Et Gaharies
the other knight so thereof kills one other And Gaheriet

se lanche sor .j. des cheuax & tout li autre sen
himself throws on one of-the horses and all the others themselves-thence
tournent fuiant. & gaharies reuient a brun si li cort sus.
turn fleeing and Gaheriet comes-back to Brun so to-him runs upon
Mais il descent auant a pie. & bruns dist quil ne se
But he dismounts first on foot and Brun says that-he not himself
combatera mie a aus .iij. Mais ie me combaterai a vous
will-fight at-all with them three But I myself shall-fight with you
se vous oses fait il a gahariet en la maison le roi artu.
if you dare says he to Gaheriet in the house (of-)the king Arthur
lors si sera veus li mieudres. & gaharies lotroie. fianchies
then so will-be seen the better and Gaheriet it-grants pledge
fait il che a tenir. & il li fianche. lors li baillent
says he this to hold and he to-him pledges then to-him hand-they
son cheual si sen part. & il orent pris chelui qui
his horse so himself-thence parts and they had taken that-one which
fu au cheualier que mesire Gauuain ot abatu. sel font
was of-the knight whom my-lord Gawain had struck-down so-him make
monter en son cheual & la puchele qui ot lami naure
mount on his horse and the maiden who had the-friend wounded
prent congie si les commande a dieu. Et mesire Gauuain
takes leave so them commends to God And my-lord Gawain
li baille le cheualier prison. si li fait fianchier quil
to-her hands the knight prisoner so to-him makes pledge that-he
se contendra vers li comme prisons. Sire fait ele grans
himself will-conduct toward her as prisoner Lord says she great
mercis. Car ore maues vous si vengie com ie voloie. Quar
thanks For now me-have you so avenged as I wished For
chi qui vous aues mort douna a mon ami le colp mortel.
he whom you have killed gave to my friend the blow mortal

Atant sempart & mesire Gauuain oire & sa
Thereupon herself-thence-parts and my-lord Gawain travels and his
compaignie tant quil sont venu a lassamblee. Et le iour
company until that-they are come to the-assembly And the day
meisme quele deuoit estre. Si i auoit ia asses de
same that-it was-to be So there were already many of
cheualiers assambles. & les .ij. pucheles sen entrent
knights assembled and the two maidens themselves-thence enter
el castel. & mesire Gauuain & gaharies & li autre
into-the castle and my-lord Gawain and Gaheriet and the other
cheualier ne porterent mie le ior armes. si fu li tornoiemens
knight not bore at-all the day arms so was the tourneying
moult biax. Car asses i auoit cheualiers dambes .ij. pars
very fair For many there were knights of-both two parts
Lors vient assambler li blans cheualiers qui porte lescu
Then comes to-join-battle the white knight who bears the-shield
dargent a le bende noire si commenche a iouster si
of-silver with the band black so begins to joust so
durement que tout li desarme lesgardent a merueilles. &
hard that all the unarmed him-watch at marvels and
des armes grant partie. & il auoit des lanches fors a grant
of-the armed great part and he had of-the lances strong in great
plente. Et il le fait si bien de toutes cheualeries que tout
plenty And he it does so well in all knighthoods that all
vaint. Gaharies vient a monsignor Gauuain. si li dist.
he-conquers Gaheriet comes to my-lord Gawain so to-him says
Sire chi a .j. cheualier qui iouste trop durement. & dela
Lord here is a knight who jousts very hard and yonder
a .ij. de nos freires. & sil sencontrent souent il ne puet
are two of our brothers and if-they meet often it not can
estre que li vns nel compere. Dites au cheualier que por
be that the one not-it pay Say to-the knight that for

amor de nous laist a encontrer nos freres. & ie leur
love of us he-leave-off to meet our brothers and I to-them
irai dire autretel. Ne li doi freire monsignor Gauuain
shall-go to-say the-same Nor the two brothers (of-)my-lord Gawain
nestoient mie dela. por quil vausissent estre contre les
not-were at-all yonder for that-they would-wish to-be against the
compaignons le roi artu. Mais quant les assemblees
companions (of-)the king Arthur But when the assemblies
deuoient estre. si auenoit maintes fois que li legier bachelier
were-to be so befell-it many times that the light bachelors
& li poure homme tornoient auant. Et lendemain ou
and the poor men tourneyed first And the-next-day or
au tier ior tornoient tout. & baron & bacheler. Mesire
on-the third day tourneyed all both barons and bachelors My-lord
Gauuain vient au cheualier si li dist. Sire ie vous pri
Gawain comes to-the knight so to-him says Lord I you beg
& requier que vous nencontres mie ches .ij. cheualiers de
and request that you not-meet at-all these two knights from
la. lors li monstre. & li cheualiers dit que non fera il.
there then to-him shows-them and the knight says that not will-do he
se sor soi desfendant nest & quil li couiegne faire.
unless on himself defending not-it-be and that-it to-him behoove to-do
Gaharies vient a ses freires si lor dist autretel. pourcoi
Gaheriet comes to his brothers so to-them says the-same wherefore
ne lenconterons dont font il. por che fait ghaharies quil est
not him-shall-meet-we then say they for this says Gaheriet that-he is
nostre parens. Si mait diex fait agrauains por che quil
our kinsman So me-may-help God says Agravain for this that-he
le fait bien si le paierons. Onques por Gahariet nen
it does well so him shall-pay-we Ever for Gaheriet not-thereof
firent riens. Ains muit agrauains tantost por ioster au
did-they anything Rather moved Agravain at-once for to-joust with-the

cheualier. sel fiert si que toute sa lanche vole en pieches.
knight so-him strikes so that all his lance flies in pieces
Et li cheualiers fiert lui si quil le porte a terre. Il prent
And the knight strikes him so that-he him bears to ground He takes
le cheual si le rent a monsignor Gauuain. si li dist.
the horse so it renders to my-lord Gawain so to-him says
Tenes sire ie nen puis mais. Che voi ie bien fait mesire
Take lord I not-thereof can more This see I well says my-lord
Gauuain. Quant Guerrehes voit son frere caoir si muet a
Gawain When Guerrehet sees his brother fall so moves-he to
iouster au cheualier. & fiert le cheual des esperons qui
joust with-the knight and strikes the horse with-the spurs which
tost lenporte & chil encontre lui. li cheual vont trop
quickly him-carries and that-one against him the horses go very
tost & les lanches sont groses & cortes & li cheualier
fast and the lances are thick and short and the knights
fort & roit. si se fierent si sor les escus que les lanches
strong and stiff so themselves strike so on the shields that the lances
volent en pieches. Mais ne cai ne li vns ne li autres.
fly in pieces But not fell either the one nor the other
moult en sont andui caut & dolant. Car moult vausist
very thereof are both hot and sorrowful For much would-wish
chascuns abatre son compaignon. lors sentreloignent
each to-strike-down his companion then draw-apart-they
& prenent lanches groces & sentreuienent moult tost si
and take lances thick and meet-each-other very fast so
sentredounent grans cols sor les escus. Guerrehes brise sa
give-each-other great blows on the shields Guerrehet breaks his
lanche & li cheualiers fiert lui si durement. que il porte
lance and the knight strikes him so hard that he bears

lui & son cheual tout en .j. mont. Ghaharies le voit se il
him and his horse all in one heap Gaberiet it sees so he
monstre monsignor Gauuain. vees sire fait il or est nouals.
shows to-my-lord Gawain see lord says he now is worse
De toutes cheualeries venqui tout li cheualiers chelui ior.
In all knighthoods conquered all the knight that day
Et quant mesire Gauuain voit que il vaint issi tout. &
And when my-lord Gawain sees that he conquers thus all and
que il a ses .ij. freires abatus. si se pense que chest
that he has his two brothers struck-down so himself bethinks that it-is
li cheualiers que il quiert. lors vient au chastel & apele
the knight whom he seeks then comes-he to-the castle and calls
la damoisele qui le non au cheualier li doit dire. Et
the damsel who the name of-the knight to-him ought say And
ele monte en .j. palefroi si vient a lui dehors les murs.
she mounts on a palfrey so comes to him outside the walls
Damoisele fait il que sera il del non au cheualier que
Damsel says he what will-be there of-the name of-the knight which
vous me deues dire. Chertes fait ele ie quit que che soit
you to-me ought say Certainly says she I think that this be
chil qui tout a vencu. Or nous prenons dont garde
that-one who all has conquered Now ourselves take then heed
quel part il ira al partir del tournoiement. vous dites
what part he will-go at-the parting from-the tourneying you say
bien fait ele. Ne demoura puis gaires apres che que li
well says she Not tarried-it after much after this that the
tornoiemens remest & fu bas vespres. Et li cheualiers
tourneying ceased and it-was low vespers And the knight
qui tout ot vencu sempart & se met en la forest
who all had conquered himself-thence-parts and himself puts into the forest
si sen quide moult bien aler que len ne laperchoiue;
so himself-thence thinks-he very well to-go that one not him-perceive

Et il gisoit en la forest chis .j. viel cheualier moult en
And he lay in the forest at an old knight very in
destroit. Mesire Gauuain & la damoisele vont apres si
distress My-lord Gawain and the damsel go after so
lataignent en la forest. Diex vous conduie sire fait mesire
him-overtake in the forest God you may-guide lord says my-lord
Gauuain & chil le regarde moult & le reconnoist bien
Gawain and that-one him looks-at much and him recognizes well
& dist que diex le benie. Si est moult dolans de che
and says that God him may-bless So is-he very sorrowful for this
que quil la ataint. Sire fait mesire Gauuain dites moi
that that-he him-has overtaken Lord says my-lord Gawain tell me
par amors qui vous estes. sire fait il vns cheualiers sui che
by loves who you are lord says he a knight am-I this
poes vous veoir. Cheualiers fait mesire Gauuain estes vous
can you see Knight says my-lord Gawain are you
sans faille .j. des millors del monde. Mais par amors me
without fail one of-the best of-the world But by loves to-me
dites comment vous aues non. Nel vous dirai mie fait il.
tell how you have name Not-it to-you shall-tell-I at-all says he
ha! biax amis fait la puchele dites li. & se vous ne li
ah fair friend says the maiden tell him and if you not to-him
dites ie li dirai. Car il en a tante paine soufferte que
tell I to-him shall-tell For he thereof has so-much pain suffered that
bien le doit sauoir. Et il ne respont mie anchois se
well it ought-he know And he not answers at-all rather himself
taist. Sire fait la puchele a monsignor Gauuain ie voi bien
is-silent Lord says the maiden to my-lord Gawain I see well
quil ne le vous dira mie. Mais iel vous dirai que ia
that-he not it to-you will-tell at-all But I-it to-you shall-tell for ever
ne men pariurerai. bien sachies que chest lancelos del
not myself-thereof shall-forswear well know that it-is Lancelot of-the

lac. li fiex au roi ban de benoyc. chil qui a hui vencu
lake the son of-the king Ban of benoic that-one who has today won
ceste assamblee. & lautre venqui il autresi as vermeilles
this assembly and the-other won he likewise with-the red
armes. & fist le roi entrer en la dolerouse garde. De ce
arms and made the king enter into the dolorous guard Of this
fet misire Gauuain ai ieo moult grant ioie. vous deuez
says my-lord Gawain have I very great joy you ought
le fet ele tant amer cum ce lui qui de la prison vous
him says she as-much love as that him who from the prison you
geta. & pur ce ai ie tant garde la dolerouse garde.
cast and for this have I so-long guarded the dolorous guard
Lors sumilie mesire Gauuain moult uers lui. & li
Then himself-humbles my-lord Gawain much toward him and to-him
dist sire por dieu dites moi se chest voirs quele ma
says lord for God tell me if it-is true what-she me-has
dit. Et chil rougist si que tous li vis li escauffe.
said And that-one reddens so that all the face to-him heats
& regarde la pucele moult ireement. Et dist a monsignor
and looks-at the maiden very angrily And says to my-lord
Gauuain. Sire ele vous a dit che que li plot. mais ele
Gawain Lord she to-you has said this that to-her pleased but she
sen poist bien taire. Ne dendroit de moi ne vous en
herself-thereof could well be-silent Nor as-regards of me not to-you thereof
di ie rien. Car ie ne voeil dire que che soit voirs ne quele
say I anything For I not wish to-say that this be true nor that-she
mente. Chertes sire fait mesire Gauuain se vous nel dites
lies Certainly lord says my-lord Gawain if you not-it say
sel croi ie bien que il est voirs. Or si men irai car
so-it believe I well that it is true Now so myself-thence shall-I-go for
iai bien achieue quanques ie queroie dieu merchi. Mesire
I-have well achieved whatever I sought God thanks My-lord

Gauuain sen uait auant. & sen retorne au
Gawain himself-thence goes ahead and himself-thence returns to-the
chastel arriere si fait lie mainte gent de sa queste quil
castle back so makes glad many people with his quest which-he
a achieuee. & dautre part sen vait li cheualiers &
has achieved and on-other part himself-thence goes the knight and
la damoisele le sieut & il fait moult laide chiere. & doi
the damsel him follows and he makes very ugly face and two
de ses escuiers qui toute ior auoient este auoec lui el
of his squires who all day had been with him in-the
tornoiement sen furent ale auant a lostel. Ensi fu
tourneying themselves-thence were gone ahead to the-lodging Thus was
li cheualiers conneus de monsignor Gauuain & par che
the knight known by my-lord Gawain and by this
nosa il reuenir lendemain a lassamblee. Car il cremoit
not-dared he return the-next-day to the-assembly For he feared
estre de laiens. Si se taist chi endroit li contes de lui
to-be from in-there So itself is-silent here in-place the tale of him
& de sa compaignie. Et retorne a monsignor Gauuain.
and of his company And returns to my-lord Gawain
qui moult est lies de sa queste quil a a fin menee.
who very is glad of his quest which-he has to end brought
Lendemain porta mesire Gauuain armes & moult le
The-next-day bore my-lord Gawain arms and very it
fist bien. Ne plus nen deuise chis contes fors tant
did well Nor more not-thereof describes this tale except so-much
que li compaignon le roi artu en orent le plus
that the companions (of-)the king Arthur thereof had the most
bel. Et moult i perdi li rois doutre les marches. Et
fair And much there lost the king of-beyond the marches And
il meismes i fu moult durement blechies. Et par che
he himself there was very hard hurt And by this

remest lassamblee que onques puis ni ot rien fait por
ceased the-assembly that ever after not-there was anything done for
chel meschief. Si en ot guerrehes le pris dambe .ij. pars.
that mishap So thereof had Guerrehet the prize of-both two parts
Apres lassamblee sen ala mesire Gauuain a la cort
After the-assembly himself-thence went my-lord Gawain to the court
le roi son oncle. & enmena lautre pucele qui remeise
(of-)the king his uncle and led-off the-other maiden who remained
estoit. & troua le roi a carduel. Et quant li rois le vit
was and found the king at carlisle And when the king him saw
si fist moult grant ioie de lui & la roine & tout chil
so made-he very great joy of him and the queen and all those
de la cort. Et li rois li demande biax nies aues
of the court And the king of-him asks fair nephew have-you
encore achieue vostre queste. Oil sire fait il. Qui fu fait
yet achieved your quest Yes lord says he Who was says
li rois li cheualiers qui nous fist entrer en la dolerouse
the king the knight who us made enter into the dolorous
garde. che fu fait il lancelos del lac li fiex au roi ban
guard this was says he Lancelot of-the lake the son of-the king Ban
de benoyc. & che fu cil qui venqui lassamblee del
of benoic and this was that-one who won the-assembly of-the
roi doutre les marces quant il porta armes vermeilles. Et
king of-beyond the marches when he bore arms red And
cheste dont nous venons ra il vencue & ie parlai a
this whence we come again-has he won and I spoke to
lui. Si sachies que chest .j. des plus biax cheualiers del
him So know that it-is one of-the most fair knights of-the
monde & le miex taillies de tous menbres. Et si est vns
world and the best shaped in all limbs And so is-he one
des millors qui ore soit. Et sil vit longement il sera li
of-the best who now be And if-he lives long he will-be the

mieudres. Tant est espandue la nouele que tout le seuent
best So-far is spread the news that all it know
& cheualier & dames par laiens. Et chi fu premierement
both knights and ladies through in-there And here was first
conneus a court li nons lancelot del lac li fiex au roi
known at court the name (of-)Lancelot of-the lake the son of-the king
ban de benoyc. & quil estoit vis & sains dont mainte
Ban of benoic and that-he was alive and sound whereof many
gent furent lie. pour che que longement auoient quidie que
people were glad for this that long had-they thought that
il fust mors des senfanche. Et mesire Gauuain aporta son
he were dead from his-childhood And my-lord Gawain brought his
non a cort en teil maniere. Mais chi endroit ne parole
name to court in such manner But here in-place not speaks
plus le conte de monsignor Gauuain ne del roi. Ains
more the tale of my-lord Gawain nor of-the king Rather
retorne au cheualier dont li nons est aportes a cort.
returns-it to-the knight whose the name is brought to court

The Host at the Ford

XIV

Lancelot, recognized by Gawain, keeps away from the assembly. At a ford a bartizan's porter will let no knight of Arthur's pass, but the lady sees his shield and brings him in. Her lord, Lancelot's host, is the nephew of the man who wounded the knight Lancelot unfastened, and guards a bridge against the knight who swore to avenge the wounded man. Lancelot asks him as a gift to say, while Lancelot is in his house, that he loves the wounded man more; the host faints, then follows him and fights, and refusing to say it again, is thrown into the water and drowns, and Lancelot weeps.

Quant li cheualiers fu conneus de monsignor Gauuain. si
When the knight was known by my-lord Gawain so
iut la nuit chis le vauassor en la forest. & lendemain
lay-he the night at the vavasor in the forest and the-next-day
se leuerent matin entre lui & la damoisele & ses
themselves rose-they early between him and the damsel and his
escuiers. & cheuauchierent en autre sentier que vers
squires and rode on other path than toward
lassamblee. Car il ni osoit aler por paor destre conneus.
the-assembly For he not-there dared go for fear of-being known
& il cheuauche tous armes fors que de son hiaume &
and he rides all armed except that of his helm and
de son escu. quil fait touteuois porter & courir de la
of his shield which-he makes all-ways carry and cover with the
hauche. Et la damoisele li conte les proeches monsigneur
cover And the damsel to-him tells the prowesses (of-)my-lord
Gauuain teiles com ele les a veues. Ensi cheualchent
Gawain such as she them has seen Thus ride-they
longuement. Tant que .j. ior auint quil aprochierent
long Until that one day befell that-they approached

dune Iaue lee & basse & quant il vienent a liaue
of-a Water broad and low and when they come to the-water
si ni voient point de pont Mais .j. gue i auoit &
so not-there see-they any of bridge But a ford there was and
desus chel gue dautre part estoit vne bertesque haute. si
above that ford on-other part was a bartizan high so
estoit liaue close de haut palis bien vne archie entor le
was the-water closed with high palisade well a bowshot around the
bertesque. Il vienent au gue. si passent auant li escuier
bartizan They come to-the ford so pass ahead the squires
& la damoisele apres & li cheualiers se met deriere si
and the damsel after and the knight himself puts behind so
passent outre. Et quant il vienent a la bertesque. si laisse
pass-they beyond And when they come to the bartizan so lets
cil qui le gardoit passer les escuiers & la damoisele.
that-one who it guarded pass the squires and the damsel
& quant il sont ens si clot la porte. Li cheualiers
and when they are in so closes-he the gate The knight
demande sil pora passer autresi com li autre. & il
asks if-he will-be-able pass just as the others and he
li dist qui estes vous .j. cheualier sui fait il au roi
to-him says who are you a knight am-I says he of-the king
artu. Dont ni passeres vous mie fait li portiers. ne
Arthur Then not-there will-pass you at-all says the porter neither
vous ne nus qui a artu soit. Nen puis mais fait il.
you nor anyone who of Arthur be Not-thereof can-I more says he
dont me laissies ariere uenir mes escuiers & ma pucele.
then me let back come my squires and my maiden
Et il dist que non fera. & quant li cheualiers voit quil
And he says that not will-he and when the knight sees that-he
nen fera plus si sen torne. Et as fenestres de la
not-thereof will-do more so himself-thence turns And at-the windows of the

bertesque auoit vne dame si apela le vallet qui lescu au
bartizan was a lady so called the youth who the-shield of-the
cheualier portoit si le descueure ele meismes. & quant ele
knight carried so it uncovers she herself and when she
la veu si apele le portier. Or tost fait ele va apres le
it-has seen so calls the porter Now quickly says she go after the
cheualier car chest li mieudres cheualiers del monde. Et
knight for it-is the best knight of-the world And
chil saut sor .j. destrier & cort outre liaue si ramaine
that-one leaps on a charger and runs beyond the-water so brings-back
le cheualier & la dame li vient a lencontre & li
the knight and the lady to-him comes to the-meeting and to-him
dist ains quil viegne a le bertesque. sire cheualiers par
says before that-he may-come to the bartizan lord knight by
la rien que vous plus ames otroies moi anuit a herbergier
the thing that you most love grant me tonight to lodge
chaiens. Se vous naues tel chose a ffaire ou vous eussies
in-here If you not-have such thing to do where you would-have
honte en si tost herbergier. Dame fait il tant maues
shame thereof so soon to-lodge Lady says he so-much me-have-you
coniure que ie herbergerai. Il entre en la bertesque &
conjured that I shall-lodge He enters into the bartizan and
ele lenmaine en moult beles cambres qui sont en haut si
she him-leads into very fair chambers which are on high so
li ostent ses armes. & il remest en pur le cors si
from-him remove-they his arms and he remained in pure the body so
fu a merueilles biax & plaisans. Et la dame lesgarde
was-he to marvels fair and pleasing And the lady him-looks-at
moult volentiers. Il fu asses qui le mengier apparella.
very willingly There were enough who the meal prepared
& quant il durent mangier si vint laiens vns cheualiers
and when they were-to eat so came in-there a knight

tous armes; & chestoit li sires de laiens. Et la dame
all armed and it-was the lord of in-there And the lady
li saut encontre & dist. Sire vous aues .j. oste. Qui
to-him leaps to-meet and says Lord you have a guest Who
est fait il. Chest fait ele li boins cheualiers qui uenqui
is-he says he It-is says she the good knight who won
lassamblee lautre ior. Ie ne vous en querroie pas fait il
the-assembly the-other day I not you thereof would-believe at-all says he
se ie ne ueoie son escu. & la dame saut a .j. croc ou
if I not saw his shield and the lady leaps to a hook where
il pendoit si li monstre a descouert. & li cheualiers
it hung so to-him shows-it at uncovered and the knight
qui li escus estoit en est moult iries si li dist.
whose the shield was thereof is very angry so to-him says
Auoir dame vous maues herbergie & si me faites ia
Ah-truly lady you me-have lodged and so to-me do already
anui & honte. Chertes sire fait ele Ie vous quidoie faire
annoyance and shame Certainly lord says she I you thought to-do
moult grant honor Sire fait li cheualiers de laiens ne vous
very great honor Lord says the knight of in-there not you
em poist mie. Car vous estes li cheualiers el monde
thereof may-it-weigh at-all For you are the knight in-the world
que ie desire plus a acointier. lors se fait desarmer
whom I desire most to know then himself makes-he disarm
& puis sassiet dales lui si li conte quil lauoit abatu
and then himself-sits beside him so to-him tells that-he him-had struck-down
a lassemblee lui & son cheual si durement que par .j. poi
at the-assembly him and his horse so hard that by a little
quil not le cuer creue. Tant ont parle que li mangiers
that-he not-had the heart burst So-long have-they spoken that the meal
fu pres si mangierent. & apres mangier demanda li
was ready so ate-they and after eating asked the

cheualier estraignes au signeur de la maison dont il venoit
knight strange to-the lord of the house whence he came
issi armes. Sire fait il dun pont qui est cha desous. si le
thus armed Lord says he from-a bridge which is here below so it
gart chascun ior des cheualiers le roi artu. porcoi fait
guard-I each day from-the knights (of-)the king Arthur wherefore says
il. sire fait il por sauoir se vns cheualiers i passeroit qui
he lord says he for to-know if a knight there would-pass who
iura a .j. cheualier naure quil le vengeroit de tous chiax
swore to a knight wounded that-he him would-avenge on all those
qui diroient quil ameroient miex cheli qui che li fist
who would-say that-they would-love better him who this to-him did
que lui. & li naures fu mes morteus anemis. & chil
than him and the wounded-one was my mortal enemy and that-one
qui le naura fu li hons el monde que ie plus aimai. Car
who him wounded was the man in-the world whom I most loved For
il estoit freres ma meire. si vaudroie moult quil venist
he was brother (of-)my mother so would-wish-I much that-he came
par chi. Car ie vaudroie bien estre mors par couens que ie
by here For I would-wish well to-be dead by covenant that I
leusse ochis. Quant li cheualiers lentent si li poise moult
him-had killed When the knight it-hears so to-him grieves much
de che que chil a dit. si en laisse la parole atant
of this that that-one has said so thereof leaves the word thereupon
ester. Et li lit sont appareillie si vont couchier. Mais
stand And the beds are prepared so go-they to-lie But
li cheualiers nest pas a aise ains plore & fait duel trop
the knight not-is at-all at ease rather weeps and makes grief very
grant. Car il le couendra demain combatre al homme
great For it him will-behoove tomorrow to-fight with-the man
el monde qui onques plus li fist honor & compaignie.
in-the world who ever most to-him did honor and company

ne il ne le puet laissier Car dont se pariuroit il. Si en
nor he not it can leave For then himself would-forswear he So thereof
est tant a malaise quil ne seit quil en puisse faire.
is-he so-much at unease that-he not knows what-he thereof may do
ou combatre a son oste ou pariurer. En teil angoisse
either to-fight with his host or to-forswear In such anguish
trauaille plus de la moitie de la nuit. & lendemain se
toils-he more than the half of the night and the-next-day himself
leua moult matin. & sarme tous fors que son chief &
rose-he very early and himself-arms all except that his head and
ses mains puis vient a son oste qui ia se voloit armer.
his hands then comes to his host who already himself wished to-arm
Biax ostes fait il vous maues moult serui & honere. &
Fair host says he you me-have much served and honored and
au partir de vostre ostel vous pri que vous me doignies
at-the parting from your lodging you beg-I that you to-me give
.j. don por vostre grant preu. & pour moi gaaignier a
a gift for your great profit and for me to-win for
tous iors mais. & lors len chiet as pies. & chil
all days more and then him-thereof falls-he at-the feet and that-one
len cort releuer qui moult anuie. Et dist que ia teil
him-thence runs to-raise who much it-irks And says that ever such
don ne demandera que il nait sans honte. & il dist
gift not will-ask-he that he not-have without shame and he says
que ses grans preus i est se il li doune. Et li sires
that his great profit there is if he to-him gives-it And the lord
dist que il lotroie por lui gaaignier a tous iors. Grans
says that he it-grants for him to-win for all days Great
merchis fait il. & ie vous demant que vous dies tant com
thanks says he and I of-you ask that you say as-long as
ie serai chaiens que vous ames miex le cheualier naure
I shall-be in-here that you love better the knight wounded

que chelui qui le naura. ha! sainte marie fait il vous
than him who him wounded ah Saint Mary says he you
estes chil qui le naure deues uengier. Chertes fait
are that-one who the wounded-one ought avenge Certainly says
il tout en plorant il est voirs. & chil se pasme. Et
he all in weeping it is true and that-one himself faints And
quant il est reuenus de paumison si dist au cheualier.
when he is come-back from swoon so says-he to-the knight
biax sire or vous en ales. & ie vous di que ie aim
fair lord now yourself thence go and I to-you say that I love
miex le naure que le mort. & tantost se repasme &
better the wounded than the dead and at-once himself faints-again and
li cheualiers sen torne & si escuier & sa puchele.
the knight himself-thence turns and his squires and his maiden
Et quant il ot vne pieche ale si se regarde & voit son
And when he had a while gone so himself looks-he and sees his
oste venir qui le sieut a esperons armes de toutes armes.
host come who him follows at spurs armed in all arms
& quant il la ataint si li dist. Sire cheualier ne
and when he him-has reached so to-him says Lord knight not
me tenes mie a desloial. Car ie ne vous creantai riens a
me hold at-all for disloyal For I not to-you promised anything to
tenir sen tant non que vous series en ma maison. Mais
hold except so-much not as you would-be in my house But
or sachies que iou aim miex le mort. ne vous nen
now know that I love better the dead nor you not-thence
poes aler sans combatre a moi. Quant li cheualiers voit
can go without fighting with me When the knight sees
que autrement ne puet estre si li guenchist & chil a
that otherwise not can-it be so to-him wheels and that-one to
lui. si sentrefierent as grans cors des cheuax si durement
him so strike-each-other at-the great courses of-the horses so hard

que il se portent a terre les cheuax sor les cors.
that they themselves bear to ground the horses on the bodies
Et tantost resalent sus si ostent les escus de lor cols
And at-once leap-they-again up so remove the shields from their necks
& sachent les espees si sentredounent grans cols amont
and pull the swords so give-each-other great blows up
& aual. tant quil ni a si preu ne si fort qui nait
and down until that-it not-there has so brave nor so strong who not-have
perdu del sanc en plusors liex. Mais en la fin ni pot
lost of-the blood in several places But in the end not-there could
durer li ostes a chelui a qui nus ne dureroit.
last the host against him against whom anyone not would-last
ains commencha plache a guerpir estre son gre. li biax
rather began place to yield against his will the fair
cheualiers le tient moult court. si li prie souent que il
knight him holds very short so him begs often that he
die que il aime miex le naure que le mort. & il nen
say that he loves better the wounded than the dead and he not-thereof
veut nient faire. Et lors le manache li autres plus quil
wishes anything to-do And then him threatens the other more than-he
nauoit fait au commenchement. & iura que che ne dira
had done at-the beginning and swore that this not will-say
il ia. & lors saira li biax cheualier & li cort
he ever and then himself-angered the fair knight and to-him runs
sus & le haste si durement & tant le carge de cols
upon and him presses so hard and so-much him loads with blows
quil le fait a terre flatir dambes .ij. les palmes. & il
that-he him makes to ground dash with-both two the palms and he
li saut sor le cors si li errache le hiaume de la
to-him leaps on the body so from-him tears the helm from the
teste. & encore li prie de dire che par coi il se pooit
head and still him begs to say this by which he himself could

sauuer & chil ne veut. lors est li biax cheualiers moult
save and that-one not wishes then is the fair knight very
corechies. & dist quil ne moura ia se dieu plaist par
angered and says that-he not will-die ever if God please by
armes que il ait. si le traine iusque sor liaue & le
arms that he may-have so him drags as-far-as on the-water and him
iete ens. & quant il le vit noier. si commencha a plorer
throws in and when he him saw drown so began-he to weep
moult durement. Mais ore laisse li contes chi endroit a
very hard But now leaves the tale here in-place to
parler de lui & des auentures qui li auindrent &
speak of him and of-the adventures which to-him befell and
retorne a parler del roi artu la ou il le laissa.
returns to speak of-the king Arthur there where it him left

Arthur's Two Dreams

XV

Arthur has sojourned long at Carlisle, and Kay complains that nothing happens there. Before the court can move to Camelot the king dreams that all the hair falls from his head and beard, and on the third night after, that the fingers fall from his hands. He summons his bishops and the wisest clerks, shuts ten of them up until they read the dream, and frightens them with fire and gallows. At last the wisest tells him he must lose all earthly honor, and that nothing can save him but the lion of the water and the physician without medicine by the counsel of the flower. Meanwhile the knight who won the last assembly sees the queen at Camelot and is led away by a stranger who dares him to follow.

Li rois artus che dist li contes auoit longement souiorne
The king Arthur this says the tale had long sojourned
a cardueil en chel termine; Et il ni auenoit mie
at carlisle in that term And there not-there befell at-all
grantment dauentures. si anuia moult as compaignons de
greatly of-adventures so it-irked much to-the companions of
che quil i auoient si longement seiorne. & ne veoient
this that-they there had so long sojourned and not saw
rien de chou quil soloient veoir. Et a keu le senescal
anything of this that-they were-wont to-see And to Kay the seneschal
en par anoia trop. si en parla moult souent &
thereof it-very-much irked too-much so thereof spoke-he very often and
disoit oiant le roi que trop estoit chis seiors anuieus &
said hearing the king that too was this sojourn irksome and
que trop auoit dure. Et li rois li demande keu que
that too-long it-had lasted And the king of-him asks Kay what
voles vous que nous fachons. Chertes fait il ie loroie
wish you that we do Certainly says he I would-counsel-it
que nous alisiens a camaalot. lendemain dut li rois mouoir.
that we went to camelot the-next-day was-to the king move

Mais la nuit li auint vne grant merueille. Car il soigna
But the night to-him befell a great marvel For he dreamed
que tout li cauel li caoient de la teste. & tout li poil
that all the hairs to-him fell from the head and all the hairs
de la barbe si en fu moult espoentes. & par che demora
of the beard so thereof was-he very frightened and by this stayed-he
encore en la vile. a la tierche nuit apres li reuint que
yet in the town at the third night after to-him came-again that
il soigna que tout li doit li caoient des mains sans
he dreamed that all the fingers to-him fell from-the hands without
les palmes & lors fu plus esbahis que deuant. si le dist
the palms and then was-he more amazed than before so it says
a son capelain. Sire fait il ne vous caut. Car soignes
to his chaplain Lord says he not to-you matters-it For dream
est noians. Et li rois le redist a la roine & ele li
is nothing And the king it says-again to the queen and she to-him
dist tout autretel. En non dieu fait il ensi nel laisserai
says all the-same In name (of-)God says he thus not-it shall-leave
ie mie. Il mande ses euesques & ses archeuesques quil
I at-all He summons his bishops and his archbishops that-they
soient a lui al .xxime. Ior a camaalot & amaignent
be with him on-the twentieth Day at camelot and bring
auoec eus tous les plus sages clers quil poront auoir.
with them all the most wise clerks that-they will-be-able have
Atant sen part de cardueil si sen vait par
Thereupon himself-thence parts-he from carlisle so himself-thence goes through
ses castiax & par ses reches. Tant que al quinzime
his castles and through his cities So-long that on-the fifteenth
ior est venus a caamelot. & al vintisme ior vindrent si
day is-he come to camelot and on-the twentieth day came his
clerc. & il lor demande conseil de son soigne. Et il
clerks and he of-them asks counsel of his dream And they

en eslisent .x. de tous les plus sages & dient que chil le
thereof choose ten of all the most wise and say that those him
conseilleront se nus le doit conseillier. Et li rois les fait
will-counsel if anyone him ought counsel And the king them makes
bien enserrer. & dist que iamais nisteront de sa prison
well shut-up and says that ever-more not-will-they-go-out from his prison
deuant quil li auront dit le senefianche de son soigne.
before that-they to-him will-have told the signification of his dream
Cil esprouerent la force de lor sens par .ix. Iors. & lors
Those tested the force of their sense by nine Days and then
vindrent al roi & li disent. Che na mestier fait li rois
came-they to-the king and to-him said This not-has need says the king
ia ensi ne mescaperes. Et il li dient quil lor doinst
ever thus not me-will-you-escape And they to-him say that-he to-them may-give
respit iuscal tier Ior. & il lor doune. & lors reuienent
respite until-the third Day and he to-them gives-it and then come-they-back
deuant lui & distrent quil ne pooient rien trouer. si li
before him and said that-they not could anything find so of-him
demandent encore respit & il lor doune. & lors li
ask-they yet respite and he to-them gives-it and then to-him
redient que encore nen sauoient il rien. Mais encore
say-again that yet not-thereof knew they anything But yet
font il nous dounes respit de .iij. iors autresi com vous le
say they to-us give respite of three days just as you it
soignastes de tierce nuit en tierce nuit. Or laures fait li
dreamed from third night to third night Now it-you-will-have says the
rois. Mais bien sachies que vous nen aures iamais plus.
king But well know that you not-thereof will-have ever-more more
Quant vint au tier ior si disent que il nauoient
When came-it to-the third day so say-they that they not-had
rien troue. Ce na mestier fait li rois ie vous ferai
anything found This not-has need says the king I you shall-make

tous destruire se vous ne men dites la verite. vous
all destroy if you not to-me-thereof tell the truth you
feres font il de nous che que vous plaira. Car nous
will-do say they of us this that to-you will-please For we
ne vous en dirons plus. lors se pense li rois que il
not to-you thereof shall-say more then himself bethinks the king that he
lor fera paor de mort. si fait faire .j. grant feu &
to-them will-make fear of death so makes-he make a great fire and
commande que li .v. i soient mis. & li autre .v. soient
commands that the five there be put and the other five be
pendu. ensi le commanda li rois oiant aus. Mais priueiment
hanged thus it commanded the king hearing them But privately
commanda a ses bailliex quil nes mesissent fors que
commanded-he to his bailiffs that-they not-them should-put further than
iusca la paor de mort. li .v. furent menes as forkes.
up-to the fear of death the five were led to-the gallows
& quant il orent les cordes entor les cols si orent paor
and when they had the cords around the necks so had-they fear
de mort. Et disent que se li autre .v. voloient dire il
of death And said that if the other five wished to-say they
diroient. la nouele en vint a ceuls que len voloit ardoir.
would-say the news thereof came to those whom one wished to-burn
& il disent que puis que chil sestoient poroffert il
and they said that since that those themselves-were offered they
diroient dont. lors sont assamble deuant le roi & li plus
would-say then then are-they assembled before the king and the most
sages li dist. Sire nous vous dirons che que nous auons
wise to-him says Lord we to-you shall-say this that we have
troue. Mais nous ne vaudriens mie que vous nous en
found But we not would-wish at-all that you us thereof
tenisies a piors. ne a menteors se che nauenoit. Car nous
held for worse nor for liars if this not-befell For we

le voldriens bien & volons comment quil auiegne que
it would-wish well and wish however that-it befall that
vous nous creantes que max ne nous en uendra & li
you to-us promise that harm not to-us thereof will-come and the
rois lor creante. Et chil li dist sire bien sacies que
king to-them promises And that-one to-him says lord well know that
toute honor terriene vous couient a perdre. & chil ou
all honor earthly you behooves to lose and those where
vous plus vous fies vous fauront estre lor gre. Car ensi le
you most yourself trust you will-fail against their will For thus it
conuient estre. De ceste parole est li rois moult esbahis.
behooves to-be At this word is the king very amazed
& puis li demande. or me dites fait il se nule riens
and then of-him asks now to-me tell says he if any thing
men poroit estre garans. Chertes fait li maistres sire
to-me-thereof could be warrant Certainly says the master lord
nous i auons veu vne cose. Mais chest si grant folie
we there have seen a thing But it-is so great folly
nis a penser que nous ne le vous osons dire. Dites fait
even to think that we not it to-you dare say Say says
li rois seurement. Car pis ne me poes vous dire que dit
the king surely For worse not to-me can you say than told
maues. & Iel vous dirai fait chil. Nule rien ne vous
me-have-you and I-it to-you shall-tell says that-one Any thing not you
puet rescoure de perdre toute honor terriene. se il ne vous
can rescue from losing all honor earthly if it not you
resqueut li lyons iauages & li mires sans medecine par
rescues the lion of-the-water and the physician without medicine by
le conseil de la flor. & che nous sambloit si grant folie
the counsel of the flower and this to-us seemed so great folly
que nous nen osiens parler. Li rois est moult entrepris
that we not-thereof dared speak The king is very troubled

de ceste chose. si a .j. ior quil iroit en bois por
by this thing so has-he one day that-he would-go into wood for
traire. si mut moult matin & dist a monsignor Gauuain.
to-shoot so moved-he very early and said to my-lord Gawain
quil iroit auoec lui & a keu le senescal & a chels
that-he would-go with him and to Kay the seneschal and to those
que lui plot. Si se taist ore li contes atant du
whom to-him it-pleased So itself is-silent now the tale thereupon of-the
roi & de sa compaignie. & retorne au cheualier dont
king and of his company and returns to-the knight whose
mesire Gauuain ot aporte le non a le cort la ou il
my-lord Gawain had brought the name to the court there where he
se parti de la plache ou il se combati a son oste.
himself parted from the place where he himself fought with his host
Quant li cheualiers qui lassamblee auoit vencue se
When the knight who the-assembly had won himself
parti de la ou il se combati a son oste. si erra
parted from there where he himself fought with his host so traveled-he
toute ior sans plus dauenture trouer. La nuit iut chis
all day without more of-adventure finding The night lay-he at
vne veue dame en lissue de la forest. Et diluec nauoit
a widow lady at the-exit of the forest And thence not-was-it
pas iusca camalot .v. lieues galesches. li cheualiers se
at-all up-to camelot five leagues Welsh the knight himself
fu leues matin & sen parti de son ostel. & erra
was risen early and himself-thence parted from his lodging and traveled
entre lui & sa pucele & ses escuiers. Tant quil encontra
between him and his maiden and his squires Until that-he met
.j. escuier. valles fait il ou vas tu. ses tu nule nouele.
a squire youth says he where goest thou knowest thou any news
Oil fait il madame la roine est chi a chamaalot. laquele
Yes says he my-lady the queen is here at camelot which

roine fait li cheualiers. la feme li roi artu fait li
queen says the knight the wife (of-)the king Arthur says the
valles. Li cheualiers sen part & cheuauche iusque
youth The knight himself-thence parts and rides up-to
deuant vne forte maison. & voit vne dame en son sorcot
before a strong house and sees a lady in her surcoat
& en sa chemise. & esgardoit les pres & la forest
and in her shift and looked-at the meadows and the forest
qui pres estoit. la dame fu enuolepee. & auoec lui estoit
which near was the lady was wrapped and with her was
vne damoisele ses treches par ses espaules. Et li cheualiers
a damsel her tresses on her shoulders And the knight
commenche la dame a regarder si que tous sen
begins the lady to look-at so that all himself-thence
oublie. & maintenant vient par iluec vns cheualiers armes
forgets and at-once comes by there a knight armed
de toutes armes. Sire cheualiers fait il que esgardes vous.
in all arms Lord knight says he what look-at you
& chil ne respont mie car il ne la pas oi. &
and that-one not answers at-all for he not it-has at-all heard and
li cheualiers le boute & li demande encore que il
the knight him pushes and of-him asks again what he
esgarde. Iesgart fait il che que moi plaist. & vous nestes
looks-at I-look-at says he this that me pleases and you not-are
mie cortois qui de mon pense maues iete. par la rien que
at-all courteous who from my thought me-have thrown by the thing that
vous plus ames fait li cheualiers estraignes saues vous qui
you most love says the knight strange know you who
est la dame que vous esgardes. Ie quit bien sauoir fait il
is the lady whom you look-at I think well to-know says he
qui ele est. & qui est ele fait cil. cest madame la roine.
who she is and who is she says that-one it-is my-lady the queen

Mait diex fait li autres estraignement la connoissies
Me-may-help God says the other strangely her know
vous bien. Deable denfer vous font dame regarder. porcoi fait
you well Devils of-hell you make lady look-at why says
li autres por che fait il que vous ne moseries pas suiure
the other for this says he that you not me-would-dare at-all follow
par deuant la roine la ou ie iroie. Chertes fait li boins
by before the queen there where I would-go Certainly says the good
cheualiers se vous ales en lieu ou ie ne vous ose sieuir
knight if you go into place where I not you dare follow
passe aures tous les oseors qui onques fuissent. Or i
passed you-will-have all the darers who ever were Now there
parra fait chil. Atant sen torne & li cheualiers
it-will-appear says that-one Thereupon himself-thence turns and the knight
vait apres. & quant il ont vne pieche ale si dist li autres
goes after and when they have a while gone so says the other
au boin cheualiers. biax sire vous herbergeres anuit o moi.
to-the good knight fair lord you will-lodge tonight with me
& le matin vous menrai la ou ie vous ai en couenens.
and the morning you shall-lead there where I you have in covenant
Et li autres demande sil le couient ensi estre & il dist que
And the other asks if-it him behooves thus to-be and he says that
oil. & chil respont que dont herbergera il. La nuit iut
yes and that-one answers that then will-lodge he The night lay-he
chies le cheualier & chestoit sor la riuiere de camaalot. si
at the knight and it-was upon the river of camelot so
herbergierent de haut miedi. la nuit fu li cheualiers moult
lodged-they from high midday the night was the knight very
bien herbergies & sa pucele & si vallet. Mais plus nen
well lodged and his maiden and his youths But more not-thereof
parlera ore li contes de lui ains retorne a parler del roi artu.
will-speak now the tale of him rather returns to speak of-the king Arthur

Galehaut's Defiance

XVI

A knight of age comes armed before Arthur at supper and delivers Galehaut's message: the son of the fair giantess has conquered thirty realms and will not be crowned until he has Logres, so Arthur must hold his land of him or lose it, and Guinevere too. Arthur refuses and is defied. Galegantin the Welsh describes Galehaut, taller by half a foot than any knight and the most loved. Next morning the good knight, riding to Camelot behind his host, recognizes the town where he was knighted and falls into thought; the queen speaks with him across the water, and he rides on lost in looking at her until his horse plunges into the river. Yvain, come late for the hunt, wades in and draws him out, and since he carries an old smoked shield, not the one he bore at the assembly, thinks little of him.

Chi dist li contes que li rois vint del bois a haute
Here says the tale that the king came from-the wood at high
noune. Et la nuit quant il seoit au souper si vint
nones And the night when he sat at-the supper so came
laiens vns cheualiers deage qui moult sambloit preudom. li
in-there a knight of-age who very seemed worthy-man the
cheualiers fu armes fors sa teste & ses mains & vint tres
knight was armed except his head and his hands and came right
deuant le rois sespee chainte. Ne salue pas le roi ains
before the king his-sword girded Not greets-he at-all the king rather
li dist tres deuant sa table. Rois a toi menuoie le plus
to-him says right before his table King to thee me-sends the most
preudom qui orendroit soit de son eage. cest galahos li
worthy-man who right-now be of his age that-is Galehaut the
fiex a la bele iaiande. Et si te mande que tu li
son of the fair giantess And so to-thee sends-word-he that thou to-him
rendes ta terre car il a conquis .xxx. reaumes. mais il ne
render thy land for he has conquered thirty realms but he not

uolt estre corunez deuant ceo qil ait conqis le reaume
wishes to-be crowned before that he may-have conquered the realm
de logres. Ou que tu la tiegnes de lui. Et se tu vels
of logres Or that thou it holdest from him And if thou wishest
estre ses hom il te tenra plus chier que tous les rois quil
to-be his man he thee will-hold more dear than all the kings that-he
a conquis. biax sire fait li rois ie ne ting onques terre de
has conquered fair lord says the king I not held ever land from
nului fors de dieu. ne ia de chestui ne la tendrai. Chertes
anyone except from God nor ever from this-one not it shall-hold Certainly
fait li cheualiers che poise moi. Car tu en perderas
says the knight this grieves me For thou thereof wilt-lose
honor & terre. De quanque vous dites fait li rois ne me
honor and land Of whatever you say says the king not to-me
caut. Car ia de tout ce naura pooir se dieu plaist.
matters-it For ever of all this not-will-he-have power if God please
Rois artus fait li cheualiers or saches dont que mesires te
King Arthur says the knight now know then that my-lord thee
desfie. & ie te di de par lui quil sera dedens .j. mois
defies and I thee tell on behalf-of him that-he will-be within a month
en ta terre. & puis quil i sera uenus il ne sen
in thy land and after that-he there will-be come he not himself-thence
istera deuant quil laura toute conquise. & si te
will-go-out before that-he it-will-have all conquered and so from-thee
taudra genieure ta feme quil a oie proisier de biaute &
will-take Guinevere thy wife whom-he has heard praised for beauty and
de valor sor toutes dames terrienes. Et li rois respont sire
for worth above all ladies earthly And the king answers lord
cheualiers iai bien oi que vous aues dit. ne ia por vos
knight I-have well heard what you have said nor ever for your
grans manaches ne mespointerai plus. Mais fache chascuns
great threats not shall-I-be-dismayed more But may-do each

del miex que il pora. & quant vostre sires me toldra ma
of-the best that he can and when your lord from-me will-take my
terre. che pesera a moi. Mais il nen aura ia pooir.
land this will-weigh to me But he not-thereof will-have ever power
Atant sem part li cheualiers. & quant il vint a
Thereupon himself-thence parts the knight and when he came to
luis de la sale si se torne vers le roi. & dist ha diex
the-door of the hall so himself turns toward the king and says ah God
quel dolor & quel malauenture. Lors est montes en .j.
what sorrow and what misfortune Then is-he mounted on a
cheual & sen vait entre lui & .ij. autres cheualiers
horse and himself-thence goes between him and two other knights
qui dehors la porte latendoient. & li rois demande a
who outside the gate him-awaited and the king asks to
monsignor Gauuain son neueu sil vit onques galahot. & il
my-lord Gawain his nephew if-he saw ever Galehaut and he
dist que nenil. & autel dient li plusor cheualier de laiens.
says that no and the-same say the most knights of in-there
Mais Galegantis li galois se trait auant qui moult auoit
But Galegantin the Welsh himself draws forward who much had
terres cherquies & dist au roi. sire iai veu galahot. Il
lands searched and says to-the king lord I-have seen Galehaut He
est bien plus grans demi piet que cheualier que len sache.
is well more tall half foot than knight that one may-know
sest li homme el monde plus ames de sa gent & qui
so-is-he the man in-the world most loved by his people and who
plus a conquis de son eage. Car il est ioines bachelers
most has conquered of his age For he is young bachelor
& dient chil qui lont acointie que chest li plus ientiex
and say those who him-have known that it-is the most noble
cheualiers & li plus deboinaires del monde & tous li
knight and the most gentle of-the world and all the

plus larges. Mais por che fait il ne di ie mie que ia ie
most generous But for this says he not say I at-all that ever I
croi que il ne autres ait desus vous pooir. Car se ie le
believe that he or another may-have over you power For if I it
quidoie ia ne mait diex se ie ne vaudroie miex estre
thought ever not me-may-help God if I not would-wish better to-be
mors que vis. Li rois en laisse la parole atant estre &
dead than alive The king thereof leaves the word thereupon to-be and
dit que le matin reueut aler en bois. si en semont
says that the morning wishes-again-he to-go into wood so thereto summons
chels que lui plaist. & dist quil mouuera le matin
those whom to-him pleases and says that-he will-move the morning
com il pora messe auoir oie. Au matin mut li rois
as-soon-as he can mass have heard In-the morning moved the king
quant il ot messe oie & sen ala en la forest. Ne
when he had mass heard and himself-thence went into the forest Nor
de lui ne parole plus li contes chi endroit ains retorne a
of him not speaks more the tale here in-place rather returns to
parler del cheualier qui lassamblee auoit vencue la ou il
speak of-the knight who the-assembly had won there where he
se herberga chis le cheualier quil deuoit sieure le matin.
himself lodged at the knight whom-he was-to follow the morning
Quant li cheualiers qui lassamblee ot vencue ot ieu chis
When the knight who the-assembly had won had lain at
le cheualier qui losta de son penser. si leua moult matin
the knight who him-took from his thinking so rose-he very early
& sieut son oste la ou il le voit monter. Mais la
and follows his host there where he him sees mount But the
puchele & les escuiers laissa en la maison. Car par iluec
maiden and the squires left-he in the house For by there
quida reuenir. li ostes sen va deuant & chil le
thought-he to-return the host himself-thence goes before and that-one him

sieut. si ont tant ale quil sont venu a camaalot. & li
follows so have-they so-far gone that-they are come to camelot and the
boins cheualiers regarde la vile si li est auis quil i
good knight looks-at the town so to-him is opinion that-he there
auoit autrefois este. lors esgarde le siege de la vile & la
had another-time been then looks-he-at the site of the town and the
tor & les moustiers. Tant que il se menbre que che est
tower and the minsters Until that he himself remembers that this is
camaalot ou il fu cheualiers nouiax. & il commenche a
camelot where he was knight new and he begins to
penser moult durement si en cheuauce plus souef. Et ses
think very hard so thereof rides-he more gently And his
ostes va auant grant aleure por sauoir sil demorroit arriere
host goes ahead great pace for to-know if-he would-stay behind
de couardise ou pour pensee. Tant a ale li cheualiers qui
from cowardice or for thought So-far has gone the knight who
auant aloit quil est venus endroit les maisons le roi. &
ahead went that-he is come at the houses (of-)the king and
li rois auoit en costume que ses maisons estoient tous iors
the king had in custom that his houses were all days
sor riuiere le plus. Et la riuiere fu entor les maisons le
upon river the most And the river was around the houses (of-)the
roi. & li cheualiers quant il vint endroit les maisons si
king and the knight when he came at the houses so
esgarde chele part & voit vne dame as loges & chestoit
looks that way and sees a lady at-the lodges and it-was
la roine qui auoit conuoie le roi qui en aloit en bois.
the queen who had escorted the king who thence went into wood
Si sestoit apoie as loges pour che quele nauoit talent
So herself-was leaned at-the lodges for this that-she not-had desire
de dormir. si auoit affublee .j. surcot & .j. mantel cort &
to sleep so had-she donned a surcoat and a mantle short and

sestoit enuolepee por le froit qui ia commenchoit. Com
herself-was wrapped for the cold which already began When
ele voit le cheualier venir si se desuolepe & il sareste
she sees the knight come so herself unwraps and he himself-stops
dautre part liaue & dist. dame qui estes vous. se vous
on-other part the-water and says lady who are you if you
estes la roine si le me dites. Oil biax sire che sui ie. Mais
are the queen so it to-me tell Yes fair lord this am I But
porcoi le dites vous. Chertes dame fait il por che que vous
why it say you Certainly lady says he for this that you
la deues bien estre. & se vous ne lesties sel sambles vous
it ought well be and if you not it-were so-it seem you
bien. & Ie vous esgart volentiers por le plus fol cheualier
well and I you look-at willingly for the most foolish knight
que ie onques veisse. Qui est il sire cheualiers fait la roine
that I ever saw Who is he lord knight says the queen
estes vous che. nenil dame fait il mais .j. autre. lors se
are you this no lady says he but an other then himself
commenche a aler vers le bois. & la roine le rapele.
begins-he to go toward the wood and the queen him calls-back
si li prie quil li die qui li cheualiers est por qui
so him begs that-he to-her may-say who the knight is for whom
il la regardoit & il ne li vaut dire. Quar il cremoit
he her looked-at and he not to-her wished to-say For he feared
que il i eust honte & domage & que la roine ne
that he there had shame and harm and that the queen —
conneust chelui qui le sieuoit. si sen torne ne mie
might-know him who him followed so himself-thence turns-he not at-all
chele part ou li rois estoit ales. Mais en autre sentier.
that way where the king was gone But on other path

Ne demoura gaires que li autres cheualiers vint apres
Not tarried-it much that the other knight came after
chelui tot contreual la riuiere. si sarestut tres desus liaue
him all down the river so stopped-he right above the-water
es pres sor la riuiere. & vit femes qui lauoient dras.
in-the meadows upon the river and saw women who washed cloths
si lor demande veistes vous par chi passer .j. cheualier.
so of-them asks saw you by here pass a knight
Et eles li respondent que nenil. & eles li disoient
And they to-him answer that no and they to-him said
voir. Car eles i estoient lors primes venus si nauoient
truth For they there were then first come so not-had
pas veu chelui qui passes estoit. Quant la roine voit quil
at-all seen him who passed was When the queen sees that-he
ne trueue qui nule nouele len die. si huche sire
not finds who any news to-him-thereof may-tell so calls-she lord
cheualiers ie vi chelui que vous demandes. Il sen
knight I saw him whom you ask He himself-thence
va vers cele forest. li cheualiers lieue la teste si voit la
goes toward that forest the knight raises the head so sees the
roine qui est as loges si la connoist bien a la parole.
queen who is at-the lodges so her knows well by the word
est che voirs dame fait il. & quel part sen va il. Il
is this true lady says he and what part himself-thence goes he He
sen va en chele forest. si li montre quel part. &
himself-thence goes into that forest so to-him shows-she what part and
ales tost car il i est piecha. li cheualiers fiert le cheual
go quickly for he there is long-since the knight strikes the horse
des esperons si va si com ele li dist. Mais il laisse
with-the spurs so goes so as she to-him says But he lets
le cheual aler la ou il veut. Car il ne fait se la roine
the horse go there where it wishes For he not does except the queen

regarder non. & li cheuax ot talent de boire si sadreche
look-at not and the horse had desire to drink so itself-directs
vers liaue si saut ens. la riue fu haute & liaue
toward the-water so leaps in the bank was high and the-water
parfonde. Car il nestoit pas endroit le gue ou la roine
deep For he not-was at-all at the ford where the queen
estoit. & liaue batoit as murs des maisons ou la roine
was and the-water beat on-the walls of-the houses where the queen
estoit. Quant li cheuax vint la si ne pot pas par iluec
was When the horse came there so not could at-all by there
hors issir. si retorna ariere. & commencha a noer tant que
out go so turned back and began to swim until that
tous ert lasses. & liaue est si parfonde que li cheuax
all it-was weary and the-water is so deep that the horse
commenche a perdre lalaine si vient liauwe iuscas espaules
begins to lose the-breath so comes the-water up-to-the shoulders
au cheualier. ne il ne met nul conroi en issir hors. & il
of-the knight nor he not puts any provision in going out and he
laist le cheual aler la ou il veut. Quant la roine le vit
lets the horse go there where it wishes When the queen him saw
en teil peril si commenche a crier sainte marie. lors vient
in such peril so begins-she to cry Saint Mary then comes
ywains li fiex au roi vrien tous atornes comme por aler
Yvain the son of-the king Urien all arrayed as for to-go
en bois. Car il quidoit estre asses matin leues mais il auoit
into wood For he thought to-be very early risen but he had
trop demore. Mesire ywains vint sor .j. cacheor si ot son
too-long tarried My-lord Yvain came upon a hunter so had his
arc & son tarcais & grans heuses cauchies diuer. Car li
bow and his quiver and great boots worn of-winter For the
frois estoit commenchois & li solaus estoit haus & caus.
cold was begun and the sun was high and hot

si com il peut plus estre entre le tous sains & noel.
so as it can most be between the All Saints and Christmas
Quant il vint en la sale si demanda ou li rois estoit. &
When he came into the hall so asked-he where the king was and
quant il oi quil en estoit ales si demande ou est la
when he heard that-he thence was gone so asks-he where is the
roine. & len li dist quele est as loges. lors i est
queen and one to-him says that-she is at-the lodges then there is
ales mesire ywains. Et com la roine le voit si commenche
gone my-lord Yvain And when the queen him sees so begins-she
a crier ha! fait ele mesire ywains vees chi en ceste iaue .j.
to cry ah says she my-lord Yvain see here in this water a
cheualier qui ia sera noies. dieu merci fait il comment.
knight who now will-be drowned God mercy says he how
Biax sire fait ele ses cheuax sailli ens a tout lui &
Fair lord says she his horse leapt in with all him and
il noiera ia. se il nest secoreus Comme mesire ywains
he will-drown now if he not-is succored When my-lord Yvain
le uoit en tel peril si en a moult grant pitie Lors
him sees in such peril so thereof has-he very great pity Then
sen ua contreual & cort iusqua liaue si entre ens
himself-thence goes down and runs up-to the-water so enters in
che dist li contes iusques au col. Et ia estoit li cheuax
this says the tale up-to the neck And already was the horse
si las & si estordis que il ne se pooit aidier. & liaue
so weary and so stunned that it not itself could help and the-water
estoit ia raclose au cheualier desus le hiaume vne
was already closed-again over-the knight above the helm one
fois. Mesire ywains prent le cheual par le fraim si le maine
time My-lord Yvain takes the horse by the bridle so it leads
a riue & le trait hors de liaue & li cheualiers fu tous
to bank and it draws out of the-water and the knight was all

moillies & cors & armes. Mesire ywains li demande
wet both body and arms My-lord Yvain of-him asks
biax sire qui estes vous. & comment entrastes vous en
fair lord who are you and how entered you into
ceste iaue. Sire ie sui vns cheualiers qui abeuroie mon
this water Lord I am a knight who watered my
cheual. Malement fait mesire ywains labeuries vous. Car
horse Badly says my-lord Yvain it-watered you For
par .j. poi que vous nesties noies. & ou ales vous. Sire
by a little that you not-were drowned and where go you Lord
fait il ie sieuoie .j. cheualier. & mesire ywains le connoist
says he I followed a knight and my-lord Yvain him knows
moult bien sil eust lescu quil porta a lassamblee. Mais
very well if-he had the-shield which-he bore at the-assembly But
il lauoit laissie en la maison au cheualier que il sieuoit.
he it-had left in the house of-the knight whom he followed
si en auoit prins .j. qui estoit viex & enfumes. & par
so thereof had-he taken one which was old and smoked and by
che pensa ses ostes que il seroit conneus en la maison
this thought his host that he would-be known in the house
le roi. & mesire ywains len prisa mains. Car il
(of-)the king and my-lord Yvain him-thereof prized less For he
quida quil fust de mal affaire. Il li demande sil
thought that-he were of ill condition He of-him asks if-he
sieuera le cheualier & li dist que oil. & il le maine
will-follow the knight and to-him says that yes and he him leads
au gue & passe outre. & lors commenche a regarder a
to-the ford and passes beyond and then begins to look at
la roine. & ses cheuax lenporte tout contreual la riuiere.
the queen and his horse him-carries all down the river

Daguenet and the Giants

XVII

Daguenet the fool, the most cowardly piece of flesh known at court, meets the dripping knight lost in thought and leads him in by the bridle as his captive while he stands silent and dazed; the queen laughs, and Yvain, who holds him hostage, lets him go on her warrant. Yvain follows him into the forest, sees him overthrow the knight he was pursuing, and watches him kill one of two giants who had laid the country waste and maim the other. A maiden passing says, 'This is the third.' Yvain gives the knight his own horse, and at court Gawain tells the queen that the maiden's words mean the knight is Lancelot of the Lake, while Daguenet boasts that he took the knight who killed the giants.

Not gaires ale quant il encontre daguenet le fol. qui
Not-had-he much gone when he meets Daguenet the fool who
li demande ou il vait. & il pense si ne dist rien. &
of-him asks where he goes and he thinks so not says anything and
daguenes dist ie vos preng si le ramaine. Et li cheualiers
Daguenet says I you take so him leads-back And the knight
ni met desfense nule. Mesire ywains fu reuenus a la
not-there puts defense any My-lord Yvain was come-back to the
roine. Et ele dist. chertes noies fust li cheualiers se vous
queen And she says certainly drowned were the knight if you
ne fuissies. Dame fait il mar i fust que trop est biax.
not were Lady says he ill there were-it for too is-he fair
Encore a il fait merueilles fait ele quil sen va la
Yet has he done marvels says she for-he himself-thence goes there
ual & il doit sieure .j. cheualier. Ne demoura gaires quil
below and he was-to follow a knight Not tarried-it much that-they
virent venir le cheualier & daguenet. vees fait la roine ne
saw come the knight and Daguenet see says the queen not
sai qui a prins nostre cheualier. lors vait mesire ywains
I-know who has taken our knight then goes my-lord Yvain

encontre au gue. Et quant il seit que chou est daguenes
to-meet at-the ford And when he knows that this is Daguenet
si en est trop esbahis. Il le maine deuant la roine.
so thereof is-he too amazed He him leads before the queen
Dame fait il daguenes a prins chest cheualier. Daguenet
Lady says he Daguenet has taken this knight Daguenet
fait la roine par la foi que vous deues monsignor le roi
says the queen by the faith that you owe my-lord the king
comment le priistes vous. Ie lencontrai fait il lonc chele
how him took you I him-met says he along that
riue si ne me vaut dire mot. & iel pris au fraim ne
bank so not to-me wished-he to-say word and I-him took by-the bridle nor
onques ne se desfendi si len amenai tout pris. Issi
ever not himself defended-he so him-thence brought-I all taken Thus
fait mesire ywains puet il bien estre. & ie lostagerai
says my-lord Yvain can it well be and I him-shall-hold-hostage
se vous voles. Che veil ie bien fait daguenes. & la roine
if you wish This wish I well says Daguenet and the queen
sen rist moult & chil qui loient. Car ia i
herself-thereof laughs much and those who it-hear For already there
auoit venu asses cheualiers & dames & damoiseles.
had come many knights and ladies and damsels
Chil daguenes estoit cheualiers sans faille. Mais il estoit
That Daguenet was knight without fail But he was
fols nais & la plus coarde pieche de car que len seust.
fool born and the most cowardly piece of flesh that one knew
Si se iouoient de lui vn & autre por les grans folies
So themselves played with him one and other for the great follies
quil faisoit. & quil disoit quil aloit auentures querant.
which-he did and which-he said for-he went adventures seeking
Et disoit au reuenir quil auoit ochis .j. cheualier ou .ij.
And said at-the returning that-he had killed one knight or two

ou .iij. & por chou fist il si grant los de chestui. la
or three and for this made he so great praise of this-one the
roine regarde le cheualier si le voit bien taillie de cors &
queen looks-at the knight so him sees well shaped of body and
de menbres que nus ne peust estre miex taillies. Daguenes
of limbs that anyone not could be better shaped Daguenet
fait la roine par la foi que vous deues monsignor le roi
says the queen by the faith that you owe my-lord the king
& que vous me deues saues vous qui il est. Dame fait il
and that you to-me owe know you who he is Lady says he
a la roine issi mait diex nenil. ne il ne parla onques a
to the queen so me-may-help God no nor he not spoke ever to
moi nis .j. seul mot. Li cheualiers tenoit sa lanche parmi
me even a single word The knight held his lance by
le trauers. Et com il oi la roine parler si drecha le chief.
the middle And when he heard the queen speak so raised-he the head
& la main li lasque & sa lanche li chiet. si que li
and the hand to-him slackens and his lance from-him falls so that the
fers passa le samit del mantel la roine. & ele lesgarde
iron pierced the samite of-the mantle (of-)the queen and she him-looks-at
& puis si dist a monsignor ywain basset. cis cheualiers ne
and then so says to my-lord Yvain softly this knight not
samble mie estre sages. Non voir de sens ne li vint il
seems at-all to-be wise No truly of sense not to-him came it
mie quil sen laissa ens amener a daguenet. Car a
at-all that-he himself-thence let in be-brought by Daguenet For with
poi de desfense sen peust estre desfendus. nencore
little of defense himself-thereof could be defended nor-yet
na il a nus parle. Ie li voeil demander qui il est
not-has he to anyone spoken I of-him wish to-ask who he is
fait mesire ywain. Sire cheualiers qui estes vous fait il.
says my-lord Yvain Lord knight who are you says he

Chil se regarde & voit quil est en la sale. Sire fait
That-one himself looks and sees that-he is in the hall Lord says
il ie sui vns cheualiers che vees. & que quesistes vous chi.
he I am a knight this you-see and what sought you here
sire fait il ie ne sai. vous estes prisons fait mesire ywains
lord says he I not know you are prisoner says my-lord Yvain
a .j. cheualier. & ie vous ai ostagie. Iel quit bien fait il.
of a knight and I you have held-hostage I-it think well says he
Sire cheualiers dires me vous plus fait mesire ywains.
Lord knight will-tell me you more says my-lord Yvain
sire ie ne vous sai que dire. Dame fait mesire ywains a
lord I not to-you know what to-say Lady says my-lord Yvain to
la roine ie lai ostagie. se vous men esties garans
the queen I him-have held-hostage if you to-me-thereof were warrant
vers daguenet ie len lairoie aler. voire fait ele & ele
toward Daguenet I him-thence would-let go truly says she and she
sen rit. vers lui fait ele vous serai ie moult bien
herself-thereof laughs toward him says she to-you shall-be I very well
garans. Et ie len lairai dont aler fait il. Mesire ywain
warrant And I him-thence shall-let then go says he My-lord Yvain
li baille sa lanche si lenmaine par les degres aual. si
to-him hands his lance so him-leads by the steps down so
li monstre le gue. biax sire vees la le gue. & vees la
to-him shows the ford fair lord see there the ford and see the
voie que li cheualiers ala que vous sieues. Chil passe le
way which the knight went whom you follow That-one passes the
gue si se met a la voie apres le cheualier par le forest.
ford so himself puts to the way after the knight through the forest
& mesire ywains vient a son ostel moult tost. & monte
and my-lord Yvain comes to his lodging very quickly and mounts
en son cheual tout sans esperons & va apres le cheualier
on his horse all without spurs and goes after the knight

iusques en la forest .j. poi de loing que il ne veut mie
as-far-as into the forest a little from far for he not wishes at-all
quil laperchoiue. Et li cheualiers vient en la forest. si
that-he him-perceive And the knight comes into the forest so
esgarde sil veist le cheualier que il sieuoit. & vit en .j.
looks if-he could-see the knight whom he followed and saw on a
tertre le gonfanon dune lanche. Et il vait chele part. &
hill the pennon of-a lance And he goes that way and
quant il vient la si descendi li cheualiers encontre lui. Sire
when he comes there so descended the knight to-meet him Lord
cheualiers fait chil qui le siuoit tant vous ai siui que
knight says that-one who him followed so-long you have-I followed that
or vous ai ataint. Or me dites que vous me voles. Ie
now you have-I reached Now to-me say what you of-me wish I
voeil que vous me baillies vo cheual & vos armes. Che
wish that you to-me hand your horse and your arms This
ne ferai ie mie fait il. si feres ou vous voeillies ou non
not shall-do I at-all says he yes will-you whether you wish or not
car iel vous taudrai a forche. non feres se ie puis fait li
for I-it from-you shall-take by force not will-you if I can says the
cheualiers. li cheualiers qui ot auale le tertre sesloigne
knight the knight who had descended the hill himself-withdraws
en mi la lande & prent son escu & sa lanche si
into middle the heath and takes his shield and his lance so
sadreche vers lui. Chil voit bien que il le veut ferir
himself-directs toward him That-one sees well that he him wishes to-strike
si fait autretel. Il fierent les cheuax desperons li vns vers
so does the-same They strike the horses with-spurs the one toward
lautre. li cheualiers qui ot auale le tertre fiert lautre sor
the-other the knight who had descended the hill strikes the-other upon
son escu si que sa lanche vole en pieches. Et li autres fiert
his shield so that his lance flies in pieces And the other strikes

lui si durement que il le porte a terre par desus la crupe
him so hard that he him bears to ground over above the croup
del cheual. Il prent le cheual par le fraim si li ramaine.
of-the horse He takes the horse by the bridle so to-him brings-back
Tenes fait il vostre cheual si men irai car iai el
Take says he your horse so myself-thence shall-I-go for I-have else
a ffaire que chi a demorer. li cheualiers resaut en pies
to do than here to stay the knight leaps-again on feet
& dist. issi nen ires vous mie anchois vous conuient
and says thus not-thence will-go you at-all rather you behooves
& moi combatre. a vous. voire fait il. li cheualiers se
both me to-fight with you truly says he the knight himself
traist ariere & deschent de son cheual. & sache lespee
draws back and dismounts from his horse and pulls the-sword
si trait lescu auant & cort sus au cheualier. & chil
so draws the-shield forward and runs upon to-the knight and that-one
retrait la soie espee si sentrecourent sus moult vistement.
draws the his sword so run-at-each-other upon very swiftly
& se fierent parmi les hiaumes & parmi les escus.
and themselves strike through the helms and through the shields
Li cheualiers qui daguenes ot prins le haste moult.
The knight whom Daguenet had taken him presses much
& li cort sus moult ires. & chil li guerpist par
and him runs upon very angry and that-one to-him yields through
tout le plache. que il voit bien que il nauroit duree
all the place for he sees well that he not-would-have endurance
a lui. & si li dist. estes ie ne me combaterai
against him and so to-him says stay I not myself shall-fight
mais a vous. Mais venes la ie vous menrai. si vous
more with you But come there I you shall-lead so you
monsterai merueilles. & ou est che fait li cheualiers que
shall-show marvels and where is this says the knight whom

daguenes auoit pris. Il ni a gaires fait il. Donques
Daguenet had taken It not-there is much says he Then
i irai ie volentiers. Il montent en lor cheuax. li
there shall-go I willingly They mount on their horses the
cheualiers daguenet not mie sa lanche brisie. & li
knight (of-)Daguenet not-had at-all his lance broken and the
cheualiers sen va auant & il apres. Mesire ywains
knight himself-thence goes before and he after My-lord Yvain
ot tout oi quanquil auoient dit. & se pense quil
had all heard whatever-they had said and himself thinks that-he
ira encore apres aus. Et quant li cheualiers qui vait
will-go yet after them And when the knight who goes
deuant ot vne pieche ale & mene lautre si li dist.
before had a while gone and led the-other so to-him says
vees la fait il .ij. gaians qui ont vne partie de cest pais
see there says he two giants who have a part of this country
deserte. Ne pres de chi ou il conuersent nose nus
laid-waste Nor near of here where they dwell not-dares anyone
passer qui aimt le roi artu ne la roine ne chels de sa
pass who love the king Arthur nor the queen nor those of his
maison. Or ales iusca els fait il se vous voles. & vees
house Now go up-to them says he if you wish and see
ent cha lun & la lautre. Li cheualiers ni tient
thereof here the-one and there the-other The knight not-there holds
plus de parole. ains prent lescu par les enarmes & met
more of word but takes the-shield by the straps and puts
le lanche sous laissele & fiert le cheual des esporons.
the lance under the-armpit and strikes the horse with-the spurs
si adreche le chief del cheual vers lui. Et li gaians le
so directs the head of-the horse toward him And the giant him
voit venir. si li escrie de loing moult haut. Cheualier
sees come so to-him cries from far very loud Knight

se tu hes le roi artu & la roine & la gent de sa
if thou hatest the king Arthur and the queen and the people of his
maison si vien seurement que tu nas garde de nous.
house so come surely for thou not-hast fear of us
& se tu les aimes tu es mors. par foi ie les aime
and if thou them lovest thou art dead by faith I them love
fait il. Et li gaians hauche vne grant mache si quide
says he And the giant raises a great club so thinks
ferir le cheualier. Mais il fu si grans & ot si lons
to-strike the knight But he was so big and had so long
bras quil trespasse le cheualier & le cheual. si fiert de
arms that-he overshoots the knight and the horse so strikes with
la mache a terre. Et li cheualiers fiert lui de la lanche
the club to ground And the knight strikes him with the lance
parmi le cors si le iete mort au passer outre que il
through the body so him throws dead in-the passing beyond that he
fait. Et li autre gaians hauche la soie mache & fiert
makes And the other giant raises the his club and strikes
par desor la crupe del cheual si li brise ambes .ij. les
over above the croup of-the horse so to-him breaks both two the
quisses. Et li cheualiers saut en pies si sache lespee iries
thighs And the knight leaps on feet so draws the-sword angry
de son cheual qui mors est. & trait son escu auant &
for his horse which dead is and draws his shield forward and
vient vers le gaiant. & li gaians hauche le mache pour
comes toward the giant and the giant raises the club to
ferir & fiert en lescu. & che que il consieut si porte a
strike and strikes on the-shield and this that he reaches so bears to
terre. Et li cheualiers fiert le gaiant de lespee el bras
ground And the knight strikes the giant with the-sword in-the arm
quil li fait voler le puing a toute le maque en
so-that-he to-him makes fly the fist with all the club in

mi le camp. Et li gaians hauche le poing & le quide
middle the field And the giant raises the stump and him thinks
ferir. & li cheualiers le fiert en le gambe si li a
to-strike and the knight him strikes in the leg so to-him has
le pie colpe & li gaians chiet. & vne pucele passe par
the foot cut-off and the giant falls and a maiden passes by
iluec ou mesire ywains estoit qui chou esgardoit. Ele ert
there where my-lord Yvain was who this watched She was
moult bele & bien atornee. Sire cheualiers fait ele chest
very fair and well arrayed Lord knight says she this-is
la tierche. Mesire ywains nentent mie a cose quele dit
the third My-lord Yvain not-heeds at-all a thing that-she says
ains vient vers le cheualier. & comme li cheualiers le
but comes toward the knight and when the knight him
vit si li dist. aues veu sire cheualier de ches vilains
saw so to-him says have-you seen lord knight of these churls
qui mont mort mon cheual. Or men couendra aler a
who me-have killed my horse Now me-thence will-behoove to-go on
pie. Sire non feres se dieu plaist fait mesire ywains car
foot Lord not will-you-do if God please says my-lord Yvain for
ie vous donrai le mien. Mais dites a chel cheualier qui
I you shall-give the mine But tell to that knight who
chi est quil menport deriere lui iusca camaalot. Sire fait
here is that-he me-carry behind him up-to camelot Lord says
il grant merchis de vostre cheual. Quen millor point ne
he great thanks for your horse For-in better point not
le me peussies vous douner. lors dist au cheualier qui
it to-me could you give then says to-the knight who
lauoit amene. deschendes. & li cheualiers est deschendus.
him-had brought dismount and the knight is dismounted
lors dist a monsignor ywain sire montes en la sele & il
then says to my-lord Yvain lord mount in the saddle and he

montera deriere vous. Mesire ywain monta maintenant en la
will-mount behind you My-lord Yvain mounted at-once in the
sele & li cheualiers monta deriere lui si armes com il fu.
saddle and the knight mounted behind him so armed as he was
Ensi sen va li cheualiers en son affaire qui les
Thus himself-thence goes the knight on his affair who the
gaians a vencus; Et mesire ywains & li autres cheualiers
giants has vanquished And my-lord Yvain and the other knight
vienent a camaalot. Et comme il vindrent la si fu la
come to camelot And when they came there so was the
roine vestue & atornee & ot messe oie. & mesire Gauuain
queen dressed and arrayed and had mass heard and my-lord Gawain
le remenoit del mostier. & la sale ert toute plaine de
her led-back from-the minster and the hall was all full of
cheualiers. Et chil qui furent as fenestres des loges disent
knights And those who were at-the windows of-the galleries say
vees merueilles. Mesire ywains vient chi si aporte .j. cheualier
see marvels My-lord Yvain comes here so brings a knight
arme. Et mesire ywains fu au pie del degre si deschent.
armed And my-lord Yvain was at-the foot of-the steps so dismounts
Sire fait li cheualiers ie men irai. Ales fait mesire
Lord says the knight I myself-thence shall-go Go says my-lord
ywain. a dieu qui boine auenture vous doinst. li cheualiers
Yvain to God who good fortune you may-give the knight
sen vait. & mesire ywains monte en la sale. &
himself-thence goes and my-lord Yvain goes-up into the hall and
encontre monsignor Gauuain & la roine qui vienent del
meets my-lord Gawain and the queen who come from-the
moustier. Sire Gauuain fait il len parole des merueilles de
minster Lord Gawain says he one speaks of-the marvels of
camaalot qui moult en i auienent. che dist len. chertes
camelot which very-many thereof there happen this says one certainly

on dist voir. Mais ie ne quit quil ait cheualier chaiens
one says true But I not think that-there be knight in-here
qui tant en i ueist onques com iai hui fait. Dont
who so-many thereof there saw ever as I-have today done Then
le nous dites fait mesire Gauuain. Il commenche a dire
it to-us tell says my-lord Gawain He begins to tell
oiant la roine & monsignor Gauuain. & oiant tous
in-hearing the queen and my-lord Gawain and in-hearing all
les autres quanques il auoit veu del cheualier. Et conte
the others whatever he had seen of-the knight And tells
comment il se combati au cheualier. & comment il
how he himself fought with-the knight and how he
leust outre darmes sil volsist. Et comment il auoit
him-would-have overcome in-arms if-he had-wished And how he had
.j. des gaians mort. & comment il colpa a lautre le
one of-the giants killed and how he cut-off to the-other the
pie & le puing & daguenes saut auant si sescrie.
foot and the fist and Daguenet leaps forward so cries-out
Chest li cheualiers que ie pris. chest li cheualiers que
This-is the knight whom I took this-is the knight whom
ie pris. qui tout che a fait. voire voir fait mesire ywain
I took who all this has done true true says my-lord Yvain
cest mon. En non dieu itex cheualiers sai ie prendre.
it-is so In name (of-)God such knights know I take
Moult sui ore mauuais. en non dieu fait il mesire
Very am-I now bad in name (of-)God says he my-lord
Gauuain se vous leussies prins si en fuissies vous tous
Gawain if you him-had taken so thereof would-be you all
cointes. Et mesire ywains dist a monsignor Gauuain encore
proud And my-lord Yvain says to my-lord Gawain yet
vous en dirai ie plus. Comme li cheualiers ot les
you thereof shall-tell I more When the knight had the

iaians conquis si vint vne puchele par deuant moi qui dist
giants conquered so came a maiden by before me who said
Sire cheualiers chest la tierche. Et mesire Gauuain loit
Lord knight this-is the third And my-lord Gawain it-hears
si enbronche la teste & sosrist. Et la roine sen
so lowers the head and smiles And the queen herself-thereof
prist garde. si prinst monsignor Gauuain par le main &
took heed so took my-lord Gawain by the hand and
sen vont seoir a vne fenestre. & ele li dist par
themselves-thence go sit at a window and she to-him says by
la foi que vous deues le roi & moi dites moi porcoi
the faith that you owe the king and me tell me wherefore
vous resistes orains. Iel vous dirai fait il. de che que
you laughed just-now I-it you shall-tell says he of this that
la puchele dist a li cest la tierche. Che dist mesire
the maiden said to him this-is the third This says my-lord
Gauuain. menbre vous fait il que la puchele vous dist en
Gawain remember you says he that the maiden you said in
la dolerouse garde cele qui estoit en la tornele en prison.
the dolorous guard she who was in the turret in prison
Ia loistes vous autresi bien comme ie fis. Il ne men
Already it-heard you as well as I did It not me-thereof
menbre fait la roine. Ele vous dist fait mesire Gauuain que
remember says the queen She you said says my-lord Gawain that
nous oriemes noueles del cheualier qui nous fist entrer
we would-hear news of-the knight who us made enter
en la dolerouse garde a la premiere assamblee qui seroit
in the dolorous guard at the first assembly which would-be
el roialme de logres & a le seconde & a la tierche.
in-the kingdom of logres and at the second and at the third
& cest la tierce. Et li cheualiers qui les gaians a mors
and this-is the third And the knight who the giants has killed

si est lancelos del lac. & de voir le sachies. Ie vous en
so is Lancelot of-the lake and of truth it know I you thereof
croi bien fait la roine. Mais daguenes fait tel noise que
believe well says the queen But Daguenet makes such noise that
rien ne puet a lui durer. & dist a chascun que il auoit
anything not can by him last and says to each that he had
prins le boin cheualier qui les gaians ochist. teus cheualiers
taken the good knight who the giants killed such knights
ne prendes vous mie. Ensi atendent iuscal uespre que li
not take you at-all Thus wait-they up-to-the evening that the
rois reuient. & on li conte les noueles cuns cheualiers
king comes-back and one to-him tells the news that-a knight
a les gaians mors. Moult en a li rois grant ioie &
has the giants killed Very thereof has the king great joy and
si compaignon & tous les gens du pais. & daguenes
his companions and all the people of-the country and Daguenet
vient a lui si li dist. sire par la foi que vous doi
comes to him so to-him says lord by the faith that you owe
ie prins cel boin cheualier Et li rois en rist moult &
I took that good knight And the king thereof laughs much and
tout li autre. Mais atant laisse li contes dax ester. que
all the others But thereupon leaves the tale of-them be that
plus ne parole ci endroit del roi Ne de ses compaignons.
more not speaks here in-place of-the king Nor of his companions
ains retorne a parler del cheualier qui les gaians ochist.
but returns to speak of-the knight who the giants killed

The Causeway and the Cage

XVIII

The knight lodges with a vavasor and rides on with the damsel. At a causeway he meets a knight who hates all of Arthur's house because the knight sworn to avenge a wounded man against all who love the dead man, his uncle, has killed his cousin. That avenger is the knight himself; they fight, and when the other will not say he loves the wounded man better, the knight splits his head. Riding on, he comes to the Pui of Malehaut, where more than forty knights and sergeants beset him for killing the son of the lady's seneschal; he defends himself on the steps of a house until the lady comes and he surrenders his sword to her. She keeps him in a stone cage at the head of her hall, from which he can see all who enter, while his maiden, thinking him dead, takes refuge in a house of religion.

Li contes dist chi endroit que quant li cheualiers ot
The tale says here in-place that when the knight had
les gaians ochis. que il cheuaucha tant par la forest
the giants killed that he rode so-much through the forest
quil lot toute passee. & lors li commencha li iors
that-he it-had all passed and then to-him began the day
a falir. si encontra .j. vauassor qui de la forest venoit.
to fail so met a vavasor who from the forest came
Li vauassors nauoit compaignie nule fors dun sien escuier
The vavasor not-had company any except of-a his squire
qui portoit .j. cheureil torse quil auoit prins en la forest.
who carried a roebuck tied that-he had taken in the forest
Quant li vauassors voit venir le cheualier si le salue &
When the vavasor sees come the knight so him greets and
dist. Sire il est anuit mais bien tans de herbergier. & iai
says Lord it is tonight now well time for lodging and I-have
ostel & boin & bel a vostre euls sil vous plaisoit. &
lodging and good and fair to your need if-it you pleased and

si auries de cest cheureil. Li cheualiers uoit bien quil
so would-have-you of this roebuck The knight sees well that-it
est tans de herbergier si prent lostel & sen vait
is time for lodging so takes the-lodging and himself-thence goes
apres le vauassor. & maintenant vient la damoisele qui
after the vavasor and at-once comes the damsel who
auoit dit a monsignor ywain cest la tierce. si sen
had said to my-lord Yvain this-is the third so themselves-thence
vont tout .iiij. iusca la maison au vauassor. La nuit
go all four up-to the house of-the vavasor That night
furent bien herbergie. Et al matin quant il orent messe
were-they well lodged And at-the morning when they had mass
oie sen entra chil qui les auentures aloit querant
heard himself-thence went that-one who the adventures went seeking

Vn Iour auint que il cheuauchierent entre li & la
One Day it-befell that they rode between him and the
pucele & vindrent a eure de tierce a vne chauchie qui
maiden and came at hour of tierce to a causeway which
bien duroit vne lieue de lonc. si i auoit fosses grans &
well lasted a league of length so there had ditches great and
parfons dune part & dautre. En lentree de la cauchie
deep on-one side and of-other In the-entrance of the causeway
estoit vns cheualiers armes de toutes armes. Et quant li
was a knight armed with all arms And when the
cheualiers aproce chil qui daguenes prist. & li autres
knight approaches that-one who Daguenet took and the other
se trait auant si li demande qui il est. & il respont
himself draws forward so of-him asks who he is and he answers
que il est vns cheualiers le roi artu. En non dieu fait
that he is a knight (of-)the king Arthur In name (of-)God says
li autres dont ne passeres vous mie par chi. ne vous ne
the other then not will-pass you at-all by here nor you nor

nus qui a artu soit. Car ie le hei plus que nul homme.
anyone who to Arthur be For I him hate more than any man
ne ia namerai homme qui laimt. porcoi fait li autres.
nor ever not-shall-love-I man who him-love wherefore says the other
por ce fait il que chil de sa maison mont fait domage trop
for this says he that those of his house me-have done harm too
grant de mon parente. quel domage fait chil. Il auint que
great of my kindred what harm says that-one It befell that
vns cheualiers naures uint a lui grant tans a. qui auoit
a knight wounded came to him great time ago who had
.iij. tronchons de lanche parmi le cors. Il li pria quil
three stumps of lance through the body He him begged that-he
le feist desferrer. & il le fist desferrer a .j. cheualier
him should-have drawn-out and he him had drawn-out by a knight
qui li iura sor sains que il le vengeroit de tous chels
who to-him swore upon relics that he him would-avenge of all those
qui diroient quil ameroient miex chelui qui che li fist
who would-say that-they would-love better him who this to-him did
que lui. Or mochist awan .j. mien cousin germain moult
than him Now me-has-killed this-year a my cousin german very
preudomme cheualier. Mais plus a a ffaire que il ne quide
worthy knight But more has to do than he — thinks
chil qui che a empris. Car moult en i a encore a
that-one who this has undertaken For many thereof there has yet to
ochire des amis au mort. Comment fait li cheualiers qui
kill of-the friends of-the dead How says the knight who
daguenes prist estes vous de cels qui miex aiment le mort
Daguenet took are you of those who better love the dead
que le naure. Iel doi bien fait chil miex amer comme
than the wounded I-it ought well says that-one better love as
chelui qui fu mes oncles. Chertes fait li autres che poise
him who was my uncle Certainly says the other this grieves

moi. car il me couenra a vous meller. & ie men
me for it me will-behoove with you to-fight and I myself-thence
quidoie aler deliurement. Estes vous dont chil qui le naure
thought to-go freely Are you then that-one who the wounded
deues vengier. & il dist quil en fera son pooir. Dont
ought avenge and he says that-he thereof will-do his power Then
vous di ie bien que vous mochires ou ie vengerai mon cousin.
you tell I well that you me-will-kill or I shall-avenge my cousin
Il guenchissent li .j. vers lautre de si grant aleure
They wheel the one toward the-other of so great pace
com li cheual porent coure. li cheualiers de la cauchie
as the horses could run the knight of the causeway
brise son glaiue. & li autres fiert lui si quil le porte a
breaks his lance and the other strikes him so that-he him bears to
terre. Mais il fu ioines & vistes si refu tost saillis em
ground But he was young and quick so was-again soon leapt on
pies. Et met son escu auant si a traite lespee & courent
feet And puts his shield forward so has drawn the-sword and run
sus li vns a lautre moult durement si se dounent
upon the one at the-other very hard so themselves give
grans cols amont desor les hiaumes. si les font enbarer
great blows up over the helms so them make dent
dessus les testes. & se faussent les haubers en plusors
above the heads and themselves pierce the hauberks in several
liex. Mais a che monte la bataille que li cheualier de la
places But to this comes the battle that the knight of the
cauchie commenche a lasser. & a laissier plache plus &
causeway begins to weary and to leave place more and
plus. Et il le haste durement que encore a alaine &
more And he him presses hard for yet has-he breath and
force asses. Si li fait voler en pieches vne grant partie
strength enough So to-him makes fly in pieces a great part

de son escu. & chil a moult perdu del sanc. si li
of his shield and that-one has much lost of-the blood so to-him
est rompus vn des las de son hiaume. Et li autres saut a
is broken one of-the laces of his helm And the other leaps at
lui si li errache le hiaume de la teste & le gete loing
him so to-him tears the helm from the head and it throws far
tant com il le puet ieter si li dist. Or vous conuenra
as-much as he it can throw so to-him says Now you will-behoove
il a otroier que vous ames miex le naure que le mort.
it to grant that you love better the wounded than the dead
Encore ne voi ie fait il por qui ie le die. A dire fait
Still not see I says he for whom I it should-say To say says
il le vous couient ou vous morres. Lors li cort sus. &
he it you behooves or you will-die Then him runs upon and
chil iete tant descu desor sa teste com il i est remes
that-one throws so-much of-shield over his head as he there is remained
si se desfent moult durement vne grant pieche. Mais en
so himself defends very hard a great while But in
la fin ni pot durer si recommenche a guerpir plache.
the end not-there could-be last so begins-again to yield place
Et li autres li prie moult que il die quil aime miex
And the other him begs much that he may-say that-he loves better
le naure que le mort. Mais chil nel veut dire. Et lors
the wounded than the dead But that-one not-it wishes to-say And then
li iete li cheualiers .j. colp & le fiert sor le brach
to-him throws the knight a blow and him strikes upon the arm
senestre que moult le bleche. Et chil laisse lescu
left so-that much him wounds And that-one lets the-shield
caoir ius & ot la teste descouerte comme chil qui est
fall down and had the head uncovered as one who is
sans hiaume & sans escu. si li doune si grant colp
without helm and without shield so to-him gives so great blow

com il li pot rendre. & au retraire quil fist arriere
as he him could return and in-the drawing that-he made back
li autres iete .j. colp en la teste. sel fiert si durement
the other throws a blow on the head so-him strikes so hard
que il le fent tout iusquen la bouche & il chiet mors.
that he him splits all up-to-into the mouth and he falls dead
Et chil en est moult dolant se il le pooit amender.
And that-one thereof is very sorrowful if he it could amend
Lors vient a son cheual que la puchele tenoit si est
Then comes to his horse which the maiden held so is
montes. si sen vont entraus .ij. toute la cauchie. en
mounted so themselves-thence go between-them two all the causeway in
tel maniere cheuauchent tant quil aprochent dune chite
such manner ride-they so-long that-they approach a city
que len clamoit le puis de malohaut. Lors les ont ataint
which one called the pui of malehaut Then them have overtaken
doi escuier dont li vns aportoit lescu au cheualier &
two squires of-whom the one brought the-shield of-the knight and
li autres le hiaume. si se passent par dales els sans
the other the helm so themselves pass by beside them without
dire mot & sen vont les grans galos. li cheualiers
saying word and themselves-thence go the great gallops the knight
oire entre lui & la pucele vers la chitee. Et quant
journeys between him and the maiden toward the city And when
il vienent vers la porte si leua grans li cris. & li
they come toward the gate so rose great the cry and to-him
uindrent a lencontre que cheualier que seriant plus de
came to the-meeting both knights and sergeants more than
.xl. si les escrient moult durement. & li laissent coure
forty so them cry-at very hard and to-him let run
tout ensamble. & le cueurent de lor glaiues trestout &
all together and him strike with their lances all and

lui & son cheual. si quil les portent a terre & lun
him and his horse so that-they them bear to ground and the-one
& lautre si ont le cheual mort. & il est remes a pie si
and the-other so have the horse dead and he is remained on foot so
se desfent moult durement de sespee si lor decolpe lor
himself defends very hard with his-sword so to-them cuts-up their
glaiues & lor ochist lor cheuax a chels que il ataint.
lances and to-them kills their horses to those whom he reaches
Mais quant il voit que il ni pora durer. si se
But when he sees that he not-there will-be-able last so himself
lanche sor le degre dune fort maison qui iluec estoit. la
flings onto the steps of-a strong house which there was there
se desfent tant com il puet. Tant que la dame de la
himself defends as-much as he can Until that the lady of the
vile i est venue. Et il lauoient ia si cort tenu que
town there is come And they him-had already so short held that
il lauoient ia mis a ienols .ij. fies ou .iij. & ele li
they him-had already put to knees two times or three and she to-him
dist que il se rende a li. Dame fait il quai ie forfait.
says that he himself yield to her Lady says he what-have I wronged
vous aues fait ele mort le fil a mon senescal qui chi
you have says she killed the son of my seneschal who here
est. Dame fait il che poise moi. mais ensi le me conuint
is Lady says he this grieves me but thus it me behooved
faire. Rendes vous fait ele a moi que ie le voel. & si le
to-do Yield you says she to me for I it wish and so it
vous lo. & il li tent sespee. & ele lenmaine en
you counsel and he to-her holds-out his-sword and she him-leads-away into
sa maison. Ne puis ni ot nes un qui le touchast. La
her house Nor after not-there had not one who him touched The
dame le maine en prison sel met en vne iaiole qui est
lady him leads into prison so-him puts in a cage which is

el chief de la sale. chele iaiole estoit de pierre si estoit
in-the head of the hall that cage was of stone so was
lee par desous & par desus estroite. si auoit .ij. toises
wide by below and by above narrow so had two fathoms
en tous sens & haute iusca le couuerture de la sale.
in all directions and high up-to the roof of the hall
En chascune quareure de la iaiole auoit .ij. fenestres de
In each corner of the cage had-it two windows of
voire si cleres. que tout chil qui estoient dedens pooient
glass so clear that all those who were within could
veoir tous chels qui entroient en la sale. Moult estoit
see all those who entered into the hall Very was
bele la gaiole. & si estoit close de pronnes de fer hautes
fair the cage and so was closed with bars of iron high
& fors. Si pooit aler li cheualiers par dedens tant
and strong So could go the knight through within as-far-as
cune caine duroit qui estoit fremee a .vij. aniaus. Mais
a chain lasted which was fastened to seven rings But
sa pucele nen sauoit mot. Car ele sen estoit alee
his maiden not-thereof knew word For she herself-thence was gone
de la porte ou ele auoit este forclose. Et bien quidoit
from the gate where she had been shut-out And well thought-she
que li cheualiers fust mors. sen ot tel duel que ele
that the knight were dead so-thereof had-she such grief that she
nosa retorner a sa dame del lac. Ains se rendi a
not-dared return to her lady of-the lake But herself gave at
la premiere maison de religion que ele troua. Si se taist
the first house of religion that she found So itself is-silent
ore li contes & de lui & del cheualier & de la dame
now the tale and of him and of-the knight and of the lady
qui en prison le tient. & retorne a parler del roi artu.
who in prison him holds and returns to speak of-the king Arthur

Galehaut Invades

XIX

The damsel of the marches sends Arthur word that Galehaut has taken all her land but two castles, and Arthur sets out at once though his men urge him to wait for his host. He has seven thousand knights; Galehaut has a great army, with nets of iron drawn round his camp. The king of the Hundred Knights spies out Arthur's host and is sent against him, since Galehaut will not fight in person against so few. Gawain leads Arthur's men across the ford and routs them, but Galehaut sends thirty thousand more, and at nightfall Gawain holds the gate of the castle, and he falls swooning from his horse so bruised and spent that he is carried to his lodging, and all fear he is burst within.

Vn Ior auint che dist li contes. la ou li rois artus
One Day it-befell this says the tale there where the king Arthur
seiornoit a camaalot que la damoisele des marches des
sojourned at camelot that the damsel of-the marches of-the
iles li enuoia .j. message. Et li mande que Galahaus
isles to-him sent a messenger And to-him sends-word that Galehaut
li fiex a la iaiande estoit entres en sa terre. & toute la
the son of the giantess was entered into her land and all it
li auoit tolue. fors .ij. castiax que ele a el chief de
to-her had taken except two castles which she has in-the head of
sa terre de cha. Rois artus fait le messages. por che vous
her land of this-side King Arthur says the messenger for this you
mande que vous vengies desfendre vostre terre. Car ele
sends-word-she that you come defend your land For it
ne se puet mie longement tenir ensi se vous ne venes. Iou
not itself can at-all long hold thus if you not come I
irai fait li rois hastiuement. A il moult grant gent fait
shall-go says the king hastily Has he very great people says
li rois. Sire oil bien .C. mile hommes a cheual. biax
the king Lord yes well a-hundred thousand men on horse fair

amis fait li rois or dites a vostre dame que ie mouerai
friend says the king now tell to your lady that I shall-move
encore anuit ou demain por aler encontre galahot. Sire
yet tonight or tomorrow to go against Galehaut Lord
dient si homme non feres ains atenderes vos gens.
say his men not you-will-do but you-will-wait-for your people
que chist a trop grant gent amene & vous estes chi
for this-one has too great people brought and you are here
priueiment. Sire ne vous deues mie mettre en auenture. Ia
privately Lord not you ought at-all put in hazard Ever
diex ne mait fait li rois quant ia hom entrera en ma
God not me-may-help says the king when ever man will-enter into my
terre por mal faire. se ie gis en vile tant com ie soie la.
land to evil do if I lie in town as-long as I may-be there
Al matin sesmuit li rois & oirre tant quil vient
At-the morning himself-sets-out the king and journeys so-far that-he comes
el chastel a la damoisele des marches. & herbergent en
to-the castle of the damsel of-the marches and they-lodge in
pauellons. car il auoit bien .vij. mile cheualiers & nen
pavilions for he had well seven thousand knights and not-thereof
auoit mie plus encore. Mais il a partout semons & loing
had at-all more yet But he has everywhere summoned and far
& pres & mande que tout i viegnent. & a cheual
and near and sends-word that all there may-come both on horse
& a pie. & amaint chascuns quanque il pora auoir
and on foot and bring each whatever he will-be-able have
de gens. Galehos sist au castel que il auoit assis & ot
of people Galehaut sat at-the castle which he had besieged and had
amenei vne grant gent a pie qui traient & portent saietes
brought a great people on foot who shoot and carry arrows
entosquies de uenin. & estoient bien arme comme gent a
poisoned with venom and were well armed as people on

pie. Et auoient aportees rois de fer qui venoient en cars &
foot And had brought nets of iron which came in carts and
en caretes. & auoient tant de ces rois quil en auoient
in wagons and had so-many of these nets that-they thereof had
enclose toute lost galehaut. si que lost nauoit garde par
enclosed all the-host (of-)Galehaut so that the-host not-had fear from
deriere. galehos oi dire que li rois artus iert venus. Mais
behind Galehaut heard say that the king Arthur was come But
nauoit encore gaires de gent. Si mande de ses gens les
not-had yet much of people So sends-for-he of his people the
.xxx. rois que il auoit conquis. & des autres tant comme
thirty kings whom he had conquered and of-the others as-many as
lui plot. Signor fait il li rois artus est venus. mais il na
him pleased Lords says he the king Arthur is come but he not-has
gaires gent che ma len dit. Ne il ne seroit mie monor
much people this me-has one said Nor it not would-be at-all my-honor
que mes cors i assamblast tant com il i est a si poi
that my person there should-join so-long as he there is with so few
de gent. Mais de ma gent voeil ie bien quil assamblent
of people But of my people wish I well that-they join-battle
a la soie. Sire fait li rois des .C. cheualiers enuoies
with the his Lord says the king of-the hundred knights send
mi demain. cest biens dist galehos. au matin a laube
me tomorrow this-is well says Galehaut at-the morning at-the dawn
aparant vait li rois des .C. cheualiers por sauoir lost
appearing goes the king of-the hundred knights to know the-host
le roi artu. pres del castel ou li rois ert auoit vne
(of-)the king Arthur near of-the castle where the king was had-it a
cite qui auoit non li puis de malohaut. Et nestoit mie si
city which had name the pui of malehaut And not-was-it at-all so
pres que il ni eust .vij. lieues galesces. entre le roi artu
near that it not-there had seven leagues Welsh between the king Arthur

& la chite auoit .j. haut tertre & plus pres de lost que
and the city had-it a high hill and more near to the-host than
de la chite. la monta li rois des .C. cheualiers por
to the city there mounted the king of-the hundred knights to
sorueoir lost le roi artu. & li samble que bien i
survey the-host (of-)the king Arthur and to-him seems that well there
ait plus de .vij. mile cheualiers. & torne ariere a galohaut
be more than seven thousand knights and turns back to Galehaut
& si li dist. sire iai lor gent aesmee si nont mie
and so to-him says lord I-have their people estimated so not-have-they at-all
plus de .x. M. cheualiers. a essient dist de plus que
more than ten thousand knights with intent he-said of more for
il ne voloit mie estre blasmes de la gent galahot. Et
he not wished at-all to-be blamed by the people (of-)Galehaut And
galahos respont prenes de vos cheualiers .xm. tex com
Galehaut answers take of your knights ten-thousand such as
vous voldrois. & tex rois com il velt. si alez assembler
you will-wish and such kings as he wishes so go join-battle
a eus. Voluntiers fet li rois des .C. cheualiers. Il
with them Willingly says the king of-the hundred knights He
eslut .viij. M. tex com il uolt. & sarment de toutes
chose eight thousand such as he wished and themselves-arm with all
armes & sen vont tout desree vers lost le
arms and themselves-thence go all in-disarray toward the-host (of-)the
roi artu que onques ni ot bataille rengnie ne conroi
king Arthur so-that ever there-not had battle ranged nor array
fait. La nouele vient en lost que li cheualier galahot
made The news comes into the-host that the knights (of-)Galehaut
vienent tout desree. Il sarment moult tost en lost.
come all in-disarray They themselves-arm very quickly in the-host
& messires Gauuain vient au roi son oncle si li dist.
and my-lord Gawain comes to-the king his uncle so to-him says

Sire li cheualier galahot vienent a nous por assambler.
Lord the knights (of-)Galehaut come to us to join-battle
Mais ses cors ni vient mie. & des que il ni vient
But his person not-there comes at-all and since that he not-there comes
vous ni vendres mie. non fait li rois. Mais vous i
you not-there will-come at-all no says the king But you there
ales fait il a monsignor Gauuain & i menes tant de
go says he to my-lord Gawain and there lead as-much of
gent comme vous aues & deuises vos conrois. & rengies
people as you have and arrange your arrays and range
vos batailles. si gardes que sagement soit fait. Car il ont
your battalions so see that wisely it-be done For they have
plus gent que nous nauons encore. Sire fait mesire Gauuain
more people than we have yet Lord says my-lord Gawain
il ert au miex que nous porons. Mesire Gauuain &
it will-be at-the best that we shall-be-able My-lord Gawain and
li autre cheualier passent liaue al gue. Car lost est
the other knights pass the-water at-the ford For the-host is
herbergies sor la riuiere. & il ont liaue passee si
lodged upon the river and they have the-water passed so
deuisent lor conrois & lor batailles. Et la gent galahot
arrange their arrays and their battalions And the people (of-)Galehaut
vienent tout desree. & mesire Gauuain lor enuoie vne
come all in-disarray and my-lord Gawain to-them sends a
bataille encontre aux par assembler. Chil vinrent tout fres
battalion against them to join-battle Those came all fresh
desirant dassambler & trop volentieu. & chil les recuellent
desiring to-join-battle and too eager and those them receive
bien & li estors commence. Les gens galahot vienent
well and the fight begins The people (of-)Galehaut come
si espes que chil nes porent souffrir. Et quant mesire
so thick that those not-them could suffer And when my-lord

Gauuain vit que liex fu si lor enuoie vne autre bataille
Gawain saw that place was so to-them sends an other battalion
& puis la tierce & puis la quarte. Et quant il voit
and then the third and then the fourth And when he sees
que li .x. mile cheualier sont tout venu. si cheuauche il
that the ten thousand knights are all come so rides he
meismes por assambler a els. Tout li .vij. mile cheualier
himself to join-battle with them All the seven thousand knights
le font moult bien. Mais li cors monsignor Gauuain le
it do very well But the person (of-)my-lord Gawain it
fait bien sor tous les autres. Moult i a des proisies
does well over all the others Many there has of prized
cheualiers de la maison le roi artu qui moult i font
knights of the house (of-)the king Arthur who much there do
cheualerie. Et deuers galahot en ra asses qui
chivalry And toward Galehaut thereof there-has-again enough who
moult bien le font. Grant pieche dura li estors. asses i
very well it do Great while lasted the fight enough there
ot cheualeries faites dune part & dautre. La gent galahot
had chivalries done on-one side and of-other The people (of-)Galehaut
ne porent soffrir la maisnie le roi artu. Encore soient
not could endure the household (of-)the king Arthur Though be
il plus si les descomfissent li .vij. M. & cachent
they more so them discomfit the seven thousand and chase
del camp. Quant li rois des .C. cheualiers voit que
from-the field When the king of-the hundred knights sees that
ses gens senfuient & que il sont torne a descomfiture si
his people flee and that they are turned to rout so
len pesa moult en son cuer. Car endroit de soi estoit
it-him grieved much in his heart For in-respect of himself was
il moult boins cheualiers. Il prent .j. message & mande
he very good knight He takes a messenger and sends-word

a galahot que il lor enuoie secors. que il ne peuent
to Galehaut that he to-them send help for they not can
souffrir la maisnie le roi artu. & galahos en i
suffer the household (of-)the king Arthur and Galehaut thereof there
enuoie .xxx. M. chil vienent a desroi moult grant aleure.
sends thirty thousand those come in disarray very great pace
si lieuent les poudrieres comme de si grant gent. Et mesire
so raise the dust-clouds as of so great people And my-lord
Gauuain les voit de loing & il & la maisnie le roi
Gawain them sees from far and he and the household (of-)the king
artu. Se il en sont esfrae ce nest mie de merueille.
Arthur If they thereof are afraid this not-is at-all of marvel
li rois des .C. cheualiers & les soies gens les virent
the king of-the hundred knights and the his people them saw
venir qui en orent moult grant ioie. & si tornent les
come who thereof had very great joy and so turn the
chies des cheuax ariere & vont ferir les gens le roi
heads of-the horses back and go strike the people (of-)the king
artu moult durement. Et chil aux autresi bien ou miex.
Arthur very hard And those them likewise well or better
Mesire Gauuain se trait ariere & les soies gens se
My-lord Gawain himself draws back and the his people themselves
restraignent. Quil doutent la forche qui vient apres aux.
draw-together For-they fear the force which comes after them
& chil vienent a desroi desirant dassambler & volentieu.
and those come in disarray desiring to-join-battle and eager

Ore signor cheualier fait mesire Gauuain or i para
Now lords knights says my-lord Gawain now there will-appear
qui bien le fera. Car nous ni auons noiant autrement.
who well it will-do For we not-there have anything otherwise
O ert veu qui amera le roi artu. & la soie honor. Mesire
Here will-be seen who will-love the king Arthur and the his honor My-lord

Gauuain & li sien lor guenchissent ireement en mi
Gawain and the his to-them wheel angrily in middle
les vis & les vont ferir. & chil aus si durement que lor
the faces and them go strike and those them so hard that their
lanches volent em pieces. & tex i ot qui sentrabatent.
lances fly in pieces and such there had who strike-each-other-down
Illuec ot estor merueillos de lances & despees. Et les
There had-it fight marvelous of lances and of-swords And the
gens le roi artu i souffroient trop; & moult le font
people (of-)the king Arthur there endured too-much and very it do
bien. Mais la forche est si grans dautre part que se ne
well But the force is so great of-other part that if not
fust la proece monsignor Gauuain. il fuissent tout pris ne
were-it the prowess (of-)my-lord Gawain they would-be all taken nor
ia nus ni escapast. Mais il le fait si bien que onques
ever anyone not-there would-escape But he it does so well that ever
nus cheualiers miex ne le feist. Mais biens faires ni a
any knight better not it would-do But well doing not-there has
mestier que trop sont chil dautre part par la force des
use for too-many are those of-other part by the force of-the
gens que il ont. Si les encauchent trop aguement. la
people that they have So them pursue-they too keenly there
parsoufri tant mesire Gauuain & li boin cheualier de la
endured so-much my-lord Gawain and the good knights of the
maison le roi que onques gens tant ne souffrirent. Mais
house (of-)the king that ever people so-much not endured But
il parsouffri sor tous tant que outre le gue les metent
he endured over all so-much that beyond the ford them put-they
a force. Deuant la porte fu li estors merueillex. la se
by force Before the gate was the fight marvelous there himself
pardesfendi tant mesire Gauuain que les gens le roi
defended so-much my-lord Gawain that the people (of-)the king

artu furent entre ens. & neporquant si i perdirent il
Arthur were entered in and nevertheless so there lost they
moult. Car la maisnie galahot pristrent moult de lor
much For the household (of-)Galehaut took many of their
cheualiers. Il se traissent ariere que bas vespres ert.
knights They themselves drew back for late evening was-it
Mesire Gauuain ne fu pas mis a forche el castel. Mais
My-lord Gawain not was at-all put by force into-the castle But
il fu tex conrees deuant la porte & tant i prist &
he was so arrayed before the gate and so-much there took both
bous & caus que moult se delt el retraire que les
bruises and blows that much himself grieves in-the withdrawing that the
gens galahot firent. & il chiet pasmes de son cheual
people (of-)Galehaut made and he falls swooning from his horse
sans che que nus ne ladesoit. Mais tant auoit toute iour
without this that anyone not him-touched But so-much had-he all day
soufferte angoisse. & tant sert angoissies de bien faire
suffered anguish and so-much himself-was straitened of well doing
que il estoit tex conrees quen lemporta a son ostel. Et
that he was so arrayed that-one him-carried to his lodging And
li rois & la roine & tout li autre ont trop grant paor
the king and the queen and all the others have too great fear
de lui. & criement quil soit derront dedens le cors de
for him and fear that-he be burst within the body from
lesfort & de la merueille que il auoit le ior fait en lost.
the-effort and from the marvel that he had the day done in the-host

The Prisoner's Parole

XX

The Lady of Malehaut, a good and wise widow loved by her people, hears that Gawain did best at the assembly. Her prisoner in the cage sends for the best knight of her household and asks him to beg the lady to speak with him; that knight asks her a boon, which she grants before she knows it, and it is that she speak with the knight she holds. The prisoner begs to be ransomed, being a poor bachelor, but she keeps him for justice, not for gold. He asks leave to go to the assembly three days hence, promising to return to her prison that night; she will let him go only if he tells his name, and at last he pledges that he will tell it as soon as he may. Galehaut's men ask that those who did not fight before be sent against Arthur's host, and he sends the nine thousand.

Pres diluec estoit la chites de malohaut. la chite tenoit
Near from-there was the city of malehaut the city held
vne dame qui auoit eu signor. Mais il ert mors & si
a lady who had had lord But he was dead and so
en auoit enfans. Mais moult ert boine dame & sage
thereof had-she children But very was-she good lady and wise
& moult estoit amee & proisie de tous cheus qui la
and much was loved and prized by all those who her
connoissoient. Et la gent de sa terre le paramoient tant
knew And the people of her land her loved-dearly so-much
que quant autres gens lor demandoient. quel est vostre
that when other people of-them asked what is your
dame. Il respondoient que chou est la roine de toutes les
lady They answered that this is the queen of all the
autres. Chele dame auoit .j. cheualier en prison si le tenoit
others That lady had a knight in prison so him held
en .j. gaiole qui est de piere. & si est si cleire la piere que
in a cage which is of stone and so is so clear the stone that

il veoit tous chels defors. & chil de defors veoient li la
he saw all those outside and those from outside saw him the
iaiole estoit grele & haute que il se pooit bien drechier.
cage was narrow and high so-that he himself could well stand-up
& ert auques longe bien le get dune grosse piere. &
and was somewhat long well the throw of-a big stone and
laiens tenoit la dame le cheualier em prison. Et la nuit que
in-there held the lady the knight in prison And the night that
chele assamblee ot este sen vinrent li cheualier del
that assembly had been themselves-thence came the knights of-the
pais en la chite a la dame. & conterent les noueles de
country into the city to the lady and told the news of
cele assamblee a la dame. & ele demande qui lauoit miex
that assembly to the lady and she asks who it-had best
fait & il dient que mesire Gauuain. & que onques nus
done and they say that my-lord Gawain and that ever any
cheualiers nel fist miex che lor est avis. Li cheualiers
knight not-it did better this to-them is opinion The knight
qui ert en la iaiole oi ces noueles. Et quant li seriant
who was in the cage heard these news And when the sergeants
qui le gardoient li porterent a mengier. si demanda qui
who him guarded to-him brought to eat so asked-he who
ert li cheualiers de la maisnie a la dame qui miex estoit
was the knight of the household of the lady who best was
de li. Signor car le feissies parler a moi. Moult
with her Lords now him should-make-you speak with me Very
volentiers font li seriant li dirommes. Il vienent au
willingly say the sergeants to-him we-shall-tell They come to-the
cheualier si li dient. chil cheualiers prisons velt parler
knight so to-him say that knight prisoner wishes to-speak
a vous. & il i va en la gaiole. Quant il le vit si se
with you and he there goes into the cage When he him saw so himself

drecha encontre li. Sire fait il ie vous ai mande si vous
raised against him Lord says he I you have sent-for so you
voeil proier que vous proies a madame que ele sueffre que
wish to-beg that you beg to my-lady that she suffer that
ie parle a li. Moult volentiers biax sire fait li cheualiers.
I speak with her Very willingly fair lord says the knight
Il ist de la gaiole & vient a sa dame & li dist.
He goes-out from the cage and comes to his lady and to-her says
Dame dounes moi .j. don. quel don fait la dame. dounes le
Lady give me a gift what gift says the lady give it
moi fait il iel vous dirai. Dites fait ele seurement. auries
me says he I-it you shall-tell Say says she surely would-have
vous mestier de rien iel vous doing. vostre merci. Dame
you need of anything I-it you give your mercy Lady
fait il vous maues doune. Or vous pri que vous parles
says he you me-have given Now you beg-I that you speak
a cel cheualier que vous aues em prison. Amenes le chi
with that knight whom you have in prison Bring him here
fait ele. li cheualiers le ua querre si lamaine a sa dame.
says she the knight him goes seek so him-brings to his lady
& puis sen reua si le laist auoeques li. biax sire
and then himself-thence goes-again so him leaves with her fair lord
fait la dame vous volies parler a moi che ma len dit.
says the lady you wished to-speak with me this me-has one said
Dame voire fait il ie sui vostre prisons. si vous voloie
Lady true says he I am your prisoner so you I-wished
proier que vous me raembrisies. Car iai oi dire que
to-beg that you me should-ransom For I-have heard say that
li rois artus est en chest pais. & Ie sui vns poures
the king Arthur is in this country and I am a poor
bachelers si me connoissent de tex gens de sa maisnie qui
bachelor so me know of such people of his household who

me donroient asses tost ma raenchon. biax sire fait ele ie
me would-give soon enough my ransom fair lord says she I
ne vous tieng mie por couoitise de vostre raenchon. Mais
not you hold at-all for covetousness of your ransom But
por iustice. vous saues bien que vous feistes moult grant
for justice you know well that you did very great
outrage. Et por che vous pris ie. dame fait il le fait
outrage And for this you took I lady says he the deed
ne puis ie pas noier. Mais moi lesteuoit faire. Car ie nel
not can I at-all deny But me it-behooved to-do For I not-it
pooie laissier a monor. Mais se vostre plaisir estoit que
could leave with my-honor But if your pleasure were that
vous me raembrisies vous feries bien. Que iai oi dire
you me should-ransom you would-do well For I-have heard say
quil a vne assamblee en cest pais & de hui en tier
that-it has an assembly in this country and from today in third
ior i redoit estre che disoient or ains chil cheualier
day there ought-again be this said just now those knights
en chele sale. Et se vous volies ie vous vaudroie moult
in that hall And if you wished I you would-wish much
proier que vous mi laissisies aler. & ie vous asseurrai que
to-beg that you me should-let go and I you shall-assure that
ie reuenrai la nuit en vostre prison se ie nai essoine
I shall-return the night into your prison if I not-have hindrance
de mon cors. Si ferai ie fait ele par .j. couent que vous
of my body So shall-do I says she by a covenant that you
me dites vostre non. Iche fait il ne puis ie faire. Dont ne
me tell your name This says he not can I do Then not
ires vous mie fait ele. Laissies mi aler fait il & ie vous
will-go you at-all says she Let me go says he and I you
creant que iel vous dirai au plus tost que liex en
promise that I-it you shall-tell at-the most soon that place thereof

sera del dire. Creantes le vous ensi fait ele. Oil fait il.
will-be of-the telling Promise it you thus says she Yes says he
& vous ires fait ele Mais vous pleuires fait ele que vous
and you will-go says she But you will-pledge says she that you
vous metres le soir en ma prison se vous naues essoine
you will-put the evening in my prison if you not-have hindrance
de vostre cors. & il li pleui. & ele en prent la
of your body and he to-her pledged and she thereof takes the
fianche & il sen torne en sa iaiole. & i fu cel
pledge and he himself-thence turns into his cage and there was that
soir & lendemain toute ior & lautre nuit apres. Et les
evening and the-next-day all day and the-other night after And the
gens le roi artu crurent toute vois quil venoient de
people (of-)the king Arthur grew all ways for-they came from
toutes pars. les gens galahot vienent a li si li dient.
all parts the people (of-)Galehaut come to him so to-him say
Sire assambleront demain nos gens a la gent le roi
Lord will-join-battle tomorrow our people with the people (of-)the king
artu. Oil fait galahos. Ie eslirai chiax que ie voldrai qui
Arthur Yes says Galehaut I shall-choose those whom I shall-wish who
i aillent. eslires font il de che ni a il noient se
there go you-will-choose say they of this not-there has it anything if
vous i uoles enuoier chels qui i furent a lautre fois.
you there wish to-send those who there were at the-other time
Tout li autre i irront ou vous voeillies ou non. que
All the others there will-go whether you wish or not for
il sont si desirant dassambler a lor cheualiers. que nous
they are so desiring to-join-battle with their knights that we
nes porriens retenir. Mais enuoies i tous chels qui
not-them could hold-back But send there all those who
ni furent mie. Et tout chil qui i furent remaignent
not-there were at-all And all those who there were remain

o vous. cest biens dist galahos. Or i iront li .IX.
with you this-is well says Galehaut Now there will-go the nine
M. qui ni furent pas. & demain au tier ior i
thousand who not-there were at-all and tomorrow at-the third day there
irai ie meismes. La nuis passe. & al matin commanda
shall-go I myself The night passes and at-the morning commanded
li rois que nus de ses cheualiers ne past liaue Mais
the king that anyone of his knights not should-pass the-water But
arment soi en lost & conduisent lor conrois. Et
arm themselves in the-host and lead their arrays And
quant il verront galahot si passechent outre liaue.
when they will-see Galehaut so should-pass beyond the-water

The Vermilion Knight

XXI

The lady gives her prisoner a horse, a red shield, and his own arms. At the ford he leans on his lance and watches the gallery where the queen and Gawain are, while ribalds jeer at him and one hits him with a wet clod; then he unhorses the king First Conquered, and in the battle, Arthur's twenty thousand against forty thousand, he outdoes everyone and vanishes at night. Galehaut decides there is no honor in conquering a king with so few men and resolves to grant a truce of a year. A worthy man of great learning comes to Arthur, refuses his greeting, calls him the vilest of sinners, born in adultery and false to the poor, and tells him to confess before all his clerks.

Li cheualier du pais furent tout venu en lost. & chil
The knights of-the country were all come into the-host and those
de la vile del puis de malahaut & des autres terres
of the town of-the pui of malehaut and of-the other lands
entor. La dame de la chite ot au cheualier que ele
around The lady of the city had to-the knight whom she
tenoit en prison doune .j. cheual & .j. escu vermeil &
held in prison given a horse and a shield red and
les soies armes meismes que il auoit quant ele le prinst.
the his arms themselves which he had when she him took
Car il ne vaut autres auoir. Au matin au ior sen
For he not wished others to-have At-the morning at-the day himself-thence
issi hors de la chite & erra vers lost le roi
went-out out of the city and traveled toward the-host (of-)the king
artu. si vit les cheualiers dune part & dautre tous armes.
Arthur so saw the knights on-one side and on-other all armed
Et il sareste sor le gue si ne passe mie outre. Desus
And he himself-stops upon the ford so not passes at-all beyond Above
le gue auoit vnes loges ou li rois artus estoit por lost
the ford had-it some galleries where the king Arthur was for the-host

esgarder & la roine & dames & damoiseles tot plain. &
to-watch and the queen and ladies and damsels all full and
mesire Gauuain si a fait porter si malades com il
my-lord Gawain so has made-himself carry so sick as he
estoit. li cheualiers a lescu vermeil sareste sor le gue
was the knight with the-shield red himself-stops upon the ford
& sapoie sor sa lance. Et les gens galahot vienent
and himself-leans upon his lance And the people (of-)Galehaut come
tout conree. A la premiere bataille vient li rois que il
all arrayed At the first battalion comes the king whom he
auoit premier conquis. & com il aprochent il se part
had first conquered and as they approach he himself parts
de sa gent si a son escu prins si sen va deuant
from his people so has his shield taken so himself-thence goes before
tous seus. Chil lecheor qui la estoient en lost le roi
all alone Those ribalds who there were in the-host (of-)the king
artu & chil parleor darmes commenchent a crier en haut.
Arthur and those talkers of-arms begin to cry on high
lor cheualiers vienent vees les chi. & li rois premiers
their knights come see them here and the king first
conquis aproche moult. & li lecheor commenchent a dire
conquered approaches much and the ribalds begin to say
au cheualier a lescu vermeil Sire cheualier vees .j. de
to-the knight with the-shield red Lord knight see one of
lor venir. Et que atendes vous il vient tous seus. par
them come And what wait-for you he comes all alone by
mainte fois li dient & chil ne respont mot. & li
many times to-him say-they and that-one not answers word and the
rois premier conquis vient moult tost. li garchon li ont
king first conquered comes very fast the boys to-him have
tant dit que tout en sont anoiet. & .j. cointe lechieres
so-much said that all thereof are annoyed and a saucy ribald

vient vers lui & prent lescu de son col si le pent au
comes toward him and takes the-shield from his neck so it hangs at-the
sien & chil ne se muet. Et vns autres gars qui ert
his and that-one not himself moves And an other lad who was
a pie quide que li cheualiers soit fols si sabaisse vers
on foot thinks that the knight be mad so himself-stoops toward
liaue & prent vne mote si len fiert sor le nazel del
the-water and takes a clod so him-with-it strikes upon the nasal of-the
hiaume. Maluais faillis fait li gars que soignies vous. la
helm Wretched coward says the lad what dream you the
mote fu moillie si len entre liaue es iex. Il clot
clod was wet so to-him-thereof enters the-water into-the eyes He closes
les iex & puis les oeure & oit la noise si se regarde
the eyes and then them opens and hears the noise so himself looks
& voit le roi premier conquis qui i ert ia moult pres.
and sees the king first conquered who there was already very near
Et il fiert le cheual des esperons & baisse la lanche
And he strikes the horse with-the spurs and lowers the lance
si li vient encontre. Et li rois le fiert en mi le pis.
so to-him comes against And the king him strikes in middle the chest
li haubers fu fors si ne fausse mie & la lanche vole em
the hauberk was strong so not gives-way at-all and the lance flies in
pieches. Li cheualiers fiert lui si durement quil porte a
pieces The knight strikes him so hard that-he bears to
terre & lui & le cheual tout en vn mont. Au resordre
ground both him and the horse all in one heap At-the rising-again
que li cheuax fist li gars qui ot lescu pris & qui lot
that the horse made the lad who had the-shield taken and who it-had
a son col laert au fraim. Et li cheualiers nel regarda
at his neck it-takes by-the bridle And the knight not-it looked-at
onques. Que sil volsist il leust ains pris que li gars.
ever For if-he had-wished he it-would-have sooner taken than the lad

Mais il nentendoit mie a che. & li lechieres vient vers
But he not-heeded at-all to this and the ribald comes toward
li cil qui auoit son escu pris si li met au col.
him that-one who had his shield taken so to-him puts-it at-the neck
Tenes sire fait il miex i est emploies que ie ne quidoie.
Hold lord says he better there is employed than I — thought
Li cheualiers se regarde & voit que cil li pent
The knight himself looks and sees that that-one to-him hangs
lescu au col si nen fist nul samblant ains le prinst.
the-shield at-the neck so not-thereof made any sign but it took
li compaignon le roi quil ot abatu poignent quant
the companions (of-)the king whom-he had struck-down spur when
il virent lor signor caoir. & les batailles le roi artu
they saw their lord fall and the battalions (of-)the king Arthur
satornent. Et quant il furent atorne si sen vienent
make-ready And when they were ready so themselves-thence come
au gue & passent liaue. li cheualier assamblent li .j.
to-the ford and pass the-water the knights join-battle the one
as autres. & chil a lescu uermeil laist coure por
with-the others and that-one with the-shield red lets run to
ioster a .j. des cheualiers le roi que il ot abatu.
joust with one of-the knights (of-)the king whom he had struck-down
si le fiert si quil le porte a terre & sa lanche vole
so him strikes so that-he him bears to ground and his lance flies
em pieces. & vns gars vient apres lui si prent le cheual.
in pieces and a lad comes after him so takes the horse
Li estors commenche moult bien de la gent le roi
The fight begins very well of the people (of-)the king
artu. & de la galehot. les batailles le roi artu passent
Arthur and of that (of-)Galehaut the battalions (of-)the king Arthur pass
liaue espessement lune apres lautre. Et les gens galahot
the-water thickly the-one after the-other And the people (of-)Galehaut

vienent dautre part qui moult sont desirant dassambler
come from-other part who very are desiring to-join-battle
as gens le roi artu. Et cil les recueillent as
with-the people (of-)the king Arthur And those them receive with-the
fers des lances qui le ior en laissierent maint mort
irons of-the lances which the day thereof left many dead
& maint naure. & neporquant si le firent moult bien
and many wounded and nevertheless so it did very well
les gens galahot & les gens le roi artu miex &
the people (of-)Galehaut and the people (of-)the king Arthur better and
mestier lor est. Car il sont moult mains quil ne
need to-them is For they are much fewer for-they not
sont que .xx. mile & chil sont .xl. M. Moult dura
are but twenty thousand and those are forty thousand Long lasted
la mellee & moult fu li estors boins & moult i ot
the melee and very was the fight good and many there had
cheualeries faites. & moult le firent bien li compaignon
deeds-of-knighthood done and very it did well the companions
le roi artu & li cheualier proisie de sa maison. Moult
(of-)the king Arthur and the knights prized of his house Much
i ot fait darmes chelui ior & dune part & dautre.
there had done of-arms that day both on-one side and of-other
Mais chil venqui tot as armes vermeilles. & la nuit
But that-one vanquished all with-the arms red and the night
sen parti que nus ne sot quil deuint. Moult a
himself-thence departed so-that anyone not knew what-he became Much has
li rois grant paor de perdre sa terre & toute honor. &
the king great fear to lose his land and all honor and
moult li sont failli si homme si comme li sage clerc
many to-him are failed his men so as the wise clerks
li distrent. Si en est moult espoentes. Et dautre part
to-him said So thereof is-he much frightened And of-other part

reparole galahos a sa gent que il na mie grant honor
speaks-again Galehaut to his people that he not-has at-all great honor
eu el roi artu guerroier en ceste maniere. Car trop a
had in-the king Arthur warring in this manner For too has
li rois petit de gent. & se ie conquerroie fait il sa terre
the king little of people and if I should-conquer says he his land
en cest point ie ni auroie pas honor. mais honte. Sire
at this point I not-there would-have at-all honor but shame Lord
font si homme quen voles dire. Ie vous dirai fait il
say his men what-thereof wish-you to-say I you shall-tell says he
coi. Il ne me plaist ore plus que ie le guerroieche en ceste
what It not me pleases now more that I him should-war in this
maniere. ains li donrai triewes iusca .j. an par si
manner but to-him shall-give truce up-to a year on condition
quil amenra tot son pooir au chief de lan. Et lors si
that-he will-bring all his power at-the head of the-year And then so
aurai grignor honor en lui guerroier que ie nauroie ore.
shall-have-I greater honor in him warring than I would-have now
Ensi passe cele nuit iusca lendemain. & lors vient en
Thus passes that night up-to the-next-day and then comes into
lost le roi artu vns preudons plains de grant sauoir.
the-host (of-)the king Arthur a worthy-man full of great knowledge
Et quant li rois oi dire quil venoit si en fu moult
And when the king heard say that-he came so thereof was-he much
comfortes. & bien li fu auis que diex li enuoioit
comforted and well to-him was opinion that God to-him sent
secors. Lors monta li rois & ala auoec grant compaignie
help Then mounted the king and went with great company
de gent & le salua simplement Mais li preudom ne
of people and him greeted simply But the worthy-man not
li rendi mie son salu ains dist comme corecies. Ne
to-him returned at-all his greeting but said as angered Nor

de vous ne de vostre salu nai ie cure ne ne laim pas.
of you nor of your greeting not-have I care nor not it-love at-all
Car vous iestes li plus viex pechieres de tous les pecheors.
For you are the most vile sinner of all the sinners
& bien vous parra. Car toute honor terriene aues
and well to-you will-appear For all honor earthly have-you
ia approchie de perdre. lors se traient tot ariere
already approached of losing then themselves draw all back
& cheualchent entre le roi & le preudomme. Et li rois
and ride between the king and the worthy-man And the king
li dist. ha! biax maistres dites moi porcoi vous naues
to-him says ah fair master tell me wherefore you not-have
cure de mon salut. & de coi ie sui si viex pechieres.
care of my greeting and of what I am so vile sinner
Iel te dirai fait le preudom. Car ie sai asses miex qui
It thee shall-I-tell says the worthy-man For I know enough better who
tu es que tu ne ses meismes. Et neporquant tu ses
thou art than thou — knowest thyself And nevertheless thou knowest
bien que tu ne fus engendres ne nes par assamblement de
well that thou not wert begotten nor born by union of
loial mariage. Mais en si grant pechie com est auoltires. Si
lawful marriage But in so great sin as is adultery So
dois sauoir que nus hom mortex ne te baillast a garder
oughtest know that any man mortal not thee gave to keep
la signorie que tu tiens mais que diex seulement. & le
the lordship which thou holdest but that God only and it
te bailla por che que tu len seusses boin gre. Et
thee gave for this that thou him-thereof should-know good thanks And
tu li as faite teile garde que tu le destruis qui garder
thou to-him hast made such keeping that thou it destroyest who keep
le deusses. Car li drois del poure ne del non poissant
it oughtest For the right of-the poor nor of-the not mighty

ne puet venir iusca toi. ains est li riches desloiax ois
not can come up-to thee but is the rich disloyal heard
& honeres deuant ta fache por son auoir. & li poures
and honored before thy face for his wealth and the poor
droituriers ni a loy por sa pouerte. li drois des
righteous not-there has law for his poverty the right of-the
veues & des orphenins est peris en ta signourie & che
widows and of-the orphans is perished in thy lordship and this
te demandera diex seur toutes choses moult cruelment.
of-thee will-ask God above all things very cruelly
Car il meismes dist par la bouche du prophete dauid
For he himself said by the mouth of-the prophet David
quil est garde des poures & soustient les orfenins &
that-he is guardian of-the poor and sustains the orphans and
destruira les voies des pecheors. Teil garde fais tu a dieu
will-destroy the ways of-the sinners Such keeping make thou to God
de son pueple. dont il tauoit baillie la terriene seignorie.
of his people of-which he thee-had given the earthly lordship
Et par che vendras tu a destruement car diex destruira
And by this will-come thou to destruction for God will-destroy
les pecheors. & dont destruira il toi. Car tu es le plus
the sinners and then will-destroy he thee For thou art the most
viex pechieres de tous les pecheors. ha! biax dols maistres
vile sinner of all the sinners ah fair sweet master
fait il por dieu conseillies moi. Car trop sui espoentes. &
says he for God counsel me For too am-I frightened and
li preudons li dist. Merueilles fais fait il. qui conseil
the worthy-man to-him says Marvels thou-dost says he who counsel
demandes & croire nel vels. Chertes biax maistres fait li
ask and believe not-it wilt Certainly fair master says the
rois de toutes les choses que vous me dires ie vous querrai.
king of all the things that you me will-tell I you shall-believe

Ensi vienent andoi parlant tout seul iusca la tente le
Thus come both speaking all alone up-to the tent (of-)the
roi. Et li rois reprent la parole & dist. biax maistres
king And the king takes-up the word and says fair master
conseillies moi por dieu. Car trop en ai grant mestier
counsel me for God For too thereof have-I great need
& li preudons li dist. encore venront li conseil a tans
and the worthy-man to-him says yet will-come the counsels in time
se croire les voles. Et ie tenseignerai le commenchement
if believe them you-wish And I thee-shall-teach the beginning
de la voie a nostre signor. Or va en ta capele & si mande
of the way to our Lord Now go into thy chapel and so send-for
les plus haus hommes & les plus sages clers que tu
the most high men and the most wise clerks that thou
sauras en cest ost. & si te confesse a tous ensamble de
wilt-know in this host and so thyself confess to all together of
tous les pechies dont langue se porra descourir par la
all the sins of-which tongue itself will-be-able uncover by the
ramenbrance del cuer. & si garde que tu portes ton cuer
remembrance of-the heart and so see that thou carry thy heart
auoec toi & ta bouce. Car la confessions nest preus se li
with thee and thy mouth For the confession not-is worth if the
cuers nest repentans de chou que la langue regehist. Et tu
heart not-is repentant of this that the tongue confesses And thou
es moult eslongies de lamor nostre signor par ton pechie.
art very far-removed from the-love (of-)our Lord by thy sin
Et si ni pues estre racordes se par reiehissement
And so not-there canst-thou be reconciled except by confessing
non de langue tot auant. & apres par vraie repentance de
not of tongue all before and after by true repentance of
cuer. & apres par paine de cors & par oeures daumousnes
heart and after by pain of body and by works of-almsgiving

& de carite. Tex est la droite voie a dame dieu. Or
and of charity Such is the right way to Lord God Now
va si te confesse en tel maniere. & recheuras dessepline
go so thyself confess in such manner and wilt-receive discipline
des mains a tes confesseors en tel maniere. Car chest
from-the hands of thy confessors in such manner For this-is
signes dumilite. Et se ie fuisse establis a confession oir
sign of-humility And if I were appointed to confession hear
ie oisse la toie. Mais nus ne doit ce faire qui ordenes
I would-hear the thine But anyone not ought this do who ordained
ne soit se besoins ne len semont. Par che ne doi ie
not be if need not him-thereof summons By this not ought I
pas ta confession oir. Car asses auras des confesseors de
at-all thy confession hear For enough wilt-have of-the confessors of
sainte eglize. Mais apres ta confession venras a moi. &
holy church But after thy confession wilt-come to me and
diex tenuoiera conseil se mescreanche ne te destorbe. Or
God thee-will-send counsel if misbelief not thee hinder Now
va si le fai si com ie tai dit. Et si ni laisse a
go so it do so as I thee-have said And so not-there leave to
reiehir nule riens dont ta comsiense te puisse reprendre.
confess any thing of-which thy conscience thee may reprove

Arthur's Confession

XXII

Arthur comes before his archbishops and bishops naked but for his breeches, barefoot, weeping, with rods in his hands, confesses all the sins he can remember, and receives discipline from them. The worthy man asks whether he has confessed the sin of King Ban of Benoic, who died in his service, and of his wife, disinherited after Ban's death; Arthur confesses it too. The worthy man then explains why his men fail him: the low nobles of his land of their own will, the men of his household against it, by God's will; and those who serve by force are worth no more than the dead, since a body without a heart has no power. His first counsel is that Arthur sojourn in his good towns and hear the suits of poor and rich.

Lors manda li rois ses arceuesques & ses euesques dont
Then sent-for the king his archbishops and his bishops of-whom
grant partie auoit en lost. Et quant il furent assamble
great part had-be in the-host And when they were assembled
en sa capele li rois vient deuant aus tous nus en braies
in his chapel the king comes before them all naked in breeches
plorant & plaignant. Et tenoit tout plain ses .ij. poins
weeping and lamenting And held all full his two fists
de menues verges si les ieta deuant aus & lor dist en
of small rods so them threw before them and to-them said in
plorant que il preissent de lui veniance a dieu. Car ie sui
weeping that they should-take of him vengeance for God For I am
li plus vis pechieres & li plus desloiax del monde. Et
the most vile sinner and the most disloyal of-the world And
quant chil loirent si furent moult esbahi & disent. Sire
when those it-heard so were-they much amazed and said Lord
quest ce que aues vous. Ie vieng fait il a vous com a mes
what-is this what have you I come says he to you as to my
peres si voeil a dieu reiehir mes grans felonies en vostre
fathers so wish to God confess my great felonies in your

oiance. Car ie sui li plus vis pechieres qui onques fust.
hearing For I am the most vile sinner who ever was
Lors en orent chil moult grant pitie & commenchent a
Then thereof had those very great pity and begin to
plorer. & il se fu a ienols mis deuant els & descaus.
weep and he himself was on knees put before them and barefoot
tant quil ot reiehi a son quidier tous les grans pechies
so-long that-he had confessed to his belief all the great sins
dont il quidoit estre malmis. Apres prisent dessipline de
of-which he thought to-be blighted After took-they discipline of
lui. & il moult doucement le rechut. lors sen reuient
him and he very meekly it received then himself-thence comes-back
a son maistre. & il li demanda tantost comment il
to his master and he of-him asked at-once how he
lauoit fait. & il li dist que il estoit confesses de tous
it-had done and he to-him says that he was confessed of all
les grans pechies que il quidoit auoir fais ne dont il
the great sins that he thought to-have done nor of-which he
se pooit ramenbrer. & li preudons li redist es tu
himself could remember and the worthy-man to-him says-again are thou
confes del grant pechie que tu as del roi ban de benoic
confessed of-the great sin that thou hast of-the king Ban of benoic
qui mors fu en ton seruice. & de sa feme qui a este
who dead was in thy service and of his wife who has been
desiretee puis la mort de son signor. de son fil ne parole
disinherited since the death of her lord of her son not speak
ie mie que ele perdi autresi. Mais lune perte est asses
I at-all whom she lost likewise But the-one loss is enough
plus legiere de lautre. Lors fu li rois moult esbahis &
more light than the-other Then was the king much amazed and

dist. chertes maistres de che nai ie pas este confes. &
says certainly master of this not-have I at-all been confessed and
si est li pechies moult grant. Mais chertes oublie lauoie.
so is the sin very great But certainly forgotten it-I-had
Maintenant sen rala li rois en sa capele &
At-once himself-thence went-back the king into his chapel and
i troua encore ses clers qui parloient de sa confession.
there found yet his clerks who spoke of his confession
Et si lor reiehi son pecie. Mais il ne li donerent
And so to-them confessed his sin But they not to-him gave
mie penitance ne de cestui. ne des autres. Car il ne
at-all penance nor of this-one nor of-the others For they not
sacordoient pas tout a vne chose. si en pristrent sor
agreed at-all all on one thing so thereof took-they upon
els le respit iusquapres laust. tant que plus i eust de
them the respite up-to-after August so-long that more there might-be of
conseil. Atant sen retorna li rois a son maistre &
counsel Thereupon himself-thence returned the king to his master and
li conta comment il auoit fait. & puis li dist. biax
to-him told how he had done and then to-him says fair
maistres pour dieu or me conseillies. Et ie vous creanterai
master for God now me counsel And I you shall-promise
de toutes les coses que vous me loeres ie vous en
of all the things that you me will-advise I you thereof
querai. Car trop sui espoentes de mes hommes qui si
shall-believe For too am-I frightened of my men who so
me faillent car trop les ai ames. ha! fait li preudom
me fail for too-much them have-I loved ah says the worthy-man
che nest mie merueille se ti homme te faillent. Car
this not-is at-all marvel if thy men thee fail For
ceste premiere demoustrance ta fait diex por che que
this first showing thee-has made God for this that

tu tapercheusses. quil te voloit oster de ta signorie.
thou thyself-shouldst-perceive that-he thee wished to-remove from thy lordship
par che quil te toloit cels par quele aide tu las
by this that-he from-thee took those by whose aid thou it-hast
longuement maintenue. & neporquant li .j. te faillent de
long maintained and nevertheless the some thee fail of
lor gre qui tu deusses faire les grans honors. & porter
their will whom thou oughtest do the great honors and carry
les grans signouries & les grans compaignies. che sont
the great lordships and the great companies these are
li bas gentil homme de ta terre par qui tu dois estre
the low gentle men of thy land by whom thou oughtest be
maintenus. Car li regnes ne puet estre maintenus se li
maintained For the kingdom not can be maintained if the
communs des gens ne si acorde. Chil te sont failli de
commons of-the people not there agrees Those thee are failed of
lor gre. li autre qui estre lor gre te faillent che sont chil
their will the others who without their will thee fail these are those
de ta maison qui tu as donees les grans riqueches &
of thy house to-whom thou hast given the great riches and
qui tu as fais signors de ta maison chil te faillent estre
whom thou hast made lords of thy house those thee fail without
lor gre por che que diex le velt issi. Ne contre la volente
their will for this that God it wishes thus Nor against the will
dieu ne puet durer nule desfense. Ensi te faillent li .j.
(of-)God not can last any defense Thus thee fail the some
& li autre. Mais li .j. vienent en ta besoigne par forche
and the others But the some come in thy need by force
por che que garantir lor couient lor terres & lor honors.
for this that protect them behooves their lands and their honors
& li autre i vienent por les biens que tu lor fais
and the others there come for the goods that thou to-them do

& que tu lor feras encore. Ensi i vienent li .j. par
and that thou to-them will-do yet Thus there come the some by
forche & li autre par volente. Mais chil qui par force i
force and the others by will But those who by force there
vienent ne te valent rien plus que sil estoient mort.
come not thee are-worth anything more than if-they were dead
Car tu nas mie leur cuers. & cors sans cuer na nul
For thou not-hast at-all their hearts and body without heart not-has any
pooir. Or te pren garde que puet valoir escus ne haubers
power Now thee take heed what can be-worth shields nor hauberks
ne espee ne forche de cheual sans cuer domme. nule riens
nor sword nor strength of horse without heart of-man any thing
ne puet valoir. Se tu auoies ore tous les rois qui ont este
not can be-worth If thou hadst now all the kings who have been
puis que li siecles commencha. & fuissent appareillie de
since that the world began and were furnished with
toutes armes por que li cuer en fuissent fors. ne te
all arms provided that the hearts thereof were out not thee
feroient il aide ne que il font orendroit. Et tout autretel
would-do they aid nor that they do right-now And all likewise
font chil qui a forche vienent en ta besoigne. ne tu
do those who by force come into thy need nor thou
nen as que les cors. Car les cuers nas tu mie anchois
not-thereof hast but the bodies For the hearts not-hast thou at-all rather
les as perdus. Te samble il que ie te die voir.
them hast-thou lost Thee seems it that I thee may-tell true
Certes maistres fait li rois Ie mi acort bien que
Certainly master says the king I me-there agree well that
vous me dites verite. Mais por dieu conseillies moi que
you me tell truth But for God counsel me what
ie porrai faire. Car che me disent chil qui mon soigne
I shall-be-able do For this me told those who my dream

mespelirent que ensi mauendroit. Et quant tant maues
expounded-to-me that thus to-me-would-happen And since so-much me-have-you
conseillie por dieu conseillies moi tant que ie soie secorus
counseled for God counsel me so-much that I may-be succored
se ce puet estre. Ie te conseillerai fait li preudom. &
if this can be I thee shall-counsel says the worthy-man and
seis tu comment. a lonor de ton cors. & al profit de
know thou how to the-honor of thy body and to-the profit of
tame. Et si taprendra .j. des plus biax maistries que tu
thy-soul And so thee-will-teach one of-the most fair masteries that thou
onques oisses. Car ie taprenderai a garir cuer malade. &
ever heard For I thee-shall-teach to heal heart sick and
cuer deshaitie. & chou est vne tres bele medichine. Et tu
heart downcast and this is a very fair medicine And thou
mas creante que tu feras chou que ie te loerai. Chertes
me-hast promised that thou wilt-do this that I thee shall-advise Certainly
maistres fait li rois ce ferai mon. Or te dirai dont
master says the king this shall-do-I indeed Now thee shall-tell then
fait li preudom que tu feras. Tu auras conseil & secors
says the worthy-man what thou wilt-do Thou wilt-have counsel and succor
si ne demoura gaires. Et verras que diex fera pour toi
so not will-tarry-it much And wilt-see what God will-do for thee
amender vers lui & vers le siecle. Tu ten iras vers
to-amend toward him and toward the world Thou thyself-thence wilt-go toward
ton pais si venras seiourner en toutes les boines viles. en
thy country so wilt-come sojourn in all the good towns in
lune plus en lautre mains selonc ce que lune vaudra
the-one more in the-other less according-to this that the-one will-be-worth
miex de lautre. si garde que tu i soies tant que tu
better than the-other so see that thou there be until that thou
aies oi & les drois & les tors. & les grans & les
mayst-have heard both the rights and the wrongs both the great and the

petis. Car li poures hom sera asses plus lies se drois li
small For the poor man will-be enough more glad if right to-him
doune sa querele par deuant toi. que sil en eust plus
gives his suit by before thee than if-he thereof had more
deuant .j. autre. Et dira partout que tu meismes li as
before an other And will-say everywhere that thou thyself to-him hast
sa droiture desraisnie; Ensi doit faire rois qui lamor de dieu
his right vindicated Thus ought do king who the-love of God
& du siecle velt auoir. Lamor du siecle par humilite
and of-the world wishes to-have The-love of-the world by humility
& lamor de dieu par droiture. Cest li commenchemens
and the-love of God by righteousness This-is the beginning
donor & damor conquerre. Apres te dirai que tu feras.
of-honor and of-love to-conquer After thee shall-tell-I what thou wilt-do

The Counsel on Largesse

XXIII

The worthy man goes on with his counsel. As Arthur sojourns in his towns he is to send for his knights, poor and rich, and keep company with poor bachelors of prowess, rising from the side of the high man to sit beside the poor one, by the witness of a loyal knight who knows who is good in each land. He is to give the poor good horses and money, the vavasors robes, palfreys, and larger fiefs, the high men fair and pleasing things, and to give gladly, for no man was ever destroyed by largess. Arthur promises to do it and asks again what the lion of the water, the physician without medicine, and the flower may be; the worthy man begins: the lion is God, and the water is the world.

Les haus hommes de ta terre si comme tu seiorneras en
The high men of thy land so as thou wilt-sojourn in
tes viles & tous les cheualiers poures & riches manderas.
thy towns and all the knights poor and rich wilt-send-for
& il vendront volentiers & esforchiement. & tu lor
and they will-come willingly and in-force and thou to-them
iras encontre si lor feras grans compaignies & grans
wilt-go to-meet so to-them wilt-make great companies and great
honors & grans festes. & lor menras grans compaignies
honors and great feasts and to-them wilt-lead great companies
& beles. & la ou tu verras le poure bacheler qui
and fair and there where thou wilt-see the poor bachelor who
pouerte aura en son lieu. & qui proece de cors naura
poverty will-have in his place and who prowess of body not-will-have
mie oublie. & il sera lors aual entre les autres poures
at-all forgotten and he will-be then down among the other poor
hommes. si ne loblie por sa pouerte ne por son bas
men so not him-forget for his poverty nor for his low
lignage. Car desous pouerte de cors gist grant riqueche de
lineage For beneath poverty of body lies great richness of

cuer. Et en grant plente dor & de terres est maintes
heart And in great plenty of-gold and of lands is many
fois pouerte de cuer enuolepee. Mais pour che que tu
times poverty of heart wrapped But for this that thou
ne poroies mie par toi seul connoistre les boins ne les
not couldst at-all by thyself alone know the good nor the
maluais de chascune terre ou tu vendras. mande le plus
bad of each land where thou wilt-come send-for the most
loial cheualier en qui bonte darmes se soit herbergie. &
loyal knight in whom goodness of-arms itself be lodged and
par le tesmoig de lui feras les biens & les honors a cels
by the witness of him wilt-do the goods and the honors to those
de son pais. Car nus ne connoist si bien preudomme
of his country For anyone not knows so well worthy-man
comme chil qui de grant proece est enrachines. Et quant
as that-one who of great prowess is rooted And when
il te mostera le boin pouer homme qui loig se serra
he thee will-show the good poor man who far himself will-sit
entre les autres poures. si garde que tu naies mie si chier
among the other poor so see that thou not-hast at-all so dear
la compaignie del haut homme que tu ne ten lieues
the company of-the high man that thou not thyself-thence risest
& ailles seoir dales le poure homme & li enquier de
and go sit beside the poor man and of-him inquire of
son estre. Et tacointe de li & il de toi. & lors dira
his being And thyself-acquaint with him and he with thee and then will-say
chascuns. aues veu le roi quil fait que tous les riches
each have-you seen the king what-he does that all the rich
hommes a laissies por chelui qui pouers hons est. par
men has-he left for that-one who poor man is by
che conquerras lamor des basses gens. Car che sera moult
this wilt-conquer the-love of-the low people For this will-be very

grans humilites. humilite si est vne virtus par coi len puet
great humility humility so is a virtue by which one can
plus sonor & son preu essauchier & auanchier. Ne tu ne
more his-honor and his profit exalt and advance Nor thou not
verras ia si haut homme en qui il ait sens ne bonte se
wilt-see ever so high man in whom there be sense nor goodness if
tu te lieues de dales li por faire compaignie a .j. plus
thou thyself risest from beside him to make company to one more
poure. que il nel tiegne a sens & a proeche. Et se li
poor that he not-it hold for sense and for prowess And if the
fol le te tornent a mal ne ten caille. Car li blasmes
fools it thee turn to ill not thee-thereof care For the blame
del fol dechiet. & li los del sage croist & enforche.
of-the fool decays and the praise of-the wise grows and strengthens
Quant tu seras seiornes & acointies des poures hommes.
When thou wilt-be sojourned and acquainted with-the poor men
si retenras compaignie as barons qui sont menbre de ton
so wilt-keep company with-the barons who are members of thy
regne. Car por lun ne doit pas empirier li preus de lautre.
kingdom For for the-one not ought at-all worsen the profit of the-other
Quant tu auras en ta vile seiorne tant com toi plaira.
When thou wilt-have in thy town sojourned as-long as thee will-please
si ten partiras a tel compaignie com tu auras eue.
so thee-thence wilt-part with such company as thou wilt-have had
& lors seront appareillie li boin cheual & les boines armes
and then will-be prepared the good horses and the good arms
li riche drap de soie le bele vaselemente dor & dargent
the rich cloths of silk the fair plate of-gold and of-silver
le grant plente de deniers. Et la ou tu verras le boin
the great plenty of pennies And there where thou wilt-see the good
poure homme de qui li vrais tesmoins taura acointie.
poor man with whom the true witness thee-will-have acquainted

Si esgarde .j. de tes cheuax tel que lui couiegne & monte
So choose one of thy horses such that him befit and mount
sus. puis tacost dales li si li fai ioie. & deschent
upon then thyself-draw-near beside him so to-him make joy and dismount
de ton cheual si li fai monter. & di que tu vels que il
from thy horse so him make mount and say that thou wishest that he
le cheuauche por amor de toi. Apres li fai bailler de tes
it ride for love of thee After to-him have handed of thy
deniers tant com tu quideras que boin soit. le cheual li
pennies as-much as thou wilt-think that good be the horse to-him
donras tu por sa proece. & les deniers por largueche de sa
wilt-give thou for his prowess and the pennies for largess of his
despense. Ensi donras au poure preudomme. Mais autrement
spending Thus wilt-give to-the poor worthy-man But otherwise
donras as vauassors. Car il sont aaisies en lor ostel.
wilt-give to-the vavasors For they are at-ease in their lodging
Tu lor donras robes & palefrois pour aus porter en lor
Thou to-them wilt-give robes and palfreys for them to-carry in their
besoignes. Mais garde que tu aies primes sis el palefroi.
affairs But see that thou mayst-have first sat on-the palfrey
si diront partout quil ont le palefroi que tu cheualchas.
so will-they-say everywhere that-they have the palfrey that thou rodest
Ensi donras au vauassor. Mais por che ne remaigne mie
Thus wilt-give to-the vavasor But for this not let-it-remain at-all
que tu nacroisses au besoing lor fies. de beles rentes
that thou not-increase at-the need their fiefs with fair rents
& de riches terres. a chascun selonc che que il sera.
and with rich lands to each according-to this that he will-be
Car por che ne perdras tu mie se tu lor dounes ains
For for this not wilt-lose thou at-all if thou to-them give rather
gaigneras les cuers daus Car miex seront les terres gardees
wilt-gain the hearts of-them For better will-be the lands kept

par maint preudomme sil les ont queles ne seroient par
by many worthy-men if-they them have than-they — would-be by
toi seul. Car tu nes que .j. seul homme. ne tu ne pues
thee alone For thou not-art but one single man nor thou not canst
se par aus non. Che que tu pues & tu dois miex
except by them not This that thou canst and thou oughtest better
voloir que ti preudome tiegnent a honor de ta terre
wish that thy worthy-men hold with honor of thy land
vne partie; que tu perdisses honteusement & lune &
a part than-that thou shouldst-lose shamefully both the-one and
lautre. Apres donras as haus hommes. as rois & as
the-other After wilt-give to-the high men to-the kings and to-the
dus as contes & as barons les riches vasselementes les
dukes to-the counts and to-the barons the rich plate the
cointes ioiaus les biax dras de soie les boins oisiax & les
elegant jewels the fair cloths of silk the good birds and the
cheuax. Et si ne dois baer mie a els tant a doner
horses And so not oughtest aim at-all with them so-much to give
les riches dons come les biax & les plaisans. Car len
the rich gifts as the fair and the pleasing For one
ne doit mie douner au rice homme riches choses por
not ought at-all give to-the rich man rich things for
plaisans. Mais plaisans choses pour riches. Car chest .j.
pleasing But pleasing things for rich For this-is an
anuis de fondre vne riqueche sor lautre. Mais au poure
annoyance to melt one richness upon the-other But to-the poor
home doit len douner tex choses qui soient plus boines
man ought one give such things which be more good
que beles & plus profitables que plaisans. Car pouertes
than fair and more profitable than pleasing For poverty
na mestier fors damendement. Et riquece na mestier
not-has need except of-amendment And richness not-has need

fors de delit. ne tex choses ne font mie a donner a tous.
except of delight nor such things not are at-all to give to all
Car on ne doit doner a home chose dont il a asses. Et
For one not ought give to man thing of-which he has enough And
si te conuenra doner. se tu vels doner selonc droiture.
so thee will-behoove to-give if thou wishest to-give according-to righteousness
& se tu le fais ensi autresi couenra que la roine le face
and if thou it dost thus likewise will-behoove that the queen it do
as dames & as damoiseles del pais ou ele venra.
to-the ladies and to-the damsels of-the country where she will-come
Et que tu & ele doignies si com li sages le commande.
And that thou and she give so as the wise-man it commands

Li sages dist que autresi lies doit estre li doneres en
The wise-man says that as glad ought be the giver in
son don. com est chil qui on le doune. len ne doit
his gift as is that-one to-whom one it gives one not ought
mie doner a laide chiere. Mais tos iors doner a lie
at-all give with ugly cheer But all days to-give with glad
samblant. Car en liement doner a .ij. paire de merites. &
semblance For in gladly giving has-it two pair of merits and
chil ki est dounes en rekignant na nul gueredon. Et si
that-one who is given in grudging not-has any reward And so
a vne autre raison par coi tu ne deuroies ia estre las
has-it an other reason by which thou not oughtest ever be weary
de douner. Car tu ses bien que par doner ne pues tu
of giving For thou knowest well that by giving not can thou
estre destruis. Mais tu pues aler a mal par trop tenir.
be destroyed But thou canst go to ill by too-much holding
Car nus ne fu onques destruis par larguece. Mais plusor
For anyone not was ever destroyed by largess But many
ont este escillie par auarisse. Tousiors done asses & asses
have been ruined by avarice Always give enough and enough

auras coi. Car quanque tu donras remanra en ta terre.
wilt-have wherewith For whatever thou wilt-give will-remain in thy land
& de maintes autres terres te venront li auoir en la
and from many other lands thee will-come the riches into the
toie. Ne ia doner ne te faudra tant com tu veilles. Car
thine Nor ever to-give not thee will-fail as-long as thou wishest For
li ors ne li argens de ta terre ne sera ia par toi vses.
the gold nor the silver of thy land not will-be ever by thee worn-out
ains vsera il toi autresi comme liaue vse la roe du
rather will-wear-out it thee likewise as the-water wears the wheel of-the
molin. por che a doner dois entendre sans laissier. Et se
mill for this to giving oughtest attend without leaving-off And if
tu ensi le faisoies tu gaaigneroies lonor del siecle & les
thou thus it did thou wouldst-gain the-honor of-the world and the
cuers de tes gens & lamor de nostre signor. Che sont li
hearts of thy people and the-love of our Lord These are the
haut gaaing a cui hom fu establis. Ne nus ne doit baer
high gains to which man was appointed Nor anyone not ought aim
a autres choses gaaignier. Te samble il que ie te conseille
to other things to-gain Thee seems it that I thee counsel
en foi. Chertes biax maistres fait li rois moult maues
in faith Certainly fair master says the king very me-have-you
bien conseillie. & ie le ferai ensi com vous le maues
well counseled and I it shall-do so as you it me-have
commande se diex en ma terre me ramaine honerablement.
commanded if God into my land me brings-back honorably
Mais por dieu me conseillies de la grant merueille que cil
But for God me counsel of the great marvel that those
me distrent qui mon soigne mespeloient. que nule riens ne
me told who my dream expounded that any thing not
me puet estre garans de ma terre perdre. que li lions
me can be warrant of my land losing except-that the lion

iauages & li mires sans medechine. par le conseil de
of-the-water and the physician without medicine by the counsel of
la flor. de ches .iij. choses me faites sage se il puet estre.
the flower of these three things me make wise if it can be
Car ie nes puis entendre. & vous me les enseigneres
For I not-them can understand and you me them will-teach
bien se vostre volentes i est. Or enten fait li preudom.
well if your will there is Now listen says the worthy-man
Ie tai monstre par coi tu as perdu les cuers de
I thee-have shown by what thou hast lost the hearts of
tes gens. & par coi tu les poras recourer. Et encore
thy people and by what thou them wilt-be-able recover And yet
tensegnerai ie les .iij. choses que tu demandes si que tu
thee-shall-teach I the three things that thou askest so that thou
les verras. & connoistras apertement. & neporquant il
them wilt-see and wilt-know openly and nevertheless they
ne sorent que il te disent nient plus que forsenes qui
not knew what they thee said any more than madman who
parole & ne seit sil dit voir ou non. Mais ie ten
speaks and not knows if-he says true or not But I thee-thereof
dirai le voir. Et saches que il ne le te disent mie
shall-tell the truth And know that they not it thee said at-all
sans raison. Car li lyons che est diex. Diex est senefies
without reason For the lion this is God God is signified
por le lyon. por les naitures del lyon qui dautres bestes
by the lion for the natures of-the lion which from-other beasts
sont diuerses. Mais que il le virent ieuages. che est
are different But that they him saw of-the-water this is
vne grant merueille. Iauage lapelerent il por ce que il
a great marvel Of-the-water him-called they for this that they
le quiderent veoir en liaue. Liaue ou il le quiderent
him thought to-see in the-water The-water where they him thought

veoir che est li siecles. Car autresi com li poissons ne
to-see this is the world For likewise as the fish not
puet viure sans iaue. autresi ne poons nous viure sans
can live without water likewise not can we live without
le siecle. chou est a dire sans les choses del siecle.
the world this is to say without the things of-the world

The Lion in the Water

XXIV

The worthy man interprets the dream. The clerks saw the lion as if in the water because they were wrapped in the world, which is the water: the lion is God, Jesus, born of the Virgin. The physician without medicine is God too, who heals the wounds of body and soul by his look alone, where earthly physicians need herbs and often fail. The flower is the Virgin, who bore her child and kept her flower whole; from her came the fruit that fed the five thousand, sustained Israel in the desert and Joseph of Arimathea, and feeds holy church each day. By her counsel and no other will Arthur come through his trouble, and the king is comforted.

En chest siecle estoient enuolepe chil qui te disent quil
In this world were wrapped those who thee tell that-they
auoient veu le lyon. Et por ce quil estoient des pechies
had seen the lion And for this that-they were in-the sins
del siecle envolepe & mal mis. por che lor fu il auis
of-the world wrapped and ill placed for this to-them was it opinion
quil auoient veu le lyon iauage qui le siecle senefie. Car
that-they had seen the lion of-the-water which the world signifies For
se il fuissent tel com il deussent estre. loial caste caritable
if they had-been such as they ought be loyal chaste charitable
pitex relegieus & plain dautres vertus. Il neussent mie
pitiful religious and full of-other virtues They not-would-have at-all

veu le lyon en liaue. Mais la sus el chiel. Car li chiex
seen the lion in the-water But there above in-the sky For the sky
est siecles pardurables. apparellies a home sil velt errer
is world everlasting made-ready for man if-he wishes to-walk
selonc les commandemens de son creator. Et qui ensi vit
according-to the commandments of his creator And who thus lives
il nest mie terriens mais celestiens. Car se li cors est el
he not-is at-all earthly but heavenly For if the body is in-the
siecle li cuers est el chiel par boine pensee. Mais la terre
world the heart is in-the sky by good thought But the earth
nest mie tele. ains est fausse & enterremens a homme qui
not-is at-all such but is false and burial to man who
vit encontre raison. Cest en orgueil en crualte en felonie.
lives against reason This-is in pride in cruelty in felony
en auarise en couoitise en luxure. & en autres pechies de
in avarice in covetousness in lust and in other sins of
dampnemens. Itel estoient li clerc qui ton soigne tespelirent.
damnation Such were the clerks who thy dream thee-expounded
Et pour che quiderent il auoir veu le lyon en liaue. qui
And for this thought they to-have seen the lion in the-water which
est senefies de pechie. Et neporquant en liaue nestoit il
is signified for sin And nevertheless in the-water not-was he
mie. Car diex ne fu onques en pechie. ains estoit en son
at-all For God not was ever in sin but was in his
glorieus siege. Mais lespessetes de lair estoit si grans entre
glorious seat But the-thickness of the-air was so great between
lui & aus quil ne le pooient veoir se ensi non com il
him and them that-they not him could see except thus not as they
estoient ce fu en liaue. Car le grant sens de clergie qui
were this was in the-water For the great sense of learning which
en els estoit lor fist veoir le figure del lyon par forche
in them was them made see the figure of-the lion by force

dencerquement. Mais por cele clergie qui nestoit se terriene
of-searching But for that learning which not-was except earthly
non. norent il del lyon que la veue. Car il nel conurent
not not-had they of-the lion but the sight For they not-him knew
mie ne ne sorent que che pooit estre car il estoient terrien.
at-all nor not knew what this could be for they were earthly
& li lyons celestiens chose. por ce ne auoient il mie
and the lion heavenly thing for this not had they at-all
le connoissanche. si le quidierent il auoir veu en liaue
the knowledge so him thought they to-have seen in the-water
dont il furent decheu. & por che lapelerent il iauage.
whereby they were deceived and for this him-called they of-the-water
Cil lyons est ihesus qui de la virge nasqui. Car tout
That lion is Jesus who of the virgin was-born For all
autresi com li lyons est sires de toutes les bestes. autresi
likewise as the lion is lord of all the beasts likewise
est diex de toutes les coses sires. Autres natures a li
is God of all the things lord Other natures has the
lyons asses par coi il est senefies a dieu. dont ie ne
lion enough by which he is signified to God of-which I not
parlerai ore mie. Quar chou est icil lyons par coi tu
shall-speak now at-all For this is this lion by which thou
auras secors se tu iamais le dois auoir. Che est ihesus
wilt-have succor if thou ever-more it oughtest have This is Jesus
crist li vrais lyons. As tu ore bien entendu qui le lyons
Christ the true lion Hast thou now well understood who the lion
est. & porcoi il fu apeles iauages. Maistres fait il che ai
is and wherefore he was called of-the-water Master says he this have
ie moult bien entendu. & moult bel le maues monstre.
I very well understood and very fairly it me-have-you shown
Mais por dieu del mire sans medechine me dites qui il
But for God of-the physician without medicine me tell who he

puet estre. Car ie ne quideroie que sans medechine fust
can be For I not would-think that without medicine were
nus mires. ne encore ne mi puis de rien connoistre.
any physician nor yet not me-there can-I of anything know
Tant com ie plus tesgart fait li preudom. & ie plus fol
As-much as I more thee-look-at says the worthy-man and I more mad
te truis. Car se tu eusses raisnable sens tu peusses ches
thee find For if thou hadst reasonable sense thou couldst these
.ij. choses connoistre tout clerement lune par lautre. Mais
two things know all clearly the-one by the-other But
puis que tai commenchie a ensegnier & a conseillier le
since that thee-I-have begun to teach and to counsel the
roial corone de par nostre signor. Ie ten conseillerai
royal crown on behalf-of our Lord I thee-thereof shall-counsel
iusques au chief. Non pas por toi mais por le commun
up-to to-the end Not at-all for thee but for the common
del pueple. & si te deuiserai qui est li mires sans
of-the people and so thee shall-describe who is the physician without
medechine. Chest diex. Ne nus autres mires sans medichine
medicine This-is God Nor any other physician without medicine
nest que il seus. Car tout li autre mire ont de lui tant
not-is but he alone For all the other physicians have from him as-much
de bien com il a en aus des maladies connoistre qui
of good as it has in them of-the maladies to-know which
sont es cors. & de sauoir la garison. Trestout che font
are in-the bodies and of knowing the cure All this do-they
par le sens que il ont qui de dieu descendi. & qui la
by the sense that they have which from God descended and which the
forche mist en herbes par coi la garison vient au cors.
force put in herbs by which the cure comes to-the body
ne garison ne seiuent il faire se au cors non. encore
nor cure not know they to-make except to-the body not yet

nest che mie en tous. Car mainte fois auient que quant
not-is this at-all in all For many times it-happens that when
il ont mises toutes les paines en cors garir si se muert
they have put all the pains in body healing so himself dies
il. Et sil auient que il garissent les maladies des cors. si
he And if-it happens that they heal the maladies of-the bodies so
nont il mie pooir de garir les maladies des ames. Mais
not-have they at-all power to heal the maladies of-the souls But
diex en est poissans. Car si tost com vns hom vient a
God thereof is mighty For as soon as a man comes to
ueraie confession. Ia tant niert cargies de viel pechie
true confession Ever so-much not-will-be-be laden with old sin
que diex nel regart. & si tost com il laura regarde
that God not-him look-at and as soon as he him-will-have looked-at
ia puis ni couendra autre mire ne autre medicine
ever after not-there will-behoove other physician nor other medicine
ne lier autre emplastre. ains est la plaie saine & nete si
nor bind other plaster but is the wound healthy and clean as
tost com il la regardee. Ichist est mires sans medicine
soon as he it-has looked-at This is physician without medicine
qui ne met en plaies ne des ames ne des cors nule
who not puts in wounds neither of-the souls nor of-the bodies any
medicine ains est tous sains & nes par son dols regart.
medicine but is all sound and clean by his sweet look

Mais ensi ne font mie li autre mire mortel. Car quant
But thus not do at-all the other physicians mortal For when
il ont veues les plaies. si lor couient apres querre les
they have seen the wounds so them behooves after to-seek the
herbes & les medicines quil couient a cele maladie. & a
herbs and the medicines which-it befits to that malady and at
le fie est tout perdu. Car la mors i mostre sa signorie.
the time is all lost For the death there shows its lordship

Mais chil est vrais mires qui par son regart seulement
But that-one is true physician who by his look only
done sante as maladies des ames & des cors. & fait
gives health to-the maladies of-the souls and of-the bodies and makes
eslongier la mort del cors tant com lui plaist. & garir
withdraw the death of-the body as-long as him pleases and heal
a tous iors de la mort de lame. Est chist mires sans
for all days from the death of the-soul Is this physician without
medichines. & sachies bien de uoir se tu as hui este de
medicines and know well of truth if thou hast today been of
boin cuer a tes confesseors par vraie confession. tu es garis
good heart to thy confessors by true confession thou art healed
dame & de cors. Ne tu nieres ia honis en terre. ne
of-soul and of body Nor thou not-wilt-be ever shamed on earth nor
tame ne sera ia en la pardurable mort. Car il te gardera
thy-soul not will-be ever in the everlasting death For he thee will-keep
de tous periex. & chist est a droit noumes mires sans
from all perils and this-one is by right named physician without
medechine. bien puet estre fait li rois Mais or sui plus
medicine well can-it be says the king But now am-I more
esgares que deuant del conseil de la flor. Car che uoi ie
bewildered than before by-the counsel of the flower For this see I
bien que flors ne puet conseil donner se ele ne parole. Ne
well that flower not can counsel give if it not speaks Nor
ie ne voi mie comment flors puisse parler. Chertes fait li
I not see at-all how flower may speak Certainly says the
preudom ce verras tu tot clerement que flors puet parler
worthy-man this wilt-see thou all clearly that flower can speak
& doner conseil. Ne au lion verai ne au mire sans
and give counsel Nor to-the lion true nor to-the physician without
medecine ne pues tu ataindre sans le conseil de la flor.
medicine not can thou attain without the counsel of the flower

Et se iamais venra au desus de ceste dolor ou tu es.
And if ever-more wilt-come to-the top of this sorrow where thou art
che sera par le conseil de cele flor. Or te dirai dont qui
this will-be by the counsel of that flower Now thee shall-tell-I then who
chele flors est. & comment ses consaus te sauuera. Chele
that flower is and how its counsel thee will-save That
flors est flors deseure toutes les autres flors. de chele flor
flower is flower above all the other flowers from that flower
nasqui li fruis par qui toute gent sont soustenu. chest
was-born the fruit by which all people are sustained this-is
li fruis dont li cors est sostenus & lame paie. Chest
the fruit by-which the body is sustained and the-soul fed This-is
li fruis qui saula le .v. milliers domes en la praerie de
the fruit which sated the five thousands of-men in the meadow with
cinc pains & de deus poissons quant les .xij. corbeilles
five loaves and with two fishes when the twelve baskets
furent emplies de relief. Chest li fruis par coi li fil &
were filled with leavings This-is the fruit by which the sons and
le pueple israel fu soustenus .xl. v. ans. as desers la
the people (of-)Israel were sustained forty five years in-the deserts there
ou li hom che dist lescripture menia le pain as angles.
where the man this says the-scripture ate the bread of-the angels
cest li fruis par coi ioseph de arimathie fu sostenus
this-is the fruit by which Joseph of arimathea was sustained
quant il sen venoit de la terre de promission. en
when he himself-thence came from the land of promise into
cest estraigne pais par le commandement de ihesu crist
this strange country by the command of Jesus Christ
& par son conduit. Ce est li fruis dont sainte eglize
and by his guidance This is the fruit by-which holy church
est repeue chascun ior. Chest ihesu crist li fiex deu. cest
is fed each day This-is Jesus Christ the son (of-)God this-is

la flors de coi tu dois le consel auoir & le secors.
the flower from which thou oughtest the counsel have and the succor
se iamais lauras. Chest sa douce meire la glorieuse
if ever-more it-thou-shalt-have This-is his sweet mother the glorious
virgene dont il nasqui contre acostumance de nature.
virgin of-whom he was-born against custom of nature
Chele dame est a droit apelee flors. Car nule feme ne
That lady is by right called flower For any woman not
porta onques enfant deuant lui ne apres. que par carnel
bore ever child before her nor after but-that by carnal
assamblement ne fust anchois desfloree. Mais ceste virgene
union not she-were first deflowered But this virgin
pucele dame fu uirgene auant & uirgene apres conques la
maiden lady was virgin before and virgin after that-ever the
flor de son puchelage ne perdi. bien doit donques estre
flower of her maidenhood not she-lost well ought then be
apelee flors desor toutes autres flors. Quant ele garda sa
called flower above all other flowers Since she kept her
glorieuse flor saine & entiere la ou toutes les autres
glorious flower whole and entire there where all the other
flors perissent. Che est au concheuoir & a lenfanter.
flowers perish This is at-the conceiving and at the-bearing
Et quant de li nasqui li fruis qui doune vie a toutes
And when from her was-born the fruit which gives life to all
choses. par ceste flor venras tu au vrai conseil. Car ele
things by this flower wilt-come thou to-the true counsel For she
tacordera a son vrai fil. & tenuoiera le secors qui te
thee-will-reconcile to her true son and thee-will-send the succor which thee
fera recheuoir honor que tu as commenchie a perdre.
will-make receive-again honor which thou hast begun to lose
Et se tu par ceste flor ne viens a sauuement. & dame &
And if thou by this flower not come to salvation both of-soul and

de cors. par autrui ni pues venir. Car nus ne tient
of body by another not-there canst-thou come For anyone not holds
si grant lieu vers le sauueor com ele fait. Ele ne chessera
so great place toward the savior as she does She not will-cease
ia de proier por les chaitis. & se tu ceste flor honeures.
ever from praying for the wretched and if thou this flower honor
li consaus de li te ietera hors de tous periex. Che est
the counsel of her thee will-throw out of all perils This is
la flor que ti clerc te distrent & si nel sauoient. che est
the flower which thy clerks thee told and so not-it knew this is
la flors li vrais lyons & li haus mirres sans medichine
the flower the true lion and the high physician without medicine
te ietera de perdre terre & honor sen toi ne remaint.
thee will-cast from losing land and honor if-in thee not remains-it
Or que ten est auis connois tu encore que ie tai
Now what thee-thereof is opinion know thou yet that I thee-have
este vrais espeleres de ton soigne. Chertes maistres fait
been true expounder of thy dream Certainly master says
li rois vous le maues monstre & bien & bel. Tant que
the king you it me-have shown both well and fairly So-much that
vous men aues ia si comforte que il mest auis que
you me-thereof have already so comforted that it to-me-is opinion that
ie soie ia escapes de toutes mes paors. Car trop est
I may-be already escaped from all my fears For too is
plus mes cuers a aise que il ne seut. & ie le te creant
more my heart at ease than it — was-wont and I it thee promise
selonc dieu que ie le ferai ensi comme tu le mas
according-to God that I it shall-do so as thou it me-hast
commande. se diex a honeur me doine en ma terre venir.
commanded if God to honor me grant into my land to-come

The Truce of a Year

xxv

Two messengers from Galehaut, the king of the Hundred Knights and the king First Conquered, offer Arthur a truce of a year, since there is no honor in conquering so poorly furnished a king; at the end of it Galehaut will come with all his power and with the knight of the red arms, whom he means to have. Arthur accepts and goes home, Gawain carried in a litter. At Malehaut the prisoner returns by night, and the lady, hearing that a knight in red won the day, looks with her cousin at his horse, wounded to the bone, his hacked arms, and the knight asleep, bruised and swollen; the cousin keeps her from kissing him, and the lady guesses he loves in some high place.

Endementres que il parloient ensi vindrent doi cheualier de
While that they spoke thus came two knights of
la maisnie galahot. Et quant li rois les vit si commande
the household (of-)Galehaut And when the king them saw so commands
que il venissent deuant lui. & il si fisent. Et parla li
that they should-come before him and they so did And spoke the
rois premiers qui estoit apeles li rois des .C. cheualiers.
king first who was called the king of-the hundred knights
& li autres auoit non li rois premiers conquis. por che que
and the other had name the king first conquered for this that
che estoit li premiers rois que galahos auoit en sa signorie.
this was the first king that Galehaut had in his lordship
Et li rois artus qui moult sauoit bien honerer preudomes
And the king Arthur who much knew well how-to-honor worthy-men
les honera moult & se leua encontre els sans sauoir
them honored much and himself rose against them without knowing
qui il fuissent. Sire rois dist li rois des .C. cheualiers
who they were Lord king said the king of-the hundred knights
cha nous enuoie Galahos a qui nous somes li sires des
here us sends Galehaut to whom we are the lord of-the

estraignes illes. Et dist quil se merueille moult de che
foreign isles And says that-he himself marvels much at this
que si pourement estes venus desfendre vostre terre encontre
that so poorly are-you come to-defend your land against
lui. qui si poissans hom estes. Car il auoit oi dire que
him who so mighty man are For he had heard say that
vous esties li plus poissans rois de tout le monde. por che
you were the most mighty king of all the world for this
si est auis a monsignor que il nauroit mie honor a tel
so is-it opinion to my-lord that he not-would-have at-all honor to such
roi com vous estes conquerre a si poi de gent com vous
king as you are to-conquer with so few of people as you
aues chi. Car trop estes a meschief. Or si vous doune
have here For too are-you at disadvantage Now so you gives
mesires trieues iusca .j. an. par si que vous aurois en
my-lord truce up-to a year on condition that you will-have in
ceste pieche de terre tout vostre pooir. & il le sien que
this piece of land all your power and he the his for
il na ore mie tout. Et lors sachies que il ne sen
he not-has now at-all all And then know that he not himself-thence
partira tant que il vous aura descomfit & vostre terre
will-part until that he you will-have discomfited and your land
conquise. Et sachies quil aura au chief de lan coi
conquered And know that-he will-have at-the head of the-year whatever
quil doie couster le boin cheualier de sa maisnie chelui
that-it may cost the good knight of his household that-one
as armes vermeilles qui lassamblee a vencue. Seignor fait
with-the arms red who the-assembly has won Lords says
li rois ie oi bien que vous dites. Mais se dieu plaist ne de
the king I hear well what you say But if God please not of
moi ne de ma terre naura il ia ne pooir ne baillie.
me nor of my land not-will-have he ever neither power nor dominion

Atant senpartent li message. & li rois remest
Thereupon themselves-thence-part the messengers and the king remained
moult lies & moult esbahis. lies des trieues qui li
very glad and very amazed glad of-the truce which to-him
estoient donees. & esbahis del boin cheualier qui galahot
were given and amazed at-the good knight whom Galehaut
deuoit auoir de sa maisnie qui sa terre li auoit desfendue.
was-to have of his household who his land to-him had defended
& galahos se vante quil laura. lors lapele li
and Galehaut himself boasts that-he him-will-have then him-calls the
preudom & si li dit. Or pues veoir que li haute flors
worthy-man and so to-him says Now canst-thou see what the high flower
ta porcachie vers le haut lyon & vers le mire sans
thee-has procured toward the high lion and toward the physician without
medechine qui te rescoura se par pereche ne el pers.
medicine who thee will-rescue if by sloth not him thou-losest
Maistres fait li rois biax est li commenchemens. Mais trop
Master says the king fair is the beginning But too
sui esbahis del boin cheualier qui ma terre ma desfendue
am-I amazed at-the good knight who my land me-has defended
dont galahos se vante que il laura. Maistre qui puet
of-whom Galehaut himself boasts that he him-will-have Master who can
il estre car ie nel connois pas. Et li preudom li
he be for I not-him know at-all And the worthy-man to-him
dist laissies ester. Car bien sesproueront ses uantances; ha
says let-it be For well will-prove-themselves his boasts ah
maistres fait il tant me poes vous bien dire se il sera
master says he so-much me can you well tell if he will-be
deuers lui au chief de lan. & il respont que oil. adont
toward him at-the head of the-year and he answers that yes then
fu li rois moult reconfortes & moult a aise. Atant se
was the king much comforted-again and very at ease Thereupon themselves

commenchent a departir les gens galahot. Et li rois artus
begin to depart the people (of-)Galehaut And the king Arthur
fait departir les soies. si prent congie de son maistre si
makes depart the his so takes leave of his master so
sen torne en son pais. Et fait emporter en litiere
himself-thence turns into his country And makes carry in litter
monsignor Gauuain qui moult estoit malades durement. Mais
my-lord Gawain who very was sick grievously But
ore se taist atant li contes del roi artu & de galahot
now itself is-silent thereupon the tale of-the king Arthur and of Galehaut
& de sa maisnie. & retorne a parler de la dame del
and of his household and returns to speak of the lady of-the
puis de malohaut qui le boin cheualier tient en sa prison.
pui of malehaut who the good knight holds in her prison
Quant chele assamblee fu departie. si dist li contes que
When that assembly was broken-up so says the tale that
la nuit meismes que il furent departis si com vous aues
the night itself that they were parted so as you have
oi si sen reuint a malohaut tout droit. Mais il
heard so himself-thence came-back to malehaut all straight But it
fu nuis quant il i uint. & il entra en la cort al
was night when he there came and he entered into the court at-the
plus cheleement quil pot ou la dame le faisoit atendre.
most secretly that-he could where the lady him made await
qui bien quidoit estre seure de sa reuenue. Et quant il fu
who well thought to-be sure of his return And when he was
desarmes. Il entra en sa gaiole maintenant & se coucha.
disarmed He entered into his cage at-once and himself lay-down
car trop se doloit. que onques de la bouce ne pot
for too himself grieved so-that ever with the mouth not he-could
mangier. Chele nuit furent venu li cheualier que la dame
eat That night were come the knights whom the lady

de malohaut auoit en lost. Et la dame lor demanda
of malehaut had in the-host And the lady of-them asked
noueles de lassamblee comment lauoient fait dune part &
news of the-assembly how it-they-had done on-one side and
dautre. Et il disent que vns cheualiers a vnes vermeilles
on-other And they said that a knight with some red
armes auoit tout vencu. Et quant ele loi si commenche
arms had all vanquished And when she it-heard so begins
a regarder vne pucele qui sa cousine estoit germaine. &
to look-at a maiden who her cousin was german and
toute dame de sa maison. si li tardoit moult que li
all lady of her house so to-her was-late much that the
cheualier sen alassent de laiens. Et al plus tost
knights themselves-thence should-go from in-there And at-the most soon
que ele pot sen deliura. Lors apela sa cousine si li
that she could herself-thence freed Then called-she her cousin so to-her
dist. poroit che estre nostre cheualier. Dame fait ele ie ne
says could this be our knight Lady says she I not
sai. Chertes fait ele ie le sauroie volentiers. & sil la
know Certainly says she I it would-know willingly and if-he it-has
uencue il ne puet estre que moult ne pare a son corps
won it not can be that much not appear on his body
& a ses armes. Dame fait ele nous porons tost sauoir
and on his arms Lady says she we shall-be-able soon know
comment il li est. & iel voeil fait la dame. Mais
how it with-him is and I-it wish says the lady But
gardes que nus nel sache fors nous .ij. si chier com
see that anyone not-it may-know but we two as dear as
vous aues vos menbres. Dame fait ele volentiers. Maintenant
you hold your limbs Lady says she willingly At-once
deliure la dame la maison que il ni remaist fors els
clears the lady the house so-that it not-there remained but them

.ij. Et la puchele portoit plain son puin de candeilles.
two And the maiden carried full her fist of candles
si alerent tout auant en lestable. & voient le cheual qui
so went all before into the-stable and see the horse which
auoit plaie la teste & le col & le pis & les Iambes. &
had wounded the head and the neck and the chest and the Legs and
li os li perent en plusor liex. & se gisoit deuant se
the bones to-him appear in several places and itself lay before its
mingnoire a moult maluaise chiere. Quar il ne mengoit
manger with very bad cheer For it not ate
ne ne beuoit. Adont dist la dame. si mait diex vous
nor not drank Then says the lady so me-may-help God you
sambles bien cheual a preudomme. Et vous quen dites
seem well horse of worthy-man And you what-thereof say
fait ele a sa cousine. Dame fait ele quen diroie ie. Il
says she to her cousin Lady says she what-thereof would-say I It
mest auis que li cheuax a eu plus paine que repos. &
to-me-is opinion that the horse has had more pain than rest and
neporquant chestui nenmena il mie. Or sachies fait la dame
nevertheless this-one not-led he at-all Now know says the lady
que il en a vse plus dun. Mais ore alons veoir ses
that he thereof has used more than-one But now let-us-go see his
armes & si verrons comment eles sen sentent. lors
arms and so shall-see how they themselves-thereof feel then
vindrent a vne cambre ou eles estoient. Et trueuent le
came-they to a chamber where they were And find the
hauberc fausse & plain de grans pertruis sor les espaules
hauberk broken and full of great holes upon the shoulders
& sor les bras & en maint autre lieu del cors. Et ses
and upon the arms and in many other place of-the body And his
escus estoit fendus & esquarteles & detrenchies de cols
shield was split and quartered and hacked by blows

despees. as costes & en la pene amont iusquen la borcle
of-swords at-the sides and in the rim up up-to-into the boss
que petit en i auoit remes. Et en che que remes
so-that little thereof there had remained And in this that remained
i auoit. auoit pertruis de cols de lanche teus que par
there had had-it holes of blows of lance such that in
mains lieus i peust len ses puins bouter. Et ses hiaumes
many places there could one his fists thrust And his helm
estoit fendus & embares. & li nasiax tous detrenchies.
was split and dented and the nasal all hacked
& le chercle en pendoit contreual & estoit si empiries
and the circlet thereof hung down and was so worsened
que mais ne pooit auoir mestier ne lui ne a autrui.
that more not could-it have use neither to-him nor to another
Lors dist la dame a sa cousine. que vous en samble
Then says the lady to her cousin what you thereof seems
de ches armes. Chertes dame fait ele Il me samble que
of these arms Certainly lady says she It me seems that
chil na mie este hui seus qui les portoit. vous poes
that-one not-has at-all been today alone who them carried you can
dire fait la dame que li plus preudom del monde qui
say says the lady that the most worthy-man of-the world who
viue les a portees. Dame fait ele bien puet estre quant
live them has carried Lady says she well can-it be since
vous le dites. Or en venes fait la dame si irons veoir
you it say Now thence come says the lady so shall-go see
le cheualier. Que encore nai ie rien veu qui ie en
the knight For yet not-have I anything seen whom I thereof
croie. ses cors en mostera la verite. Atant vienent al
believe his body thereof will-show the truth Thereupon come-they to-the
huis de la gaiole si le trueuent ouuert. Et la dame prist
door of the cage so it find open And the lady took

les candeilles en sa main & mist la teste dedens luis.
the candles in her hand and put the head within the-door
Si voit le cheualier qui en son lit se gisoit tous nus.
So sees the knight who in his bed himself lay all naked
si auoit trait son couertoir iusques sor son pis en haut.
so had drawn his coverlet up-to upon his chest on high
& ses bras auoit ietes hors por le caut. si dormoit trop
and his arms had-he thrown out for the heat so slept too
durement. Et ele esgarde si vit que il auoit tout le vis
soundly And she looks so saw that he had all the face
enfle & batu & camoissies des mailles le col. & le nes
swollen and beaten and bruised by-the mail-rings the neck and the nose
escorchie & le front enfle & les sorchiex escorchies. &
skinned and the brow swollen and the eyebrows skinned and
les espaules naurees & detrenchies moult durement. Et les
the shoulders wounded and hacked very grievously And the
bras tous pers des cols que il auoit eus. & les puins
arms all livid from-the blows that he had had and the fists
gros & enfles & plains de sanc; lors regarda la pucele.
big and swollen and full of blood then looked-at-she the maiden
si commenche a rire. Et dist chertes vous verres ia
so begins to laugh And says certainly you will-see now
merueilles. ele se traist en la gaiole. & la puchele mist
marvels she herself drew into the cage and the maiden put
ens sa teste si esgarde moult bien & amont & aual. Et
in her head so looks very well both up and below And
la damoisele li baille les candeilles si sesforcha .j. petit
the damsel to-her hands the candles so herself-forced a little
por aler auant. & la puchele lesgarde si li dist. que est
to go forward and the maiden her-looks-at so to-her says what is
che dame que voles vous faire. Ie ne serai iamais fait ele
this lady what wish you to-do I not shall-be ever-more says she

aaisie si bien de lui baisier. Ostes dame fait ele caues
at-ease so well from him kissing Off lady says she what-have
vous dit. Ne faites pas tel deruerie. car sil sesueilloit il
you said Not do at-all such madness for if-he awoke he
en priseroit mains & vous & toutes femes. Et ne soies
thereof would-prize less both you and all women And not be
pas si sousprise de folie. que il ne vous remenbre de honte.
at-all so overtaken by folly that it not you remember of shame
Si voirement mait diex fait la dame len ne poroit pas
So truly me-may-help God says the lady one not could at-all
auoir honte en chose que len feist por si preudomme. Dame
have shame in thing that one did for so worthy-man Lady
non fait la pucele tant li poroit il plaire. Mais chertes
no says the maiden so-much to-him could it please But certainly
se il le refusoit la honte seroit doublee. & tex puet estre
if he it refused the shame would-be doubled and such can be
moult preus de cors qui na mie toutes les bontes del
very valiant of body who not-has at-all all the goodnesses of-the
cuer. Espoir vous ne sauries a cestui si grant ioie faire
heart Perhaps you not would-know to this-one so great joy make
que il nel tenist a outrage & a vilonie. si auries
that he not-it would-hold for outrage and for villainy so would-have-you
perdue vostre amor & vostre seruice. Tant dist la pucele
lost your love and your service So-much says the maiden
a la dame que ele lenmaine sans plus faire. Et quant
to the lady that she her-leads-away without more doing And when
eles sont as cambres venues si commenchent a parler del
they are to-the chambers come so begin to speak of-the
cheualier. & la puchele len abat la parole au plus que
knight and the maiden thereof cuts-short the word at-the most that
ele puet. por che que volentiers ostast sa dame de
she can for this that willingly she-would-remove her lady from

penser a lui sil peust estre. Car bien saperchoit de lamor.
thinking of him if-it could be For well she-perceives of the-love
Et en la fin si dist la damoisele. li cheualiers pense plus
And in the end so says the damsel the knight thinks more
a autre chose que a vous. ne quidies mie. & quidiers a
on other thing than on you not think at-all and thinking has
decheu mainte gent. Si mait diex fait la dame Ie quit
deceived many people So me-may-help God says the lady I think
quil a si haut pense que onques nus hons si haut ne
that-he has so high thought that ever any man so high not
pensa. Et diex qui la fait si bel & millor de tous les
thought And God who him-has made so fair and better than all the
autres li doinst a boin chief mener son penser. Asses
others to-him may-give to good end lead his thought Much
parlerent chele nuit del cheualier. & moult se merueilloit
spoke-they that night of-the knight and much herself marveled
la dame porcoi il faisoit tant darmes. & bien pensoit en
the lady wherefore he did so-much of-arms and well thought in
son cuer que il amoit par amors en moult haut lieu. Si
her heart that he loved by love in very high place So
volsist moult volentiers sauoir qui il estoit. & en quel
would-she-wish very willingly to-know who he was and in what
lieu il auoit mis son cuer. Et bien volsist que che
place he had put his heart And well she-would-wish that this
fust en li. Mais ele sentoit en lui si haute proeche & si
were in her But she felt in him so high prowess and so
fier cuer que ele ne pooit mie penser que il amast se
proud heart that she not could at-all think that he loved except
haute chose non. Mais ele se pense que ele le saura
high thing not But she herself thinks that she it will-know
se il puet estre. si en laisse le parole atant ester. Mais
if it can be so thereof leaves the word thereupon be But

ore se taist li contes de la dame & de la pucele &
now itself is-silent the tale of the lady and of the maiden and
del cheualier que plus nen parole chi endroit. ains
of-the knight so-that more not-thereof speaks here in-place but
retorne au roi artu qui est repairies en sa terre.
returns to-the king Arthur who is returned into his land

The Quest of the Forty

XXVI

Arthur holds court at Carlisle, and at dinner falls into thought about the best knight of all, the victor of the assembly whom Galehaut boasts he will have. Gawain leaves the table and cries a quest for the knight. The king is angry that his court should be emptied, and allows forty, whom Gawain chooses. Gawain swears that he will not return without the knight or true tokens of him, and the forty swear what he swears, though the king is dismayed that the oath leaves out the coming assembly. The forty are named, Yvain, Kay, Sagremor, Giflet, Gaheriet and the rest, and the squire of Benoic last; they wander all the year and come back perjured.

Li contes dist chi endroit que il vint premierement seiourner
The tale says here in-place that he came first to-sojourn
a carduel en gales. qui plus estoit pres. & moult estoit
at carlisle in wales which most was near and very was-it
aaisies castiax de toutes choses. Si seiorna li rois en la
well-furnished castle with all things So sojourned the king in the
vile .xxiij. iors. & tint tous les Iors cort moult esforchie.
town twenty-three days and held all the Days court very full
& moult fist bien les commandemens son maistre de
and much did well the commandments (of-)his master in
toutes choses. Dedens les .xv. iors fu mesire Gauuain tous
all things Within the fifteen days was my-lord Gawain all

garis de ses blecheures. si en fu toute la cors moult lie.
healed of his wounds so thereof was all the court very glad
Al chief des .xxiij. iors auint que li rois seoit au
At-the head of-the twenty-three days it-befell that the king sat at-the
disner. & quant il ot .j. pieche mangie si commencha a
dinner and when he had a while eaten so began to
penser moult durement. Et bien paroit a son penser que
think very hard And well appeared by his thinking that
ses cuers nestoit mie a aise. & parut bien que moult iert
his heart not-was at-all at ease and appeared well that much he-was
a malaise. Lors vint mesire Gauuain deuant lui qui seruoit
at unease Then came my-lord Gawain before him who served
auoeques les autres si li dist. sire vous penses moult a
with the others so to-him says lord you think much at
chest mengier. a mal vous iert atorne. Car moult a
this meal to ill to-you will-it-be turned For many has-it
chaiens cheualiers qui vous en blasment. Et li rois tout
in-here knights who you thereof blame And the king all
par rire li dist. Gauuain. Gauuain. vous maues iete
in laughing to-him says Gawain Gawain you me-have thrown
des plus cortois pensers que ie fesisse onques. ne nus ne
from-the most courtly thoughts that I made ever nor anyone not
men deuroit a droit blasmer. Car ie pensoie au millor
me-thereof ought by right blame For I thought of-the best
cheualier de tous les preudommes. Che est li cheualiers
knight of all the worthy-men This is the knight
qui venqui lassamblee de moi & de galahot. dont galahos
who won the-assembly of me and of Galehaut of-whom Galehaut
sest vantes que il laura de sa maisnie. si ai veu tel
himself-is boasted that he him-will-have of his household so have-I seen such
eure que se li cheualier de ma maison & mi compaignon
hour that if the knights of my house and my companions

seussent vne chose que ie desirasse il le me quesissent
had-known a thing that I desired they it me would-have-sought
ia ne fust en si estraigne terre. Et soloit len dire que
ever not were-it in so strange land And was-wont one to-say that
toute la proeche terriene estoit en mon ostel. Mais ie di
all the prowess earthly was in my house But I say
que ore ni est ele mie. pus que li mieudres cheualiers
that now not-there is it at-all since that the best knight
del monde en est fors. Chertes sire fait mesire Gauuain.
of-the world thereof is outside Certainly lord says my-lord Gawain
vous aues moult grant droit. & se dieu plest vous aures
you have very great right and if God please you will-have
le cheualier sil puet estre troues en tout le monde.
the knight if-he can be found in all the world
Atant sentorne mesire Gauuain & quant il vient
Thereupon himself-thence-turns my-lord Gawain and when he comes
al huis de la sale ou seoient maint boin cheualier.
to-the door of the hall where sat many good knight
si se retorne vers le mengier & dist si haut que
so himself turns-back toward the meal and says so loud that
tout le porent oir. Signor cheualier qui ore voldra entrer
all it could hear Lords knights who now will-wish to-enter
en la plus haute queste qui onques fust apres celi del
into the most high quest which ever was after that of-the
graal si viegne apres moi. que hui est appareillies tout
grail so may-come after me for today is made-ready all
le pris & toute lonor del monde. a chelui qui diex
the prize and all the-honor of-the world to that-one whom God
fera auentureus de la haute troueure. & por noiant
will-make fortunate in the high finding and for nothing
se vantera iamais donor conquerre qui chele laisse. Lors
himself will-boast ever-more of-honor to-conquer who that leaves Then

sempart mesire Gauuain & cheualiers saillent apres
himself-thence-parts my-lord Gawain and knights leap after
lui & tables commenchent a widier. Et li rois se prist
him and tables begin to empty And the king himself took
a corechier de che que nus ne remanoit laiens. si fist
to grow-angry at this that anyone not remained in-there so had
rapeler monsignor Gauuain. & il vint a lui & li rois
recalled my-lord Gawain and he came to him and the king
li dist. biax nies vous me corechies moult & me faites
to-him says fair nephew you me anger much and me do
grant honte. quant vous ensi en voles mener toute ma
great shame when you thus thence wish to-lead all my
compaignie. Et ie sui orendroit el point quil me couient
company And I am right-now in-the point that-it me behooves
plus honereement cort tenir ou que ie soie que ie
more honorably court to-hold wherever that I may-be than I
ne seul. & si grans assamblee ne fu onques mais veue
not was-wont and so great assembly not was ever more seen
por .j. seul cheualier trouer. voles vous a forche prendre
for a single knight to-find wish you by force take
a tous les cheualiers de ma terre. qui a mains de gent
to all the knights of my land who with fewer of people
iert amenes. & plus donor i aurois. lors se recorde
will-be brought and more of-honor there will-have-you then himself recalls
mesire Gauuain que verite disoit li rois. Et dist sire
my-lord Gawain that truth spoke the king And says lord
nen i uenra se tant non com vous voldrois. Ne
not-thereof there will-come except so-many not as you will-wish Nor
por couoitise de la compaignie auoir nel disoie ie mie.
for covetousness of the company to-have not-it said I at-all
Car ie nel querrai se tot sels non. Mais se maint
For I not-him shall-seek except all alone not But if many

cheualier le queroient chascuns par soi il seroit plus
knights him sought each by himself he would-be more
tost troues que se il nen aloit que .j. tout seul en
soon found than if there not-thence went but one all alone in
la queste. vous dites bien fait li rois. Or i aillent tel
the quest you say well says the king Now there may-go such
.xl. com vous meismes i eslires. Car ie ne voel pas que
forty as you yourself there will-choose For I not wish at-all that
la parole en soit meue por noiant. lors en eslut mesire
the word thereof be moved for nothing then thereof chose my-lord
Gauuain .xl. de cels que il plus amoit. Car chascuns estoit
Gawain forty of those whom he most loved For each was
moult lies que en sa compaignie pooit aler. lors salerent
very glad that in his company could-he go then themselves-went
armer tout .xl. & puis vindrent deuant le roi & li saint
arm all forty and then came before the king and the relics
furent aporte auant si com il estoit costume. que nus
were brought forward so as it was custom that any
cheualiers ne mouoit de la maison le roi por auenture
knight not moved from the house (of-)the king for adventure
querre. que auant ne iurast sor sains que il verite diroit
to-seek that before not swore-he upon relics that he truth would-tell
au reuenir de toutes les choses que li auendroient a
at-the returning of all the things that to-him should-happen to
son essient. Et sil a lesmouoir nel iuroit il le iuroit
his knowledge And if-he at-the setting-out not-it swore he it swore
al reuenir ains que il fust creus de nule riens.
at-the returning before that he were believed of any thing

Lors saienoille mesire Gauuain por iurer. & li rois fu
Then himself-kneels my-lord Gawain to swear and the king was
deuant si lor dist. signor cheualier vous en ales. &
before so to-them says lords knights you thence go and

gardes que che ne soit mie por vseuse. Car vous i ales
see that this not be at-all for idleness For you there go
tant cheualier & si preudomme que nule si grans chose
so-many knights and so worthy that any so great thing
nest dont vous ne deussies venir a chief. lors pensa mesire
not-is of-which you not ought come to end then thought my-lord
Gauuain & dist as cheualiers armes la ou il estoit
Gawain and says to-the knights armed there where he was
a ienols. Signor se chascuns metroit en son sairement che
on knees Lords if each would-put in his oath this
que ie metrai el mien Ie iureroie. & il lotroient tout.
that I shall-put in-the mine I would-swear and they it-grant all
Or Iures fait il auant tout que vous tendrez che que ie
Now Swear says he before all that you will-hold this that I
iurerai. & ie iurerai tout daarains & il si font. Apres
shall-swear and I shall-swear all last and they so do After
iura mesire Gauuain que il verite diroit au reuenir. et
swore my-lord Gawain that he truth would-tell at-the returning and
que il ne reuendroit sans le cheualier que il aloit querre
that he not would-return without the knight whom he went to-seek
ou sans vraies enseignes de lui. Et que sans nul de
or without true tokens of him And that without any of
ses compaignons ne reuenroit se mors nestoit. De chest
his companions not he-would-return if dead not-were-he At this
serement furent tout esbahi li cheualier qui en la queste
oath were all amazed the knights who in the quest
deuoient aler. Mais li rois en fu esbahis sor tous. Car
were-to go But the king thereof was amazed above all For
il li menbra del ior de lassamblee qui entre lui &
it to-him came-to-mind of-the day of the-assembly which between him and
galahot deuoit estre. biax nies fait il mal aues fait quant
Galehaut was-to be fair nephew says he ill have-you done when

vous lessoine de lassamblee naues mis fors de vostre
you the-hindrance of the-assembly not-have put out of your
sairement. sire fait il ne puet ore estre. Atant lache son
oath lord says he not can-it now be Thereupon laces-he his
hiaume & monte en son cheual & sempart de la
helm and mounts on his horse and himself-thence-parts from the
cort a tel compaignie de cheualiers com il auoit. Il i fu
court with such company of knights as he had It there was
mesire ywains li fiex au roi vrien & kex li senescax. &
my-lord Yvain the son of-the king Urien and Kay the seneschal and
sagremors li desrees. & lucans li boutelliers & yders li
Sagremor the unruly and Lucan the butler and Yder the
fiex nut. & giffles li fiex do. & ywains as blances
son (of-)Nut and Giflet the son (of-)Do and Yvain with-the white
mains. & ywains li dains. & ywains laoutres. & galegantis
hands and Yvain the Dain and Yvain the-bastard and Galegantin
li galois. & gasoains destragot. & li gais galantis. &
the Welsh and Gasoain of-estragot and the gay Galantin and
caradigais. & magloas & dus taullas. & quenus de carec.
Caradigais and Magloas and duke Taulas and Quenut of carec
& guerrehes. & agrauains ses freres. & cadoains. & keus
and Guerrehet and Agravain his brother and Cadoain and Kay
destrans. & dodiniax li sauages & karadels. bries bras.
of-estrans and Dodinel the wild and Caradoc short arm
& li rois de gannes. & li rois des mares. & helains li
and the king of gannes and the king of-the marshes and Helain the
blois. & mesire brandis. & adaind li biax. & osoains li
blond and my-lord Brandin and Adain the fair and Osoain the
hardis. & aglins des vaus. & gaharies. & bliobliers. &
bold and Aiglin of-the vales and Gaheriet and Bliobleris and
li lais hardis. & gales li caus. & agviscans descoche. &
the ugly bold and Gales the bald and Aguisant of-scotland and

hervis de riuel. & conoains li hardis. & li .xlismes. fu
Hervi of rivel and Conoain the bold and the fortieth was
li valles de benoyc. Che furent li .xl. qui alerent en la
the squire of benoic These were the forty who went into the
queste. Mais onques ni ot si preu ne si hardi qui puis
quest But ever there-not had so valiant nor so bold who after
ne sen tenist por fol. Car puis en furent apele tout
not himself-thence held for fool For after thereof were-they called all
pariure par la bouce le roi meisme. Car il errerent tout
perjured by the mouth (of-)the king himself For they wandered all
lan iuscal assamblee. & lors les ramena tous mesire
the-year up-to-the assembly and then them brought-back all my-lord
Gauuain. Mais ore se taist li contes atant de monsignor
Gawain But now itself is-silent the tale thereupon of my-lord
Gauuain & de sa compaignie qui plus nen parole. &
Gawain and of his company so-that more not-thereof speaks and
retorne a la dame de malahot qui moult est a malaise de
returns to the lady of malehaut who very is at unease to
sauoir le non al boin cheualier & son couigne. com chele
know the name of-the good knight and his condition as she
qui tant laime comme ele puet nule riens plus amer.
who so-much him-loves as she can any thing more love

The Lady and Her Prisoner

XXVII

The Lady of Malehaut has her prisoner brought out and seats him beside her. She has kept him honorably against her seneschal's kin and asks in return to know who he is and what he aims at; he refuses, though she should cut off his head, and she says he shall not leave her prison before the assembly. She sends him back to his cage, feigning hatred, while her love grows each day. Leaving her cousin to see to his wishes, she rides to Arthur's court at Logres, the head of his realm, to learn his name there, and is received with great honor, for she has helped the king in his wars.

Or dist li contes cun ior le fist la dame traire fors
Now says the tale that-one day him had the lady drawn out
de la iaiole por parler a li. & quant il vint deuant li
of the cage to speak with her and when he came before her
si se vaut asseoir deuant ses pies a terre. & chele qui
so himself wished to-sit before her feet on ground and she who
moult le volt honorer le fist dencoste li seoir en haut
much him wished to-honor him made beside her sit on high
& si li dist. Sire cheualiers ie vous ai grant piece
and so to-him says Lord knight I you have long while
tenu en ma prison por si grant forfait com vous feistes.
held in my prison for so great misdeed as you did
Et ie vous ai tenu moult honerablement sor le pois
And I you have held very honorably against the weight
mon senescal & de tot son parente. si men deues
(of-)my seneschal and of all his kindred so me-thereof ought-you
moult boin gre sauoir. & si faites vous se il a tant de
very good thanks know and so do you if there is so-much of
bien en vous com ie quit. Dame fait il ie vous en sai
good in you as I think Lady says he I you thereof know

tel gre que ie sui vostre cheualiers en tous besoins &
such thanks that I am your knight in all needs and
en tous liex. Grans mercis fait la dame & che monsteres
in all places Great thanks says the lady and this will-show
vous bien. Or vous pri ie dont que vous men rendes en
you well Now you beg I then that you me-thereof render in
gueredon che que ie vous demanderai. Que vous me dites
reward this that I you shall-ask That you me tell
qui vous estes & a coi vous baes. & se che est chose
who you are and at what you aim and if this is thing
que vous voeillies cheler. bien sachies que ia en auant de
that you wish to-conceal well know that ever in front from
chi nert seu. Dame fait il por dieu merci. si mait
here not-will-it-be known Lady says he for God mercy so me-may-help
diex che ne porries vous sauoir. Car il nest nule riens
God this not could you know For there not-is any thing
qui ie le deisse. non fait ele si ne le me dires en nule
whom I it should-tell no says she so not it me will-tell-you in any
maniere. Dame fait il vous feres de moi vostre plaisir. Car
manner Lady says he you will-do with me your pleasure For
se vous me deussies colper la teste nel diroie ie mie.
if you me should cut-off the head not-it would-tell I at-all
Chertes fait ele mar le maues chele. Que par la foi que
Certainly says she ill it me-have-you concealed For by the faith that
ie vous doi vous nistres iamais de ma maison. ne par
I you owe you not-will-go-out ever-more from my house nor by
la rien que ie plus aim deuant lassamblee qui doit estre
the thing that I most love before the-assembly which is-to be
de monsignor le roi artu & de galahot. Et sachies que
of my-lord the king Arthur and of Galehaut And know that
vous aures asses des ore mais & honte & mesaise. Car
you will-have enough from now on both shame and discomfort For

iuscal ior de lassamblee a encore pres dun an & se
up-to-the day of the-assembly has-it yet near of-a year and if
vous le meussies dit vous fussies hui en chest ior deliures
you it me-had told you would-be today on this day freed
de ma prison. & si le saurai ie mal gre vous. Car ie
from my prison and so it shall-know I in spite of-you For I
irai en tel lieu ou on le me dira. ou dame fait il.
shall-go into such place where one it me will-tell where lady says he
En non dieu fait ele a la cort le roi artu ou on
In name (of-)God says she at the court (of-)the king Arthur where one
seit toutes les noueles. dame fait il ie nen puis mais.
knows all the news lady says he I not-thereof can more
Atant le renuoie en sa iaiole. & fait samblant que
Thereupon him sends-back into his cage and makes semblance that
moult soit corechie vers lui & que moult le hee mais
much she-be angered toward him and that much him she-hates but
non fait. Anchois laime plus quele ne seut. & croist
not does-she Rather him-loves more than-she — was-wont and grows
lamors & enforce chascun ior. lors apele sa cosine & li
the-love and strengthens each day then calls-she her cousin and to-her
dist. Gardes fait ele que vous dites au cheualier que ie
says See says she that you tell to-the knight that I
le hee plus que nul homme. & que ie li ferai faire
him hate more than any man and that I to-him shall-have done
tous les maus que cors domme pora souffrir. ainsi dist
all the ills that body of-man will-be-able suffer thus said
la dame a sa cousine por son pense courir. Et toute uois
the lady to her cousin for her thought to-hide And all ways
sapareille daler a la cort le roi artu. por sauoir le
herself-makes-ready to-go to the court (of-)the king Arthur to know the
non del cheualier. si voldra aler moult ricement. Au quart
name of-the knight so will-wish to-go very richly At-the fourth

ior mut la dame & laissa sa cousine en son lieu si li
day set-out the lady and left her cousin in her place so to-her
dist. bele cousine ie men uois au roi artu ou ie
says fair cousin I myself-thence go to-the king Arthur where I
ai moult a faire. & ie ai monstre haine au cheualier
have much to do and I have shown hatred to-the knight
por che que il ne me velt dire son non. Mais ie nel
for this that he not me wishes to-tell his name But I not-him
harroie mie. Car trop est preudom. si vous pri & requier
would-hate at-all For too is-he worthy so you beg-I and ask
si chier com vous aues mamor & vostre honor que toutes
as dear as you hold my-love and your honor that all
les choses que vous quideres que ses cuers voeille sauue
the things that you will-think that his heart wish saving
vostre honor li porcachies. si que le me puissies rendre.
your honor to-him procure so that it me you-may render
Et chele li creante. Atant sem part la dame &
And she to-her promises Thereupon herself-thence parts the lady and
erra tant par ses iornees quele troua le roi a logres sa
traveled so-far by her days-journeys that-she found the king at logres his
chite. qui chies estoit de son regne. Et quant il oi dire
city which head was of his kingdom And when he heard say
que ele venoit si ala a lencontre & il & la roine si le
that she came so went to the-meeting and he and the queen so her
rechut a moult grant ioie. Mais ains que il entraissent
received with very great joy But before that they entered
en la chite ni ot il cheualier qui li dons le roi
into the city not-there had it knight to-whom the gifts (of-)the king
ne fust presentes & dones. Et la roine refist autretel
not were presented and given And the queen did-again the-same
as dames & as puceles. & che fu por la dame de
to-the ladies and to-the maidens and this was for the lady of

malohaut. ne onques ne souffri que ele descendist sen ses
malehaut nor ever not suffered-he that she should-dismount if-in his
maisons non. Car moult li auoit aidie en ses guerres.
houses not For much to-him had-she helped in his wars

The Three Ransoms

XXVIII

The lady asks Arthur for the knight of the red arms to defend a cousin's suit. Arthur knows nothing of him, but Gawain and thirty-nine companions seek him, and she smiles; the queen guesses she knows more. The lady goes home sure that she alone holds what the whole world seeks. She offers her prisoner three ransoms: to tell his name, to tell whom he loves, or to say whether he thinks to do as much in arms again. Weeping, he takes the third and says he will do more if he is commanded. She asks him to stay for the next assembly, and has black arms made for him. Arthur's largess wins back his people, and Gawain and his companions return without the knight.

Moult fist li rois de la dame grant feste. & la roine
Much made the king of the lady great feast and the queen
auoec. & la nuit apres souper se furent tout troi assis
with-him and the night after supper themselves were all three seated
sor vne couche. Et dist li rois a la dame. chertes dame
upon a couch And says the king to the lady certainly lady
moult vous estes efforcie qui si loing de vo terre estes chi
much you are exerted who so far from your land are here
venue. Or voi ie bien que che nest mie sans besoing. Car
come Now see I well that this not-is at-all without need For
coustumiere nestes vous mie de vostre pais si eslongier.
accustomed not-are you at-all from your country so to-go-far
Chertes sire fait ele sans besoig nest che mie. ains est
Certainly lord says she without need not-is this at-all rather is

grans li affaires & si le vous dirai. Il est voirs que ie
great the affair and so it you shall-tell It is true that I
ai vne cousine que vn siens voisins desirete. si ne trueue
have a cousin whom a her neighbor disinherits so not finds
nul cheualier qui sa querele voeille desraisnier. Car trop est
any knight who her suit may-wish to-vindicate For too is
chil boins cheualiers & fors de lingnage. Ne chele na
that-one good knight and strong of lineage Nor she not-has
nule aide que moi. por che si sui a vous venue que vous
any aid but me for this so am-I to you come that you
maidies tant que iaie le boin cheualier chelui as
me-should-help so-long that I-have the good knight that-one with-the
armes vermeilles qui lautre ior venqui lassamblee. Car on
arms red who the-other day won the-assembly For one
ma dit que se ie lauoie nus ne feroit miex la besoigne
me-has told that if I him-had anyone not would-do better the business
de la bataille de lui. pour che si sui a vous venue. Or si
of the battle than him for this so am-I to you come Now so
me secores car grans mestiers men est. bele douce amie
me succor for great need me-thereof is fair sweet friend
fait li rois par cele foi que ie doi madame la roine qui
says the king by that faith which I owe my-lady the queen who
ci est que iaim plus que rien qui viue chelui cheualier ne
here is whom I-love more than thing that lives that-one knight not
connui ie onques que ie sache. ne de ma maison nest il
knew I ever that I may-know nor of my house not-is he
mie ne de ma terre au mien quidier. & si le desir moult
at-all nor of my land to my thinking and so him desire-I much
a veoir. Et mesire Gauuain le quiert soi quarantisme de
to see And my-lord Gawain him seeks himself fortieth of
cheualiers. des millors de ma maison. & murent pres a
knights of-the best of my house and set-out near has-it

de .xl. iors. Ne nenteront mais en ma maison deuant que
of forty days Nor not-will-enter more into my house before that
il lauront troue. lors commenche la dame a sosrire des
they him-will-have found then begins the lady to smile at-the
cheualiers qui le queroient. por che que il cachoient la
knights who him sought for this that they chased the
folie. Et la roine le vit si se porpense que por noiant
folly And the queen it saw so herself bethinks that for nothing
ne rioit ele mie si li dist. Chertes ie quit que vous
not laughed she at-all so to-her says Certainly I think that you
saues miex ou il est que entre moi & le roi ne sauons.
know better where he is than between me and the king — know-we
Et chele respont. par la foi que ie doi monsignor le roi
And she answers by the faith that I owe my-lord the king
& vous qui ma dame estes lige ie ne ving chaiens se
and you who my lady are liege I not came in-here except
por sauoir non qui il estoit. Car iou quidoie chaiens oir
for knowing not who he was For I thought in-here to-hear
noueles de lui. Chertes fait la roine iel quidoie por che
news of him Certainly says the queen I-it thought for this
que ie vous ui sousrire quant messires en parloit. Dame
that I you saw smile when my-lord thereof spoke Lady
fait ele che fu por che que ie me tenoie a escarnie. &
says she this was for this that I me held for mocked and
que trop mestoie traueillie por noiant. Mais puis que chi
that too-much myself-had troubled for nothing But since that here
nen puis oir noueles ie vous demant congie. si men
not-thereof can-I hear news I you ask leave so myself-thence
irai le matin. Car ie ai moult grant affaire en mon pais.
shall-go the morning For I have very great affair in my country
Comment fait li rois quidies ent vous aler ia. Si tost
How says the king think thence you to-go already So soon

ne vous en ires mie. ains feres compaignie a la roine
not you thence will-go at-all rather will-make company to the queen
.viij. iors ou .xv. & si enmenres de tous mes cheualiers
eight days or fifteen and so will-take-away of all my knights
lequel que miex vous plaira por faire vostre bataille. Car
whichever that best you will-please to do your battle For
bien sachies que vous estes vne des dames del monde
well know that you are one of-the ladies of-the world
que ie plus voldroie honorer. Car vous maues bien aidie
whom I most would-wish to-honor For you me-have well helped
a mes besoins. Sire fait ele grans mercis de tant com
in my needs Lord says she great thanks for as-much as
vous en dites. Mais remanoir ne poroie ie plus en nule
you thereof say But remain not could I more in any
maniere. ne en nule guise. ne cheualier ne menrai ie nul
manner nor in any guise nor knight not shall-take I any
puis que chelui ne puis auoir que ie queroie. Car dautres
since that that-one not can-I have whom I sought For others
aurai ie asses. Tant li prient entre li & la roine que
shall-have I enough So-much her beg between him and the queen that
ele remaint iuscal tierch ior. & lors sen part au
she remains up-to-the third day and then herself-thence parts with-the
boin gre dambes .ij. & sen reua en son pais a
good will of-both two and herself-thence goes-back into her country by
grans iornees. Car moult li tarde que ele soit reuenue.
great days-journeys For much to-her is-late that she be returned
& que ele voie chelui por qui tous li pris del monde
and that she see that-one for whom all the prize of-the world
se trauaille. si se prise moult de che que ele a en sa
itself toils so herself prizes much for this that she has in her
baillie che que nus ne puet auoir. Ensi se repaire lie
keeping this that anyone not can have Thus herself returns glad

& ioieuse & fait entendant a sa cousine que ele estoit
and joyful and makes understand to her cousin that she was
alee a la cort le roi artu por che que ele quidoit que
gone to the court (of-)the king Arthur for this that she thought that
ses prisons fust de la cort ou de sa terre. Mais comment
her prisoner were of the court or of his land But how
laues vous puis fait. & vous & il. Dame fait ele moult
it-have you since done both you and he Lady says she very
bien. Il a eu quanque mestiers li fu. Apres ne demora
well He has had whatever need to-him was After not tarried-it
puis gaires que ele le fist traire fors de la gaiole & parla
after much that she him had drawn out of the cage and spoke
a li en samblant de feme moult iree. Sire cheualiers
with him in semblance of woman very angry Lord knight
fait ele vous me feistes lautre ior dangier de dire vostre
says she you me made the-other day refusal of telling your
non & qui vous esties. & Iou ai puis tant apris de
name and who you were and I have since so-much learned of
vostre couuine que or vous raiembroie se vous volies.
your condition that now you would-ransom-I if you wished
Dame fait il grans mercis. & ie me raembrai volentiers
Lady says he great thanks and I me shall-ransom willingly
se ie puis auenir a vostre raenchon. Saues vous fait ele
if I can come to your ransom Know you says she
quele vostre raenchons sera. Ie vous commanderai .iij.
what your ransom will-be I you shall-command three
choses & se vous nen prenes vne ia ne mait diex
things and if you not-thereof take one ever not me-may-help God
quant vous iamais istrois de ma prison. ne par auoir
when you ever-more will-go-out from my prison nor by wealth
ne par proiere. Dame or me dite vostre penser & puis
nor by prayer Lady now me tell your thought and then

ca chou en sui venus lequel que soit me couenra il
since-that this to-it am-I come whichever that be me will-behoove it
prendre. Ie vous dirai fait ele que vous me dites qui vous
to-take I you shall-tell says she that you me tell who you
estes & comment vous aues non. vous seres de ma prison
are and how you have name you will-be of my prison
quites. Et se vous che ne me voles dire si me dites qui
quit And if you this not me wish to-tell so me tell whom
vous ames par amors. & se dire ne voles lun ne lautre.
you love by love and if to-tell not you-wish the-one nor the-other
si me dites se vous quidies iamais autretant faire darmes
so me tell if you think ever-more as-much to-do of-arms
com vous feistes lautre ior a lassamblee. Quant il loi si
as you did the-other day at the-assembly When he it-heard so
commencha moult durement a sospirer & dist. Dame trop
began very hard to sigh and says Lady too-much
me haes & bien le voi. Quant vous me voles raembre
me you-hate and well it I-see Since you me wish to-ransom
si honteusement. Dame por dieu quant che sera que vous
so shamefully Lady for God when this will-be that you
maures fait dire mon grant duel & vostre plaisir quele
me-will-have made tell my great grief and your pleasure what
seurte aurai ie que vous me laires aler quitement. Iel vous
surety shall-have I that you me will-let go quit It you
creant loialment fait ele que si tost que vous aures prise
promise-I loyally says she that as soon as you will-have taken
vne des .iij. raenchons quitement en pores aler. Or est
one of-the three ransoms quit thence can-you go Now is
en vous ou de laler ou del ramanoir. Lors commenche
in you whether of the-going or of-the remaining Then begins
li cheualiers a plorer moult durement. & dist dame ie voi
the knight to weep very hard and says lady I see

bien que par honteuse raenchon me couient escaper se aler
well that by shameful ransom me behooves to-escape if go
men voeil. Et puis cainsi est il me vient miex dire ma
myself-thence I-wish And since that-thus is-it it me comes better to-tell my
honte que lautrui. Car bien sachies que ie ne vous diroie
shame than another's For well know that I not you would-tell
en nule maniere qui ie sui ne comment ie ai non. &
in any manner who I am nor how I have name and
se ie amoie par amors issi mait diex vous ne sauries
if I loved by love so me-may-help God you not would-know
ia qui se ie pooie. Dont me couient il lautre chose
ever whom if I could Then me behooves it the-other thing
dire. & iel dirai quel honte que ie en doie auoir.
to-tell and I-it shall-tell whatever shame that I thereof ought have

Tant sachies vous bien de voir que ie quit encore plus
So-much know you well of truth that I think yet more
faire darmes que ie ne fis onques se il mest commande. Or
to-do of-arms than I — did ever if it to-me-is commanded Now
si est ensi que ma honte maues fait dire si men irai
so is-it thus that my shame me-have-you made tell so myself-thence shall-go
des ore mais se vostre volentes est. asses fait ele aues dit.
from now on if your will is enough says she have-you said
or vous en ires quant vous plaira. Quar or me puis miex
now you thence will-go when you will-please For now me can-I better
apercheuoir de vous que onques mais ne fis. Mais por che
perceive of you than ever more — I-did But for this
que ie vous ai si honerablement tenu vous pri que vous
that I you have so honorably held you I-beg that you
me rendes .j. gueredon qui gaires ne vous greuera. & sel
me render a reward which much not you will-grieve and so-it
di plus por vostre preu que por le mien. dame fait il dites
I-say more for your profit than for the mine lady says he say

vostre volente & vous aures che que vous demanderes. se
your will and you will-have this that you will-ask if
troue puet estre. grant mercis fait ele. & ie vous pri ke vous
found it-can be great thanks says she and I you beg that you
remanes chaiens iusca lassamblee. & ie vous appareillerai
remain in-here up-to the-assembly and I you shall-furnish
cheual boin. & armes tex com vous les voldrois porter. si
horse good and arms such as you them will-wish to-carry so
moures de chi a lassamblee. Et ie vous ferai sauoir le
will-set-out from here to the-assembly And I you shall-make know the
ior que ele sera. Dame fait il ie ferai vostre volente. Or
day that it will-be Lady says he I shall-do your will Now
vous dirai dont fait ele que vous feres. vous seres en
you shall-tell-I then says she what you will-do you will-be in
vostre gaiole. & aures quanque vous deuiseres. & ie vous
your cage and will-have whatever you will-devise and I you
ferai compaignie souent & ie & ma cousine. Mais ie ne
shall-make company often both I and my cousin But I not
voeil que nule riens sache que vous aies a moi fine.
wish that any thing may-know that you may-have with me agreed
Et vous me dites queles armes vous voldres porter. & il
And you me tell what arms you will-wish to-carry and he
dist vnes toutes noires. Atant sen va en sa gaiole
says some all black Thereupon himself-thence goes into his cage
& la dame li fait apparellier cheleement escu tout noir
and the lady to-him has made-ready secretly shield all black
& cheual autretel. & cote armoire & couertures autreteles.
and horse likewise and coat armorial and trappings likewise

Ensi demeure li cheualiers. Et li rois est en sa terre &
Thus remains the knight And the king is in his land and
fait ensi com ses maistres li enseigna de ses gens honorer.
does thus as his master him taught of his people honoring

Tant que anchois que la moitie de lan fust passe ot il lor
So-much that before that the half of the-year were passed had he their
cuers si recoures que il orent plus de .M. maisons faites
hearts so recovered that they had more than a-thousand houses made
en la place. & saatissoient bien tant que il vaudroient
in the place and pledged-themselves well so-much that they would-wish
miex morir a dolor en la bataille que li rois perdist sa
better to-die in grief in the battle than-that the king should-lose his
terre a lor viuant. Ensi atornent tout leur cuers au roi
land in their lifetime Thus turn all their hearts to-the king
por la grant deboinarete quil lor a monstre. & vindrent
for the great graciousness that-he to-them has shown and came
auoec lui au plus efforciement que il porent en la place
with him at-the most in-force that they could into the place
.xv. iors auant la faute de la trieue; & lors reuient dauter
fifteen days before the lapse of the truce and then comes-back from-other
part mesire Gauuain. & si compaignon de la queste. ne il
part my-lord Gawain and his companions of the quest nor they
nauoient riens esploitie si en furent trop hontex. Mais
not-had anything achieved so thereof were-they too ashamed But
langoisse de la besoigne le roi les ramena. & mesire
the-anguish of the need (of-)the king them brought-back and my-lord
Gauuain dist que miex lor venoit estre honis a lonor de
Gawain said that better to-them came to-be shamed with the-honor of
lor signor lige. que il tous seus fust honis & desiretes.
their lord liege than-that he all alone were shamed and disinherited
ne honis fait il ne puet il estre sans nous. Mais nous
nor shamed says he not can he be without us But we
poriemes estre honi sans lui. Car nous poons terre perdre
could be shamed without him For we can land lose
sans sa honte. Mais il ne la puet perdre sans la nostre.
without his shame But he not it can lose without the ours

The Assembly Against Galehaut

XXIX

At Gawain's word the forty reach the assembly in time. Galehaut comes with twice the men but will not bear arms himself. Estorel, Galehaut's poor and valiant companion, and Galeguinant, brother of Yvain of Bast, unhorse each other, and the whole tourney joins at their rescue. Gawain sustains Arthur's people against the greater numbers until the king sends Yvain with more knights, and the king from beyond the marches brings Galehaut twenty thousand more; Gawain's horse is killed, Yvain remounts him, and he is so beaten that he is never afterward quite well. At evening Yvain finds him at a companion's rescue, bleeding from mouth and nose, and Arthur's people win the day and lead away prisoners.

Par la parole monsignor Gauuain vindrent ensi li .xl.
By the word (of-)my-lord Gawain came thus the forty
cheualier a lassamblee. si les rechut li rois a moult grant
knights to the-assembly so them received the king with very great
ioie. Car moult ot grant paor que il ni venissent
joy For much had-he great fear that they not-there should-come
pas a tans. ainsi vint li rois garnis de sa terre desfendre.
at-all in time thus came the king furnished of his land to-defend
& dautre part reuint galahos a grant pooir. que por
and of-other part came-back Galehaut with great power for for
.j. homme que il amena a lautre fois. en ramena il .ij.
one man that he brought at the-other time thence brought he two
si que les rois de fer qui la premiere ost auoient close.
so that the nets of iron which the first host had enclosed
ne pooient mie clore de chestui la moitie. Quant la faute
not could at-all enclose of this-one the half When the lapse
de la trieue fu finee. si desirerent moult li poure homme
of the truce was ended so desired much the poor men
dune part & dautre a assambler. lors demandent chil
on-one side and of-other to join-battle then ask those

del conseil galahot qui il vauront enuoier assambler le
of-the council (of-)Galehaut whom they will-wish to-send to-join-battle the
premier ior & a combien de gent. & il dist que ses cors
first day and with how-many of people and he said that his person
ne porteroit pas armes ne ore ne autre fois se besoins
not would-bear at-all arms neither now nor other time if need
ne li faisoit porter. ne a ceste fois fait il nassambleront
not him made bear nor at this time says he not-will-join-battle
il mie. se por veoir non le cheualerie le roi artu.
they at-all except for seeing not the chivalry (of-)the king Arthur
Mais a lautre fois assambleront il si a chertes que li
But at the-other time will-join-battle they so in earnest that the
.j. en remandra descomfis outreement. lors commanda
one thereof will-remain discomfited utterly then commanded-he
que li rois premier conquis assamblast le premier ior
that the king first conquered should-join-battle the first day
a .xxx. mile hommes. Tant que il veist comment les
with thirty thousand men Until that he might-see how the
gens le roi artu se contenront. & se plus en
people (of-)the king Arthur themselves will-bear and if more thereof
voloit tant en enuoiast querre com il voldroit.
he-wished as-many thereof he-should-send to-seek as he would-wish

Ensi dist galahos a ses hommes. Et dautre part reparole
Thus spoke Galehaut to his men And of-other part speaks-again
monsignor Gauuain a son oncle & dist. Sire se galahos
my-lord Gawain to his uncle and says Lord if Galehaut
ne porte armes demain vous nes porteres mie. biax
not bears arms tomorrow you not-them will-bear at-all fair
nies fait il vous dites voir. Mais vous les porteres &
nephew says he you say true But you them will-bear and
menres de ma gent vne partie. si penses del bien faire si
will-lead of my people a part so think of-the well doing so

com il est mestiers. Sire fait il a vostre plaisir. lendemain
as it is needful Lord says he at your pleasure the-next-day
leuerent matin & dune part & dautre & quant il orent
rose-they early both on-one side and on-other and when they had
tout messe oie si salerent armer. si passerent les gens
all mass heard so themselves-went to-arm so passed the people
le roi petit & petit les les lices & sassamblerent
(of-)the king little and little beside the lists and joined-battle
dune part & dautre. si i ot de boines ioustes & de
on-one side and on-other so there had-it of good jousts and of
dures mellees en plusors liex. lors vint assambler .j. des
hard melees in several places then came to-join-battle one of-the
compaignons galahot qui moult estoit preus. & puis fu
companions (of-)Galehaut who very was valiant and after was
il de la maisnie le roi artu. si auoit non estoriax li
he of the household (of-)the king Arthur so had name Estorel the
poures. si estoit asses proisies darmes. Et estoit plus ames
poor so was enough prized of-arms And was more loved
que cheualiers que galahos eust qui pouers hons fust.
than knight whom Galehaut had who poor man were
Cil assambla tous seus a .j. conroi ou il auoit plus
That-one joined-battle all alone with an array where there had more
de .C. cheualiers. & venoit si durement que tous li
than a-hundred knights and came so hard that all the
siecles lesgardoit a merueilles. Et el conroi auoit de
world him-watched with marvel And in-the array had-it of
moult preudommes sel laissent ferir la ou il volt. Et
very worthy-men so-him let strike there where he wished And
il pechoia son glaiue la ou il le quida miex emploier. &
he broke his lance there where he it thought best to-employ and
ala tout parmi le conroi a deliure ferir .j. cheualier moult
went all through the array at liberty to-strike a knight very

preu. qui auoit non galeguinans. si estoit freres monsignor
valiant who had name Galeguinant so was brother (of-)my-lord
ywain de bast. si venoit as iostes si tost com il pooit
Yvain of bast so came to-the jousts as soon as he could
esperoner. por conquerre pris & honor dont il auoit ia
spur to conquer prize and honor of-which he had already
asses. la ou il venoient ensi tost lencontra estoriax. si
enough there where they came thus soon him-met Estorel so
sentrehurtent si durement apres le brisier des lances &
strike-each-other so hard after the breaking of-the lances both
de cors & de vis & de cheuax que il se porterent
of bodies and of faces and of horses that they themselves bore
a terre tot estordi les cheuax sor les cors. si gurent grant
to ground all stunned the horses upon the bodies so lay-they great
pieche a terre sans releuer .vij. des cheualiers le roi artu
while on ground without rising seven of-the knights (of-)the king Arthur
laissent corre por estorel encombrer. Et quant li sien le
let run to Estorel to-encumber And when the his him
voient si hurtent chele part & sont bien .xxx. cheualier. si
see so drive that way and are well thirty knights so
auoient estoriau remonte. & les .vij. abatus. & galeguinant
had Estorel remounted and the seven struck-down and Galeguinant
pris. quant ywains li auoutres i vint poignant & apres
taken when Yvain the bastard there came spurring and after
lui de ses amis vne partie. Iluec fu la mellee trop dure.
him of his friends a part There was the melee too hard
& moult se desfendent bien chil deuers galahot mais
and much themselves defend well those toward Galehaut but
il ne porent longues durer. Car il nestoient pas autant.
they not could long last For they not-were at-all as-many
ne si boin cheualier comme li autre. si lor fu moult
nor so good knights as the others so to-them was very

durement rescous galeguinans. & li autre .vij. autresi. Et
hard rescued Galeguinant and the other seven likewise And
estoriax refu abatus. Iluec assambla tous li tornoiemens
Estorel was-again struck-down There joined all the tourney
a le rescouse destorel & de galeguinant. si assamblerent
at the rescue of-Estorel and of Galeguinant so joined-battle
em poi deure que vn que autre plus de .l. M. hommes
in little of-time that one and other more than fifty thousand men

Moult le faisoient bien les gens le roi artu. Car les
Very it did well the people (of-)the king Arthur For the
gens galahot estoient bien .xxx. mile. & il nestoient
people (of-)Galehaut were well thirty thousand and they not-were
que .xx. mile. & si auoient le plus bel de la bataille.
but twenty thousand and so had the most fair of the battle
lors assambla li cors le roi premiers conquis qui moult
then joined-battle the person (of-)the king first conquered who very
estoit bons cheualiers & seurs & moult les soustient. Mais
was good knight and sure and much them sustains But
puis que li cors monsignor Gauuain i vint onques puis
since that the person (of-)my-lord Gawain there came ever after
ne se tindrent les gens galahot se moult petit non.
not themselves held the people (of-)Galehaut except very little not
anchois se commenchierent a aler moult laidement. Et
rather themselves began to go very foully And
quant galahos les vit si lor enuoia tant de cheualiers
when Galehaut them saw so to-them sent so-many of knights
que tot li camp en furent couert. Et quant mesire
that all the fields thereof were covered And when my-lord
Gauuain les vit venir si restraint ses gens entor lui &
Gawain them saw come so draws-together his people around him and
moult les pria de bien faire. atant vindrent lor anemis
much them begged of well doing thereupon came their enemies

si se ferirent entrax le plus durement quil porent.
so themselves struck among-them the most hard that-they could
Et chil les recueillent le plus viguereusement quil porent
And those them receive the most vigorously that-they could
Car asses i auoit preudomes. Iluec fu mesire Gauuain
For enough there had-it worthy-men There was my-lord Gawain
si fist merueilles & tot si compaignon reprenoient cuer
so did marvels and all his companions took-again heart
& hardement. & il seus les soustenoit tous. Mais biens
and boldness and he alone them sustained all But well
faires ni pooit auoir mestier. Car por .j. des siens i
doing not-there could have use For for one of-the his there
auoit des galahot .iij. si les souffrirent a moult grant
had-it of-those (of-)Galehaut three so them endured-they with very great
meschief vne pieche. Et en la fin guerpirent la place. &
hardship a while And in the end abandoned-they the place and
furent a forche mene iusca lor lices. Iluec monstra mesire
were by force led up-to their lists There showed my-lord
Gauuain vne partie de sa proece. Car il souffri tant que
Gawain a part of his prowess For he endured so-much that
tout chi de deuers lui sen merueilloient. & chil
all those from toward him themselves-thereof marveled and those
deuers galahot sen esbahissoient tout.
toward Galehaut themselves-thereof were-amazed all

Quant li rois artus vit que plus ne porent durer. si dist
When the king Arthur saw that more not could-they last so says
que trop auoit ore souffert. quant il les auoit tant laissies
that too-much had-he now suffered since he them had so-long let
fouler. Et lors enuoia autretant de cheualiers com il i
trample And then sent-he as-many of knights as he there
auoit. si les bailla a monsignor ywain a conduire & li pria
had so them gave to my-lord Yvain to lead and him begged

de sagement aler. Et quant il vint la si auoient ia tout
of wisely going And when he came there so had already all
li lor passee la lice. si estoit li cheuax monsignor Gauuain
the theirs passed the list so was the horse (of-)my-lord Gawain
ochis & il estoit naures. si auoit moult grant mestier de
killed and he was wounded so had very great need of
secors. Et si tost com il assamblerent lor anemi ne se
succor And as soon as they joined-battle their enemies not themselves
tindrent fors a le liche passer. Mais la se tindrent
held except at the list to-pass But there themselves held-they
tant que li rois doutre les marces vint poignant tout a
so-long that the king from-beyond the marches came spurring all in
desroi. & auoec lui .xx. mile tout par conte. la fu grans
disarray and with him twenty thousand all by count there was great
la mellee. & moult le faisoient bien li vn & li autre. &
the melee and very it did well the one and the other and
mesire ywain le recommencha si bien a faire conques miex
my-lord Yvain it began-again so well to do so-that-ever better
ne lauoit fait a nul ior. Car il monta monsignor Gauuain
not it-had-he done on any day For he mounted my-lord Gawain
tot a force sor .j. cheual. dont il auoit abatu le
all by force upon a horse from-which he had struck-down the
roi premier conquis. si auoit ia mesire Gauuain tant
king first conquered so had already my-lord Gawain so-much
este batus que onques puis ne fu ior que il nen
been beaten that ever after not was-it day that he not-thereof
fust pires. & lors commenchierent les proeces monsignor
were worse and then began the prowesses (of-)my-lord
ywain. & les monsignor Gauuain ne remaisent mie.
Yvain and those (of-)my-lord Gawain not remained at-all

Ensi dura toute ior la bataille que quant li vn en
Thus lasted all day the battle so-that when the ones thereof
auoient le pior si les soustenoient li lor petit & petit
had the worse so them sustained the theirs little and little
tant que ce vint a lauesprer que il se commenchoient
until that it came to the-evening that they themselves began
a retraire dambes .ij. pars. se ni auoit .j. seul tant fort
to withdraw from-both two parts so not-there had a single so strong
qui ne fu tous las. & la ou il sen aloient &
who not was all weary and there where they themselves-thence went both
dune part & dautre ne sen ala mesire Gauuain. ains
on-one side and of-other not himself-thence went my-lord Gawain rather
fu venus a la rescouse dun sien compaignon qui auoit
was come to the rescue of-a his companion whom had
gaharis de carahan. si nen sauoit mot mesire ywains qui
Gaheris of carahan so not-thereof knew word my-lord Yvain who
ia sen aloit & li autre compaignon le roi. Quant
already himself-thence went and the other companions (of-)the king When
vns escuiers vint poignant apres monsignor ywain & li
a squire came spurring after my-lord Yvain and to-him
cria que pris estoit ses amis & ses compains se il ne se
cried that taken was his friend and his companion if he not himself
hastoit. lors retorna mesire ywains si tost com li cheuax pot
hastened then turned-back my-lord Yvain as soon as the horse could
aler. & fu si esbahis que onques homme ni apela. Mais
go and was so amazed that ever man not-there called-he But
asses ot grant sieute de preudommes. & quant il vint
enough had-he great following of worthy-men and when he came
a la mellee si trueue monsignor Gauuain tel conree que li
to the melee so finds my-lord Gawain so arrayed that the
sans li saloit par le bouce & par le nes. & quidoit bien
blood to-him gushed by the mouth and by the nose and thought well

morir sans confession. Mais encore estoit sor son cheual.
to-die without confession But yet was-be upon his horse
Iluec fu la mellee enforcie. si i ot plus de domage
There was the melee strengthened so there had-it more of harm
tant por tant que il nauoit hui mais eu. Car asses i
so-much for so-much that it not-had today more had For enough there
auoit mors & prins des cheualiers & naures. Mais toutes
had-it dead and taken of-the knights and wounded But all
eures en orent le plus bel les gens le roi artu a chele
hours thereof had the most fair the people (of-)the king Arthur at that
fois. & descomfirent les autres. Et lors sen tornerent
time and discomfited the others And then themselves-thence turned
si en enmenerent prisons asses & moult lor esta bien.
so thence led-away prisoners enough and very to-them stood-it well

The Black Knight at the Ford

xxx

Gawain swoons before his tent, two ribs broken, and the court grieves for him. At Malehaut the prisoner hears the news and grieves above all; he reproaches the lady for not telling him the day of the assembly, and she tells him it will be fought again in three days, with horse and black arms ready. She goes to the host, where she finds Gawain better than she was told. The knight rides out at sunrise and leans on his lance at the river where he stood before, looking at the gallery where the ladies are. Gawain, carried to a window, remembers the knight in red and loves his prowess. Arthur and Galehaut each array five battalions, Galehaut in plain armor with a staff.

Li rois fu esbahis de son neueu qui trop blechies estoit &
The king was amazed for his nephew who too hurt was and
la ou il laraisounoit deuant sa tente il ne le pot onques
there where he him-addressed before his tent he not him could ever
respondre vn tout seul mot. ains cai pasmes a terre sans
answer one all single word but falls swooning to ground without
che que nus ne ladesoit. Iluec fist grant dueil li rois &
this that anyone not him-touched There made great grief the king and
la roine. Et furent tot li mire mande si le couchierent
the queen And were all the physicians sent-for so him laid-down
& trouerent quil auoit .ij. des costes brisies. & quidoient
and found that-he had two of-the ribs broken and thought
bien quil fust derops mais il ne losoient dire por le roi.
well that-he were burst but they not it-dared say for the king
que il ne sen descomfortast trop. ains disent quil
that he not himself-thereof should-despair too-much but said that-he
ne sesmaiast & quil gariroit moult bien. Grans est
not himself-should-dismay and that-he would-heal very well Great is
li duels en lost le roi artu por monsignor Gauuain
the grief in the-host (of-)the king Arthur for my-lord Gawain

& plorent tout li preudome. & dient que iamais plus
and weep all the worthy-men and say that ever-more more
preudomme de li ne portera armes. Mais moult en i
worthy-man than him not will-bear arms But many thereof there
a qui en font ioie. quant mesire Gauuain se fu pasmes
has who thereof make joy when my-lord Gawain himself was swooned
deuant sa tente. bien lorent veu li cheualier de malohaut. si
before his tent well it-had seen the knights of malehaut so
orent oi dire par deriere que len disoit que mors estoit. Et
had heard say by behind that one said that dead he-was And
quant il vindrent a malohot si demanda la dame noueles
when they came to malehaut so asked the lady news
de lassamblee. & il disent que mesire Gauuain auoit tot
of the-assembly and they said that my-lord Gawain had all
vencu. Mais trop durement estoit blechies & iusca mort.
vanquished But too grievously was-he hurt and up-to death
De ches noueles fu la dame moult dolante & dist.
At these news was the lady very grieved and said
chertes mar i fu mesire Gauuain. Iamais plus ientiex
certainly ill there was my-lord Gawain Ever-more more noble
cheualiers ne moura. Tant alerent les noueles de monsignor
knight not will-die So-much went the news of my-lord
Gauuain quil not laiens garchon qui nen parlast. Si
Gawain that-it not-had in-there boy who not-thereof spoke So
en oi parler li cheualiers de la iaiole. & se li autre
thereof heard speak the knight of the cage and if the others
en furent dolant. il seus en fist duel sor tous hommes.
thereof were sorrowful he alone thereof made grief above all men
& dist; Chertes se il muert iamais ceste perte ne sera
and said Certainly if he dies ever-more this loss not will-be
restoree. Quant li cheualier de laiens sen furent
restored When the knights from in-there themselves-thence were

parti. si porcacha tant li cheualiers de la iaiole quil parla
parted so contrived so-much the knight of the cage that-he spoke
a sa dame & dist. dame est il voirs que mesire Gauuain
to his lady and said lady is it true that my-lord Gawain
est mors. Chertes fait ele il est blechies sans garison che
is dead Certainly says she he is hurt without cure this
ai oi dire. si mait diex fait il che est grans dolors
have-I heard say so me-may-help God says he this is great sorrow
a tout le monde. & au ior de sa mort deura bien
to all the world and at-the day of his death ought well
estre toute ioie remeise. Dame dame porcoi maues vous
be all joy left-off Lady lady wherefore me-have you
si laidement trahi. Ia meustes vous en couent que vous
so foully betrayed Already me-had you in covenant that you
me feries sauoir le ior de lassamblee. Se ie le vous oi
me would-make know the day of the-assembly If I it you heard
fait ele en couenant or men aquit. que ia i ont
says she in covenant now myself-thereof I-acquit for already there have
asses perdu li nostre. Dame fait il or est a tart. non
enough lost the ours Lady says he now is-it too late not
est fait ele que tot a tans i pores encore venir. Quar
is-it says she for all in time there can-you yet come For
lassamblee resera de hui en tier ior. Et ie vous ai
the-assembly will-be-again from today in third day And I you have
appareillie cheual & armes tex com vous me distes. Mais
prepared horse and arms such as you me told But
ie vous lo que vous ne moues de chaiens deuant le ior
I you counsel that you not move from in-here before the day
de lassamblee. lors en ires de chi tout droit en la
of the-assembly then thence will-go-you from here all straight to the
place & vous i saues bien la voie. Dame fait il a vostre
place and you there know well the way Lady says he at your

volente. Atant sen reua iesir li cheualiers & la
will Thereupon himself-thence goes-back to-lie the knight and the
dame dautre part. Et quant vint lendemain apres disner
lady from-other part And when came the-next-day after dinner
la dame vient au cheualier si le commande a dieu. &
the lady comes to-the knight so him commends to God and
dist que ele va en vn sien affaire. & li cheualiers le
says that she goes on a her affair and the knight her
merchie moult de la grant honor quele li a portee.
thanks much for the great honor that-she to-him has borne
& dist quil est ses cheualiers & sera toute sa vie.
and says that-he is her knight and will-be all his life
Atant sem part la dame si sen vait en lost.
Thereupon herself-thence parts the lady so herself-thence goes into the-host
Et li rois & la roine font de li grant ioie comme gent
And the king and the queen make of her great joy as people
irie & le mainent a monsignor Gauuain que ele desiroit
grieved and her lead to my-lord Gawain whom she desired
moult a veoir. Mais ele le troua moult de plus bel
much to see But she him found very of more fair
samblant que len ne li auoit conte. sen fu moult
semblance than one — to-her had told so-thereof was-she very
lie. Ensi passerent chele nuit. & a moult grant paor
glad Thus passed-they that night and with very great fear
atendoit li rois artus. Car moult auoit de ses cheualier
waited the king Arthur For many had-he of his knights
perdus. Et la cousine a la dame de malohaut qui a lostel
lost And the cousin of the lady of malehaut who at the-lodging
estoit remaise aparella la nuit au cheualier ses armes
was remained made-ready the night for-the knight his arms
& le coucha en la couche sa dame. & fu deuant li
and him laid in the couch (of-)her lady and was before him

tant que il fu endormis. Car la dame li auoit proie que
until that he was fallen-asleep For the lady to-her had begged that
ele li portast toutes les honors que ele li porroit
she to-him should-bear all the honors that she to-him could
porter salue sonor. Al matin se leua li cheualiers
bear saving her-honor At-the morning himself rose the knight
moult matin & la pucele le aida a armer. & quant
very early and the maiden him helped to arm and when
il lot commandee a dieu si sen parti. & erra
he her-had commended to God so himself-thence parted and traveled
la matinee tant que il vint en la place a soleil leuant.
the morning so-far that he came into the place at sun rising
si saresta sor le riuiere & sapoia sor son glaiue
so himself-stopped upon the river and himself-leaned upon his lance
en cel lieu meisme ou il auoit este a lautre assamblee.
in that place itself where he had been at the-other assembly
Et commencha a esgarder en la bertesque ou mesire
And began to look into the bartizan where my-lord
Gauuain gisoit malades; por les dames & les damoiseles
Gawain lay sick for the ladies and the damsels
quil i veoit. si i estoit la roine venue & la dame
that-he there saw so there was the queen come and the lady
de malahaut & asses dautres dames & damoiseles. &
of malehaut and enough of-other ladies and damsels and
les gens le roi artu sestoient ia arme & passoient
the people (of-)the king Arthur themselves-had already armed and passed
liaue espessement chil qui desiroient la iouste. & autretel
the-water thickly those who desired the joust and likewise
faisoient la gent galahot. Si ne demora gaires que en
did the people (of-)Galehaut So not tarried-it much that in
maint lieu furent li pre couert de iostes & de mellees.
many place were the meadows covered with jousts and with melees

& li cheualiers pensa toutes voies apoies sor son glaiue
and the knight thought all ways leaned upon his lance
& esgardoit vers la bertesque ou les dames estoient
and looked toward the bartizan where the ladies were
moult doucement. Et la dame de malahot le vit sel
very sweetly And the lady of malehaut him saw so-him
reconnut moult bien. si en comencha a parler oiant
recognized very well so thereof began to speak in-hearing
la roine & les autres dames. Diex fait ele cil cheualiers
the queen and the other ladies God says she that knight
que ie voi sor chele riuiere que puet il estre. Il ne nuist
whom I see upon that river what can he be He not harms
a nus ne naide. Lors commenchent tuit & toutes a
to anyone nor not-helps Then begin all-men and all-women to
esgarder. & dist mesire Gauuain le porai ie veoir. &
look and says my-lord Gawain him shall-be-able I see and
la dame de malahot dist quele latorneroit bien quil le
the lady of malehaut says that-she it-would-arrange well that-he him
verroit. lors li fist ele meismes .j. siege encontre vne
would-see then to-him made she herself a seat against a
fenestre si le couchierent si que il pooit bien veoir tot
window so him laid-down so that he could well see all
contreual la praerie. & il esgarde si voit le cheualier al
down the meadow and he looks so sees the knight with-the
noir escu qui pensoit apoies sor son glaiue. si dist a la
black shield who thought leaned upon his lance so says to the
roine. Dame memberoit il vous ore que ie refui antan
queen Lady would-remember it you now that I was-again last-year
blechies si gisoie chaiens. que vns cheualiers pensoit autresi
hurt so lay in-here when a knight thought likewise
sor chele riuiere ou cist ou vns autres. Mais il portoit
upon that river where this-one or an other But he bore

vnes armes vermeilles. & che fu chil qui lassamblee
some arms red and this was that-one who the-assembly
venqui. biax nies fait ele il puet bien estre. Mais porcoi
won fair nephew says she it can well be But wherefore
le dites vous. Dame fait il por ce que ce fust il. Car ie
it say you Lady says he for this that this were he For I
ne ui onques proeces de nul cheualier si volentiers comme
not saw ever prowesses of any knight so willingly as
les soies. longuement parlerent de lui que onques ne se
the his long spoke-they of him for ever not himself
mut de son estage. & li rois artus auoit ia ses
moved-he from his stand and the king Arthur had already his
gens ordenees. si auoit fait .iiij. batailles au il auoit en
people ordered so had made four battalions where he had in
chascune .xv. M. hommes. Et en la quinte en auoit
each fifteen thousand men And in the fifth thereof had-it
plus de .xx. M. Si ot a conduire la premiere bataille
more than twenty thousand So had to lead the first battalion
li rois yders qui moult estoit preus cheualiers. & moult
the king Yder who very was valiant knight and very
le fist bien le ior. La seconde mena heruix de riuel. &
it did well the day The second led Hervi of rivel and
chestoit .j. des cheualiers del monde qui plus sauoit de
it-was one of-the knights of-the world who most knew of
guerre. La tierce conduist aguisiax li rois descoche qui
war The third led Aguisant the king of-scotland who
cousins estoit le roi artu. & la premiere eust il
cousin was (of-)the king Arthur and the first would-have he
eue se il seust autretant darmes comme tex i auoit.
had if he had-known as-much of-arms as such there had
La quarte conduist li rois yons. & la quinte mesire
The fourth led the king Yon and the fifth my-lord

ywains li fiex le roy vrijen ou il auoit plus de
Yvain the son (of-)the king Urien where there had more than
.xx. M. cheualiers. & deuoit assambler tot daarains.
twenty thousand knights and was-to join-battle all last
Einsi ot li rois artus faites .v. batailles. & autretant en
Thus had the king Arthur made five battalions and as-many thereof
refist galahos. si auoit en chascune des .iiij. xx .M.
made-again Galehaut so had-he in each of-the four score thousand
hommes & en la quinte en auoit .xl. M. la premiere
men and in the fifth thereof had-it forty thousand the first
bataille ot malaguins ses senescaus. che fu li rois des
battalion had Malaguin his seneschal this was the king of-the
.C. cheualiers qui moult estoit preus & hardis. & la
hundred knights who very was valiant and bold and the
seconde ot li rois premier conquis. la tierce ot li rois del
second had the king first conquered the third had the king of-the
vadoan. & la quarte mena li rois clamadeus des lontaine
vadoan and the fourth led the king Clamadeu of-the far
illes. & la quinte ou li .xl. M. estoient mena li rois
isles and the fifth where the forty thousand were led the king
baldemagus de gorre. qui moult estoit preus de cheualerie
Baudemagu of gorre who very was valiant in chivalry
& de conseil. Chelui ior ne porta mie galahas armes a
and in counsel That day not bore at-all Galehaut arms as
cheualier. Mais il vesti .j. haubergon court comme serians
knight But he put-on a habergeon short as sergeant
&. i. capel de fer en sa teste & sespee chainte comme
and a cap of iron on his head and his-sword girded as
serians & .j. baston gros & cort en sa main. & sist en
sergeant and a staff thick and short in his hand and sat on

.j. cheual tel com a preudome couenoit. Car chestoit li
a horse such as to worthy-man befitted For it-was the
homs el monde qui plus en auoit de boins & de biax.
man in-the world who most thereof had of good and of fair

The Ladies Send Word

XXXI

The Lady of Malehaut urges the queen to send word to the black knight that he should do arms for her; the queen, fearing for the land, leaves it to the other ladies. A maiden carries their greeting, omitting the queen, and two lances from Gawain. The knight looks to his legs and stirrups and seems to Gawain to grow half a foot; he breaks the lances in a great array of a hundred and returns to the river, looking sweetly at the gallery. Gawain tells the queen she erred in not being named, and has her send word in her own name, for the realm and the king's honor, with ten lances and three of his horses covered with his arms.

Ensi sont en la piece de terre dune part & dautre por
Thus are-they in the piece of land on-one side and on-other to
assambler. Et li cheualiers noirs est encore sor la riuiere
join-battle And the knight black is yet upon the river
pensis. & la dame de malohaut apela la roine & dist.
thoughtful and the lady of malehaut called the queen and said
Dame car le faites bien. & mandes a chel cheualier quil
Lady now it do well and send-word to that knight that-he
face darmes por amor de vous. & quil vous moustre des
do of-arms for love of you and that-he you show of
quels il est. ou des nos ou des lor. lors sauerons quil
which he is either of-the ours or of-the theirs then shall-we-know what-he
vaudra faire & sil a point de valor en lui. bele dame fait
will-be-worth to-do and if-he has point of valor in him fair lady says

la roine ie ai asses a penser dautres choses. Car messires li
the queen I have enough to think of-other things For my-lord the
rois est en auenture de perdre anqui toute sa terre & toute
king is in hazard of losing today all his land and all
sonor. Et mes nies gist chi tex conrees com vous poes
his-honor And my nephew lies here so arrayed as you can
veoir. si voi tant de meschief que ie nai ore talent des
see so see-I so-much of misfortune that I not-have now desire of-the
grans aatines que ie soloie faire ne des enuoiseures. Car ie
great challenges that I was-wont to-make nor of-the pastimes For I
ai asses ou a entendre. Mais vous li mandes & ches
have enough where to attend But you to-him send and these
autres dames seles voelent. Chertes dame fait ele ie en sui
other ladies if-they wish Certainly lady says she I thereof am
toute preste sil fust qui dautre part li mandast. Se
all ready if-it were-one who from-other part to-him should-send If
vous volies mandisies li. & iou en feroie compaignie
you wished you-should-send to-him and I thereof would-make company
volentiers. Dame fait la roine ie ne men entremetrai ia.
willingly Lady says the queen I not myself-thereof shall-meddle ever
Mandes li vous & ces autres dames se vous voles. lors
Send to-him you and these other ladies if you wish then
dist la dame de malohaut que seles autres dames li voelent
said the lady of malehaut that if-the other ladies to-him wish
mander dune part. ele li mandera dautre. & eles li
to-send on-one side she to-him will-send on-other and they to-her
otrierent toutes. Et la roine lor preste vne de ses puceles
granted all And the queen to-them lends one of her maidens
a cest message porter. & la dame de malohaut deuise le
to this message to-carry and the lady of malehaut devises the

message. & mesire Gauuain i met .ij. glaiues del sien &
message and my-lord Gawain there puts two lances of-the his and
.j. escuier qui les li porta. lors dist la dame a la pucele.
a squire who them to-him carried then says the lady to the maiden
Damoisele vous ires a chel cheualier qui la pense.
Damsel you will-go to that knight who there thinks
si li dires que toutes les dames & les damoiseles de
so to-him will-say that all the ladies and the damsels of
la maison le roi artu le saluent. fors le cors madame
the house (of-)the king Arthur him greet except the person (of-)my-lady
seulement. Et si li mandent & prient que sil atent
only And so to-him send-word and beg that if-he waits
iamais a auoir ne bien ne honor en lieu ou nule deles
ever-more to have either good or honor in place where any of-them
ait ne force ne pooir. si face anqui darmes por lor
may-have either force or power so he-should-do today of-arms for their
amor. tant que eles len doient gre sauoir. Si li
love so-much that they him-thereof ought thanks to-know So to-him
presentes ces .ij. glaiues que mesire Gauuain li enuoie.
present these two lances which my-lord Gawain to-him sends
Atant monte la pucele sor .j. palefroi & li escuiers
Thereupon mounts the maiden upon a palfrey and the squire
apres qui les glaiues porte. & vindrent au cheualier si
after who the lances carries and came to-the knight so
li dist la pucele son message. & quant il oi parler de
to-him said the maiden her message and when he heard speak of
monsignor Gauuain si demanda ou il estoit. & la pucele
my-lord Gawain so asked-he where he was and the maiden
dist. il est en cele bertesque & dames & damoiseles asses.
said he is in that bartizan and ladies and damsels enough
& il prent congie a la pucele. & dist au vallet quil le
and he takes leave of the maiden and says to-the lad that-he him

sieue. & il regarde ses iambes & affaite ses estriers. si est
follow and he looks-at his legs and adjusts his stirrups so is
auis a monsignor Gauuain qui lesgarde que il soit creus
opinion to my-lord Gawain who him-watches that he be grown
demi pie. lors esgarde vers la bertesque & puis sen
half foot then looks toward the bartizan and then himself-thence
torne tot contreual les pres ferrant des esperons. &
turns all down the meadows striking with-the spurs and
quant mesire Gauuain len vit aler si dist a la roine.
when my-lord Gawain him-thence saw go so says to the queen
Dame dame vees le cheualier. ou en tot le monde
Lady lady see the knight where in all the world
na nul millor. que onques mais a cheualier ne vi si
not-has any better for ever more to knight not saw-I so
bien & si bel porter armes comme chil les porte. lors
well and so fairly bear arms as that-one them bears then
corurent toutes & dames & damoiseles as fenestres &
ran all both ladies and damsels to-the windows and
as creniax por lui veoir. & il sen vait a force
to-the battlements for him to-see and he himself-thence goes by force
si tost com li cheuax pot aler. si voit a destre & a
as fast as the horse could go so sees on right and on
senestre de moult beles ioustes & de moult bones mellees.
left of very fair jousts and of very good melees
Car grant partie des legiers bachelers de la cort le roi
For great part of-the nimble bachelors of the court (of-)the king
artu auoient ia la lice passee por faire darmes. & de
Arthur had already the list passed to do of-arms and from
lost galohaut en venoient cha .x. cha .xx. cha .xxx. cha
the-host (of-)Galehaut thence came here ten here twenty here thirty here
.xl. cha .C. en lun lieu plus & en lautre mains. &
forty here a-hundred in the-one place more and in the-other fewer and

il eskieue totes les mellees & hurte des esperons contre
he avoids all the melees and drives with-the spurs against
.j. grant conroi quil voit uenir ou il auoit bien .C.
a great array that-he sees come where there had well a-hundred
cheualiers. Et il se plonge entrax & fiert .j. cheualier
knights And he himself plunges among-them and strikes a knight
si durement que il le porte a terre tot en .j. mont. &
so hard that he him bears to ground all in one heap both
lui & le cheual. Et quant ses glaiues li est faillis il
him and the horse And when his lance to-him is failed he
fiert des tronchons tant com il durent iuscas poins. Et
strikes with-the stumps as-long as they lasted up-to-the fists And
puis se lance fors a son escuier qui ses .ij. glaiues porte
then himself flings out to his squire who his two lances carries
si en prent vne & se refiert entre aus & iouste
so thereof takes one and himself strikes-again among them and jousts
si apertement que tout li autre en laissent le ioster &
so openly that all the others thereof leave the jousting and
le bien faire pour lui esgarder. si fait tant darmes des
the well doing for him to-watch so does so-much of-arms with-the
.iij. glaiues comme il durent. Tant que mesire Gauuain
three lances as they lasted So-much that my-lord Gawain
tesmoigne que nus hom au sien essiant autretant nen
bears-witness that any man to his knowledge as-much not-thereof
peust faire. Et si tost com il sont pechoie tot troi si
could do And as soon as they are broken all three so
sen reuient sor la riuiere en chel lieu ou il auoit
himself-thence comes-back onto the river into that place where he had
deuant este. & torne son vis vers la bertesque si regarde
before been and turns his face toward the bartizan so looks
moult doucement. Et mesire Gauuain em parole & dist.
very sweetly And my-lord Gawain thereof speaks and says

Dame vees vous chel cheualier. bien sachies que chou est
Lady see you that knight well know that this is
le plus preudom del monde. Mais vous aues trop mespris
the most worthy-man of-the world But you have too-much mistaken
el message qui li fu enuoies quant vous ni volsistes
in-the message which to-him was sent when you not-there wished
estre noumee. Et par auenture il la tenu a orguel. Car
to-be named And by chance he it-has held for pride For
il voit bien que la besoigne est plus a vous que a toutes
he sees well that the business is more to you than to all
les autres. si pense espoir que petit le prisastes quant
the others so thinks perhaps that little him you-prized when
vous ne li deignastes mander que il feist darmes por
you not to-him deigned send-word that he should-do of-arms for
vostre amor. par foi fait la dame de malohaut il monstre
your love by faith says the lady of malehaut he shows
bien a nos autres que pour nous nen fera il plus.
well to our others that for us not-thereof will-do he more
Or li mant qui a mander li aura. Que la nostre
Now to-him send-word who to send-word to-him will-have For the our
aatine est a mais hui remeise. Dame fait mesire Gauuain
challenge is for more today left-off Lady says my-lord Gawain
samble vous il que ie vous aie dit raison. biax nies fait
seems you it that I you have said reason fair nephew says
ele que voles vous que ie en face. Dame fait il iel
she what wish you that I thereof should-do Lady says he I-it
vous dirai. Il a moult qui a .j. preudomme. Car por le
you shall-tell It has much who has a worthy-man For for the
cors dun preudome ont maintes choses este a cief menees.
body of-a worthy-man have many things been to end brought
qui toutes alassent a noiant. & ie vous dirai que vous
which all would-have-gone to nothing and I you shall-tell what you

ferois. Mandes a cestui salus & que vous li cries merci
will-do Send to this-one greetings and that you to-him cry mercy
del roialme de logres. & de lonor monsignor le roi. qui
for-the kingdom of logres and for the-honor (of-)my-lord the king which
hui ira a mal se diex nen a merci. & se il iamais
today will-go to ill if God not-thereof has mercy and if he ever-more
atent a auoir honor ne ioie en lieu ou vous aies pooir
waits to have honor or joy in place where you may-have power
si face anqui por vostre amor tant darmes que vous
so he-should-do today for your love so-much of-arms that you
len doies gre sauoir. & quil pere a ses oeures quil
him-thereof ought thanks to-know and that-it appear by his works that-he
ait rescouse mise en lonor le roi & en la vostre.
may-have rescue put in the-honor (of-)the king and in the yours
& bien sacies se il i velt metre desfense li rois mesires
and well know if he there wishes to-put defense the king my-lord
ni sera hui mis au desous por pooir que galehaus
not-there will-be today put at-the under for power that Galehaut
ait. & ie li enuoierai .x. glaiues dont li fer sont
may-have and I to-him shall-send ten lances of-which the irons are
trenchant & les hanstes grosses & roides dont vous
sharp and the shafts thick and stiff of-which you
verres anqui mainte bele iouste faire. & si li enuoierai
will-see today many fair joust made and so to-him shall-send
.iij. cheuax que ie ai moult boins & moult biax. &
three horses that I have very good and very fair and
seront tot couert de mes armes. & sacies que sil velt
will-be all covered with my arms and know that if-he wishes
faire son pooir il les metera bien tous trois a la voie.
to-do his power he them will-put well all three to the way

Ensi deuise mesire Gauuain. & la roine dist que il
Thus devises my-lord Gawain and the queen says that he
mant au cheualier che que il voldra en son non &
send-word to-the knight this that he will-wish in her name and
que ele lotrie bien. Et la dame de malohaut en est si
that she it-grants well And the lady of malehaut thereof is so
lie que par .j. poi quele ne vole. que or li est auis
glad that by a little that-she not flies for now to-her is opinion
que ele a ataint quanquele auoit tos iors cachie. lors apele
that she has reached whatever-she had all days chased then calls
mesire Gauuain le pucele qui le message auoit porte si
my-lord Gawain the maiden who the message had carried so
lenuoie au cheualier qui pense. & li deuise le message
her-sends to-the knight who thinks and to-her devises the message
ensi com il auoit dit a la roine. puis apele .iiij. de ses
thus as he had said to the queen then calls-he four of his
serians & lor commande que il mainent au cheualier
sergeants and to-them commands that they lead to-the knight
.iij. de ses cheuax tous couers. & li quars li port .x.
three of his horses all covered and the fourth to-him carry ten
de ses lances les plus fors que il a. Atant sen part
of his lances the most strong that he has Thereupon herself-thence parts
la pucele & dist au cheualier ce que mesire Gauuain &
the maiden and says to-the knight this that my-lord Gawain and
la roine li mandent. & les presens li baillent. Et li
the queen to-him send-word and the presents to-him hand And the
cheualiers demande a la damoisele. ou est madame. sire
knight asks of the damsel where is my-lady lord
fait ele la sus en cele bertesque & dames & damoiseles
says she there above in that bartizan and ladies and damsels
asses. & si i gist mesire Gauuain malades. & sacies que
enough and so there lies my-lord Gawain sick and know that

vous seres moult bien regardes. & li cheualier li dist.
you will-be very well watched and the knight to-her says
Damoisele dites a madame que ensi soit com lui plaira. &
Damsel say to my-lady that thus be-it as her will-please and
a monsignor Gauuain me rendes grans mercis del present.
to my-lord Gawain me render great thanks for-the present

Hervi of Rivel

XXXII

The knight takes the stoutest lance, avoids the melees and strikes into the king First Conquered's battalion; Kay, Sagremor, Giflet, Yvain the bastard, Brandelis and Gaheriet follow him, Kay pledging not to leave him. He breaks all the lances, loses one of Gawain's horses, remounts and fights on as if fresh, while all wonder who he is. The routed Hundred Knights fall back on the king First Conquered, forty thousand against fifteen thousand. Kay sends word to Hervi of Rivel that he lets the best knight who ever bore a shield die; old Hervi, stung, swears he never did treason and promises to come, and Kay, ill at ease as he is, laughs and goes back to the melee.

Lors prent le plus fort des glaiues que li valles portoit.
Then takes-he the most strong of-the lances that the lad carried
& dist a els tous que il le sieuent. la damoisele prent
and says to them all that they him follow the damsel takes
congie si sen reuient ariere a la roine & dist son
leave so herself-thence comes-back back to the queen and tells her
message a monsignor Gauuain. che que li cheualiers li
message to my-lord Gawain this that the knight to-him
mande. Et la dame de malohaut commence a sosrire moult
sends-word And the lady of malehaut begins to smile very
durement. & li vn & li autre. & il eskieue toutes les
hard and the one and the other and he avoids all the

mellees & laisse corre tot contreval les pres ou maint
melees and lets run all down the meadows where many
boin cheualier estoit ia assamble & dune part & dautre.
good knight was already joined both on-one side and on-other
si auoit ia la bataille yder passee la lice. & estoit
so had already the battalion (of-)Yder passed the list and was
assamblee a la bataille le roi des .C. cheualiers. si
joined with the battalion (of-)the king of-the hundred knights so
le faisoient moult bien & li vn & li autre. Et il eskieue
it did very well both the one and the other And he avoids
toutes les mellees. et fait samblant que nule nen voie
all the melees and makes semblance that any not-thereof he-see
& passe outre a la bataille que li rois premier conquis
and passes beyond to the battalion that the king first conquered
menoit. ou il auoit bien .xx. M. cheualiers. Si lor
led where there had well twenty thousand knights So to-them
a drechie la teste del cheual a volente. & se fiert
has turned the head of-the horse at will and himself strikes
entrax si fort com li cheuax li pot aler. & vait la
among-them as hard as the horse him could go and goes there
ou il cuide miex son colp emploier. si que deuant son
where he thinks best his blow to-employ so that before his
glaiue ne remaint riens que il consieue ne cheualiers
lance not remains anything that he reaches neither knights
ne cheuax. ains fait voler tout en .j. mont & ses glaiues
nor horses but makes fly all in one heap and his lance
li pechoie. Cest encontre ont veu maint des cheualiers
to-him breaks This encounter have seen many of-the knights
le roi artu. mesire kex li senescax & saigremors li
(of-)the king Arthur my-lord Kay the seneschal and Sagremor the

desrees. & gifles li fiex do & ywains li auoltres. &
unruly and Giflet the son (of-)Do and Yvain the bastard and
mesire brandelis & gaharies li freires monsignor Gauuain.
my-lord Brandelis and Gaheriet the brother (of-)my-lord Gawain
Chil sen venoient tout a desroi por faire darmes.
Those themselves-thence came all in disarray to do of-arms
Car pris damors & legierte le portoit & a honor
For prize of-love and nimbleness them carried and to honor
conquerre. & tous li plus isniax ni quidoit ia a tans
to-conquer and all the most swift not-there thought ever in time
venir Et apres chiax en uenoient bien .C. les hiaumes
to-come And after these thence came well a-hundred the helms
lachies les lanches empoignies & tout prest de bien faire.
laced the lances gripped and all ready for well doing
Et kex li senescaus qui le cheualier ot veu assambler apele
And Kay the seneschal who the knight had seen join-battle calls
les .v. qui auoec li estoient. Signor fait il vous aues veu
the five who with him were Lords says he you have seen
orendroit le plus bel encontre qui onques mais fust fais par
right-now the most fair encounter which ever more was made by
.j. seul cheualier. & nous somes tout chi pour honor & por
a single knight and we are all here for honor and for
pris conquerre. ne iamais en toutes nos vies ne trouerons
prize to-conquer nor ever-more in all our lives not shall-find
si boin ou emploier cheualeries se nous point en auons.
so good where to-employ chivalries if we point thereof have
Et orendroit mati ge de lui sieurre car il ne puet estre
And right-now pledge-myself I of him to-follow for he not can be
se preudom non. & qui ore voldra honor auoir si me
except worthy-man not and who now will-wish honor to-have so me
sieue. Car ie nel lairai hui mais se mors ne sui ou
follow For I not-him shall-leave today more if dead not am-I or

meshaignies. Atant hurte des esperons & tout li autre
maimed Thereupon drives-he with-the spurs and all the others
apres. & li cheualiers noirs qui sen glaiue ot pechoie se
after and the knight black who his lance had broken himself
fu lanchies fors & reprist vne glaiue de ses escuiers si
was flung out and took-again a lance from his squires so
sen reuient a la mellee grant aleure. & chil vienent
himself-thence comes-back to the melee great pace and those come
apres si sapoient a lui. si se fierent apres lui en la
after so themselves-lean on him so themselves strike after him into the
bataille. Et il commenche cheualiers & cheuax a abatre.
battalion And he begins knights and horses to strike-down
& a porter escus de cols & a esrachier hiaumes de testes
and to carry shields from necks and to tear helms from heads
& il fait tant darmes que tout chil sen merueillent
and he does so-much of-arms that all those themselves-thereof marvel
qui auoec lui sont. & chil contre lui sen esbahissent.
who with him are and those against him themselves-thereof are-amazed
Tant a fait que tout li glaiue sont pechoie & vn des
So-much has-he done that all the lances are broken and one of-the
cheuax mors que mesire Gauuain i auoit enuoies. Car il
horses dead which my-lord Gawain there had sent For it
cai sous lui & li escuiers len remena .j. autre. & il
fell under him and the squire him-thereof brought a other and he
lestraint moult durement & la ou il estoit en la presse
it-tightens very hard and there where he was in the press
a pie si vindrent li .C. cheualier ferant des esperons
on foot so came the hundred knights striking with-the spurs
& il saut sor le destrier que li escuiers li ot amene.
and he leaps onto the steed that the squire to-him had brought
& vient autresi fres a la bataille com sil ni eust hui
and comes as fresh to the battalion as if-he not-there had today

mais este lespee nue en la main. Et quant li compaignon
more been the-sword naked in the hand And when the companions
virent desous li le cheual couert des armes monsignor
saw under him the horse covered with-the arms (of-)my-lord
Gauuain si sen merueillent moult. & sorent bien
Gawain so themselves-thereof marvel much and knew well
quil estoit trop preudom. si le sieuent tout prest de
that-he was too worthy so him follow all ready of
proece faire. Ou de morir a honor en sa compaignie.
prowess to-do Or of dying with honor in his company

Lors comenchierent a faire darmes moult durement. ne
Then began-they to do of-arms very hard nor
a chel tans ne prenoit mie cheualiers autre par le fraim.
at that time not took at-all knight other by the bridle
ne ne feroient sor .j. ne .ij. ne .iij. Mais ki plus pooit
nor not they-struck upon one nor two nor three But who most could
faire darmes plus en faisoit. Si pooit vns cheualiers ferir
do of-arms most thereof did So could a knight strike
ou .ij. ou .iij. ou tant com il pooit. ensi faisoit li noirs
either two or three or as-many as he could thus did the black
cheualiers darmes & sa compaignie mais moult estoient a
knight of-arms and his company but much were-they in
grant meschief. ne longuement ni peussent pas durer se
great hardship nor long not-there could-they at-all last if
neust este vne auenture que li auint. que li bataille
not-had-it been an adventure that to-them befell that the battalion
au roi des .C. cheualiers se desconfist qui ne porent
of-the king of-the hundred knights itself discomfited who not could
plus durer au roi yder si sen aloient moult
more last against-the king Yder so themselves-thence went very
durement. si les embatirent au roi premier conquis. si
hard so them drove-in on-the king first conquered so

en ot li rois des .C. cheualiers moult grant duel &
thereof had the king of-the hundred knights very great grief and
moult grant honte. Car endroit soi estoit il moult boins
very great shame For in-respect-of himself was he very good
cheualiers & moult seurs. Iluec corurent li descomfit qui
knight and very sure There ran the discomfited who
moult trouerent grant secors. & moult estoient plus que
very found great succor and much were-they more than
li autre. Car il estoient es .ij. bataille bien .xl. M.
the others For they were in-the two battalions well forty thousand
& deuers les compaignons monsignor Gauuain nestoient
and toward the companions (of-)my-lord Gawain not-were-they
que .xv. mile. si les orent desrompus a lassambler.
but fifteen thousand so them had-they broken at the-joining
Iluec parurent les proeces au noir cheualier. que il ne
There appeared the prowesses of-the black knight for he not
consieuoit cheualier quil ne portoit a terre malgre sien. Il
reached knight that-he not bore to ground in-spite of-him He
abatoit cheualiers & cheuax par cols de lanches & par
struck-down knights and horses by blows of lances and by
ferir despees. & au sachier par hiaumes & par penes
striking of-swords and at-the pulling by helms and by rims
des escus. & par empaindre de lui & de son cheual.
of-the shields and by thrusting of him and of his horse
Il ne faisoit se merueilles non. & la ou il venoit
He not did except marvels not and there where he came
lespee traite. si auenoit souent quil ne trouoit ou ferir
the-sword drawn so it-happened often that-he not found where to-strike
en sa voie. Car il le fuioient tout. Car la ou il
in his way For they him fled all For there where he
consieuoit a droit colp ne pooit durer ne fer ne fust.
reached with right blow not could last neither iron nor wood

ne cors domme ne pooit sostenir ses cols. & il seus le
nor body of-man not could sustain his blows and he alone it
faisoit si bien que tous sostenoit chels deuers lui. & tous
did so well that all sustained-he those toward him and all
atendoit cheus qui contre lui estoient & chil deuers lui
awaited-he those who against him were and those toward him
le faisoient moult bien. que por le sien bien faire que por
it did very well both for the his well doing and for
lor grans proeces. Ensi atendent tout a lui & tout se
their great prowesses Thus wait-they all on him and all themselves
meruellent qui il est por les grans proeces que il fait.
marvel who he is for the great prowesses that he does

Moult le fait bien li noirs cheualiers. si en cort tant
Very it does well the black knight so thereof runs so-much
la nouele amont & aual que par toute lost le roi
the news up and down that through all the-host (of-)the king
artu ne parole len se de lui non. ne en lost galahot
Arthur not speaks one except of him not nor in the-host (of-)Galehaut
autresi. & dient tout chil qui ses proeces ont veues. que
likewise and say all those who his prowesses have seen that
noians fu de chelui dantan as armes vermeilles enuers
nothing was of that-one of-last-year with-the arms red against
cestui. Et les gens lo roi premier conquis li ont
this-one And the people (of-)the king first conquered to-him have
ocis son cheual desoz lui si est a pie entre els & se
killed his horse under him so is-he on foot among them and himself
desfent molt durement En ceste maniere se contient
defends very hard In this manner himself bears-he
grant pieche. & toutes eures se tenoient pres de li
great while and all hours themselves held near to him
.vij. compaignon que li contes a nomes. & lors fu ses
seven companions whom the tale has named and then was his

cheuax ochis desous lui. & si sali maintenant en lautre
horse killed under him and so leapt-he at-once onto the-other
qui amenes li fu. & lors commencha moult a empirier
which brought to-him was and then began much to worsen
sa compaignie qui toute ior sestoit tenue de lui aidier.
his company which all day itself-had held to him helping
lors apele li senescax lescuier qui le cheual li auoit
then calls the seneschal the-squire who the horse to-him had
amene & li dist. mais va tost a heruil de riuel la
brought and to-him says now go quickly to Hervi of rivel there
ou tu vois chele baniere bendee dor & de sinople
where thou seest that banner banded with-gold and with green
autant de lun com de lautre. & si li di que iou li
as-much of the-one as of the-other and so to-him say that I to-him
mant que des or mais se doit plaindre de lui & ie
send-word that from now on himself ought complain of him both I
& tous li mondes. Car il laisse morir le millor cheualier
and all the world For he lets die the best knight
qui onques portast escu a col. & bien sace de voir
who ever bore shield at neck and well let-him-know of truth
que se cist i murt la flor des compaignons le roi
that if this-one there dies the flower of-the companions (of-)the king
morra auoeques lui. Et il qui secoure le deust en sera
will-die with him And he who succor him ought thereof will-be
tenus por maluais a tous les iors de son viuant. Atant
held for bad for all the days of his life Thereupon
sempart li escuiers si vient a heruil. & li dist son
himself-thence-parts the squire so comes to Hervi and to-him tells his
message de tout en tout. Et quant heruis lot sen
message from all in all And when Hervi it-heard so-thereof
fu moult esbahis & moult hontex & dist. Diex aide
was-he much amazed and very ashamed and said God help

traison ne fis ie onques ne ia nel commencherai car trop
treason not did I ever nor ever not-it shall-begin for too
sui viex. puis a dit a ses hommes quil cheuauchent
am-I old then has-he said to his men that-they ride
seurement. & tu iras deuant dist il a lescuier & si me
surely and thou wilt-go before says he to the-squire and so me
di au senescal que se il puet tant souffrir que ie vienge
tell to-the seneschal that if he can so-long suffer that I may-come
en la place il ne me tendra mie por traitor. Et li valles
into the place he not me will-hold at-all for traitor And the lad
sen va a keu & li dist les paroles heruil. & kex
himself-thence goes to Kay and to-him tells the words (of-)Hervi and Kay
sen rist si a malaise com il estoit. & puis demande
himself-thereof laughs so at unease as he was and then asks
au vallet qui li noirs cheualiers est. & chil respont que
of-the lad who the black knight is and that-one answers that
il nen seit rien. porcoi li a dont mesire Gauuain
he not-thereof knows anything wherefore to-him has then my-lord Gawain
enuoie ses cheuax. & li valles respont quil nen seit
sent his horses and the lad answers that-he not-thereof knows
plus quil li a dit. lors remist kex son hyaume que il
more than-he to-him has said then put-back Kay his helm which he
auoit oste & sen reuint a la mellee moult aireement.
had removed and himself-thence returned to the melee very angrily

Galehaut Becomes His Squire

XXXIII

Hervi joins with his banner, past eighty and fighting beyond his age, and the black knight holds the field against twice the men while battalion after battalion is joined. Galehaut, told that one knight has vanquished all, comes himself and finds the knight on foot, his last horse killed. He marvels, parts the press with his staff, and tells him that none of his men shall lay hand on him while he fights on foot, and that he will be his squire all day and give him horses. He gives him his own horse; then he sends ten thousand ahead as if all his host were coming, and the knight, unhorsed again, is remounted by Galehaut on his own steed.

Atant es vous heruil de riuel a toute sa baniere. &
Thereupon behold you Hervi of rivel with all his banner and
quant il assamblerent. si sescrient si durement que
when they joined-battle so themselves-cry-out so loud that
partout les pres nooit on se heruil non. & mesire
everywhere the meadows not-heard one except Hervi not and my-lord
Gauuain sen rit si malades com il est. Et chil
Gawain himself-thereof laughs so sick as he is And those
se fierent en la mellee les lanches affichies desus les
themselves strike into the melee the lances fixed upon the
aisseles. Iluec fu grans la mellee. si y auoit maint cheual
armpits There was great the melee so there had-it many horse
estraier & ochis. & maint cheualier abatu mort &
riderless and killed and many knight struck-down dead and
naure. si veissies cheuax fuir estraiers de toutes pars.
wounded so might-you-see horses flee riderless from all parts
les vns cheualiers sour les autres & mainte bele armeure
the some knights upon the others and many fair armor
gisant a terre quil nestoit qui les en leuast. la
lying on ground for-there not-was-one who them thence should-raise there

commencha heruis de riuel a faire darmes par deuant keu
began Hervi of rivel to do of-arms by before Kay
le senescal por les paroles quil li auoit mandees. si
the seneschal for the words that-he to-him had sent so
en fist le iour plus que mestier ne li fust a son
thereof did-he the day more than need — to-him were at his
eage. Car il auoit bien .iiijxx. ans passes Moult le firent
age For he had well eighty years passed Much it did
bien les gens le roy artu. mais li noirs cheualiers le
well the people (of-)the king Arthur but the black knight it
parfaisoit trop durement bien. ne onques puis que heruis
achieved too hard well nor ever after that Hervi
fu assambles ne tindrent plache les gens galahaut se
was joined not held place the people (of-)Galehaut except
petit non. Et si auoient bien de gent le quart plus. Mais
little not And so had-they well of people the fourth more But
si tost comme li roys de vadehan vit que lor gent en
as soon as the king of vadoan saw that their people thereof
auoient le pior si les secourut a toute sa baniere. &
had the worse so them succored-he with all his banner and
vindrent a desroi si com il porent plus tost aler. Et
came in disarray so as they could most soon go And
lors furent a meschief la gent le roi artu. que por .j.
then were in hardship the people (of-)the king Arthur for for one
des lor estoient doi li galahot. & quant il orent
of-the theirs were two of-those (of-)Galehaut and when they had
.j. poi este foule si les secourut li rois aguisans &
a little been trampled so them succored the king Aguisant and
lors furent auques paringal. si souffrirent auques li .j. les
then were-they somewhat level so endured somewhat the ones the
autres. & la estoit li solaus moult haus. lors assambla
others and there was the sun very high then joined-battle

li rois clamados & li rois yons encontre lui. Ensi
the king Clamadeu and the king Yon against him Thus
furent assamblees .iiij. batailles dune part & .iiij. dautre si
were joined four battalions on-one side and four on-other so
estoient bien .xxM. plus deuers galahot que deuers le
were well twenty-thousand more toward Galehaut than toward the
noir cheualier. Mais moult se tenoient bien li sien &
black knight But much themselves held well the his and
moult i auoient perdu li galahot. Car trop auoient
much there had lost those (of-)Galehaut For too-much had
fait darmes les gens le roi artu au commenchement.
done of-arms the people (of-)the king Arthur at-the beginning
& quant vint endroit miedi si se desfendirent moult
and when came toward midday so themselves defended much
les gens galahot. & si estoient bien .xxM. plus
the people (of-)Galehaut and so were well twenty-thousand more
des autres & si auoient toutes eures le plus lait. Mais
than-the others and so had all hours the most ugly But
se ne fust li biens faires del noir cheualier ia chil
if not were-it the well doing of-the black knight ever those
deuers li ne se tenissent. Mais il esbahissoit tous
toward him not themselves would-have-held But he amazed all
ses anemis par son bien faire. si quil lor estoit auis
his enemies by his well doing so that-it to-them was opinion
que nule plentes de gent lor peust auoir mestier.
that any plenty of people them could have use

Tant sespoenterent des merueilles que il faisoit. que
So-much were-frightened-they by-the marvels that he did that
li pluisor tournerent le dos & sen aloient tot
the most turned the back and themselves-thence went all
droit a lor tentes moult laidement. quant galahos les vit
straight to their tents very foully when Galehaut them saw

si sen merueilla moult que che pooit estre. Car che
so himself-thereof marveled much what this could be For this
sauoit il bien que li sien estoient plus si vint encontre les
knew he well that the his were more so came against the
fuians & lor demande que chou estoit. Avoi sire fait
fleeing and of-them asks what this was Come-now lord says
vns cheualiers qui de tournoier nauoit talent. Qui merueilles
a knight who of tourneying not-had desire Who marvels
vaudra veoir si aille la dont nous venons si y verra
will-wish to-see so go there whence we come so there will-see
les gringnors qui onques fuissent veues ne iamais soient.
the greatest which ever were seen nor ever-more be
Comment fait galahos quels merueilles sont ce donques.
How says Galehaut what marvels are these then
Quels sire fait li cheualiers. la aual a .j. cheualier
What lord says the knight there below has-it a knight
qui tout a vencu par son cors. ne nus cors domme ne
who all has vanquished by his body nor any body of-man not
puet a lui durer. ne nus ne puet souffrir ses cols. Ne
can against him last nor anyone not can suffer his blows Nor
onques chil qui ot les armes vermeilles ne valut a
ever that-one who had the arms red not was-worth against
chesti vne maille. ne riens ne le poroit lasser. Car il
this-one a mail-ring nor anything not him could tire For he
ne fina des hui matin. Et si est orendroit aussi fiers &
not ceased since this morning And so is-he right-now as proud and
fres comme sil neust hui armes portees. En non dieu
fresh as if-he not-had today arms borne In name (of-)God
fait galahos che verrai ie par tans. lors vient a son grant
says Galehaut this shall-see I in time then comes-he to his great
conroi si en soeure .xxM. hommes & .xxxM.
array so thereof separates twenty-thousand men and thirty-thousand

en remest. & dist au roi baudemagu. gardes si chier
thereof remained and says to-the king Baudemagu see as dear
com vous aues vostre honor & moi que mes conrois ne
as you hold your honor and me that my array not
se moeue se mes cors mesmes ne vous vieng querre. &
itself move if my person itself not you come to-seek and
vous fait il as .xxM. vous tenes coi a vne part loig
you says he with-the twenty-thousand you hold still at a part far
des autres tant que ie viegne a vous. Atant sen
from-the others until that I may-come to you Thereupon himself-thence
vient a la bataille a teus armes com il auoit. & fait
comes to the battle with such arms as he had and makes
auoec lui retourner tous les fuians & ia estoient li sien
with him turn-back all the fleeing and already were the his
teil conree quil se descomfisoient tout. Mais quant
so arrayed that-they themselves discomfited all But when
clamados li rois les vit venir si en reprist cuer &
Clamadeu the king them saw come so thereof took-again heart and
escria sen seigne moult hautement. & recourra illuec a
cried his cry very loudly and charged-again there on
ses anemis moult durement. Et galahos commanda a cels
his enemies very hard And Galehaut commanded to those
que il amenoit que il se ferissent ens a desroi si tost
whom he brought that they themselves should-strike in in disarray as soon
com il poroient esploitier Et naies garde fait il que vous
as they could manage And not-have fear says he for you
serois bien secoru a tous besoins. & chil laissent courre
will-be well succored at all needs and those let run
au commandement de lor signor si se fierent entraus.
at-the command of their lord so themselves strike among-them
& lors recoeurent tout li lor. & ont moult bien escrie
and then charge-again all the theirs and have very well cried

lenseingne galahot. Car li vn & li autre quiderent que
the-cry (of-)Galehaut For the one and the other thought that
grant gent les eussent secorut. si eussent moult durement
great people them had succored so would-have very hard
tourne ariere les gens le roi se li noirs cheualiers ne
turned back the people (of-)the king if the black knight not
fust. Mais il seus emprent si tout le fais sor lui quil
were-it But he alone takes-on so all the burden upon him that-they
recueurent a lui a tous besoins & a tous meschies. & il
rallied to him at all needs and at all mischances and he
ert appareillies del desfendre & dencauchier. Iluec fu ses
was ready for-the defending and for-pursuing There was his
cheuaus ochis sous lui. & il vint a terre a piet. & chou
horse killed under him and he came to ground on foot and this
iert li daarains de ses cheuaus. & la presse fu grans
was the last of his horses and the press was great
entor lui si que len ne pot mie maintenant auenir a lui
around him so that one not could at-all at-once come to him
pour li remonter. & la ou il estoit a pie le faisoit
for him to-remount and there where he was on foot it did
il si bien que on ne le pooit veoir couart ne pereceus
he so well that one not him could see coward nor slothful
ains est a tous abandounes autresi comme vns estandars.
but is to all exposed just as a standard
& il feroit a destre & a senestre sans repos. sespee
and he struck on right and on left without rest his-sword
ne fust ia veue sans cols douner. Il detrenchoit hiaumes
not were ever seen without blows giving He hacked helms
il decolpoit escus il faussoit haubers sor espaules. &
he cut-up shields he broke hauberks upon shoulders and
trenchoit bras as cheualiers. Il faisoit merueilles a veue.
cut-off arms of-the knights He did marvels to sight

Quant galahos vit ces merueilles que il faisoit. si se
When Galehaut saw these marvels that he did so himself
merueilla comment le cors dun cheualier pooit ce faire. &
marveled how the body of-a knight could this do and
dist a soi meismes que il ne vaudroit auoir conquis toutes
said to him self that he not would-wish to-have conquered all
les terres qui sont desous le trosne par couent que .j. si
the lands which are beneath the throne on covenant that a so
preudom fust mors par ses coupes. lors fiert le cheual
worthy-man were dead by his fault then strikes-he the horse
des esperons & se feri en la presse pour departir la
with-the spurs and himself struck into the press to part the
mellee le baston en la main desor celui qui a pie estoit.
melee the staff in the hand over that-one who on foot was
Si fist ses gens traire ariere a moult grant paine. puis
So made-he his people draw back with very great pain then
apela le cheualier & dist sire cheualiers or naies garde.
called-he the knight and said lord knight now not-have fear
& chil respont moult hardiement que non a il. Saues
and that-one answers very boldly that no has he Know
vous fait galahos que ie vous dirai. Ie vous voeil aprendre
you says Galehaut what I you shall-tell I you wish to-teach
vne partie de mes coustumes & sachies que ie desfent a
a part of my customs and know that I forbid to
tous mes hommes que nus ne mete main a vous tant
all my men that anyone not put hand on you as-long
comme vous estes a pie. ne que nus outre vous ne
as you are on foot nor that anyone beyond you not
chast. Mais se vous muchissies & vous laissisies a faire
chase But if you hid and you left-off to do
darmes par coardise ie ne vous asseurasse mie destre
of-arms through cowardice I not you would-assure at-all of-being

prins. Mais tant com vous porteres armes ne troueres ia
taken But as-long as you will-bear arms not will-find-you ever
qui a vostre cors se preigne. ne ia se vostre cheuax
who to your body himself take nor ever if your horse
est mors. pour ce ne vous esmaies. Car ie vous donrai
is dead for this not you dismay For I you shall-give
cheuax tant comme vous en pores hui mais vser. &
horses as-many as you thereof can today more use and
ie serai vostre escuiers hui toute iour. & se ie ne vous
I shall-be your squire today all day and if I not you
puis lasser dont ne vous lassera iamais nus hons viuans.
can tire then not you will-tire ever-more any man living
lors deschent de son cheual si le baille au cheualier. &
then dismounts-be from his horse so it hands to-the knight and
chil i est montes sans arrest. & reuient a la mellee
that-one there is mounted without pause and comes-back to the melee
autresi com sil neust hui mais colp feru. Et galahos
just as if-he not-had today more blow struck And Galehaut
remonte en .j. ceual qui li fu amenes & vint a son
remounts on a horse which to-him was brought and came to his
conroi si prent les .x. Mile & dist que chil aillent
array so takes the ten Thousand and says that those go
assambler auant & uos fait il au roi baudemagu. uendroiz
to-join-battle before and you says he to-the king Baudemagu will-come
assenbler apres. si nassenbleroie mie si tost con cist seront
to-join-battle after so not-would-I-join at-all so soon as these will-be
assenble. mes quant li dereain de la seront uenu. Lors
joined but when the last from there will-be come Then
si assenblerois. car cil dela quideront ia que totes mes
so will-you-join for those beyond will-think already that all my
genz soient uenues. quant cist dui mile seront assenble.
people be come when these two thousand will-be joined

& ie meismes vous uendrai querre. Atant sen part
and I myself you shall-come to-seek Thereupon himself-thence parts
a tout les .x. mile si les fait cheuauchier tous desrees
with all the ten thousand so them makes ride all in-disarray
& espandus lun loing de lautre pour sambler que plus
and spread-out the-one far from the-other for to-seem that more
i eust gent. Et quant il sont pres de la bataille
there were people And when they are near to the battle
si fait souner ses cors & ses buisines dont il i
so makes-be sound his horns and his trumpets of-which it there
auoit tant que tous li pais en trambloit. Quant li
had so-many that all the country thereof trembled When the
cheualiers les ot venir si li samble que grant esfort
knight them heard come so to-him seems that great force
de gent i venoit. la se traist pres des siens & les
of people there came there himself drew near to-the his and them
apele entour lui si lor dist. signeur vous estes tout ami
calls around him so to-them says lords you are all friends
le roi ie ne vous sai noumer Mais moult estes
(of-)the king I not you know-how to-name But much are-you
tenu a preudomme. Or i para ki ert a droit loes.
held for worthy-man Now there will-appear who will-be by right praised
Atant vindrent chil tout desconree. & mesire ywains
Thereupon came those all disarrayed and my-lord Yvain
qui les vit venir commanda ses conrois tout soef aler.
who them saw come commanded his arrays all softly to-go
& dist a ses gens que tout fuissent seur que nous ne
and said to his people that all should-be sure that we not
perdrons mais hui rien par esfort de gent que ie aie
shall-lose more today anything by force of people that I have
veu. Ce disoit il por ce que il quidoit que toutes les
seen This said he for this that he thought that all the

gens galahot i fuissent. Mais mesire Gauuain sot bien
people (of-)Galehaut there were But my-lord Gawain knew well
tantost com il les vit venir de la ou il gisoit que la
as-soon as he them saw come from there where he lay that there
nestoient il mie tout. & quant li .x. mile assamblerent
not-were they at-all all and when the ten thousand joined-battle
si fu moult grant la noise. & chil les recueillent al
so was very great the noise and those them receive at-the
plus vistement que il porent. Mais si durement vindrent
most swiftly that they could But so hard came
li galahot que il en abatirent maint en lor venir
those (of-)Galehaut that they thereof struck-down many in their coming
Mais quant mesire ywains i vint moult les comforta &
But when my-lord Yvain there came much them comforted-he and
moult en auoient grant mestier. Car ia guerpisoient
much thereof had-they great need For already abandoned-they
partout place. si recourent a lassambler de monseigneur
everywhere place so rallied-they at the-joining of my-lord
ywain. & galahos sen reua ariere a son conroi &
Yvain and Galehaut himself-thence goes-back back to his array and
commanda que il cheuauchassent si durement que onques
commanded that they should-ride so hard that ever
mais nule gent si durement ne vindrent. & de teile aleure
more any people so hard not came and with such pace
fait il les ales ferir que ia nus nen remaigne en
says he them go strike that ever anyone not-thereof remain on
cheual. Car vous estes tot fier & fort & seiourne. ne
horse For you are all proud and strong and rested nor
naues armes portees puis que vous fustes chi venu. Or i
not-have arms borne since that you were here come Now there
parra com vous le feres durement. Atant cheuauchent
will-appear how you it will-do hard Thereupon ride-they

tout le pendant dun val & lor gent auoient ia moult
all the slope of-a vale and their people had already much
le pior. Car moult le font durement li compaignon
the worse For much it do hard the companions
monsiegnor ywain. & ses cors le fait bien sor aus tous.
(of-)my-lord Yvain and his person it does well over them all
Mais nul bien faire de lui ne dautrui ne se prent al
But any well doing of him nor of-another not itself takes to-the
bien faire del noir cheualier. Mais chil le fait bien seur
well doing of-the black knight But that-one it does well over
tous homes. Mais quant li conrois galahot vint. si canga
all men But when the array (of-)Galehaut came so changed
moult li affaires. Car trop i auoit grant fais de gent.
much the affair For too there had-it great burden of people
si fu a lor venir li boins cheualiers portes a terre &
so was at their coming the good knight borne to ground and
li .vj. compaignon qui toute iour auoient este si pres de
the six companions who all day had been so near to
lui. lors vint galahos poignant & le remonta el cheual
him then came Galehaut spurring and him remounted on-the horse
ou il meismes seoit. Car li autres nestoit preus a son
where he himself sat For the other not-was worth to his
oels. Si tost com il fu remontes si reuint autresi vistes
need As soon as he was remounted so returned-he as quick
a la mellee com il auoit fait autre fois. si commencha
to the melee as he had done other time so began-he
a faire darmes au tesmoig galahot plus que nus hom
to do of-arms by-the witness (of-)Galehaut more than any man
nen peust faire. & que tout sen esbaissoient.
thereof could do and so-that all themselves-thereof were-amazed

Galehaut's Guest

XXXIV

At nightfall the knight slips away, and Galehaut follows him and begs him to lodge with him. Hearing who he is, the knight asks how Arthur's enemy can ask it; Galehaut promises to grant whatever he asks, and pledges it as a loyal knight, and the knight agrees. Gawain sees them pass, knows that Galehaut has won the knight, and swoons three times; the queen is struck dumb, and Arthur weeps for the treasure he has lost. Before entering Galehaut's host the knight asks to speak with the two men Galehaut most trusts, the king of the Hundred Knights and the king First Conquered, who pledge that if Galehaut fails him they will leave Galehaut and serve against him.

Ensi dura ses biens faires iusqua la nuit. nonques ne fu
Thus lasted his well doing up-to the night nor-ever not was-it
eure que il & ses gens ne eussent le plus bel de la
hour that he and his people not had the most fair of the
bataille. Quant che uint a lanuitier si commenchierent a
battle When this came to the-nightfall so began-they to
departir & dune part & dautre. & il sen parti
part both on-one side and on-other and he himself-thence parted
al plus cheleement que il pot & se tourna tout
at-the most secretly that he could and himself turned all
amont le tertre & la riuiere. Et galehaus qui moult se
up the hill and the river And Galehaut who much himself
prenoit garde de lui len vit aler. Si fiert apres des
took heed of him him-thence saw go So strikes-he after with-the
esporons & le sieut de loing par ladrecement del tertre.
spurs and him follows from far by the-ascent of-the hill
tant quil le vint ataignant el val. si sacoste
so-long that-he him came overtaking in-the vale so himself-draws-near
daleis lui au plus belement que il pot & dist. diex
beside him at-the most gently that he could and says God

vous beneie sire. & chil le regarde en trauers. si
you may-bless lord and that-one him looks-at in sidelong so
li a rendu son salu a moult grant paine. Sire fait
to-him has returned his greeting with very great pain Lord says
galahos qui estes vous. biaus sire .j. cheualiers sui che
Galehaut who are you fair lord a knight am-I this
poes veoir. Chertes fait galahos cheualiers estes vous li
can-you see Certainly says Galehaut knight are you the
mieudres qui soit. & vous estes li hons el monde que
best who be and you are the man in-the world whom
ie miex vaudroie honerer. si vous sui venus requerre en
I best would-wish to-honor so you am-I come to-beg in
tous gueredons que vous vengies hui mais herbergier o
all rewards that you may-come today more to-lodge with
moi. & li cheualiers li dist autresi comme sil ne le
me and the knight to-him says just as if-he not him
seust ne neust onques mais veu qui estes vous sire qui
knew nor not-had ever more seen who are you lord who
me proies de herbergier. sire fait il ie sui galahos li fiex
me beg to lodge lord says he I am Galehaut the son
a la bele iaiande. sires de tous ces gens deuers qui vous
of the fair giantess lord of all these people against whom you
aues hui desfendu le roialme de logres que ie auoie moult
have today defended the kingdom of logres which I had very
bien empris a conquerre. & conquis leusse se vostre
well undertaken to conquer and conquered it-would-have-I if your
cors ne fust. Comment fait li cheualiers vous estes anemi
body not were-it How says the knight you are enemy
le roi artu & si me proies de herbergier. O vous
(of-)the king Arthur and so me beg to lodge With you
ne herberierai ie ia se diex plaist en chest point. ha! sire
not shall-lodge I ever if God please at this point ah lord

fait galahos ie feroie por vous plus que vous ne quidies.
says Galehaut I would-do for you more than you — think
& si ne lai mie ore a encommenchier. Et encore
and so not it-have-I at-all now to begin And yet
vous pri ie por dieu que vous herbergies anuit o moi.
you beg I for God that you lodge tonight with me
par couent que ie fache a deuise quanke vous moseres
on covenant that I may-do at devising whatever you me-will-dare
requerre. Atant sarestut li cheualiers si regarde galahot
ask Thereupon stopped the knight so looks-at Galehaut
moult durement & dist. chertes sire prometeres estes vous
very hard and says certainly lord promiser are you
moult boins ie ne sai del douner comment il est. Et
very good I not know of-the giving how it is And
galehos li respont. sire sachies pour voir que ie sui li
Galehaut to-him answers lord know for truth that I am the
riches hom el monde qui mains pramet. Et encore vous
rich man in-the world who least promises And yet you
di ie bien que se vous en uenes herbergier o moi ie
tell I well that if you thence come to-lodge with me I
vous donrai ce que vous me demanderois. & si vous en
you shall-give this that you me will-ask and so you thereof
ferai si seur com vous deuiseres de bouce. Sire fait li
shall-make as sure as you will-devise by mouth Lord says the
cheualiers vous estes tenus pour moult preudom. & il ne
knight you are held for very worthy-man and it not
seroit mie vostre honors de prametre chose dont vous
would-be at-all your honor to promise thing of-which you
ne vous vauries en la fin aquiter vostre creance. Sire
not you would-wish in the end to-acquit your pledge Lord
fait galehos nen doutes ia. Car ie nen mentiroie
says Galehaut not-thereof doubt ever For I not-thereof would-lie

fait il pour tout le roialme de logres gaaignier. & ie
says he for all the kingdom of logres to-gain and I
le vous fiancherai comme loiaus cheualiers que ie vous
it you shall-pledge as loyal knight that I you
tendrai che que vous me demanderes. Car ie ne sui mie
shall-keep this that you me will-ask For I not am at-all
rois & ie voeil anuit mais auoir vostre compaignie &
king and I wish tonight more to-have your company and
se plus le puis auoir uolentiers ie la prendrai. Et se vous
if more it can-I have willingly I it shall-take And if you
de ma fiance naues asses ie vous en ferai si seur
with my pledge not-have enough I you thereof shall-make as sure
comme vous voldrois. Sire fait li cheualiers moi samble
as you will-wish Lord says the knight me seems
que vous desires moult ma compaignie se vostre corages
that you desire much my company if your heart
est teus comme la parole est. Et ie me herbergerai o
is such as the word is And I myself shall-lodge with
vous mais anuit. Mais que vous me fianchies que vous me
you more tonight But that you me pledge that you me
donres ce que ie vous demanderai. & encore autre seurte
will-give this that I you shall-ask and yet other surety
men feres ce vous requier. Ensi ont entrax .ij.
me-thereof will-make this you I-ask Thus have between-them two
establies lor couenences. & galahos li fianche a tenir
established their covenants and Galehaut to-him pledges to keep
ses couenences. lors sen vont andui as tentes &
his covenants then themselves-thence go both to-the tents and
les gens le roi estoient ia repairie a lor tentes. &
the people (of-)the king were already returned to their tents and
mesire Gauuain en ot bien veu aler le cheualier. si estoit
my-lord Gawain thence had well seen go the knight so was-he

moult angoisseus de che que il en aloit & sil fust
very anguished at this that he thence went and if-he were
haities il eust mise moult grant paine en lui ramener.
well he would-have put very great pain in him to-bring-back
Si auoit mande au roi que il venist a lui Car il li
So had-he sent-word to-the king that he should-come to him For he to-him
voloit dire que il alast apres le cheualier tant que il le
wished to-say that he should-go after the knight until that he him
retenist. La ou il atendoit le roi il regarde contremont
should-retain There where he waited-for the king he looks up
les pres & voit venir galahot. son destre brach mis au
the meadows and sees come Galehaut his right arm put at-the
col le cheualier si le menoit entre le terter & la
neck (of-)the knight so him led between the hill and the
riuiere que les gens le roi artu les veissent. & quant
river so-that the people (of-)the king Arthur them should-see and when
mesire Gauuain les vit si sauoit bien que galahos lauoit
my-lord Gawain them saw so knew-he well that Galehaut him-had
retenu. & dist a la roine qui laiens estoit. A! dame dame
retained and said to the queen who in-there was Ah lady lady
ore poes vous bien dire que vostre homme sont descomfit
now can you well say that your men are discomfited
& mort. vees ce a conquis galahos par son sauoir. & la
and dead see this has conquered Galehaut by his cunning and the
roine esgarde si voit le cheualier que galahos enmenoit. si
queen looks so sees the knight whom Galehaut led-away so
en est tant erragie que ele ne puet .j. mot dire de la
thereof is so distraught that she not can one word say with the
bouche. & mesire Gauuain en a teil duel que il en
mouth and my-lord Gawain thereof has such grief that he thereof
est .iij. fois pasmes en mains deure que len alast le iet
is three times swooned in less of-time than one would-go the throw

dune menue piere. & li rois vient laiens si oi le cri que
of-a small stone and the king comes in-there so heard the cry that
chascuns disoit mors est. mors est. & vient deuant lui si
each said dead is-he dead is-he and comes before him so
lenbrache en plorant & le commencha moult doucement
him-embraces in weeping and him began very sweetly
a apeler. & lors reuint mesire Gauuain de paumison.
to call and then came-back my-lord Gawain from swoon
Quant il vit le roi si le commencha moult durement a
When he saw the king so him began very hard to
blasmer & dist sire ore est venus li termes que li clerc
blame and said lord now is come the term which the clerks
vous distrent. esgardes quel tresor vous aues perdu. cil
you told behold what treasure you have lost that-one
vous toldra terre qui hui toute iour le vous a garantie
you will-take-away land who today all day it you has guaranteed
par son cors. & se vous fuissies preudom vous leussies
by his body and if you were worthy-man you him-would-have
retenu autresi comme a fait li plus preudom du monde
retained just as has done the most worthy-man of-the world
qui deuant vous lenmaine. & se ne li fist onques se
who before you him-leads-away and yet not to-him did-he ever except
nuire non. Et vous laues laissiet aler a qui il a rendue
harm not And you him-have let go to whom he has rendered
honor & terre. Ensi se monstrent bien li preudomme
honor and land Thus themselves show well the worthy-men
la ou il sont. lors voit li rois le cheualier que galahos
there where they are then sees the king the knight whom Galehaut
enmenoit. si en ot tel duel que par .j. poi quil ne cai
led-away so thereof had-he such grief that by a little that-he not fell
ne ne se pot tenir de plorer. Mais il fist pour son neueu
nor not himself could hold from weeping But he made for his nephew

recomforter plus bele chiere que il pot. & si tost com
to-comfort more fair cheer than he could and as soon as
il pot sen vint a son tref & fist grant duel a
he could himself-thence came to his pavilion and made great grief beyond
desmesure. & autresi faisoient tout li preudomme chascuns
measure and likewise did all the worthy-men each
endroit soi. Grans est li deus en lost le roi que
in-respect-of himself Great is the grief in the-host (of-)the king which
chascuns fait del boin cheualier que galahos enmaine. &
each makes for-the good knight whom Galehaut leads-away and
il cheuauchent toute vois. & quant il vienent pres de lost
they ride all ways and when they come near to the-host
si apele li cheualiers galahot & li dist. Sire ie men
so calls the knight Galehaut and to-him says Lord I myself-thence
vois o vous. Mais ie vous requier ains que iou entre en
go with you But I you ask before that I enter into
vostre ost que vous me fachies parler as .ij. preudomes
your host that you me make speak with-the two worthy-men
el monde ou vous plus vous fies. & il lotroie.
in-the world in-whom you most you trust and he it-grants

Lors sempart galahos & dist a .ij. de ses hommes.
Then himself-thence-parts Galehaut and says to two of his men
venes apres moi. si verrois encore anuit le plus riche
come after me so will-see yet tonight the most rich
homme del monde. & chil li dient comment sire nestes
man of-the world and those to-him say how lord not-are
vous mie li plus rices hons qui soit el monde. nenil
you at-all the most rich man who be in-the world no
fait il mais iel serai encore anuit ains que ie dorme. chil
says he but I-it shall-be yet tonight before that I sleep those
doi furent li rois des .C. cheualiers. & li rois premier
two were the king of-the hundred knights and the king first

conquis. che estoient li doi homme ou monde es quels
conquered these were the two men in-the world in which
il plus se fioit. Et quant il virent le cheualier si li
he most himself trusted And when they saw the knight so to-him
fisent moult grant ioie. Car il le connurent bien par ses
made very great joy For they him knew well by his
armes. & il lor demande qui il estoient. & il se
arms and he of-them asks who they were and they themselves
nomoient issi com vous aues oi. Et il lor dist signor
named thus as you have heard And he to-them says lords
vostre sires vous fait grant honor. car il dist que vous estes
your lord you does great honor for he says that you are
li doi homme ou il plus se fie & croit & que il
the two men in-whom he most himself trusts and believes and that he
plus aime. & entre moi & lui auons vne couenance que
most loves and between me and him we-have a covenant which
ie voeil que vous oies. Car il me fiance que por herbergier
I wish that you hear For he me pledges that for lodging
o lui anuit. me donra ce que ie li demanderai. &
with him tonight me will-give this that I to-him shall-ask and
demandes li. & il dist que che est voirs. Sire dist il
ask him and he says that this is true Lord said he
ie voeil encore auoir le seurte de ces .ij. preudommes.
I wish yet to-have the surety of these two worthy-men
& galehos lotroie. & dites fait cil comment il me
and Galehaut it-grants and say says that-one how they me
fiancheront que se vous me fales de ces couens il vous
will-pledge that if you me fail of these covenants they you
guerpiront & sen venront o moi la ou iou
will-abandon and themselves-thence will-come with me there where I
voldrai. & seront en vostre nuisement & en maide. & a
shall-wish and will-be to your harm and to my-aid and to

moi deuront che que il vous doiuent orendroit. & a vous
me will-owe this that they you owe right-now and to you
deuront ce que il me doiuent ore. comme a lor anemi
will-owe this that they me owe now as to their enemy
mortel. Et galahos lor commande a fianchier. & li
mortal And Galehaut to-them commands to pledge and the
rois des .C. cheualiers qui ses senescaus & ses cousins
king of-the hundred knights who his seneschal and his cousin
germains estoit li dist. Sire vous estes si preudom & si
german was to-him says Lord you are so worthy and so
sages que vous deues bien sauoir que vous nous commandes.
wise that you ought well know what you us command
Car ce est trop grant chose a faire. ne vous en entremetes
For this is too great thing to do not you thereof meddle
ia fait galahos car ensi me plaist. & si sai bien que ie
ever says Galehaut for thus me pleases and so know-I well what I
fais. Mais fianchies li ensi comme ie li ai en couent
do But pledge to-him thus as I to-him have in covenant
& li deuise. & il li fianchent andui tout issi.
and to-him devise and they to-him pledge both all thus

The Gift Asked

XXXV

Galehaut receives the knight in his tent with two hundred knights, twenty-eight of them kings, and honors him as the flower of the world. He has four beds made in his chamber, the highest for his guest, and himself lies beside him when he sleeps; all night the knight laments in his sleep. In the morning the knight would go, and Galehaut begs him to stay at any price. Before the two pledges the knight names his gift: as soon as Galehaut is master of Arthur, so that Arthur has no recourse, he is to go and cry him mercy and put himself wholly in his hands. Galehaut is dismayed, but says he will not repent, and the knight stays.

Lors apela galehos le roi premier conquis a vne part & si
Then called Galehaut the king first conquered to a part and so
li dist. ales auant a tous mes barons & si lor dites
to-him says go before to all my barons and so to-them say
de par moi que il soient orendroit a mon treif. &
on-behalf of me that they be right-now at my pavilion and
viegnent si honereement com il porront plus. Et si lor
may-come as honorably as they will-be-able most And so to-them
dites combien ie ai anuit gaaignie. & gardes que en mon
tell how-much I have tonight gained and see that in my
treif soient tout li deduit que len pora trouer en toute
pavilion be all the delights that one will-be-able find in all
lost. lors sen vait cil ferrant des esperons & fait
the-host then himself-thence goes that-one striking with-the spurs and does
le commandement son seignor. & galehos retient le cheualier
the command (of-)his lord and Galehaut holds the knight
grant pieche en paroles entre li & son senescal tant que
great while in words between him and his seneschal until that
ses commandemens pooit estre fais. si ne demora gaires que
his commandment could be done so not tarried-it much that

il lor vienent .ijc. cheualiers qui tout estoient homme
it to-them come two-hundred knights who all were men
galahot. si en estoient roi li .xxviij. & li autre estoient
(of-)Galehaut so thereof were kings the twenty-eight and the others were
duc & conte. la fu li cheualiers honeres & coniois. que
dukes and counts there was the knight honored and welcomed so-that
onques si grant ioie ne fu faite pour .j. seul home mesconeu
ever so great joy not was made for a single man unknown
comme on fist de lui a chele fois. & disoient tout grant &
as one made of him at that time and said all great and
petit. bien viegne la flors des cheualiers de tout le monde.
small well may-come the flower of-the knights of all the world
si que li cheualiers en ot grant honte. Ensi sen
so that the knight thereof had great shame Thus themselves-thence
vienent iuscal treif galahot. si ne porroient mie estre
come up-to-the pavilion (of-)Galehaut so not could at-all be
conte li deduit ne lesbanoiement que laiens furent le soir.
told the delights nor the-merriment that in-there were the evening
Atel ioie fu recheus li cheualiers & honeres. Et
With-such joy was received the knight and honored And
quant il fu desarmes galahos li fist aporter vne robe
when he was disarmed Galehaut him had brought a robe
moult bele & moult riche. & il le vesti moult esforchies.
very fair and very rich and he it put-on very constrained
Quant il fu tans de mangier si mangierent. Apres fist faire
When it was time to eat so ate-they After had made
galahos en sa cambre .iiij. lis .j. moult grant & moult
Galehaut in his chamber four beds one very great and very
large & moult haut. & li autres fu mains grans qui fu
wide and very high and the other was less great which was
selonc. & li autre doi qui furent apres sont moult menor
beside and the other two which were after are much smaller

que li autre. Et quant li haus lis fu atornes de toutes
than the others And when the high bed was arrayed with all
les riqueches qui en lit porent estre mises. & che fu tout
the riches which in bed could be put and this was all
pour le cors au cheualier qui iesir i deuoit. & quant
for the body of-the knight who to-lie there was-to and when
che vint au couchier si li dist galahos. sire vous gires
this came to-the lying-down so to-him says Galehaut lord you will-lie
en chel lit la sus. Sire dist li cheualiers qui gira dont en
in that bed there above Lord said the knight who will-lie then in
ches autres lis. Sire fait galahos mi seriant qui vous feront
these other beds Lord says Galehaut my sergeants who you will-make
compaignie. Et ie girai en vne cambre dela deuers mes
company And I shall-lie in a chamber beyond toward my
gens por els solasier & comforter. & vous gerres decha
people for them to-solace and comfort and you will-lie on-this-side
por che que vous serois chi plus en pais & plus a aise.
for this that you will-be here more in peace and more at ease
ha! sire fait il por dieu ne me faites iesir plus haut des
ah lord says he for God not me make lie more high than-the
autres cheualiers qui compaignie me feront. Car tant ne
other knights who company me will-make For so-much not
me deues vous mie avilenir. Or naies garde fait galahos.
me ought you at-all debase Now not-have fear says Galehaut
Ia de chose que vous fachies par mon commandement
Ever for thing that you may-do by my command
ne seres nul iour tenus por vilains ne por maluais.
not will-you-be any day held for churlish nor for bad
Atant sempart galahos. & li cheualiers commencha
Thereupon himself-thence-parts Galehaut and the knight began
a penser a la grant honor que galahos li fait. si le
to think of the great honor that Galehaut to-him does so him

prise tant en son cuer comme il plus puet. & quant il
prizes as-much in his heart as he most can and when he
est couchies si sendort moult tost car trop iert las. Et
is laid-down so falls-asleep very soon for too he-was weary And
quant galahos sot quil estoit endormis si se coucha dales
when Galehaut knew that-he was fallen-asleep so himself laid-down beside
li al plus coiement que il pot. & doi de ses cheualiers
him at-the most quietly that he could and two of his knights
auoeques. ne laiens nauoit plus de toute gent. la nuit
with-him nor in-there not-had-it more of all people the night
dormi li cheualiers moult durement. & toute nuit se
slept the knight very hard and all night himself
plaignoit en son dormant. & galahos looit bien car il ne
lamented in his sleeping and Galehaut it-heard well for he not
dormoit gaires. ains pensa toute nuit a retenir le cheualier.
slept much rather thought-he all night of retaining the knight
Al matin se leua li cheualiers & oi messe. & ia
At-the morning himself rose the knight and heard mass and already
estoit galahos leues coiement. Car il ne voloit mie que
was Galehaut risen quietly For he not wished at-all that
li cheualiers sapercheust. & quant il orent messe oie si
the knight should-perceive-it and when they had mass heard so
demanda li cheualiers ses armes. & galahos li demanda
asked the knight his arms and Galehaut of-him asked
porcoi. & il dist quil sen iroit. Et galahos li
wherefore and he said that-he himself-thence would-go And Galehaut to-him
dist biaus dols amis remanes encore. & ne quidies pas
says fair sweet friend remain yet and not think at-all
que ie vous voeille detenir. Car vous ne saurois ia rien
that I you wish to-detain For you not would-know ever anything
demander que vous naies por remanoir. & sachies que
ask that you not-have for remaining and know that

vous porres bien auoir compaignie de plus riche homme
you will-be-able well have company of more rich man
que ie ne sui. Mais vous ne laures iamais a homme
than I — am But you not it-will-have ever-more with man
qui tant vous aint Et puis que ie feroie plus pour vostre
who so-much you love And since that I would-do more for your
compaignie auoir que tous li mons. bien la deueroie dont
company to-have than all the world well it ought-I then
auoir sor tous les autres. Sire fait li cheualiers ie remanrai.
have above all the others Lord says the knight I shall-remain
car millor compaignie de la vostre ne poroie ie mie auoir.
for better company than the yours not could I at-all have
& ie vous dirai orendroit le don par coi ie remanrai.
and I you shall-tell right-now the gift by which I shall-remain
& se ie ne lai por noiant parleries del remanoir. &
and if I not-it have for nothing would-you-speak of-the remaining and
vous laurois se chest chose dont ie soie poissant. Et
you it-will-have if this-is thing of-which I may-be mighty And
li cheualiers apele les .ij. qui plege en sont & dist par
the knight calls the two who pledges thereof are and says by
deuant aus. Sire ie vous demant que si tost que vous seres
before them Lord I you ask that as soon as you will-be
au deseure del roi artu que deuers lui naura mais
at-the above (of-)the king Arthur so-that toward him not-will-have more
nul recourier. Mais si tost com ie vous en semonrai que
any recovery But as soon as I you thereof shall-summon that
vous li aillies crier merci & vous metes outreement en
you to-him go to-cry mercy and you put utterly in
sa manaie. Quant galahos lentent si est trop esbahis &
his mercy When Galehaut it-hears so is-he too amazed and
commenche a penser. & li doi roi li dient. sire a
begins to think and the two kings to-him say lord on

coi penses vous. chi endroit na pensers mestiers. vous
what think you here in-place not-has thinking use you
aues tant coreu que il est noians del retourner. Comment
have so-far run that it is nothing of-the returning How
dist il quidies vous que ie me bee a repentir. Se tous li
says he think you that I myself aim to repent If all the
mondes estoit miens se li oseroie ie tout douner. Mais
world were mine so to-him would-dare I all give But
ie pensoie au riche mot que il a dit. que onques mais
I thought of-the rich word that he has said that ever more
hom ne dist si riche. Sire fait il ia ne mait diex se
man not said so rich Lord says he ever not me-may-help God if
vous naures le don. Quar ie ne poroie riens faire por
you not-will-have the gift For I not could anything do for
vous ou ie peusse honte auoir. Mais ie vous pri que vous
you where I could shame have But I you beg that you
ne me toles vostre compaignie por autrui douner puis
not me take-away your company for another to-give since
que ie feroie plus por vous auoir que nus & li cheualiers
that I would-do more for you to-have than any and the knight
li creante. issi remaint. & li mengiers est atournes si
to-him promises thus remains-he and the meal is arrayed so
vont mangier. & moult font grant ioie en lost galahot
go-they to-eat and very make great joy in the-host (of-)Galehaut
del cheualier ki remmes est. chil qui les couenens ne
for-the knight who remained is those who the covenants not
seiuent. & en lost le roi artu en font grant duel.
know and in the-host (of-)the king Arthur thereof make great grief

The Peace

XXXVI

The knight bears Galehaut's arms into the battle, and all think him Galehaut but Gawain, who knows him for the black knight. Arthur's men are driven back to the lists, the queen is led away, and Gawain swoons as if dying. The knight calls on Galehaut to keep his covenant, and Galehaut rides to Arthur's standard, dismounts, kneels with joined hands and puts himself in his mercy. The queen is brought back, the peace is cried through both hosts, and Galehaut goes to court, where Gawain, still sick, welcomes him as the man he most longed to know. That evening his companion asks one more gift: that Galehaut not ask his name until he or another tells it.

Ensi passent chelui iour. & lendemain galahos & ses
Thus pass-they that day and the-next-day Galehaut and his
compains se sont leue si vont oir messe. & galahos
companion themselves are risen so go hear mass and Galehaut
dist. sire il est hui iour dassambler. voldres vous armes
says lord it is today day of-joining-battle will-wish you arms
porter. & il respont que oil. dont vous proi ie fait galahos
to-bear and he answers that yes then you beg I says Galehaut
que vous portes les moies armes. por commenchement de
that you bear the my arms for beginning of
compaignie. & il respont moult volentiers. Mais vous ne
company and he answers very willingly But you not
porteres pas armes comme serians. non vostre merci fait
will-bear at-all arms as sergeant no your mercy says
galahos. lors fisent aporter les armes si en arment le
Galehaut then had-they brought the arms so thereof arm the
cheualier de toutes. fors du hauberc & des cauches
knight with all except of-the hauberk and of-the greaves
qui trop estoient grans & lees. lors sarmerent les gens
which too were big and wide then armed-themselves the people

galahot communement & les gens le roi artu autresi.
(of-)Galehaut generally and the people (of-)the king Arthur likewise
& passerent le lice autresi de teus i ot. & sauoit
and passed the list likewise of such there had and so-had
desfendu li rois que nus daus ne passast liaue. Quar il
forbidden the king that anyone of-them not should-pass the-water For he
auoit paour destre descomfis & tout pour le boin cheualier
had fear of-being discomfited and all for the good knight
que il auoit perdu; Mais nule desfense ne pot tenir les
whom he had lost But any prohibition not could hold the
legiers bachelers que il ne passasent liaue. si i ot
nimble bachelors that they not should-pass the-water so there had-it
en poi deure boines ioustes par maint liex & de dures
in little of-time good jousts in many places and of hard
mellees. si commenchierent issi a assambler dune part &
melees so began-they thus to join-battle on-one side and
dautre. Que quant les gens galahot en auoient le piour
of-other So-that when the people (of-)Galehaut thereof had the worse
si les secouroient li lor. & autretel faisoient la gent le
so them succored the theirs and likewise did the people (of-)the
roi artu. si assamblerent issi toute la gent deuant la lice
king Arthur so joined-battle thus all the people before the list
& commenchierent a faire darmes la gent le roi moult
and began to do of-arms the people (of-)the king very
durement. & li rois estoit a son estandart soi quart
hard and the king was at his standard himself fourth
de cheualiers proisies. qui il auoit commande la roine a
of knights prized to-whom he had commanded the queen to
mener a sauuete. se il veoient que a descomfiture tournast.
lead to safety if they saw that to rout it-turned

Quant tous les gens le roi artu furent assamblees.
When all the people (of-)the king Arthur were joined
lors vint assambler li boins cheualiers armes des armes
then came to-join-battle the good knight armed with-the arms
galahot. si quida chascuns qui le veoit que che fust
(of-)Galehaut so thought each who him saw that this were
galahos. & disoient tout vees galahot vees galahot. Mais
Galehaut and said all see Galehaut see Galehaut But
mesire Gauuain le connut. & dist che nest pas galahos
my-lord Gawain him knew and said this not-is at-all Galehaut
ains est li noirs cheualiers qui auant ier porta les
rather is-it the black knight who the-day before-yesterday bore the
noires armes Iel connois bien. & si tost comme il fu
black arms I-him know well and as soon as he was
assambles onques puis la gent le roi ne se tindrent
joined ever after the people (of-)the king not themselves held
se petit non. Car moult estoient descomforte del boin
except little not For much were-they disheartened by-the good
cheualier qui encontre aus estoit. si furent en poi deure
knight who against them was so were-they in little of-time
remene Iusca la lice. Car trop furent grant gent deuers
driven-back Up-to the list For too-many were great people toward
galahot. au passer de la lice se tindrent vne grant
Galehaut at-the passing of the list themselves held-they a great
piece de tex i ot & moult souffrirent. Mais souffrirs
while of such there had and much endured But enduring
ni pot onques nule riens valoir. Car trop sont a
not-there could ever any thing avail For too-much are-they in
grant meschief. Grans fu langoisse as gens le roi artu.
great hardship Great was the-anguish to-the people (of-)the king Arthur
& neporquant moult les auoit deportes li boins cheualiers.
and nevertheless much them had spared the good knight

& quant outre les auoit mis a force. il remest en mi le
and when beyond them had-he put by force he remained in middle the
pas pour les autres retenir. qui tout desuoient daler outre.
pass for the others to-hold-back who all went-mad to-go beyond
lors esgarda entour lui si commencha a huchier galahot a
then looked-he around him so began to call Galehaut with
haute vois. & il vient ferant des esperons & dist biaus
high voice and he comes striking with-the spurs and says fair
dols amis que voles vous. Coi fait il ie veul merueilles.
sweet friend what wish you What says he I wish marvels
dites fait galahos seurement. sire fait li cheualiers est il
say says Galehaut surely lord says the knight is it
asses. Oil chertes fait galahos dites vostre plaisir. Sire fait
enough Yes certainly says Galehaut say your pleasure Lord says
li cheualiers couent me tenes car ore en est liex. en non
the knight covenant me keep for now thereof is place in name
dieu fait galahos che ne me grieue rien quant il vous
(of-)God says Galehaut this not me grieves anything since it you
plaist. Dont hurte des esperons droit a lestandart ou
pleases Then drives-he with-the spurs straight to the-standard where
li rois estoit. qui par .j. poi ne creuoit de duel de ses
the king was who by a little not burst with grief for his
gens que il veoit descomfis. si estoit ia la roine montee
people whom he saw discomfited so was already the queen mounted
si lenmenoient li .iiij. cheualier au ferir des esperons.
so her-led-away the four knights at-the striking of-the spurs
Car il nauoient mais nul recourier. & monsignor Gauuain
For they not-had more any recovery and my-lord Gawain
en uoloient il porter en litiere. Mais il dist que il
thence wished they to-carry in litter But he said that he
voloit miex morir en cest point que veoir toute ioie morte
wished better to-die at this point than see all joy dead

& toute honor hounie. si se pasmoit si menuement que
and all honor shamed so himself swooned so often that
chascuns qui le veoit quidoit que il morust maintenant.
each who him saw thought that he would-die at-once
Et quant li boins cheualiers en uoit aler galahot & faire
And when the good knight thence sees go Galehaut and make
si grant meschief pour lui si quide bien & dist que nus
so great mischief for him so thinks-he well and says that any
si boins amis ne si veritable compaignon not il onques
so good friend nor so true companion not-had he ever
mais. si en a si grant pitie que il en souspire del
more so thereof has-he so great pity that he thereof sighs from-the
cuer aual. & pleure des iex de la teste sous le hiaume.
heart down and weeps from-the eyes of the head under the helm
& dist entre ses dens. biax sire diex qui porra ce
and says between his teeth fair lord God who will-be-able this
deseruir. Galahos cheualche iusca lestandart & demande le
deserve Galehaut rides up-to the-standard and asks-for the
roi artu. & il vient auant tous esmahies comme cil qui
king Arthur and he comes forward all dismayed as that-one who
toute honor terriene quidoit perdre outreement. Et quant
all honor earthly thought to-lose utterly And when
galahos le voit si li dist. venes auant & naies garde
Galehaut him sees so to-him says come forward and not-have fear
car ie voeil a vous parler. lors commenchierent tout a dire
for I wish to you speak then began-they all to say
cest galahos. & li rois moult sen merueille que che
this-is Galehaut and the king much himself-thereof marvels what this
puet estre. si vient auant. & de si loing comme galahos
can be so comes forward and from so far as Galehaut
le voit il deschent del cheual a terre si saienoille &
him sees he dismounts from-the horse to ground so himself-kneels and

ioint ses mains & dist. sire ie vous vieng faire droit de
joins his hands and says lord I you come do right for
ce que ie vous ai mesfait si men repent. & me
this that I you have wronged so myself-thereof I-repent and myself
met en vostre merci del tout outreement.
put into your mercy of-the whole utterly

Quant li rois lentent si en a grant ioie & en
When the king it-hears so thereof has-he great joy and thereof
tent ses mains vers le chiel. & tant en est lies
holds-out his hands toward the sky and so-much thereof is-he glad
que il ne le puet croire. & nepourquant bele chiere fait
that he not it can believe and nevertheless fair cheer makes-he
& moult sumilie vers galahot. & galahos se relieue
and much humbles-himself toward Galehaut and Galehaut himself raises
des ienous ou il estoit encore. & lors sentrebaisent &
from-the knees where he was yet and then kiss-each-other and
sentrefont moult grant ioie. & galahos li dist. Sire
make-each-other very great joy and Galehaut to-him says Lord
faites vostre plaisir de moi & ne doutes mie car ie metrai
do your pleasure with me and not doubt at-all for I shall-put
mon cors en vostre saisine la il vous plaira. & se vous
my body in your seisin there it you will-please and if you
voles ie irai mes gens traire ariere & reuendrai a vous.
wish I shall-go my people draw back and shall-return to you
Ales dont fait li rois & par tans reuenes. Car ie voeil
Go then says the king and in time return For I wish
moult a vous parler. Atant vient galahos a ses gens
much with you to-speak Thereupon comes Galehaut to his people
si les en fait aler ariere. Et li rois artus enuoie querre
so them thence makes go back And the king Arthur sends to-seek
la roine tantost qui moult sen va grant duel faisant.
the queen at-once who much herself-thence goes great grief making

si le cachent tant li message que il lataignent. & li
so her chase so-long the messengers that they her-overtake and to-her
content la grant ioie que auenue li est. Et ele nel puet
tell the great joy which happened to-him is And she not-it can
croire tant quele oie les enseignes que li rois li mande
believe so-long that-she hear the tokens that the king to-her sends-word
vraies. & lors se retourne a moult grant ioie. Tant
true and then herself turns-back with very great joy So-far
courent les noueles de la pais que mesires Gauuain les seit.
run the news of the peace that my-lord Gawain them knows
Car li rois meismes de sa bouce li dist. & il en a
For the king himself with his mouth to-him told and he thereof has
ioie seur tous hommes. & dist sire comment a che este.
joy above all men and says lord how has this been
Chertes fait li rois ie ne sai. teus a este li plaisirs nostre
Certainly says the king I not know such has been the pleasure (of-)our
signor. Moult est grans la ioie le roi. & se merueille
Lord Very is great the joy (of-)the king and himself marvels
moult cascuns comment ce puet avenir. & galehos en a
much each how this can happen and Galehaut thence has
ses gens eslongies & dist a son compaignon. biaus dous
his people removed and says to his companion fair sweet
compains que voles vous que ie face. Ie ai fait vostre
companion what wish you that I may-do I have done your
commandement. & li rois ma dit que ie retorne a lui.
command and the king me-has said that I return to him
Mais ie vous conuoierai iusca nos tentes & vous ferai
But I you shall-escort up-to our tents and you shall-make
vne piece compaignie car petit vous en ai fait & au
a while company for little you thereof have-I made and to-the
roi retournerai ie bien. ha! sire fait li cheualiers vous en
king shall-return I well ah lord says the knight you thence

ires au roi & li portes toutes les compaignies que
will-go to-the king and to-him carry all the companies that
vous porres. Car por moi aues vous deserui & fait plus
you will-be-able For for me have you deserved and done more
que ie ne poroie deseruir. Mais itant vous pri iou por dieu
than I — could deserve But so-much you beg I for God
que nule riens viuant ne sache ou ie sui. & galahos li
that any thing living not may-know where I am and Galehaut to-him
creante. Ensi sen vienent parlant iusca lor tres. si
promises Thus themselves-thence come speaking up-to their pavilion so
fu crie par toute lost que faite est la pais & comment.
was cried through all the-host that made is the peace and how
si en sont dolant li plusor qui miex amassent la guerre.
so thereof are sorrowful the most who better would-have-loved the war
Atant descendent li doi compaignon. & quant il
Thereupon dismount the two companions and when they
furent desarme si se vest galahos de ses millors robes
were disarmed so himself clothes Galehaut in his best robes
por aler a court par le congie de sen compaignon. &
to go to court by the leave of his companion and
fait crier par toute sost que qui se voldra aler quil
has cried through all his-host that who himself will-wish to-go that-he
sen aille fors chels qui sont de son ostel. Apres
himself-thence go except those who are of his household After
apele les .ij. rois en qui il se fioit tant. si lor baille
calls-he the two kings in whom he himself trusted so-much so to-them gives
sen compaignon. & lor prie quil en facent autretant
his companion and them begs that-they thereof do as-much
comme il feroient de lui. Atant sen vient a court
as they would-do of him Thereupon himself-thence comes-he to court
& li rois fu ia desarmes si li vait encontre & il
and the king was already disarmed so to-him goes to-meet both he

& la roine qui venue estoit. & la dame de malohaut &
and the queen who come was and the lady of malehaut and
dames & damoiseles asses. apres sen vont en la
ladies and damsels enough after themselves-thence go into the
bertesques ou mesires Gauuain estoit malades. & quant
gallery where my-lord Gawain was sick and when
il seit que galahos vient si sesforce moult de bele chiere
he knows that Galehaut comes so himself-forces much of fair cheer
faire por ce que il ne lauoit onques mais veu ne conneu.
to-make for this that he not him-had ever more seen nor known
& quant il aproche de lui si li dist mesire Gauuain
and when he approaches to him so to-him says my-lord Gawain
sire bien soies vous venus. Comme li hons el monde
lord well be you come As the man in-the world
que ie desire plus a veoir ensi comme ie uos voi orendroit.
whom I desire most to see so as I you see right-now
& moult vous deues proisier que vous estes li hons el
and much you ought prize for you are the man in-the
monde plus a droit loes & de cui ge desirroie plus
world most by right praised and of whom I would-desire most
lacointement. & qui plus est ames de ses gens. & ie quit
the-acquaintance and who most is loved by his people and I think
que nus ne seit si bien connoistre preudomme comme
that anyone not knows so well to-know worthy-man as
vous faites & bien i a paru. Ensi parole mesire
you do and well there has appeared Thus speaks my-lord
Gauuain a galahot. & galahot li demande comment il
Gawain to Galehaut and Galehaut of-him asks how it
li esta. & il dist sire iai estei pres de la mort. Mais
with-him stands and he says lord I-have been near to the death But
la grant ioie qui est entre vous & monsignor le roi de
the great joy which is between you and my-lord the king of

lamor & de la pais que diex i a mise ma tout gari.
the-love and of the peace that God there has put me-has all healed
Car nus ne deust auoir sante ne ioie la ou si grans
For anyone not should have health nor joy there where so great
haine durast entres les .ij. plus preudomes del monde.
hatred lasted between the two most worthy-men of-the world
Moult font grant ioie de galehot li rois & la roine
Very make great joy of Galehaut the king and the queen
& monsignor Gauuain. Et moult ont le ior parle de
and my-lord Gawain And much have-they the day spoken of
plusors choses & dacointement. Mais del noir cheualier
several things and of-acquaintance But of-the black knight
ne tienent nule parole por ce que trop seroit tost. ains
not hold-they any word for this that too-much would-be-it soon rather
gastent le iour en conioir li .j. lautre. Tant que vient a
spend-they the day in welcoming the one the-other Until that it-comes to
lauesprer. & lors demande galahos congie de ses gens aler
the-evening and then asks Galehaut leave of his people to-go
veoir. & li rois li doune. Mais vous reuendrois ia fait
see and the king to-him gives But you will-return soon says
il. & chil lotrie. si sen reuient a son compaignon
he and that-one it-grants so himself-thence comes-back to his companion
& li demande comment li a puis este & il li
and of-him asks how with-him has since been and he to-him
respont moult bien. & galahos li dist. sire que ferai ie
answers very well and Galehaut to-him says lord what shall-do I
li rois ma moult proie que ie retorne a lui. & il me
the king me-has much begged that I return to him and it to-me
seroit moult grief de vous laissier en cest point. ha! sire
would-be very grievous of you to-leave at this point ah lord
fait li cheualiers por dieu merci. vous feres ce que messires
says the knight for God mercy you will-do this that my-lord

li rois voldra. Car che sachies que onques plus preudomme
the king will-wish For this know that ever more worthy-man
de lui nacointastes. Mais ie vous voeil .j. don requerre
than him not-did-you-acquaint But I you wish a gift to-require
que vous le me dounes por vostre preu & por le mien.
that you it me give for your profit and for the mine
Et galahos li dist demandes quanque vous voldres &
And Galehaut to-him says ask whatever you will-wish and
vous plaira Car ie ne vos escondirai iamais. plus vous ai
you will-please For I not you shall-refuse ever-more more you have
ie ame que terriene honor. Sire fait il grans mercis vous
I loved than earthly honor Lord says he great thanks you
maues done que vous ne me demanderes mon non deuant
me-have given that you not me will-ask my name before
que ie le vous die. ou ie ou autres por moi. & ie
that I it you may-tell either I or another for me and I
men terrai atant fait galahos puis que vous le voles.
myself-thereof shall-hold so says Galehaut since that you it wish
& se fust che la premiere chose que ie vous demandasse.
and yet were this the first thing that I you should-ask
Mais ie nel quier sauoir deuant que vostre volentes i soit.
But I not-it seek to-know before that your will there be

Galehaut's Promise to the Queen

XXXVII

Galehaut speaks of Arthur and of the queen's worth, and at her name the knight bows his head and weeps; all night he grieves, and in the morning Galehaut swears on the sacrament never to grieve him. At court Gawain conjures Galehaut to say who made the peace, and he says only that it was a knight, the thing he loves most. Arthur would share half he has for that knight's company, Gawain would be the fairest damsel in the world to have his love, the queen says Gawain has offered all a lady could, and Galehaut would turn his honor to shame to be sure of him. The queen begs to see the knight; he consents, and Galehaut moves his camp to face Arthur's across the river.

Lors li demande li cheualiers del contenement le
Then of-him asks the knight of-the bearing (of-)the
roi artu & de sa compaignie. Mais il ne noume mie la
king Arthur and of his company But he not names at-all the
roine. & galahos li respont que moult est preudom li
queen and Galehaut to-him answers that very is worthy-man the
rois. & moult me poise fait il que ie ne le connus piecha
king and much me grieves says he that I not him knew long-ago
autretant comme ie fais ore. Car moult me fuisse amendes.
as-much as I do now For much myself would-be bettered
& madame la roine parest si vaillans que onques diex ne
and my-lady the queen is-utterly so worthy that ever God not
fist plus vaillans dame de li. & quant li cheualiers oi
made more worthy lady than her and when the knight heard
parler de la roine si senbronca. & commencha a penser si
speak of the queen so bowed-his-head and began to think so
durement que tous sen oublie. & galahos le regarde
hard that all himself-thereof forgets and Galehaut him looks-at
si voit que les larmes li sont venues as iex. & a
so sees that the tears to-him are come to-the eyes and with

grant paine se tient quil ne plore. & chil sen
great pain himself holds that-he not weeps and that-one himself-thereof
merueille moult & commencha a parler dautre cose. Et
marvels much and began to speak of-other thing And
quant il ot parle longement si li dist li cheualiers. ales
when he had spoken long so to-him says the knight go
sire si faites a monsignor Gauuain & au roi compaignie.
lord so make to my-lord Gawain and to-the king company
& si escoutes se vous orres de moi nule parole ne nule
and so listen if you will-hear of me any word or any
nouele. & demain si me redires ce que len vous aura
news and tomorrow so me will-tell-again this that one you will-have
de moi conte. volentiers sire dist galahot. lors lacole
of me told willingly lord said Galehaut then him-embraces
& baise en la face & le commande a dieu. & dist
and kisses on the face and him commends to God and says
as .ij. rois que il legardent comme le cuer de son
to-the two kings that they him-guard as the heart of his
ventre. Ensi sen va galahos & li cheualiers remaint
belly Thus himself-thence goes Galehaut and the knight remains
auoec les .ij. preudomes qui tant lonererent com il plus
with the two worthy-men who so-much him-honored as they most
porent. Cele nuit gut galahos el treif le roi. &
could That night lay Galehaut in-the pavilion (of-)the king and
li rois meismes i iut & mesire Gauuain qui aporter
the king himself there lay and my-lord Gawain who carry
si fist. & mesire ywains & autres cheualiers asses.
himself-there had and my-lord Yvain and other knights enough
& la roine iut en la bertesque ou mesire Gauuain auoit
and the queen lay in the bartizan where my-lord Gawain had
ieu malades & la dame de malahot qui ne fait sespijer
lain sick and the lady of malehaut who not does except-spy

non & entendre comment les coses se prendront. &
not and hear how the things themselves will-take and
si i ot autres damoiseles & autres dames moult. &
so there had other damsels and other ladies many and
li cheualiers qui estoit remes en la garde des .ij. rois.
the knight who was remained in the keeping of-the two kings
ne fait mie a demander se il fu honeres. Car len faisoit
not makes at-all to ask if he was honored For one made
plus de lui quil ne volsist. & moult en auoit
more of him than-he — would-have-wished and much thereof had-he
grant aesmance & grant honte.
great embarrassment and great shame

La nuit iurent li doi roi el tref galahot por amor
The night lay the two kings in-the pavilion (of-)Galehaut for love
del cheualier & li fisent entendre que il gerroient
of-the knight and to-him made understand that they would-lie
autresi comme galahos auoit fait la premiere nuit quil ne
just as Galehaut had done the first night for-he not
saperchut. Car il ni ieust por nule rien. Au
himself-perceived-it For he not-there would-have-lain for any thing At-the
commenchement dormi li cheualiers moult durement. quant
beginning slept the knight very hard when
che vint apres le premier some si se commencha a torner
this came after the first sleep so himself began to turn
& a retorner. & ne demora gaires que il commencha .j.
and to turn-back and not tarried-it much that he began a
duel si grant que chil sen merueillierent qui deuant
grief so great that those themselves-thereof marveled who before
li gisoient. & il ploroit si especement comme liaue li
him lay and he wept so thickly as the-water to-him
pooit plus espesement venir as iex. Mais al plus que
could more thickly come to-the eyes But at-the most that

il pooit se gardoit destre ois. & en son plour disoit
he could himself guarded from-being heard and in his weeping said
souent. ha! las caitis que porai ie faire. Mais che disoit
often ah alas wretch what shall-be-able I do But this said
il moult bas. toute nuit dura chis dels & ceste angoisse.
he very low all night lasted this grief and this anguish
& au matin a la iournee se leuerent li doi roi au
and at-the morning at the daybreak themselves rose the two kings at-the
plus coiement quil porent. & moult se merueillent
most quietly that-they could and much themselves marvel
durement que chis cheualiers pooit auoir qui si grant duel
greatly what this knight could have who so great grief
fait. & dautre part refu galahos moult matin leues. &
makes and from-other part was-again Galehaut very early risen and
fu venus a son tref veoir son compaignon. si troua les .ij.
was come to his pavilion to-see his companion so found the two
rois leues si lor demanda que ses compains faisoit. & il
kings risen so of-them asked what his companion did and they
li content le grant duel que il auoit toute nuit mene. &
to-him tell the great grief that he had all night led and
quant il loit si en est moult esbahis & moult dolans.
when he it-hears so thereof is-he much amazed and very sorrowful
lors va en la cambre ou il gisoit & chil loi
then goes-he into the chamber where he lay and that-one him-heard
venir si tert ses iex. Car il plouroit autresi durement com
come so wipes his eyes For he wept as hard as
il auoit miex plore la nuit. & quant galahos oi quil
he had best wept the night and when Galehaut heard that-he
ne disoit mot si sen issi hors. Car il quidoit que il
not said word so himself-thence went out For he thought that he
dormist. Apres che ne demora gaires que li cheualiers se
slept After this not tarried-it much that the knight himself

leua. & quant il fu leues si vint galahot deuant lui. &
rose and when he was risen so came Galehaut before him and
vit quil ot les iex tous emfles & tous rouges & si estoit
saw that-he had the eyes all swollen and all red and so was-he
si esroes que a paines pooit dire mot. & li drap de son
so hoarse that with pains could-he say word and the sheets of his
lit estoient si moillie de son chief comme sil fuissent
bed were so wet from his head as if-they had-been
trait de liaue car moult auoit plore. Et neporquant moult
drawn from the-water for much had-he wept And nevertheless much
sesforche de bele chiere faire & se lieue encontre
himself-forces-he of fair cheer to-make and himself rises toward
galahot. & chil le prent par la main si le trait seul a
Galehaut and that-one him takes by the hand so him draws alone with
seul a vne part & li dist biaus compains porquoi vous
alone to a part and to-him says fair companion wherefore you
ochies vous ensi. dont vous vient chis duels que vous aues
kill you thus whence you comes this grief that you have
toute nuit mene & fait. Et chil li choile moult bien
all night led and made And that-one from-him hides-it very well
& dist que ensi se plaint il souent en son dormant.
and says that thus himself laments he often in his sleeping
Certes fait galahos. ains pert moult bien a vostre
Certainly says Galehaut rather appears-it very well on your
cors & a vos iex que vous aues moult grant duel mene.
body and on your eyes that you have very great grief led
Mais por dieu vous pri que vous me dites locoison. Et
But for God you I-beg that you me tell the-occasion And
bien sachies que nule si grans mesestance nest dont
well know that any so great distress not-is from-which
ie ne vous aiueche a Ieter se nus hons conseil i puet
I not you may-help to Throw if any man counsel there can

metre. & quant il loit si est si angoisseus que il ne
put and when he it-hears so is-he so anguished that he not
li pot mot dire. si sakelt a plorer si tres durement
to-him could word say so begins to weep so very hard
comme se il veist morte la rien el monde que il plus
as if he saw dead the thing in-the world that he most
amast & fait tel duel que par .j. poi que il ne se
loved and makes such grief that by a little that he not himself
pasme. Et galahos le court prendre entre ses bras si
swoons And Galehaut him runs to-take between his arms so
li baise le bouce & les iex & le comforte moult
to-him kisses the mouth and the eyes and him comforts very
durement & li dist. biaus dous amis dites moi vostre
hard and to-him says fair sweet friend tell me your
mesestance. Que il na el monde si haut home se il
distress For it not-has in-the world so high man if he
vous a anui porcachiet que vous nen aies veniance
you has trouble procured that you not-thereof may-have vengeance
a vostre volente. Et il dist que nus ne li a riens
at your will And he says that anyone not to-him has anything
forfait. biax dols amis porcoi menes vous donques tel duel.
wronged fair sweet friend wherefore lead you then such grief
poise vous il de che que iai de vous fait mon seignor
grieves you it for this that I-have of you made my lord
& mon compaignon. ha! sire por dieu merci. vous maues
and my companion ah lord for God mercy you me-have
fait plus asses que ie ne poroie deseruir. Ne riens ne me
done more by-far than I — could deserve Nor anything not me
met a malaise se mes cuers non. qui a toutes paors
puts at unease except my heart not which has all fears
que cuers mortex puisse auoir si dolt moult que vostre
that heart mortal may have so grieves much that your

deboinairetes ne mochie. De ceste chose est galahos moult
graciousness not me-kill At this thing is Galehaut very
a malaise. si comforte son compaignon a son pooir. Apres
at unease so comforts his companion to his power After
alerent oir messe. & quant ce vint que li prestres ot
went-they to-hear mass and when this came that the priest had
faites les .iij. parties del cors dame dieu. Galahos se
made the three parts of-the body (of-)the-Lord God Galehaut himself
traist auant & prent son compaignon par la main &
drew forward and takes his companion by the hand and
li monstre les .iij. parties que li prestres tenoit entre
to-him shows the three parts that the priest held between
ses mains & li dist. sire dont ne crees vous que ce
his hands and to-him says lord then not believe you that this
soit li cors nostre seignor. sire fait li cheualiers moult
be the body (of-)our Lord lord says the knight very
le croi bien. biax dols amis fait Galahot or ne me
it I-believe well fair sweet friend says Galehaut now not me
doutes donques mie. que par ches .iij. parties que vous
doubt then at-all for by these three parts that you
vees en samblance de pain. Ie ne ferai mais en ma vie
see in semblance of bread I not shall-do more in my life
chose qui vous poist ne qui vous anuit. Mais toutes les
thing which you grieve nor which you trouble But all the
coses qui vous plairont ie porcacherai a mon pooir. sire
things which you will-please I shall-procure to my power lord
fait il grant mercis trop en aues vous fait ce poise
says he great thanks too-much thereof have you done this grieves
moi. Car le pooir del deseruir ne voi ie mie en moi.
me For the power of-the deserving not see I at-all in me
Atant se taisent iusques apres la messe. & lors
Thereupon themselves are-silent up-to after the mass and then

redemanda Galahos a son compaignon que il fera. sire
asked-again Galehaut of his companion what he will-do lord
fait il vous ne laires mie monsignor le roi. ains li
says he you not will-leave at-all my-lord the king rather to-him
ires tenir compaignie. Et se vous oies parler de moi si
will-go to-keep company And if you hear speak of me so
me cheles ensi com ie vous ai priie. Sire dist galahos
me conceal so as I you have begged Lord said Galehaut
nen doutes ia. Car ia rien que vous voeillies cheler
not-thereof doubt ever For ever anything that you wish to-conceal
ne sera par moi descouert. Atant sempart de lui
not will-be by me uncovered Thereupon himself-thence-parts-he from him
si le rebaille as .ij. preudommes qui moult laiment. &
so him gives-again to-the two worthy-men who much him-love and
il sen va ala court le roi artu. si font tout si
he himself-thence goes to-the court (of-)the king Arthur so make all so
grant ioie de li comme il plus peuent. & quant vint
great joy of him as they most can and when came
apres disner si furent entre galahot & le roi & la roine
after dinner so were between Galehaut and the king and the queen
apoie a la couce ou mesire Gauuain gisoit. & tant que
leaning on the couch where my-lord Gawain lay and so-much that
mesire Gauuain dist a galahot. Sire fait il ore ne vous
my-lord Gawain said to Galehaut Lord says he now not you
poist mie dune chose que ie vous demanderai. Chertes fait
grieve at-all of-a thing that I you shall-ask Certainly says
galahot non fera il. sire chele pais qui est entre vous &
Galehaut no will-do it lord that peace which is between you and
monseignor le roi. par la riens que vous ames miex par
my-lord the king by the thing that you love best by
qui fu ele faite. Chertes fait galahos vous men aues
whom was it made Certainly says Galehaut you me-thereof have

tant coniure que ie nen mentiroie mie. vns cheualiers
so-much conjured that I not-thereof would-lie at-all a knight
la faite. qui est il fait mesires Gauuain si voirement
it-has made who is he says my-lord Gawain so truly
mait diex fait galahos ie ne sai qui il est. fu che chis
me-may-help God says Galehaut I not know who he is was this he
fait la roine as noires armes. tant fait mesire Gauuain
says the queen with-the black arms so-much says my-lord Gawain
en poes vous bien dire saquiter vous voles. Sire fait
thereof can you well tell if-to-acquit yourself you-wish Lord says
galahos ie me sui aquites de ce que vous me coniurastes
Galehaut I me am acquitted of this that you me conjured
quant ie vos ai dit que ce fu vns cheualiers. ne plus ne
when I you have said that this was a knight nor more not
vous en dirai ore. ne ie ne vous en eusse rien
you thereof shall-tell now nor I not you thereof would-have anything
dit se vous ne meussies coniure la rien que ie plus amoie.
said if you not me-had conjured the thing that I most loved
& sachies que la rien que ie plus amoie fist la pais.
and know that the thing that I most loved made the peace
par dieu ce dist la roine ce fu li noirs cheualiers. Mais
by God this said the queen this was the black knight But
faites le nous veoir. qui dame iou. Chertes dame ie ne le
make him us see who lady I Certainly lady I not him
vous pus si monstrer comme cil qui rien nen sai.
you can so show as that-one who anything not-thereof knows
Taisies fait ele il remeist o vous. & ier porta il vos
Be-silent says she he remained with you and yesterday bore he your
armes. Dame fait il cest voirs. Mais ie ne le vi onques
arms Lady says he this-is true But I not him saw ever
puis que ie parti a la premiere fois de monseignor le roi.
since that I parted at the first time from my-lord the king

Coment fait li rois ne le connoissies vous mie celui
How says the king not him know you at-all that-one
as noires armes. & ie quidoie quil fust de vostre
with-the black arms and I thought that-he were of your
terre. si mait diex non est fait galahos. Sire fait li
land so me-may-help God not is-he says Galehaut Lord says the
rois ne de la moie nest il mie. Car ie noi piecha parler
king nor of the mine not-is he at-all For I not-heard long-ago speak
de cheualier preu dont len ne seust enseignes. Moult
of knight valiant of-whom one not should-know tokens Much
tienent galahot en grant destroit enter le roi & la roine
hold-they Galehaut in great strait between the king and the queen
de sauoir le non au cheualier. mais plus nen peuent
to know the name of-the knight but more not-thereof can-they
traire & mesire Gauuain crient que il ne li anuit si dist
draw and my-lord Gawain fears that it — him annoy so says
au roi. sire ore en laissies la parole ester atant. que
to-the king lord now thereof leave the word be thereupon for
chertes preudons est li cheualiers quels que il soit. ne en
certainly worthy-man is the knight whatever that he be nor in
cest mont na cheualier plus vaillant a armes de lui. &
this world not-has-it knight more valiant in arms than him and
quant tout en ont la parole laissie si le reprent galehos.
when all thereof have the word left so it takes-up Galehaut
& dist au roi sire sire veistes vous onques plus preudome
and says to-the king lord lord saw you ever more worthy-man
de chelui au noir escu. certes fait li rois ie ne vi
than that-one with-the black shield certainly says the king I not saw
onques cheualier de qui ie amasse autant le connoissance
ever knight of whom I would-love as-much the knowledge
por cheualerie qui en lui fust. non fait galahos. or me
for chivalry which in him were no says Galehaut now me

dites dont par la foi que vous deues madame qui ci est
tell then by the faith that you owe my-lady who here is
ne monseignor Gauuain. combien voldries vous auoir doune
nor my-lord Gawain how-much would-wish you to-have given
a auoir sa compaignie a tous iours. si voirement mait
to have his company for all days so truly me-may-help
diex fait il. ie li partiroie par mi quanque ie poroie
God says he I with-him would-share by half whatever I could
auoir. fors seulement le cors de ceste dame dont ie ne
have except only the body of this lady of-which I not
feroie nului part. certes fait galahot asses i meteries.
would-make to-anyone part certainly says Galehaut enough there would-put-you
& vous fait il mesire Gauuain. se diex vous doinst le sante
and you says he my-lord Gawain if God you may-give the health
que vous desires quel meschief feries vous por auoir
that you desire what sacrifice would-make you for to-have
tous iours mais .j. si preudome. & mesire Gauuain pensa
all days more a so worthy-man and my-lord Gawain thought
vn petit comme chil qui ne quida iamais sante auoir.
a little as that-one who not thought ever-more health to-have
se diex me doinst fait il sante auoir ie voldroie orendroit
if God me may-give says he health to-have I would-wish right-now
estre la plus bele damoisele del mont saine & haitie par
to-be the most fair damsel of-the world healthy and well on
couent que il mamast sor toute rien toute sa vie & la
covenant that he me-loved above all thing all his life and the
moie. Chertes fait galahos asses i aues offert. & vous
mine Certainly says Galehaut enough there have-you offered and you
dame fait il par la rien que vous plus ames que en
lady says he by the thing that you most love what thereof
feries vous de meschief par couent que vns teus cheualiers
would-do you of sacrifice on covenant that a such knight

fust tous iours en vostre seruice. par dieu fait ele mesire
were all days in your service by God says she my-lord
Gauuain i a mis quanque dame i puet metre. ne dame
Gawain there has put whatever lady there can put nor lady
ne puet plus offrir. & il commenchent tout a rire. Et
not can more offer and they begin all to laugh And
vous fait mesire Gauuain galahot qui tous nous en aues
you says my-lord Gawain Galehaut who all us thereof have
aatis par le sairement que ie vous iurai iehui & vous
challenged by the oath that I you swore today and you
quoi. & si mait diex ien uaudroie auoir tournee ma
what and so me-may-help God I-thereof would-wish to-have turned my
grant honor a honte. par si que ie fuisse a tous iors
great honor to shame on condition that I were for all days
aussi seurs de lui comme ie vaudroie que il fust de moi.
as sure of him as I would-wish that he were of me
Se diex me doinst ioie fait mesire Gauuain plus i
If God me may-give joy says my-lord Gawain more there
aues offert que nus de nous & lors pensa mesire Gauuain
have-you offered than any of us and then thought my-lord Gawain
que cestoit li cheualiers qui la pais auoit faite daus .ij.
that this-was the knight who the peace had made of-them two
Et que por lui auoit galahos sonor tournee a honte. la
And that for him had Galehaut his-honor turned to shame there
ou il vit que au desure estoit del tout. si conseilla
where he saw that at-the above he-was of-the whole so counseled-he
a la roine que ensint estoit. & che fu la chose dont
to the queen that thus it-was and this was the thing for-which
galahos fu plus proisies. & nel pooient entre els deus
Galehaut was most prized and not-him could between them two
plus regarder que il le regardoient. ne ne sen
more look-at than they him looked-at nor not themselves-thereof

pooient saoler Moult tindrent longuement la parole del
could sate Much held-they long the word of-the
noir cheualier. & la roine se dreche a cief de piece &
black knight and the queen herself raises at end of while and
dist que ele sen veut aler en la bertesque monsignor
says that she herself-thence wishes to-go into the bartizan (of-)my-lord
Gauuain ou sa cambre estoit & galahos la conuoie. Et
Gawain where her chamber was and Galehaut her escorts And
quant il furent amont si prent la roine galahot a conseil
when they were up so takes the queen Galehaut to counsel
& li dist. galahot ie vous aim moult & si feroie
and to-him says Galehaut I you love much and so would-do
plus por vous que vous ne quidies espoir. & il est voirs
more for you than you — think perhaps and it is true
que vos aues le boin cheualier en vostre compaignie &
that you have the good knight in your company and
en vostre baillie. & par auenture il est tex que iel
in your keeping and by chance he is such that I-him
connois bien. si vous pri si chier comme vous aues mamor
know well so you beg as dear as you hold my-love
par couent que quanque ie porai iamais faire por vous
on covenant that whatever I shall-be-able ever-more do for you
meterai en abandon & en vostre baillie. que vous facies
I-shall-put in abandon and in your keeping that you do
tant que ie le voie. Dame fait galahos ie nen ai mie
so-much that I him see Lady says Galehaut I not-thereof have at-all
encore saisine. ne onques puis que la pais fu faite de moi
yet seisin nor ever since that the peace was made of me
& de mon seignor nel vi. Certes fait la roine ce ne
and of my lord not-him saw-I Certainly says the queen this not
puet mie estre que vous ne sachies bien ou il est. & sil
can at-all be that you not know well where he is and if-he

estoit ore en mon tref si i couenroit il autre volente
were now in my pavilion so there would-behoove it other will
que la vostre ne la moie. estre ce que il ni est mie
than the yours nor the mine except this that he not-there is at-all
orendroit en ceste terre. & ou est il fait la roine tant
right-now in this land and where is he says the queen so-much
men poes vous bien dire. Dame fait il ie quit quil
me-thereof can you well tell Lady says he I think that-he
soit en mon pais. & bien sacies que por ce que vous
be in my country and well know that for this that you
maues proie & coniure que ien face tout mon pooir ie
me-have begged and conjured that I-thereof do all my power I
le ferai. Tant sai ie bien fait la roine que se vous en
it shall-do So-much know I well says the queen that if you thereof
faites vostre pooir ie le verrai. & ie men ateng a
do your power I him shall-see and I myself-thereof rely on
vous. & en faites tant que iou en soie a tous iours
you and thereof do so-much that I thereof may-be for all days
mais vostre. Car cest .j. des hommes el monde que ie
more yours For this-is one of-the men in-the world whom I
verroie plus volentiers. & ne mie por esperance que iaie
would-see most willingly and not at-all for hope that I-have
de li connoistre talent se de bien non. Mais por ce que
of him to-know desire except of good not But for this that
il nest nus ne nule qui de connoistre preudomme
it not-is any-man nor any-woman who of knowing worthy-man
doie estre anoies. Dame fait galahot tant sai ie bien &
ought be annoyed Lady says Galehaut so-much know I well and
vous en soies toute seure que ie en ferai tout mon
you thereof be all sure that I thereof shall-do all my
pooir. Grans mercis fait la roine. Or ales & si porcachies
power Great thanks says the queen Now go and so contrive

que iel voie au plus tost que vous porres. & sil est
that I-him see at-the most soon that you will-be-able and if-he is
en vostre pais si li enuoies querre par iour & par
in your country so for-him send to-seek by day and by
nuit. Tant quil soit ci al plus tost quil pora.
night So-long that-he be here at-the most soon that-he will-be-able
Atant sen ist galahos de laiens & sen
Thereupon himself-thence goes-out Galehaut from in-there and himself-thence
vient au roi & a monsignor Gauuain & as autres
comes to-the king and to my-lord Gawain and to-the other
cheualiers qui laiens sont. & li rois dist a galahot nous
knights who in-there are and the king says to Galehaut we
sommes deliures de nos os. que nous nauons mais chi
are freed from our hosts for we not-have more here
que les gens priuees de nos ostex. Car faites vos gens
but the people private of our households Now make your people
aprochier des noes ou ie ferai les moies gens aprocier
approach to-the waters where I shall-make the my people approach
des voes. si serons plus pres li .j. des autres. Sire fait
to-the fords so shall-we-be more near the one to-the others Lord says
galahos ie ferai la moie gent plus pres dautre part de
Galehaut I shall-make the my people more near from-other part of
la riue. si que mes treis sera endroit le vostre. si sera
the bank so that my pavilion will-be opposite the yours so will-be
vne neis appareillie qui ira de ci la & de la ci.
a ship prepared which will-go from here there and from there here
& ie i vois orendroit. Certes dist li rois moult aues
and I there go right-now Certainly said the king very have-you
bien dit. lors sen va galahos a sa tente & treuue
well said then himself-thence goes Galehaut to his tent and finds
son compaignon moult pensieu. & li demande comment
his companion very thoughtful and of-him asks how

il le fait. & il dist moult bien se paours nel maistriast.
he it does and he says very well if fear not-him mastered
& galahos li dist sire por dieu de qui aues vous paour.
and Galehaut to-him says lord for God of whom have you fear
sire fait il que ie ne soie conneus. sire fait galahot or
lord says he that I — may-be known lord says Galehaut now
naies garde que par la foi que ie vous doi vous ni
not-have fear for by the faith that I you owe you not-there
seres ia conneus se par vostre boine volente nest. lors
will-be ever known if by your good will not-it-is then
li conte les offres que li rois & mesire Gauuain orent
to-him tells-he the offers that the king and my-lord Gawain had
offert por lui. & che que la roine dist. & comment que
offered for him and this that the queen said and how that
la roine le remist en grant del boin cheualier veoir. &
the queen him put-back into great of-the good knight to-see and
comment il li auoit respondu. Et sachies bien fait il
how he to-her had answered And know well says he
que ele na de nule rien si grant desirier comme ele
that she not-has for any thing so great desire as she
a de vous veoir. & mesires li rois ma proiet que ie
has to you to-see and my-lord the king me-has begged that I
face mes gens traire pres des soies. si que mes treis soit
make my people draw near to-the his so that my pavilion be
endroit le sien. Car trop sommes loing li .j. des autres.
opposite the his For too are-we far the one from-the others
or me dites que vous voles que ie en face. Car il est
now me tell what you wish that I thereof do For it is
a vostre volente del tout. sire fait il ie loe moult que
at your will of-the whole lord says he I advise much that
vous faites ce que mesires li rois vous prie Quar moult
you do this that my-lord the king you begs For much

en pores amender. biaus dols amis fait galahos &
thereof will-you-be-able to-improve fair sweet friend says Galehaut and
a madame que responderai ie de che que ie vous ai dit.
to my-lady what shall-answer I to this that I you have said
Certes fait il ie ne sai coi. lors commence a souspirer
Certainly says he I not know what then begins-he to sigh
& les larmes li vienent as iex. & il se tourne
and the tears to-him come to-the eyes and he himself turns
dautre part si est tex conrees que il ne seit ou il est.
of-other part so is-he so arrayed that he not knows where he is
& galahos li dist sire ne vous esmahies de rien. Mais
and Galehaut to-him says lord not you dismay at anything But
dites moi outreement comment vous uoles que il soit. &
tell me utterly how you wish that it be and
bien sacies que il sera ensi comme vous uoldrois. Car
well know that it will-be thus as you will-wish For
ie voldroie miex estre corecies a demi le monde que a
I would-wish better to-be angered with half the world than with
vos tout seul. & por la vostre amor ont il la moie. Or
you all alone and for the your love have they the mine Now
si me dites quil vous em plaist Sire fait li cheualiers
so me tell what-it you thereof pleases Lord says the knight
ce que vous men loeres. car ie sui en vostre garde
this that you me-thereof will-advise for I am in your keeping
des ore mais. si mait diex fait il de madame veoir ne
from now on so me-may-help God says he of my-lady seeing not
voi ie mie comment nus em pusse enpirier. Certes fait
see I at-all how anyone thereof may worsen Certainly says
li cheualiers asses aurai anui & ioie. lors saperchut
the knight enough shall-I-have trouble and joy then himself-perceived
galahos de son couine si le tient si court que il li
Galehaut of his condition so him holds so short that he to-him

otroie ce que il li demande. Mais il couendra fait il que
grants this that he of-him asks But it will-behoove says he that
il soit fait si cheleement que nus nel sache. & dites
it be done so secretly that anyone not-it may-know and say
a madame que vous maues enuoie querre. sour moi fait
to my-lady that you me-have sent to-seek on me says
galahos en laissies le sourplus car ie en quit moult bien
Galehaut thereof leave the rest for I thereof think very well
penser. lors apele son senescal & li commande que si
to-take-care then calls-he his seneschal and to-him commands that as
tost com il sen sera ales a cort face cueillier
soon as he himself-thence will-be gone to court he-should-make take-down
son treif & ses tentes & ses rois de fer & face tout
his pavilion and his tents and his nets of iron and make all
porter endroit les gens le roi. si fache logier si pres
carry opposite the people (of-)the king so may-make lodge so near
que il nait entrax que la riuiere. Atant sen vait
that it not-have between-them but the river Thereupon himself-thence goes
ariere a petit de compaignie & la roine fu ia repairie
back with little of company and the queen was already returned
de la bertesque. Et la ele voit venir galahot si li
from the bartizan And there she sees come Galehaut so to-him
saut a lencontre & li demande comment il a esploitie
leaps to the-meeting and of-him asks how he has achieved
de sa besoigne. Dame fait il ien ai tant fait que ie
of her business Lady says he I-thereof have so-much done that I
dout que vostre proiere ne me toille la riens el monde
fear that your prayer — me take-away the thing in-the world
que ie plus aim. Si mait diex fait ele vous ne perderes
that I most love So me-may-help God says she you not will-lose
ia riens par moi que ie ne vous rende au double. Mais
ever anything by me that I not you render at-the double But

que perderes vous por ce. Dame fait il celui meismes que
what will-lose you for this Lady says he that-one himself whom
vous demandes. Que ie dout que chose nauiegne par quoi
you ask For I fear that thing may-happen by which
il se coroust a moi. que iel perderoie a tous iours
he himself might-anger with me so-that I-him would-lose for all days
mais. Certes fait ele ce ne poroie ie mie rendre. Mais se
more Certainly says she this not could I at-all render But if
diex plaist par moi nel perdres vous ia. ne il ne seroit
God please by me not-him will-lose you ever nor he not would-be
mie courtois se noiant vous en faisoit par ma proiere.
at-all courteous if anything to-you thereof did for my prayer
Mais nepourquant vendra il. Dame au plus tost que il
But nevertheless will-come he Lady at-the most soon that he
pora fait il. Car iel ai enuoiet querre a esperons or
will-be-able says he For him-I have sent to-seek at spurs now
i para fait ele. Car il sera demain ci se vous voles.
there will-appear says she For he will-be tomorrow here if you wish
Dame fait il non seroit sil mouoit orendroit de la ou
Lady says he no would-be-he if-he set-out right-now from there where
il est. si voldroie ie que il i peust estre orendroit. Que
he is so would-wish I that he there could be right-now While
quil parolent ensi entrax .ij. si furent ia venues les
that-they speak thus between-them two so were already come the
gens galahot de lautre part de liaue & commenchirent
people (of-)Galehaut from the-other part of the-water and began
son treif a tendre endroit le treif le roi. si les
his pavilion to pitch opposite the pavilion (of-)the king so them
esgarde lon a grant merueille. Car moult estoit biaus &
looks-at one with great marvel For very was-it fair and
riches. & quant tout furent logie si furent tendus les rois
rich and when all were lodged so were stretched the nets

de fer si sen merueilloient trop les gens le roi
of iron so themselves-thereof marveled too-much the people (of-)the king
artu. Car onques mais si grant riqueche nauoient veue. &
Arthur For ever more so great richness not-had-they seen and
moult en i ot qui le iour les venoient veoir de pres.
many thereof there had who the day them came to-see from near

The Meeting Arranged

XXXVIII

Galehaut reports the queen's longing, and the knight takes heart and recovers his color. The queen presses Galehaut each time he returns, and at last he tells her the flower of knights has come, but must not be known to Arthur's household. They agree to meet at evening in a meadow full of shrubs. Galehaut sends for his seneschal to bring the knight, and the queen walks out with Galehaut, the Lady of Malehaut, damsel Laure of Carlisle and one maiden of her own. When the two knights come, the Lady of Malehaut knows at once the man she kept in prison, and bows her head so as not to be known; the queen cannot tell which of the two is the best knight in the world.

La nuit reuint veoir galahot son compaignon. & li
The night came-back to-see Galehaut his companion and to-him
conte que il auoit troue. & que moult estoit la roine de
tells what he had found and that much was the queen of
lui veoir angoisseuse. & cil en ot en son cuer paour
him to-see anxious and that-one thereof had in his heart fear
& ioie. & quant il ont grant piece parle ensamble si
and joy and when they have great while spoken together so
sen vient galahos par son congie au roi. & la roine
himself-thence comes Galehaut by his leave to-the king and the queen
le reprent & li demande sil a oi nule nouele del
him takes-again and of-him asks if-he has heard any news of-the

cheualier. & il dist que nenil encore. & chele li dist
knight and he says that no yet and she to-him says
en riant. biaus dols amis ne meslongies vous mie ce que
in laughing fair sweet friend not me-put-off you at-all this that
vous me poes haster. Dame fait il si mait diex ie ne
you me can hasten Lady says he so me-may-help God I not
le verroie mie mains volentiers de vous. Cest la chose fait
him would-see at-all less willingly than you This-is the thing says
ele por que ie dout que vous ne fachies grignor chieite.
she for which I fear that you — should-make greater dearness
si est por ce que ge le desir tant & si est tous iours
so is-it for this that I him desire so-much and so is all days
la coustume que la chose plus desiree est tous iours la
the custom that the thing most desired is all days the
plus vee. & si i a tex gens qui autrui font a anuis
most refused and so there has such people who to-others make with trouble
aise de la rien que il plus aiment. Et neporquant naies
ease of the thing that they most love And nevertheless not-have
mie paor. Car ia por moi ne perdres rien que vous
at-all fear For ever by me not will-lose-you anything that you
aies eu. Dame fait galahot grant mercis. Car ie quit que
may-have had Lady says Galehaut great thanks For I think that
vous mi pories plus aidier que ie vous. En teus paroles
you me could more help than I you In such words
trespassent le ior. & la nuit reuient galahos au tref
pass-they the day and the night comes-back Galehaut to-the pavilion
le roi. ne li rois ne voloit que il departist de lui. Au
(of-)the king for the king not wished that he should-depart from him At-the
matin bien tempre reuint galahot a son compaignon &
morning well early came-back Galehaut to his companion and
li conta les paroles la roine. si len dist tant
to-him told the words (of-)the queen so to-him-thereof says so-much

quil se comforta moult des paors quil auoit eus. &
that-he himself comforted much of-the fears that-he had had and
quil ne mena mais si male vie comme il soloit. & li
that-he not led more so ill life as he was-wont and to-him
ramende li cors. & le vis que il auoit eu pale & debatu.
mends the body and the face which he had had pale and beaten
& li oeil que il auoit eu rouges & enfleis si reuint
and the eyes which he had had red and swollen so came-back-he
auques en sa biaute. Et galahos en est moult lies si
somewhat into his beauty And Galehaut thereof is very glad so
li demande. sire madame me demandera ia de vous que
to-him asks lord my-lady me will-ask soon of you what
len responderai ie. sire fait il ce que miex vous en
to-her-thereof shall-answer I lord says he this that best you thereof
samblera. Car en vos est des ore mais. Ie sai bien fait
will-seem For in yours is-it from now on I know well says
galahos que ele vous voldra demain veoir & iel loeroie
Galehaut that she you will-wish tomorrow to-see and I-it would-advise
bien. Sire fait li cheualiers cest .j. iours que voldroie ia
well Lord says the knight this-is a day that I-would-wish already
auoir a honor & a ioie trespasse. & lors li atenroie
to-have with honor and with joy passed and then to-him would-fail
li cuers. & galahos le voit bien si le laist atant ester
the heart and Galehaut it sees well so it leaves thereupon be
& sen reuait au tref le roi. & si tost comme
and himself-thence goes-back to-the pavilion (of-)the king and as soon as
la roine le voit si li demande noueles. & il li dist.
the queen him sees so of-him asks news and he to-her says
Dame trop est encore tost. Mais nous le saurons entre ci
Lady too is-it yet soon But we it shall-know between here
& demain. Que en dires vous fait ele il en est en vous
and tomorrow What thereof say you says she it thereof is in you

de haster & de laissier. Or men faites autretel honte
to hasten and to leave Now to-me-thereof do the-same shame
comme vous uoldries que ie vous en feisse se ie lauoie.
as you would-wish that I you thereof did if I him-had
& galahos commenche a rire & la dame de malahot si
and Galehaut begins to laugh and the lady of malehaut so
tient moult pres si espie & escoute lor paroles. Car ele
holds very near so spies and listens-to their words For she
quide bien sauoir quel cose il porcachent. si se tenra
thinks well to-know what thing they contrive so herself will-hold
moult a hounie sensi le pert que plus nen sache.
much for shamed if-thus it she-loses that more not-thereof she-knows

Ensi ala galahos a son compaignon au main & au
Thus went Galehaut to his companion at-the morning and at-the
soir. Et a chascune fois que il reuenoit li demandoit
evening And at each time that he came-back of-him asked
la roine que il auoit troue. la nuit vint galahos la ou il
the queen what he had found the night came Galehaut there where he
soloit. & lendemain se lieue bien matin & vient a son
was-wont and the-next-day himself rises well early and comes to his
compaignon si li dist quil ni a plus. hui fait il
companion so to-him says that-it not-there has more today says he
couient que la roine vous voie. Sire fait il pour dieu faites
it-behooves that the queen you see Lord says he for God make
que nus nel sache fors nous & elle. Car il a teus gens
that anyone not-it may-know except us and her For it has such people
en la cort monseignor le roi artu que me connoistroient
in the court (of-)my-lord the king Arthur who me would-know
bien se il me veoient. Or naies garde fait galahos que
well if they me saw Now not-have fear says Galehaut for
ien penserai moult bien. Atant reprent de lui congie
I-thereof shall-think very well Thereupon takes-again-he of him leave

si apele son senescal. Gardes fait il se ie vous enuoie
so calls his seneschal See says he if I you send
sempres querre que vous vengies au roi. & mamenes mon
soon to-seek that you come to-the king and me-bring my
compaignon auoeques vous. si que nus ne sache par vous
companion with you so that anyone not may-know by you
que che soit il. sire fait il a vostre plaisir. lors reuient
that this be he lord says he at your pleasure then comes-back
galahos au tref le roi. & la roine li demande
Galehaut to-the pavilion (of-)the king and the queen of-him asks
quels noueles. Dame fait il asses beles. venue est la flors
what news Lady says he enough fair come is the flower
des cheualiers de tout le monde. Diex fait ele comment
of-the knights of all the world God says she how
le verrai ie. Mais iel voeil veoir en tel maniere que nus
him shall-see I But I-him wish to-see in such manner that anyone
nel sache que che soit il fors moi & vous. Car ie ne
not-it may-know that this be he except me and you For I not
voeil mie que autres gens en aient aaise. En non dieu
wish at-all that other people thereof have ease In name (of-)God
fait galahos ensint iert il. Car il dist que il ne voldroit
says Galehaut thus will-be it For he says that he not would-wish
por nule rien que les gens de la maison le roi le
for any thing that the people of the house (of-)the king him
connussent. Comment fait ele est il dont conneus chaiens.
should-know How says she is he then known in-here
Dame fait il tex gens le porroient bien veoir espoir que il
Lady says he such people him could well see perhaps that they
le connoistroient. Diex fait ele qui puet il estre. si mait
him would-know God says she who can he be so me-may-help
diex fait galahos ie ne sai. Que onques ne me dist son
God says Galehaut I not know For ever not me told-he his

non ne qui il est. non fait ele. si mait diex merueilles
name nor who he is no says she so me-may-help God marvels
oi. Or mest asses plus tart que ie le voie. Dame fait
I-hear Now to-me-is enough more late that I him see Lady says
il vous le verres encore anqui & si vous dirai comment.
he you him will-see yet today and so you shall-tell how
Nous irons laual deduire. si li monstre .j. lieu dales
We shall-go down-there to-disport so to-her shows-be a place beside
les pres tout plain darbrissiaus. si aurons le mains de
the meadows all full of-shrubs so shall-have-we the least of
compaignie que nous porrons. la si le verrois .j. poi
company that we shall-be-able there so him will-see-you a little
deuant che quil doie anuitier. ha! fait ele com aues ore
before this that-it ought grow-dark ah says she how have-you now
bien dit biax dols amis. pleust ore au salueor de tout
well said fair sweet friend would-please now to-the savior of all
le monde quil anuitast orendroit. lors commenchent andui
the world that-it grew-dark right-now then begin both
a rire. & la roine lacole & fait trop grant ioie. & la
to laugh and the queen him-embraces and makes too great joy and the
dame de malohaut les voit. si pense que ore est la chose
lady of malehaut them sees so thinks that now is the thing
plus hastiue quele ne seut. si sen prent moult garde.
more hasty than-she — was-wont so herself-thereof takes much heed
& ne vient laiens cheualier quele ne lesgarde en mi le
and not comes in-there knight that-she not him-look-at in middle the
vis. Moult fait la roine grant ioie del cheualier qui venus
face Much makes the queen great joy for-the knight who come
est. & moult li tarde que la nuis viegne. si entent tant
is and much to-her is-late that the night may-come so attends so-much
a parler & a deuiser por le iour oublier que il lui anuie.
to speak and to chat for the day to-forget that it her annoys

Ensi passent le iour tant que vint apres souper que il fu
Thus pass-they the day until that came after supper that it was
auespri. la roine prent galahot par la main. & si apele la
evening the queen takes Galehaut by the hand and so calls the
dame de malohaut auoeques li. & damoisele lore de carduel.
lady of malehaut with her and damsel Laure of carlisle
& vne soie damoisele sans plus qui auoit este entour li
and a her damsel without more who had been around her
tous iours. si sentorne contreval les preis tout droit la
all days so herself-thence-turns down the meadows all straight there
ou galahos auoit dit. Et quant il orent .j. poi alei galahos
where Galehaut had said And when they had a little gone Galehaut
regarde & voit .j. escuier si lapele & li dist. que il aille
looks and sees a squire so him-calls and to-him says that he go
a son senescal & li die que il viegne a lui. & li
to his seneschal and to-him may-say that he may-come to him and to-him
monstre en quel lieu. Et quant la roine loit si le regarde
shows in what place And when the queen it-hears so him looks-at
& dist. Comment fait ele est il vostre senescax. nenil dame
and says How says she is he your seneschal no lady
mais il venra auoeques lui. Atant vienent sous les arbres
but he will-come with him Thereupon come-they under the trees
si sassient entre galahos & la roine loing des autres
so sit-down between-them Galehaut and the queen far from-the others
a vne part. & les autres dames se merueillent moult de
to a part and the other ladies themselves marvel much at
ce queles sont si priueement. Et li valles vient au senescal
this that-they are so privately And the lad comes to-the seneschal
si fist son message. & chil prist tantost le cheualier si
so did his message and that-one took at-once the knight so
passent outre liaue. & vindrent tout contreval les pres
pass-they beyond the-water and came all down the meadows

si com li valles lor enseigna. & il furent andoi si bel
so as the lad to-them showed and they were both so fair
cheualier que por noiant quesist on plus biax en lor pais.
knights that for nothing would-seek one more fair in their country
Quant il aprochierent les dames les esgardent. si connut
When they approached the ladies them watch so knew
tantost la dame de malohaut le cheualier. que maint ior
at-once the lady of malehaut the knight for many day
lauoit eu en sa baillie. Et por che quele ne voloit quil
him-had-she had in her keeping And for this that-she not wished that-he
la reconneust si senbroncha. & se traioit pres de dame
her should-recognize so bowed-her-head and herself drew near to lady
lore. & chil passent outre si les salue li senescax. &
Laure and they pass beyond so them greets the seneschal and
galahos dist a la roine. vees chi le millor cheualier del
Galehaut says to the queen see here the best knight of-the
monde. liquex est che fait la roine. Dame fait il liquels
world which-one is this says the queen Lady says he which-one
le vous samble estre. Certes fait ele il sont andui moult
it you seems to-be Certainly says she they are both very
biau cheualier. Mais ie ne voi cors ou il deust auoir la
fair knights But I not see body where there should have the
moitie de proece que li noirs cheualiers auoit. Dame fait
half of prowess that the black knight had Lady says
galahos. che sachies vous bien que chest li vns de ches .ij.
Galehaut this know you well that this-is the one of these two

The Meeting in the Meadow

XXXIX

The knight trembles so that he can barely greet the queen and never looks her in the face. Galehaut leaves them, and she questions him: he admits the black arms and the red, and that she made him knight, for the king never girded him with a sword. She leads him through his deeds, Nohaut, the ford, the Dolorous Guard, the night he came out past the king, and the damsel in the turret he forgot, until she knows he is Lancelot of the Lake. He confesses that all he did in arms was for her; then the Lady of Malehaut coughs, he knows her, and weeps for fear, and he tells how his love was born of her farewell, 'To God, fair sweet friend.'

Atant vienent deuant la roine. & li cheualiers tramble si
Thereupon come-they before the queen and the knight trembles so
durement que a paines puet la roine saluer. Et a toute
hard that with pains can-he the queen greet And has all
la color perdue. si que la roine sen merueille moult.
the color lost so that the queen herself-thereof marvels much
& li senescaus les salue & aussi fait li autres mais cou
and the seneschal them greets and likewise does the other but this
est moult pourusement. & fiche ses iex en terre comme
is very fearfully and fixes his eyes on ground as
hons hontex. & lors se pense la roine que ce est il. Et
man ashamed and then herself thinks the queen that this is he And
galahos dist au senescal. ales si faites compaignie a ches
Galehaut says to-the seneschal go so make company to these
damoiseles la qui trop sont seules. Chil fait che que
damsels there who too are alone That-one does this that
ses sires li commande. & la roine prent le cheualier par
his lord him commands and the queen takes the knight by
la main la ou il est a ienols & lassiet deuant li si
the hand there where he is on knees and him-seats before her so

li fait moult bel samblant & li dist en riant. sire
to-him makes very fair semblance and to-him says in laughing lord
moult vous auons desire. Tant que dieu merci & la
much you have-we desired So-much that God thanks and there
galahot qui chi est or vous veions. Et neporquant encor
Galehaut who here is now you we-see And nevertheless still
ne sai ie mie se chest li cheualiers que ie demant. &
not know I at-all if this-is the knight whom I ask and
galahos ma dit que cestes vous. Mais encore voldroie ie
Galehaut me-has said that this-is you But yet would-wish I
bien sauoir qui vous estes par vostre bouce se vo plaisirs
well to-know who you are by your mouth if your pleasure
estoit. Et chil respont quil ne seit qui. Ne onques
were And that-one answers that-he not knows who Nor ever
vne fois ne la regarda en mi le vis. & la roine
one time not her looked-at-he in middle the face and the queen
sen merueille moult que il puet auoir. & tant que
herself-thereof marvels much what he can have and so-much that
ele soupechoune vne partie de che que il a. & galahos
she suspects a part of this that he has and Galehaut
qui honteus le voit & esbahi sapense. que il diroit
who ashamed him sees and amazed bethinks-himself that he would-tell
anchois a la roine son pense seul a seul. si regarde
sooner to the queen his thought alone with alone so looks
& dist moult en haut que les dames loient. Certes fait
and says very on high so-that the ladies it-hear Certainly says
il moult sui vilains. que toutes ches dames nont que
he very am-I churlish for all these ladies not-have but
.j. seul cheualier en compaignie. ains sont seules. lors
a single knight in company rather are-they alone then
se dreche & vient la ou les dames seoient. & elles
himself raises and comes there where the ladies sat and they

saillent encontre lui & il les rasiet. Et puis commenchent
leap toward him and he them reseats And then begin
a parler de mainte chose. & la roine met em paroles
to speak of many thing and the queen puts in words
le cheualier & si li dist. biax dols sires porcoi vous
the knight and so to-him says fair sweet lord wherefore you
celes vous vers moi. Chertes il ni a mie porcoi. &
conceal you toward me Certainly it not-there has at-all wherefore and
neporquant tant me poes vous bien dire. se vous iestes
nevertheless so-much me can you well tell if you are
cil qui auant ier venqui lassamblee. comment fait
that-one who the-day before-yesterday won the-assembly how says
ele nauies vous vnes armes noires. Dont nestes vous chil
she not-had you some arms black Then not-are you that-one
qui mesire Gauuain enuoia les .iij. cheuax. Dame fait il
to-whom my-lord Gawain sent the three horses Lady says he
oie. & en estes vous chil qui venquistes le premier iour
yes and then are you that-one who won the first day
& le secont. Dame fait il non sui voir. lors saperchut la
and the second Lady says he not am-I truly then perceived the
roine quil ne voloit mie connoistre quil leust vencue. si
queen that-he not wished at-all to-acknowledge that-he it-had won so
len prise moult. Or me dites fait ele. qui vous fist
him-thereof prizes much Now me tell says she who you made
cheualier. Dame fait il vous. Ie fait ele quant. dame fait
knight Lady says he you I says she when lady says
il menbre vous il que vns cheualiers vint a monseignor le
he remember you it that a knight came to my-lord the
roi artu a camaalot qui estoit naures parmi le cors. &
king Arthur at camelot who was wounded through the body and
dune espee parmi le teste. & que vns valles vint a lui
with-a sword through the head and that a lad came to him

le vendredi au soir. & si fu cheualier le diemenche.
the Friday at-the evening and so was knight the Sunday
de che fait ele me souient il bien. Et se diex vous ait
of this says she me remembers it well And so God you may-help
fait ele fustes vous cil qui la damoisele amena au
says she were you that-one whom the damsel brought to-the
roi. vestue de robe blance. Dame fait il oil. porcoi dites
king clothed in robe white Lady says he yes wherefore say
vous dont que ie vous fis cheualier. Dame por ce que
you then that I you made knight Lady for this that
il est voirs. Car la coustume estoit el roialme de logres
it is true For the custom was in-the kingdom of logres
que cheualiers ne pooit estre fais sans espee chaindre.
that knight not could be made without sword to-gird
& chil de qui il tient lespee le fait cheualier &
and that-one from whom he holds the-sword him makes knight and
de vous le tieng ie. que li rois ne men douna point.
from you it hold I for the king not me-thereof gave none
por ce di ie que vous me feistes cheualier. Chertes fait
for this say I that you me made knight Certainly says
ele de che sui ie moult lie. & ou alastes vous diluec.
she of this am I very glad and where went you from-there
Dame ie en alai a .j. secors a la dame de nohaut. si
Lady I thence went to a succor for the lady of nohaut so
i vint puis mesire kex. qui se combati auec moi. Et
there came after my-lord Kay who himself fought with me And
entre .ij. mandastes me vous nule rien. Oil fait il ie vous
between two sent me you any thing Yes says he I you
enuoiai .ij. puceles. par mon chief il est voirs fait ele. &
sent two maidens by my head it is true says she and
quant vous repairastes de nohaut trouastes vous en vostre
when you returned from nohaut found you on your

venue nul homme. qui se reclamoit de par moi. Dame
coming any man who himself claimed from by me Lady
oil .j. cheualier qui gardoit .j. gue. si me dist que ie
yes a knight who guarded a ford so me said that I
alasse ius de mon cheual. & ie li demandai a qui
should-go down from my horse and I of-him asked to whom
il estoit. & il me dist quil estoit a vous. Ales dist il
he was and he me said that-he was to you Go said he
tost ius. & ie li demandai qui le commandoit. & il
quickly down and I of-him asked who it commanded and he
dist quil ni auoit commandement se le sien non. Et
said that-it not-there had command except the his not And
ie remis en lestrier le piet destre que ie en auoie ia
I put-back into the-stirrup the foot right which I thereof had already
oste. & dis sans faille que il nen auroit hui mais
removed and said without fail that he not-thereof would-have today more
point. si ioustai a lui & sai bien que ie fis outrage.
any so jousted-I with him and know well that I did outrage
Dame si vous en cri merci. & en prenes lamende
Lady so you thereof I-cry mercy and thereof take the-amends
tele com vous plaira. Et la roine li respont comme
such as you will-please And the queen to-him answers as
chele qui bien seit quil ne puet guenchir que siens ne
she who well knows that-he not can swerve that hers not
soit. Certes fait ele moi ne mesfesistes vous rien biaus
be Certainly says she me not wronged you anything fair
dols amis. que il nestoit pas a moi. ains len sais
sweet friend for he not-was at-all to me rather him-thereof know-I
moult maluais gre de che quil vous auoit dit. Car il
very bad will for this that-he you had said For he
en vint a moi. Mais or me dites ou alastes diluec.
thereof came to me But now me tell where went-you from-there

A la dolerouse garde fait il. & qui la conquist. Dame
To the dolorous guard says he and who it conquered Lady
ie i entrai. & vous i vi ie onques. Dame oil plus
I there entered and you there saw I ever Lady yes more
dune fois. En quel lieu fait ele. Dame .j. iour que ie
than-one time In what place says she Lady a day that I
vous demandai se vous vaudries ens entrer. & vous deistes
you asked if you would-wish in to-enter and you said
que oil. si esties moult esbahie par samblant. & che vous
that yes so were-you very amazed by semblance and this you
di ie par .ij. fois. Quel escu fait ele portastes vous. Dame
say I by two times What shield says she bore you Lady
ie portoie auant .j. escu blanc a vne bare vermeille de
I bore first a shield white with a bar red in
bellic. & a lautre fois iauoie .ij. bendes. Ches enseignes
bend and at the-other time I-had two bends These tokens
connois ie bien. Et vous i vi ie puis. Dame oil la nuit
know I well And you there saw I after Lady yes the night
que vous quidies auoir perdu monseignor Gauuain vostre
that you thought to-have lost my-lord Gawain your
neueu & ses compaignons & que les gens del castel
nephew and his companions and that the people of-the castle
crioient prenes le prenes le. & ie men ving hors
cried take him take him and I myself-thence came out
.j. escu a mon col. a .iij. bendes de bellic vermeilles.
a shield at my neck with three bends in bend red
& messires li rois estoit a vnes loges auoeques vous. &
and my-lord the king was at some galleries with you and
quant ie ving vers lui. si crierent prendes le rois prendes
when I came toward him so cried-they take him king take
le rois. & il me laissa aler soie merci. Certes fait ele
him king and he me let go his mercy Certainly says she

ce poise moi. Car se il vous eust pris li encantement
this grieves me For if he you had taken the enchantments
del castel fuissent remes. Mais or me dites. fustes vous
of-the castle would-have remained But now me tell were you
celui qui ietastes monseignor Gauuain hors de la prison
that-one who threw my-lord Gawain out of the prison
& ses compaignons autresi. Dame ge i aidai a mon
and his companions likewise Lady I there helped to my
pooir. En toutes les choses que vous maues dites nai ie
power In all the things that you me-have told not-have I
encore troue se voir non. Mais or me dites por dieu.
yet found except true not But now me tell for God
qui est vne damoisele qui vint la nuit en vne tournele
who is a damsel who came the night into a turret
desor lostel monseignor le roi. vestue dune cainse blance.
above the-lodging (of-)my-lord the king clothed in-a shift white
Certes dame ce fu la pucele el monde vers qui ie
Certainly lady this was the maiden in-the world toward whom I
mespris onques plus. Car madame del lac qui me nouri
wronged ever most For my-lady of-the lake who me reared
le mauoit enuoie. & ele me troua en cele tornele. si
her me-had sent and she me found in that turret so
i fu asses honeree pour moi. Et quant ie oi les
there was enough honored for me And when I heard the
noueles de monseignor Gauuain qui prins estoit. si fui
news of my-lord Gawain who taken was so was-I
asses angoisseus si me parti de la damoisele qui avoec
enough anguished so myself parted from the damsel who with
moi voloit venir. & ie li priai par cele foi que ele
me wished to-come and I her begged by that faith which she
me deuoit que ele ne se meust deuant quele veist
me owed that she not herself should-move before that-she might-see

monseignor Gauuain ou moi. Si fui souspris de si grans
my-lord Gawain or me So was-I overtaken by so great
affaires que ie lentroubliai. ne a li ne retornai puis. &
affairs that I her-forgot nor to her not returned-I after and
ele fu plus loiax vers moi que ie ne fui cortois vers
she was more loyal toward me than I — was courteous toward
lui. que ele ne se mut onques puis auant quele oi
her for she not herself moved ever after before that-she heard
les noueles de moi. & ce fu grant piece apres. & quant
the news of me and this was great while after and when
la roine loi parler de la damoisele. si sot bien tantost
the queen heard speak of the damsel so knew-she well at-once
que cestoit lancelos. si lenquist moult bien de toutes
that this-was Lancelot so him-questioned-she very well of all
les choses que ele auoit oi de lui retraire. & de toutes
the things that she had heard of him recounted and in all
le troua voir disant. Or me dites fait ele. puis que vous
him found truth telling Now me tell says she since that you
fustes cheualiers partis de camaalot. vous vi ie onques
were knight parted from camelot you saw I ever
puis. Dame fait il oil. Teile eure que vous meustes moult
after Lady says he yes Such hour that you me-had very
grant mestier. Car ieusse este ochis se vous ne fuissies.
great need For I-would-have been killed if you not had-been
qui me feistes fors de laigue traire a monseignor ywain.
who me made out of the-water draw by my-lord Yvain
Comment fait ele fustes vous chou cui daguenes li coars
How says she were you this whom Daguenet the coward
prist. Dame ie ne sai qui ce fu. Mais prins fu ie sans
took Lady I not know who this was But taken was I without
faille. & ou alies vous. dame ie sieuoie .j. cheualier. &
fail and where went you lady I followed a knight and

quant vous fustes partis de nous a la daraine fois ou
when you were parted from us at the last time where
alastes vous. Dame apres .j. cheualier qui ie sieuoie. &
went you Lady after a knight whom I followed and
combatistes i vous. Dame oil. Et ou alastes vous apres.
fought there you Lady yes And where went you after
Dame ie trouai .ij. gaians qui mochisent mon cheual. Mais
Lady I found two giants who me-killed my horse But
mesires ywains qui ait boine auenture me douna le
my-lord Yvain who may-have good fortune me gave the
sien. ha! fait ele dont sai ie bien qui vous estes. vous
his ah says she then know I well who you are you
aues non lancelos del lac. & il se taist. par dieu piecha
have name Lancelot of-the lake and he himself is-silent by God long-ago
que on le seit a cort fait ele. Mesire Gauuain aporta
that one it knows at court says she My-lord Gawain brought
vostre non a cort premierement. lors li conte tout ensi
your name to court first then to-him tells all thus
comme mesires Gauuain auoit dit que chestoit la tierche
as my-lord Gawain had said that it-was the third
assamblee. Lors li demande porcoi il auoit souffert que
assembly Then of-him asks wherefore he had suffered that
li pires hom del mont lauoit mene par le fraim. Dame
the worst man of-the world him-had led by the bridle Lady
comme chil qui nauoie point de mon cuer ne de mon
as that-one who not-had point of my heart nor of my
cors. Or me dites fait ele. fustes vous onques antan a
body Now me tell says she were you ever last-year at
lassamblee. Dame fait il oil. & quels armes portastes vous.
the-assembly Lady says he yes and what arms bore you
dame vnes toutes vermeilles. par mon chief fait ele vous
lady some all red by my head says she you

dites voir. Et auant ier a lassamblee porcoi i
say true And the-day before-yesterday at the-assembly wherefore there
fistes vous tant darmes. & il commenche a souspirer
did you so-much of-arms and he begins to sigh
moult moult durement. Et la roine le retient moult court
very very hard And the queen him holds very short
comme chele qui bien seit comment il li est.
as she who well knows how it with-him is

Dites moi fait ele tout seurement comment il vous est.
Tell me says she all surely how it with-you is
que ie ne vous en descouuerai ia. Et ie sai bien que
for I not you thereof shall-uncover ever And I know well that
por aucune dame aues vous che fait. & dites moi qui ele
for some lady have you this done and tell me who she
est par la foi que vous me deues. ha! dame fait il bien voi
is by the faith that you me owe ah lady says he well see-I
que il me couient a dire. Dame che estes vous. Ie fait ele.
that it me behooves to tell Lady this are you I says she
voire dame. por moi ne pechoiastes vous mie les .iij. glaiues
truly lady for me not broke you at-all the three lances
que ma pucele vous aporta. Car ie mestoie bien mise hors
which my maiden you brought For I myself-had well put out
del mandement. Dame fait il ie fis por aus ce que ie dui.
of-the message Lady says he I did for them this that I ought
& por vous ce que ie poi. Or me dites toutes les choses
and for you this that I could Now me tell all the things
que vous aues faites pour qui les feistes vous. Dame por
that you have done for whom them did you Lady for
vous fait il. Comment fait ele ames me vos tant. Dame
you says he How says she love me you so-much Lady
fait il ie naim tant ne moi ne autrui. & tres quant
says he I not-love so-much neither me nor another and since when

fait ele mames vous tant. Dame fait il des leure que ie
says she me-love you so-much Lady says he from the-hour that I
fui apeles cheualiers. & si ne lestoie mie. Et par la foi
was called knight and so not it-was-I at-all And by the faith
que vous me deues dont vient chele amor que vous aues
that you me owe whence comes that love that you have
en moi mise. A ches paroles que la roine disoit auint que
in me put At these words that the queen said it-befell that
la dame del pui de malohaut sestousi tout a essient. &
the lady of-the pui of malehaut coughed all on purpose and
drecha la teste que ele auoit enbroncie. Et chil lentendi
raised the head which she had bowed And that-one her-heard
maintenant qui maintes fois lauoit oie. & il lesgarde si la
at-once who many times her-had heard and he her-looks-at so her
connut. si en ot teil paor & teile angoisse en son cuer
knew so thereof had-he such fear and such anguish in his heart
que il ne pot respondre a che que la roine li disoit.
that he not could answer to this that the queen to-him said
si commencha a souspirer moult durement. & les larmes
so began-he to sigh very hard and the tears
li cheurent tot contreual les iex. si espesement que li
to-him fell all down-from the eyes so thickly that the
samis dont il estoit vestus en fu moillies dusques sour
samite of-which he was clothed thereof was wet up-to on
les genols. Et quant il plus esgardoit la dame de malohaut
the knees And the-more he more looked-at the lady of malehaut
plus estoit ses cuers a malaise. De ceste chose se prist
more was his heart at unease Of this thing herself took
la roine garde. si vit quil esgarda moult piteusement
the queen heed so saw that-he looked very piteously
la ou les dames estoient. & ele laraisoune. Dites moi
there where the ladies were and she him-addresses Tell me

fait ele dont cele amor vient que ie vous demant. & il
says she whence that love comes which I you ask and he
sesforce moult de parler au plus quil puet. & dist
himself-forces much to speak at-the most that-he can and says
dame des lors que ie vous ai dit. Comment fu ce
lady from the-time that I you have said How was this
dont fait ele. Dame fait il vous le feistes faire. Qui de
then says she Lady says he you it made do Who of
moi feistes vostre ami. se vostre bouce ne me menti. Mon
me made your friend if your mouth not me lied My
ami fait ele & comment. Dame fait il ie men ving
friend says she and how Lady says he I myself-thence came
deuant vous quant ie prins congie de monseignor le roi
before you when I took leave of my-lord the king
tous armees fors de mon chief. & de mes mains si vous
all armed except of my head and of my hands so you
commandai a dieu & dis que iestoie vostre cheualiers en
commended-I to God and said that I-was your knight in
quelconques lieu que ie fuisse. & vous me desistes que
whatever place that I were and you me said that
vostres cheualiers & vos amis volies vous que ie fuisse.
your knight and your friend wished you that I were
Et puis dis a dieu dame. & vous desistes a dieu biax
And then said-I to God lady and you said to God fair
dols amis. ne onques puis del cuer ne me pot issir. &
sweet friend nor ever after from-the heart not me could go-out and
ce fu li mos qui me fera preudome se iel sui ia. ne
this was the word which me will-make worthy-man if I-it am ever nor
onques puis ne fui en si grant meschief que de cest mot
ever after not was-I in so great mischance that of this word
ne me menbrast. Chis mos me comforte en tous mes anuis.
not me remembered This word me comforts in all my troubles

Chis mos ma de tous maus garanti. & ma getei de
This word me-has from all ills guaranteed and me-has thrown from
tous les periex. Chis mos ma saoule en tous mes fains.
all the perils This word me-has sated in all my hungers
Chis mos ma fait riche en toutes mes grans pouertes.
This word me-has made rich in all my great poverties

The Kiss

XL

The queen says she meant the word less earnestly than he took it, and, seeing him weep as he looks toward the ladies, accuses him of loving one of them. He nearly swoons, and she calls Galehaut, who pleads for him as the most loyal of hearts and the maker of the peace. At Galehaut's prayer she grants that he shall be all hers and she his, and, the three drawn together as if in counsel, she takes him by the chin and kisses him. She asks Galehaut to keep their secret; he in return asks for his companion's company, which she grants, and she tells Galehaut that it is Lancelot of the Lake, the son of King Ban.

Par foi dist la roine chi ot mot dit de moult boine
By faith said the queen here had-it word said of very good
eure & diex en soit aoures quant il dire le me fist.
hour and God thereof be adored since he say it me made
Mais ie nel pris pas si a chertes comme vous feistes.
But I not-it prized at-all so in earnest as you did
& a maint cheualier lai ge dit ou ie ne pensai onques
and to many knight it-have I said where I not thought ever
fors le dit. Et vostres pensers ne fu mie vilains anchois
but the saying And your thought not was at-all churlish rather
fu dols & deboinaires si vous en est bien auenu. que
was-it sweet and gracious so you thereof is well happened that

preudomme vous a fait. & neporquant la coustume nest
worthy-man you has made and nevertheless the custom not-is
mie teile des cheualiers qui font grans samblans a maintes
at-all such of-the knights who make great semblances to many
dames de tel chose dont moult lor est petit al cuer.
ladies of such thing of-which very to-them is little at-the heart
Et vostre samblant me demonstre que vous ames ne sai
And your semblance me shows that you love not know-I
lequele de ces dames la plus que vous ne faites moi. Car
which of these ladies there more than you — do me For
vous en aues plore de paor. Ne noses esgarder vers
you thereof have wept for fear Nor not-dare-you look toward
eles de droite esgardeure. si maperchoi bien que vostres
them with straight looking so me-perceive-I well that your
pensers nest mie a moi tant com vous me faites le
thought not-is at-all on me so-much as you me make the
samblant. Et par la foi que vous deues la rien que vous
semblance And by the faith that you owe the thing that you
plus ames dites moi lequele des .iij. vous ames tant. ha!
most love tell me which of-the three you love so-much ah
dame por dieu merci. si voirement mait diex onques
lady for God mercy so truly me-may-help God ever
nule deles not mon cuer en sa baillie. Ce na mestier
any of-them not-had my heart in her keeping This not-has use
fait la roine. vous nen poes riens embler. Car iai
says the queen you not-thereof can anything steal For I-have
veue maintes choses autreteles. & Ie voi bien que vostre
seen many things like-these and I see well that your
cuer est la comment que li cors est ci. & de che seit
heart is there however that the body is here and of this knows
ele bien por voir comment ele le pora metre a maleise
she well for truth how she it will-be-able put at unease

Car ele quidoit bien que il ne pensast damors sa li
For she thought well that he not thought of-love except-of her
non. Ia mar i eust il fait por li se la iornee non
not Never ill there would-have he done for her except the day not
des noires armes. Mais ele se delitoit durement en se
of-the black arms But she herself delighted greatly in his
mesaise veoir & esgarder. Et chil en fu si angoisseus
discomfort to-see and watch And that-one thereof was so anguished
que par .j. poi quil ne se pasme. Mais la paors des
that by a little that-he not himself swoons But the fear of-the
dames quil voit le retient. & la roine meismes le douta
ladies whom-he sees him holds-back and the queen herself it feared
qui le vit muer & cangier. si le prinst par lespaule
who him saw change and alter so him took by the-shoulder
que il ne caist. & apele galahot. & il saut sus &
that he not should-fall and calls Galehaut and he leaps up and
vient deuant li courant. & il voit que ses compains est
comes before her running and he sees that his companion is
ensi conrees si en a grant angoisse a son cuer. &
thus arrayed so thereof has-be great anguish at his heart and
dist ha! dame dites moi por dieu que il a eu. & la
says ah lady tell me for God what he has had and the
roine li conte ce que ele li ot mis deuant. A! dame
queen to-him tells this that she to-him had put before Ah lady
fait galahos pour dieu merci. vous le me pories bien
says Galehaut for God mercy you him me could well
tolir par tex courous. & che seroit trop grans domages.
take-away by such angers and this would-be too great harm
Chertes fait ele che seroit mon. Mais saues vous porcoi
Certainly says she this would-be indeed But know you wherefore
il a fait tant darmes. Chertes dame fait il naie. sire fait
he has done so-much of-arms Certainly lady says he no lord says

ele sil est voirs che quil ma dit cest por moi. Dame
she if-it is true this that-he me-has said this-is for me Lady
fait il si voirement mait diex bien le poes croire. Car
says he so truly me-may-help God well it can-you believe For
autresi com il est plus preus dautres hommes. autresi est
just as he is more valiant than-other men likewise is
ses cuers plus vrais que tout li autre. voirement disies
his heart more true than all the others truly said
vous bien quil estoit preudom fait ele. se vous seusies
you well that-he was worthy-man says she if you knew
que il a fait puis darmes. que il fu cheualiers. lors li
what he has done since of-arms that he was knight then to-him
conte toutes les cheualeries si comme il li auoit dites.
tells-she all the deeds-of-knighthood so as he to-her had told
& quil li auoit conneu quil auoit portees les armes
and that-he to-her had confessed that-he had borne the arms
vermeilles antan a lautre assamblee. & sachies fait ele
red last-year at the-other assembly and know says she
quil a tout che fait por .j. seul mot. lors li deuise
that-he has all this done for a single word then to-him devises
si com vous aues oi le mot que ele auoit dit. ha! dame
so as you have heard the word that she had said ah lady
fait galahos por dieu aies ent merci. & por ses grans
says Galehaut for God may-have thereof mercy and for his great
desertes. autresi com iai fait por vous ce que vous me
deserts just as I-have done for you this that you me
demandastes. Quel merci fait ele voles vous que iou en
asked What mercy says she wish you that I thereof
aie. Dame vous saues que il vous aime sor toute rien.
have Lady you know that he you loves above all thing
& a fait plus por vous que onques cheualiers ne fist por
and has done more for you than ever knight — did for

feme. Et sachies que la pais de moi & de monseignor
woman And know that the peace of me and of my-lord
le roi ne fust ia se il ne fust & se ses cors ne la
the king not were ever if he not were and if his body not it
feist. Chertes fait ele ie sai bien que il a fait plus por
made Certainly says she I know well that he has done more for
moi que ie ne poroie deseruir. se il nauoit ore plus fait
me than I — could deserve if he not-had now more done
que la pais porcachie. Ne il ne me poroit nule chose
than the peace procured Nor he not me could any thing
requerre dont ie le puisse escondire belement. Mais il
require which I him may refuse fairly But he
ne me requiert nule rien. ains est si dolans & mas
not me requires any thing rather is-he so sorrowful and downcast
& ne fina onques puis de plorer que il regarda vers
and not ceased ever since of weeping that he looked toward
ces dames. neporquant ie ne le mescroi mie damors que
these ladies nevertheless I not him disbelieve at-all of-love that
il ait vers nule deles. Mais il se doute que aucune
he may-have toward any of-them But he himself fears that some
nel connoisse. Dame che dist galahos de ce ne couient il
him know Lady this said Galehaut of this not behooves it
tenir nule parole. Mais aies merci de lui. que plus vous
to-hold any word But may-have mercy on him for more you
aime que soi meisme. por ce si mait diex que ie
he-loves than him self for this so me-may-help God that I
ne sauoie quant il vint de son couine fors tant que il
not knew when he came of his condition but so-much that he
doutoit estre conneus. ne onques plus ne men descouri.
feared to-be known nor ever more not me-thereof uncovered-he
Ie en aurai fait ele tel merci com vous voldrois. Car
I thereof shall-have says she such mercy as you will-wish For

vous aues fait ce que ie vous requis si doi bien faire
you have done this that I you required so ought-I well do
ce que vous voldrois. Mais il ne me prie de rien.
this that you will-wish But he not me begs of anything
Dame fait galahos chertes il nen a le pooir. Car on
Lady says Galehaut certainly he not-thereof has the power For one
ne puet nule rien amer que on ne dout. Mais ie vous pri
not can any thing love that one not fear But I you beg
por lui. Et se ie ne vous em prioie si vous en deuries
for him And if I not you thereof begged so you thereof ought
vous porcachier. Car plus riche tresoir ne porries vous mie
you procure For more rich treasure not could you at-all
conquerre. Certes fait ele iel sai bien: & ien ferai
conquer Certainly says she I-it know well and I-thereof shall-do
quanque vous men commanderes. dame fait galahos grans
whatever you me-thereof will-command lady says Galehaut great
mercis. & ie vous pri que vos li dones vostre amor &
thanks and I you beg that you to-him give your love and
que vous le prenes a vostre cheualier a tous iours. &
that you him take for your knight for all days and
deuenes sa loiax dame a tous les iors de vostre vie. Si
become his loyal lady for all the days of your life So
laures fait plus riche que se vous li dounies tout
him-will-have-you made more rich than if you to-him gave all
le monde. Ensi fait ele lotroi ie que il soit tous miens &
the world Thus says she it-grant I that he be all mine and
ie soie toute sieue. Et par vous soient amende li mesfait
I be all his And by you be amended the misdeeds
& li trespas des couenenches. Dame fait il grant mercis.
and the trespasses of-the covenants Lady says he great thanks
Mais ore couient commencement de seurte. vous nen
But now behooves beginning of surety you not-thereof

deuiseres ia choze nule fait la roine que ie ne face. Dame
will-devise ever thing any says the queen that I not do Lady
fait galahos grant mercis. dont le baisies deuant moi par
says Galehaut great thanks then him kiss before me for
commenchement damor vraie. del baisier fait ele nest il
beginning of-love true of-the kissing says she not-is it
mie ore liex ne tans. Et nen doutes mie. que ien sui
at-all now place nor time And not-thereof doubt at-all that I-thereof am
aussi volentieue com il est. Mais ches dames sont iluec qui
as eager as he is But these ladies are there who
moult se merueillent que nous auons tant fait. si ne
much themselves marvel that we have so-long done so not
porroit estre que eles ne le veissent. & neporquant sil volt
could it-be that they not it should-see and nevertheless if-he wishes
ie le baiserai moult volentiers. & il en est si lies & si
I him shall-kiss very willingly and he thereof is so glad and so
esbahis que il ne puet respondre fors tant. dame fait il
amazed that he not can answer except so-much lady says he
grans mercis. ha! dame fait galahos nen doutes vous ia
great thanks ah lady says Galehaut not-thereof doubt you ever
del sien voloir car il i est tous. Si nous trairons tout
of-the his will for he there is all So us shall-draw all
.iij. ensamble aussi comme se nous conseillisiens. De coi
three together just as if we took-counsel For what
me feroie ore proier fait ele. plus le veul que vous ne li.
me would-make now beg says she more it I-wish than you — him
Lors se traient tout .iij. ensamble. & font samblant
Then themselves draw all three together and make semblance
de conseillier. Et la roine voit que li cheualiers nen ose
of taking-counsel And the queen sees that the knight not-thereof dares
plus faire. si le prent par le menton & le baise deuant
more do so him takes by the chin and him kisses before

galahot asses longement. si que la dame de malohaut seit
Galehaut enough long so that the lady of malehaut knows
quele le baise. & lors commencha la roine a parler qui
that-she him kisses and then began the queen to speak who
moult estoit sage & vaillans dame. biax dols amis fait ele
very was wise and worthy lady fair sweet friend says she
au cheualier ie sui vostre tant aues fait. & moult en
to-the knight I am yours so-much have-you done and much thereof
ai grant ioie. Or gardes que la chose soit si chelee comme
have-I great joy Now see that the thing be so concealed as
il est mestiers. Car ie sui vne des dames del monde dont
it is needful For I am one of-the ladies of-the world of-whom
on a grignors biens ois. & se mes los empiroit par vous
one has greater goods heard and if my praise worsened by you
ci auroit amor laide & vilaine. & a vous galahot em
here would-have-it love ugly and churlish and to you Galehaut thereof
pri ie qui plus estes sages. Car se maus men venoit ce
beg I who more are wise For if ill me-thereof came this
ne seroit se par vous non. Et se iou en ai ne bien
not would-be except by you not And if I thereof have either good
ne ioie vous laures dounee. Dame fait galahos il nen
or joy you it-will-have given Lady says Galehaut he not-thereof
poroit pas vers vous mesprendre. Mais ie vous ai fait ce
could at-all toward you mistake But I you have done this
que vous me commandastes. Or si seroit bien mestier que
that you me commanded Now so would-be well needful that
vous moissies dune proiere. Car ie vous dis des ier
you me-should-bear of-a prayer For I you said from yesterday
que vous me porries par tans miex aidier que ie vous. Dites
that you me could in time better help than I you Say
fait ele seurement. que il nest riens que vous me seussies
says she surely for it not-is anything that you me could

demander que ie ne feisse. Dame fait il donques maues
ask that I not would-do Lady says he then me-have
vous otroie que vous me donres sa compaignie. Certes
you granted that you me will-give his company Certainly
fait ele se il de ce uos failloit donques auries vous mal
says she if he of this you failed then would-have you ill
emploie le grant meschief que vous auries por lui fait.
employed the great sacrifice that you would-have for him made
Lors prent le cheualier par le main destre & li dist.
Then takes-she the knight by the hand right and to-him says
galahot ie vous doing cest cheualier a tous iors. sauf ce
Galehaut I you give this knight for all days saving this
que ie i aie eu auant. & vous le creantes ensi fait ele.
that I there have had before and you it promise thus says she
& li cheualiers le creante. Et saues vous fait ele a galahot
and the knight it promises And know you says she to Galehaut
que ie vous ai done. Dame fait il nenil. Ie vous ai doune
what I you have given Lady says he no I you have given
fait ele lancelot del lac. le fil au roi ban de benoyc. &
says she Lancelot of-the lake the son of-the king Ban of benoic and
ensi la fait connoistre a galahot qui moult en a grant
thus her makes-she known to Galehaut who very thereof has great
ioie. la grignor que il eust onques mais. Car il auoit asses
joy the greatest that he had ever more For he had enough
oi dire ensi com paroles vont que chou estoit lancelos
heard say thus as words go that this was Lancelot
du lac. & quil estoit li mieudres cheualiers del monde
of-the lake and that-he was the best knight of-the world
poure hom. Et bien sauoit que li rois bans auoit este
poor man And well knew-he that the king Ban had been
moult gentiex hons. & mout puissanz damis & de terre.
very noble man and very mighty in-friends and in land

The Company of Four

XLI

Galehaut sends his companion to his tent and escorts the queen back. At night the Lady of Malehaut comes to the queen at her window and says softly, 'Ah, lady, how good is a company of four.' She has seen all, and reveals that she held the knight in prison a year and a half, gave him the red and the black arms, and once hoped he loved her. A secret is better kept by three than four, the queen says; but the lady answers that the two knights will console each other abroad, and the queen left alone would carry the burden. The queen takes her into the company, and tells her that the knight is Lancelot of the Lake.

Ensi fu li premiers acointemens de lancelot & de la
Thus was the first acquaintance of Lancelot and of the
roine par galahot. Et galahos ne lauoit onques conneu
queen by Galehaut And Galehaut not him-had ever known
que de veoir. & por ce li auoit lancelot fait creanter
but by sight and for this to-him had Lancelot made promise
que il ne li demanderoit son non tant que il le deist
that he not of-him would-ask his name until that he it should-tell
ou autres por lui. lors se leuerent tout troi. & ia
or another for him then themselves rose all three and already
anuitoit durement. Mais il faisoit cler que leuee estoit
grew-dark hard But it was clear for risen was
la lune. si veoit len moult cler par toute la praerie
the moon so saw one very clear through all the meadow
contreval. Atant sen tornent tout .iij. a vne part
down Thereupon themselves-thence turn all three to a part
tout contremont les pres droit vers le tref le roi.
all up the meadows straight toward the pavilion (of-)the king
& li senescax galahos vient apres entre li & les
and the seneschal (of-)Galehaut comes after between him and the

dames. Tant que il vienent endroit les tentes galahot. &
ladies Until that they come opposite the tents (of-)Galehaut and
lors enuoie galahos son compaignon a son tref. & prent
then sends Galehaut his companion to his pavilion and takes
congie a la roine si sen passent outre entre lui &
leave of the queen so themselves-thence pass beyond between him and
le senescal. & galahos conuoie la roine iuscal treif le
the seneschal and Galehaut escorts the queen up-to-the pavilion (of-)the
roi. & quant li rois les voit venir. si demande dont il
king and when the king them sees come so asks whence they
vienent. sire fait galahos nous venons de veoir ces pres
come lord says Galehaut we come from seeing these meadows
a si poi de compaignie comme vous vees. lors sassient
with so little of company as you see then sit-they
& parolent de maintes choses. si sont entre galahot &
and speak of many things so are between Galehaut and
la roine moult a aise. A chief de pieche se lieue
the queen very at ease At-the end of while herself rises
la roine & va couchier en la bertesque & galahos le
the queen and goes to-lie in the bartizan and Galehaut her
conuoie iusques la. & puis le commande a dieu & dist
escorts up-to there and then her commends to God and says
que il ira gesir auoec son compaignon. Dame fait il si
that he will-go to-lie with his companion Lady says he so
le solagerai. ha! fait ele comme aues bien dit. & sen
him shall-solace-I ah says she how have-you well said and so-thereof
sera ia plus aise. Atant sen va galahos & prent
will-be-he now more at-ease Thereupon himself-thence goes Galehaut and takes
congie au roi & dist que il ne li poist mie. que il
leave of-the king and says that it not him grieve at-all that he
ira gesir outre le riuiere auoec sa gent que il ne vit
will-go to-lie beyond the river with his people for he not saw-them

piecha. & il me couient sire moult faire leur volente car
long-ago and it me behooves lord much to-do their will for
moult maiment. Chertes sire fait mesire Gauuain. vous aues
much me-they-love Certainly lord says my-lord Gawain you have
moult bien dit. Car on doit moult honerer ses preudomes
very well said For one ought much honor his worthy-men
qui les a. Atant sempart galahos & vient a son
who them has Thereupon himself-thence-parts Galehaut and comes to his
compaignon. & se couchent ambedoi en .j. lit. &
companion and themselves lie-down both in one bed and
parolent toute nuit de ce dont lor cuer sont moult a
speak all night of this of-which their hearts are very at
aise. Mais or vous lairons la parole de galahot &
ease But now you shall-leave-we the word of Galehaut and
de son compaignon atant ester. si vous parlerons de la
of his companion thereupon to-be so you shall-speak-we of the
roine qui est venue en la bertesque moult lie & moult
queen who is come into the bartizan very glad and very
a aise. si quide auoir oure moult cheleement. Mais il est
at ease so thinks to-have wrought very secretly But it is
autrement quele ne quide. Car la dame de malohaut a
otherwise than-she — thinks For the lady of malehaut has
veu tout quanque ele a fait. Et quant galahos sen
seen all whatever she has done And when Galehaut himself-thence
fu partis & ele sen fu alee a vne fenestre. &
was parted and she herself-thence was gone to a window and
commencha a penser a che que plus li plaisoit. & la
began to think on this that most her pleased and the
dame de malohaut se trait pres de li la ou ele le
lady of malehaut herself draws near to her there where she her
voit plus seule & dist au plus cheleement quele pot.
sees most alone and says at-the most secretly that-she could

ha! dame com est boine compaignie de .iiij. Et la roine
ah lady how is good company of four And the queen
loit moult bien si ne dist mot. Et fait samblant que
it-bears very well so not says word And makes semblance that
riens nen ait oi. Et ne demora gaires que la dame
anything not-thereof she-have heard And not tarried-it much that the lady
redist ceste parole meismes. & la roine lapela. Dites moi
said-again this word itself and the queen her-called Tell me
fait ele porcoi vos aues ce dit. Dame fait ele vostre grase
says she wherefore you have this said Lady says she your grace
ie nen dirai ore plus. Car par auenture plus en
I not-thereof shall-say now more For by chance more thereof
ai dit qua moi ne couenist. Car len ne se doit mie
have-I said than to-me — befitted For one not oneself ought at-all
faire plus priuee de sa dame ne de son seignor que on
make more intimate with one's lady nor with one's lord than one
nen est. Que lon nen acueille la haine sa dame.
thereof is For one not-thereof gathers the hatred (of-)one's lady
Si mait diex fait la roine vous ne me pories riens
So me-may-help God says the queen you not me could anything
dire dont vous eussies ma haine. Car ie vous sai tant
say for-which you would-have my hatred For I you know so-much
a sage & a cortoise que vos ne diries riens qui fust
for wise and for courteous that you not would-say anything which were
contre ma volente. Mais dites tout outreement car ie le
against my will But say all utterly for I it
voeil & si vous en pri. Dame fait ele dont le dirai ie.
wish and so you thereof beg-I Lady says she then it shall-say I
Ie di quil est moult boine compaignie de .iiij. Car iai
I say that-it is very good company of four For I-have
veu .j. nouel acointement que vos aues fait au cheualier
seen a new acquaintance that you have made with-the knight

qui parla a vous laiens el vergier. si sai bien que vous
who spoke with you in-there in-the orchard so know-I well that you
estes la riens el monde que il plus aime. ne vous naues
are the thing in-the world that he most loves nor you not-have
mie tort se vous lames. Car vous ne pories mie vostre
at-all wrong if you him-love For you not could at-all your
amor miex emploier. Comment fait la roine connoissies le
love better employ How says the queen know him
vous. Dame fait ele oil. tex iors a awan este que ie vous
you Lady says she yes such days has this-year been that I you
em peusse aussi bien faire dangier com vous feries ia
thereof could as well make refusal as you would-make ever
moi. Car ie lai tenu longement en ma prison. & ce
me For I him-have held long in my prison and this
est chil as armes vermeilles qui venqui lassamblee. &
is that-one with-the arms red who won the-assembly and
chil deuant ier as armes noires. Et les vnes
that-one the-day before-yesterday with-the arms black And the ones
& les autres li baillai ie. & quant il fu lautrier sor
and the others to-him gave I and when he was the-other-day upon
la riuiere pensis & ie me hatissoie de lui mander que
the river thoughtful and I me hastened of him to-send-word that
il fesist darmes. Ie ne le faisoie se por ce non que ie
he should-do of-arms I not it did except for this not that I
souspechounoie bien quil vous amoit. & si quidoie teil eure
suspected well that-he you loved and so thought-I such hour
fu quil amast moi. Mais il me mist toute fors del quidier
was that-he loved me But he me put all out of-the thinking
tant me descouri de sa pensee. lors li commenche a
so-much me uncovered-he of his thought then to-her begins-she to
conter coment ele lauoit tenu an & demi en prison. &
tell how she him-had held a-year and a-half in prison and

porcoi ele lauoit pris. & porcoi ele estoit alee a la cort
wherefore she him-had taken and wherefore she was gone to the court
le roi. Trestout li dist iusca lissue de sa prison. Or
(of-)the king All to-her told-she up-to the-issue of his prison Now
me dites fait la roine. porcoi distes vous que miex vaut
me tell says the queen wherefore said you that better is-worth
compaignie de .iiij. que de .iij. Miex est vne chose chelee
company of four than of three Better is a thing concealed
de .iij. que de .iiij. fait la roine. Dame fait ele il est voirs
by three than by four says the queen Lady says she it is true
dont est mieldre la compaignie de .iii. que de quatre. Dame
then is better the company of three than of four Lady
fet ele non fait chi endroit. & si vous dirai porcoi.
says she not does-it here in-place and so you shall-tell-I wherefore
Il est voirs que li cheualiers vous aime si le seit galahos.
It is true that the knight you loves so it knows Galehaut
& des ore mais sen deporteront li vns a lautre
and from now on themselves-thereof will-disport the one with the-other
en quelque terre quil soient. Car chi ne seront mie
in whatever land that-they be For here not will-be-they at-all
longement. & vous remanres toute seule si noseres a
long and you will-remain all alone so not-will-dare-you to
nului descourir vo pensee. si en seres plus a malaise.
anyone uncover your thought so thereof will-be-you more at unease
& ensi porteres toute seule le fais. Mais sil vous pleust
and thus will-bear-you all alone the burden But if-it you pleased
que ie fuisse quarte en la compaignie si nous solaseriemes
that I were fourth in the company so us would-solace
entre nous .ij. autresi comme entrax .ij. feroient. si en
between us two just as between-them two would-do so thereof
fuissies plus aise. Or me dites fait la roine. saues vous
would-be-you more at-ease Now me tell says the queen know you

qui li cheualiers est. Si mait diex fait ele naie. Car
who the knight is So me-may-help God says she no For
vous aues bien oi comment il se cheloit vers moi.
you have well heard how he himself concealed toward me
Chertes dame fait la roine trop estes apercheuans. Moult
Certainly lady says the queen too-much are-you perceptive Much
le couendroit estre sage qui riens vous uoldroit embler.
him would-behoove to-be wise who anything from-you would-wish to-steal
& puis quil est ensi que vous laues apercheu & que vous
and since that-it is thus that you it-have perceived and that you
me requeres la compaignie vous laurois. Mais ie voeil que
me require the company you it-will-have But I wish that
vous em portes autresi bien le fais com ie le mien. Dame
you thereof bear as well the burden as I the mine Lady
fait ele que diries vous. Ie ferai quanque vous voldrois
says she what would-say you I shall-do whatever you will-wish
outreement por vostre compaignie auoir. En non dieu fait
utterly for your company to-have In name (of-)God says
la roine & vous laures. Car millor compaignie de vous ne
the queen and you it-will-have For better company than you not
poroie ie mie auoir encore fust ele plus riche. Mais ie ne
could I at-all have though were she more rich But I not
me porai iamais de vous consieurrer puis que ie vous
myself shall-be-able ever-more from you to-do-without since that I you
aurai acointie. Car puis que ie commens a amer; nule riens
shall-have acquainted For since that I begin to love any thing
naime plus de moi. Dame fait ele nous serons ensamble
not-loves more than me Lady says she we shall-be together
toutes les fois quil vous plaira. Or men laissies couenir
all the times that-it you will-please Now me-thereof leave to-manage
fait la roine. Car nous affermerons demain la compaignie
says the queen For we shall-confirm tomorrow the company

de nos .iiij. & lors li conte de lancelot comment il auoit
of our four and then to-her tells-she of Lancelot how he had
parle. & quant il esgarda vers eles quil ploroit. & ie sai
spoken and when he looked toward them that-he wept and I know
bien fait la roine quil vous connut. Et sachies fait ele que
well says the queen that-he you knew And know says she that
cest lancelos del lac li mieudres cheualiers del monde.
this-is Lancelot of-the lake the best knight of-the world

The Lady of Malehaut and Galehaut

XLII

The queen has the Lady of Malehaut sleep with her, and learns that she loved once only, in thought. In the meadow next morning she shows her the place of the meeting. The queen asks Galehaut whether he loves anyone and, finding him free, gives him to the Lady of Malehaut as her true friend, and her to him, and they kiss. The four meet each night under the shrubs, with no delight but kissing and embracing. When Gawain mends and longs to leave, Arthur agrees to go home; Galehaut will not come to his land but promises to return, and the four agree to meet at the next assembly. Galehaut takes leave, and the queen keeps the Lady of Malehaut with her.

Ensi parolent moult longement entreles .ij. Si font
Thus speak-they very long between-them two So make-they
moult grant ioie de lor nouel acointement. la nuit ne
very great joy of their new acquaintance the night not
souffri onques la roine que la dame de malohaut ieust
suffered ever the queen that the lady of malehaut should-lie
se auoeques lui non. & chele i iut a moult grant
except with her not and she there lay with very great
force. Car moult doutoit a iesir auoec si haute dame.
force For much she-feared to lie with so high lady

Et quant eles furent couchies si commenchierent a parler
And when they were laid-down so began-they to speak
de ches noueles amors. & la roine demande a la dame
of these new loves and the queen asks of the lady
de malohaut se ele aime par amors en nul lieu. & ele
of malehaut if she loves by love in any place and she
respont que nenil Et sachies bien dame fait ele que onques
answers that no And know well lady says she that ever
namai par amors que vne fois. ne de cele amor ne fis
not-not-loved-I by love but one time nor of that love not did
ie que le penser. & che dist ele de lancelot que ele auoit
I but the thinking and this said she of Lancelot whom she had
tant ame come nus cuers puet plus amer autre. Mais ele
so-much loved as any heart can most love another But she
nen auoit onques autre ioie eue. & neporquant ne dist
not-thereof had ever other joy had and nevertheless not said
ele mie que ce auoit il este. Et la roine se pense que ele
she at-all that this had he been And the queen herself thinks that she
fera les amors de galehot & de li Mais ele nen veut
will-make the loves of Galehaut and of her But she not-thereof wishes
parler iusca tant quele sace se galahos a amie. Car lors
to-speak up-to so-much that-she know if Galehaut has beloved For then
ne len requerroit ele mie. A lendemain se leuerent
not him-thereof would-require she at-all At the-next-day themselves rose-they
matin entreles .ij. si en alerent au tref le roi
early between-them two so thence went to-the pavilion (of-)the king
quil gisoit la por monseignor Gauuain & por les autres
for-he lay there for my-lord Gawain and for the other
cheualiers faire compaignie. si lesveilla la roine & dist que
knights to-make company so him-awoke the queen and said that
moult estoit maluais quant a tel eure gisoit. lors se
very was-he lazy when at such hour he-lay then themselves

retornerent entreles .ij. tout contreual les pres. & dames
returned between-them two all down the meadows and ladies
auoec eles .iij. & de lor damoiseles vne partie. Si alerent
with them three and of their damsels a part So went-they
el lieu ou li acointemens fu fais des amors. Et dist
into-the place where the acquaintance was made of-the loves And said
la roine a la dame de malohaut que le lieu en ameroit
the queen to the lady of malehaut that the place thereof she-would-love
miex a tous iours. Mais ilueques conta a la dame de
better for all days But there told-she to the lady of
malohaut toute lacointance de lancelot & son samblant. Et
malehaut all the-acquaintance of Lancelot and his semblance And
comment il estoit deuant li esbahis. riens nen laissa a
how he was before her amazed anything not-thereof left-she to
dire dont li peust ramenbrer. & lors commencha moult
tell of-which to-her could remember and then began-she much
a loer galahot. & dist que cestoit li plus sages cheualiers
to praise Galehaut and said that this-was the most wise knight
& qui miex sauoit honorer chose vaillant. & chertes fait
and who best knew how-to-honor thing valiant and certainly says
ele ie li conterai ia lacointement de moi & de vous.
she I to-him shall-tell soon the-acquaintance of me and of you
& sacies quil nen fera mie pau de ioie. Or en
and know that-he not-thereof will-make at-all little of joy Now thence
alons. que il ne demoura mais gaires que il ne viegne.
let-us-go for he not will-tarry more much that he not may-come
Atant sen tornent les dames. & quant eles
Thereupon themselves-thence turn the ladies and when they
furent venues si fu ia li rois leues. & ot enuoiet por
were come so was already the king risen and had sent for
galahot. & il i uint moult tost. Et tantost la roine
Galehaut and he there came very soon And at-once the queen

li conta lacointement de li & de la dame de malohaut.
to-him told the-acquaintance of her and of the lady of malehaut
Mais auant li dist. galahot dites moi voir par la foi
But first to-him said-she Galehaut tell me truth by the faith
que vous me deues. Dame fait il si ferai ie bien sachies.
that you me owe Lady says he so shall-do I well know
Ie vous demant fait ele se vos ames par amors dame ne
I you ask says she if you love by love lady or
damoisele qui de vostre amor soit saisie. Dame naie par
damsel who with your love be seized Lady no by
le sairement que vous maues fait le vous creant. saues
the oath that you me-have made it you I-promise know
vous fait ele porcoi iel di. Iai mes amors assises a vostre
you says she wherefore I-it say I-have my love settled at your
volente. & ie voel que a ma volente fachies des vos amors.
will and I wish that at my will you-do with your love
& saues vous en quel lieu. en bele dame sage & cortoise
and know you in what place in fair lady wise and courteous
qui asses est haute feme. & riche de grans honors. Dame
who enough is high woman and rich in great honors Lady
fait galahos vous poes faire vostre plaisir de moi de cuer
says Galehaut you can do your pleasure with me of heart
& de cors. Mais qui est chele a qui vous voles que ie
and of body But who is she to whom you wish that I
soie. Certes sire fait la roine cest la dame de malohaut.
may-be Certainly lord says the queen this-is the lady of malehaut
& vees le la & la li moustre. & lors li conte
and see her there and there to-him shows and then to-him tells
comment ele les auoit agaities. & de lancelot que ele
how she them had watched and of Lancelot whom she
auoit eu en sa prison an & demi. & comment il
had had in her prison a-year and a-half and how he

auoit a li fine. & que ele li auoit dit. & comment
had with her agreed and what she to-him had said and how
lancelos auoit plore. & que che fu por li. & por ce fait
Lancelot had wept and that this was for her and for this says
la roine que ie sai quele est la plus uaillans dame del
the queen that I know that-she is the most valiant lady of-the
monde. por ce voeil ie que les amors soient faites par
world for this wish I that the loves be made by
moi. de vous & de lui. Car li plus vaillans cheualiers del
me of you and of her For the most worthy knight of-the
monde doit bien auoir la plus vaillant dame. Quant vous
world ought well have the most valiant lady When you
seres en estraignes terres entre vous & mon cheualier.
will-be in strange lands between you and my knight
si se complaindra li vns a lautre. & nous .ij. dames
so himself will-complain the one to the-other and we two ladies
nous recomforterons ensamble de nos anuis & ferons ioie
us shall-comfort together of our troubles and shall-make joy
de nos biens. & portera endroit soi chascune son fais.
of our goods and will-bear in-respect-of herself each her burden
Dame fait galahos vees chi le cuer & le cors si en
Lady says Galehaut see here the heart and the body so thereof
faites a vostre commandement autresi comme iai le vostre
do at your command just as I-have the yours
la ou ie voloie. lors apele la dame de malohaut si li
there where I wished then calls-she the lady of malehaut so to-her
dist. Dame vos estes appareillie de ce que ie voldrai faire
says Lady you are ready for this that I shall-wish to-do
de vous. Dame fait ele il est voirs. En non dieu fait ele
with you Lady says she it is true In name (of-)God says she
ie voel doner vostre cuer & vostre cors. & ele respont
I wish to-give your heart and your body and she answers

comme sage. Dame fait ele vous en poes faire a
as wise-woman Lady says she you thereof can do at
vostre volente. Et la roine le prent par la main. &
your will And the queen her takes by the hand and
galahos par lautre. si dist a galahot. Sire cheualiers ie vous
Galehaut by the-other so says to Galehaut Lord knight I you
doins a ceste dame com vrai ami loial de cuer & de cors.
give to this lady as true friend loyal of heart and of body
& vous dame doig ie a cest cheualier comme vraie amie
and you lady give I to this knight as true beloved
& loiale de toutes vraies amors. & il lotroient ambedoi.
and loyal of all true loves and they it-grant both
si fait tant la roine quil sentrebaisent. Apres atornent
so does so-much the queen that-they kiss-each-other After arrange-they
quil parleront anquenuit tot .iiij. ensamble. & deuiserons
that-they will-speak tonight all four together and we-shall-devise
fait la roine comment ce pora estre. Atant se
says the queen how this will-be-able be Thereupon themselves
lieuent & vont le roi semonre daler oir messe. & il dist
rise and go the king to-summon to-go hear mass and he says
quil natendoit se eles non. Lors sen vont tout
that-he not-waited except them not Then themselves-thence go all
al moustier. & quant il ont oi messe li mangiers
to-the minster and when they have heard mass the meal
fu appareillies si sassient. Et quant il ont mangie si
was made-ready so sit-down-they And when they have eaten so
vont enter le roi & la roine & galahot seoir deuant
go between-them the king and the queen and Galehaut to-sit before
monseignor Gauuain vne grant piece. & puis sen
my-lord Gawain a great while and then themselves-thence
vienent la ou li autre cheualier estoient dont grant
come there where the other knights were of-whom great

partie i auoit de blechies. si les aloient veoir tout a
part there had-it of hurt so them went-they to-see all on
pie. si tenoit li rois la dame de malohaut par la main.
foot so held the king the lady of malehaut by the hand
& galahos la roine. Illuec fu establis li parlemens des
and Galehaut the queen There was established the parley of-the
.iiij. de parler a lanuitier autresi com il auoient fait la
four to speak at the-nightfall just as they had done the
nuit deuant. & en cel lieu meisme. Mais nous le ferons
night before and in that place itself But we it shall-do
autrement fait la roine. que nous i menrons monseignor.
otherwise says the queen for we there shall-lead my-lord
& uos auroiz appareillie uostre cheualier & nait il garde.
and you will-have prepared your knight and not-has he fear
que len le conoisse Car il niert ia nus qui le
that one him should-know For there not-will-be ever anyone who him
connoisse puis que il se velt cheler & courir. &
should-know since that he himself wishes to-conceal and run and
quant plus i aura gent. tant i aura il mains mal
when more there will-have people so-much there will-have it less ill
pense. Ensi le porons mais bien faire tos les iors que
thought Thus it shall-be-able-we more well to-do all the days that
messires seiournera. Car plus cheleement ne porriens mie
my-lord will-sojourn For more secretly not could-we at-all
parler ensamble. Car li liex ni poroit estre.
speak together For the place not-there could be

En ceste maniere atornent lor parlement. & quant vient
In this manner arrange-they their parley and when it-comes
au vespre. si ala galahot veoir ses gens. & dit a son
to-the evening so went Galehaut to-see his people and says to his
compaignon ce quil auoit atorne. & il lotroie. Et quant
companion this that-he had arranged and he it-grants And when

il fu eure de souper si commanda galahos a son senescal
it was hour of supper so commanded Galehaut to his seneschal
que quant il le verroit venir contreual les pres auoec
that when he him should-see come down the meadows with
le roi & la roine. si past outre entre li & son
the king and the queen so should-pass beyond between him and his
compaignon. Atant sen part a grant compaignie
companion Thereupon himself-thence parts-he with great company
de ses cheualiers. & vient au roi qui latendoit al
of his knights and comes to-the king who him-awaited at-the
mengier. Apres mengier dist la roine au roi. Sire car nous
meal After meal said the queen to-the king Lord now we
alons esbatre contreual ces pres. & li rois lotroie. lors
let-us-go disport down these meadows and the king it-grants then
sen part li rois & galahos & de lor compaignons
himself-thence parts the king and Galehaut and of their companions
moult grant partie. & la roine i reuint & la dame
very great part and the queen there came-back and the lady
de malohaut & moult de dames & de damoiseles. &
of malehaut and many of ladies and of damsels and
quant li senescax les vit si passa outre & lanselos
when the seneschal them saw so passed-he beyond and Lancelot
auoec li. & se metent en la compaignie le roi. &
with him and themselves put in the company (of-)the king and
quant il ont asses ale si sassistrent & commenchierent
when they have enough gone so sat-down-they and began
a parler. & la ou il parloient issi uenoit li rois yons
to speak and there where they spoke thus came the king Yon
auoec le roi por parler a li. Car li mesage li sont
with the king to speak with him For the messengers to-him are
venu de sa terre. & que aler len couenoit si apela
come from his land and that go him-thence behooved so called-he

le roi a vne part & conseilla a li grant pieche. &
the king to a part and took-counsel with him great while and
lors se leuerent entre la roine & galahot & la
then themselves rose between-them the queen and Galehaut and the
dame de malohaut. si apela galahos son compaignon &
lady of malehaut so called Galehaut his companion and
alerent entrax .iiij. parlant moult longement. Tant quil
went between-them four speaking very long So-long that-they
vindrent au chief des arbrissiax & lors si sassistrent. &
came to-the end of-the shrubs and then so sat-down-they and
monstra la roine a lancelot la dame qui maint ior lauoit
showed the queen to Lancelot the lady who many day him-had
eu en sa prison. si en fu moult honteus. & li
had in her prison so thereof was-he very ashamed and to-him
dist la roine tot en riant que ceste larechin li auoit il
said the queen all in laughing that this theft to-her had he
celee. Illuec demorerent moult grant piece. ne onques ne
concealed There remained-they very great while nor ever not
tindrent plait ne parole fors de baisier & dacoler comme
held-they plea nor word but of kissing and of-embracing as
chil qui volentiers le faisoient. Et quant il orent grant
those who willingly it did And when they had great
piece sis si sen retornerent la ou li rois estoit si
while sat so themselves-thence returned there where the king was so
reuindrent en son tref amont. & li senescax en remena
came-back into his pavilion up and the seneschal thence led-back
lancelot a lor tentes. & en tel maniere parloient entrax
Lancelot to their tents and in such manner spoke between-them
.iiij. toutes les nuis ensamble sans parole dautre deduit.
four all the nights together without word of-other delight

Ensi demorerent iluec tant que mesires Gauuain alega
Thus remained-they there until that my-lord Gawain was-relieved
moult. & miex se senti quil ne soloit. si li tardoit
much and better himself felt than-he — was-wont so to-him was-late
moult que il fust el pais ou il amoit par amors
much that he were in-the country where he loved by love
tant com il plus pooit. si dist au roi quil sen
as-much as he most could so says to-the king that-he himself-thence
iroit moult volentiers. & li rois li dist biax nies
would-go very willingly and the king to-him says fair nephew
ie ne demor chi se pour vous non. & por galahot que
I not stay here except for you not and for Galehaut whom
ie moult aim. Sire vous li prieres demain quil sen
I much love Lord you him will-beg tomorrow that-he himself-thence
viegne auoec vous & apres demain nous en irons & se
may-come with you and after tomorrow we thence shall-go and if
il i vient ce nous sera moult grant honors. & sil ni
he there comes this to-us will-be very great honor and if-he not-there
vient vous le reuerres par tans se dieu plaist & il vous.
comes you him will-see-again in time if God please and he you
Ensi lotroie li rois. & lendemain prie galahot quil le
Thus it-grants the king and the-next-day begs Galehaut that-he him
conuoit iusquen sa terre. Mais galahot dist que ce ne puet
escort up-to-into his land But Galehaut says that this not can
estre. Car iai moult a faire en mon pais sire qui moult
be For I-have much to do in my country lord which very
est lontains. ne ie ne demoroie chi se por vous non. &
is far nor I not would-stay here except for you not and
vous por moi che sai ie bien. Chertes fait li rois il est
you for me this know I well Certainly says the king it is
voirs. Mais ie vous pri biax dols amis que ie vous reuoie
true But I you beg fair sweet friend that I you see-again

au plus tost que vous pores. & galahos li otroie. la
at-the most soon that you will-be-able and Galehaut to-him grants the
nuit repairent li .iiij. ensamble & sachies que moult ot
night return the four together and know that much had-they
grant angoisse au departir. si misent ior a parler ensamble
great anguish at-the parting so set day to speak together
a la premiere assamblee qui seroit el roialme de logres.
at the first assembly which would-be in-the kingdom of logres
Ensi se departirent li doi cheualier de lor dames.
Thus themselves parted the two knights from their ladies
dolent de la departie & lie de la ioie quil atendent a
sorrowful by the parting and glad of the joy that-they await to
auoir a la premiere assemblee. La nuit print Galahot congie
have at the first assembly The night took Galehaut leave
al roi & a la roine & a la dame de malaout & a
of-the king and of the queen and of the lady of malehaut and of
monseignor Gauuain. & a touz les autres si en sont tuit
my-lord Gawain and of all the others so thereof are all
moult dolent. car moult les prisoient. Et galahos sen
very sorrowful for much him they-prized And Galehaut himself-thence
vient a son compaignon. si le treuue dautre sanblant quil
comes to his companion so him finds of-other semblance than-he
nauoit este la nuit deuant. Mais il le comforte a son pooir.
had been the night before But he him comforts to his power
& la roine est au roi venue si li dist que il prit la
and the queen is to-the king come so to-him says that he beg the
dame de malohaut quele sen uiegne auoeques lui. &
lady of malehaut that-she herself-thence may-come with her and
que des ore mais soit del tout en son ostel. Car moult
that from now on she-be of-the whole in her household For much
aim fait ele sa compaignie. & ie quit que ele aime tant la
I-love says she her company and I think that she loves so-much the

moie que ele i vendra sans grant proiere. Certes fait li
mine that she there will-come without great prayer Certainly says the
rois ce mest moult bel. Il vient a la dame si li dist. &
king this to-me-is very fair He comes to the lady so to-her says and
prie tant que la dame est remese autresi comme a force.
begs so-much that the lady is remained as it-were by force
Al matin sen retorne li rois dune part & galahos
At-the morning himself-thence returns the king on-one side and Galehaut
dautre & sen vait chascuns en sa terre. Mais atant
on-other and himself-thence goes each into his land But thereupon
se taist ore li contes del roi & de la roine & de lor
itself is-silent now the tale of-the king and of the queen and of their
compaignie que plus nen parole. ains retorne a galahot
company so-that more not-thereof speaks but returns to Galehaut
& a son compaignon. Mais gaires nen parole ci endroit.
and to his companion But much not-thereof speaks-it here in-place

Sorelois

XLIII

Galehaut and his companion go to Sorelois, a land between Wales and the Strange Isles, won from King Gloier, whose daughter Galehaut is keeping for his nephew. It is shut from Logres by the swift river Assurne, which only two causeways cross, each guarded by a knight and ten sergeants, built by King Lohot when Merlin prophesied the adventures. There Galehaut keeps his companion in secret, and Lancelot takes no joy in the hunting, thinking only of the queen. The Lady of the Lake sends him a youth to keep until he would be knighted, his cousin Lionel, son of King Bors of Gannes, named for the lion-shaped mark on his chest at birth.

Chi dist li contes que entre galahot & son compaignon
Here says the tale that between-them Galehaut and his companion
errerent tant par lor Iournees quil vindrent en la
journeyed so-far by their Days-journeys that-they came into the
terre dont il estoit sires. Ce fu la terre de sorelois qui
land of-which he was lord This was the land of sorelois which
siet entre gales et les estranges illes. Icele terre nestoit
lies between wales and the strange isles That land not-was
mie galahot danchiserie. ains lauoit gaaignie par force
at-all (of-)Galehaut by-inheritance rather it-had-be gained by force
sor le roi gloier le neueu al roi northumberlande. &
from the king Gloier the nephew of-the king (of-)northumberland and
chil auoit este ochis en la guerre si en estoit remeise
that-one had been killed in the war so thereof was remained
vne soie fille petite moult bele. dont la mere auoit
a his daughter small very fair whose the mother had
este morte au naistre. Celi faisoit galahos garder moult
been dead at-the birth Her had Galehaut kept very
honeraulement tant que ele fust grant. si le deuoit doner
honorably until that she were grown so her he-was-to give

a feme a .j. sien neueu qui encore estoit moult petis. si
to wife to a his nephew who yet was very small so
li auoit toute la terre de sorelois otroie a leure quil
to-him had-he all the land of sorelois granted at the-hour that-he
seroit cheualiers Et chou estoit la plus delitable terre
should-be knight And this was the most delightful land
qui fust sor les illes de la mer de bertaigne & la plus
which was upon the isles of the sea of britain and the most
aaisie de boines riuieres & de boines fores & de
well-furnished with good rivers and with good forests and with
plentiueuses terres. & si nestoit mie grantment lontaine
plentiful lands and so not-was-it at-all greatly far
de la terre le roi artu. si i plaisoit moult galahot a
from the land (of-)the king Arthur so there pleased much Galehaut to
seiourner. Car trop amoit le deduit des chiens & des
sojourn For too-much he-loved the sport of-the dogs and of-the
oisiax. & plus i estoit asses por ce que li roialmes de
birds and more there was-he by-far for this that the realm of
logres estoit plus pres de li que des estraignes illes qui
logres was more near to him than the strange isles which
estoit sa maistre terre. li roialmes de sorelois par deuers
was his chief land the realm of sorelois by toward
la terre le roi artu estoit toz clos dune seule aigue
the land (of-)the king Arthur was all enclosed by-a single water
qui moult estoit grans & roide & parfonde. si estoit
which very was great and swift and deep so was-it
apelee assurne. Et de lautre part estoit toute auironee de
called assurne And on the-other part was-it all surrounded by
la mer. & apres auoit chastiax & chites fors & delitables
the sea and after had-it castles and cities strong and delightful
& de riuieres & de bois & de montaignes. & dautres
and of rivers and of woods and of mountains and of-other

iaues auoit asses en la terre dont le plus en caioit en
waters had-it enough in the land of-which the most thereof fell into
assurne. & cele caioit en la mer. si que de la terre le
assurne and that fell into the sea so that from the land (of-)the
roi artu ne peust nus entrer en sorelois qui par assurne
king Arthur not could anyone enter into sorelois who by assurne
ne passast auant. icele nest mie aigue douce. Car li
not should-pass before that not-is at-all water sweet For the
premiers chies si issoit de la mer. & li autres i caoit.
first head so went-out from the sea and the other there fell

Ensi estoit la terre de sorelois close par deuers le
Thus was the land of sorelois closed on toward the
roialme de logres si ni auoit cheualier errant que .ij.
kingdom of logres so not-there had-it knight errant but two
passages ne plus nen i auoit. tant com les auentures
passages nor more not-thereof there had-it as-long as the adventures
del roialme de logres durerent. & es illes denuiron qui
of-the kingdom of logres lasted and in-the isles around which
durerent ce dit lestoire mil & sis cenz & nonante
lasted this says the-history a-thousand and six hundred and ninety
semaines cil doi passage estoient asses felon & orguellous.
weeks those two passages were very cruel and proud
Car chascuns estoit dune cauchie estroite & haute qui
For each was of-a causeway narrow and high which
nauoit mie plus de .iij. toises de le. & si en auoit de
not-had at-all more than three fathoms of width and so thereof had-it of
lonc plus de .vijm. & desor iaue en auoit en teus
length more than seven-thousand and above water thereof had-it in such
liex i auoit plus de .lx. & .x. de parfond Tex estoient
places there had-it more than sixty and ten of depth Such were
les cauchies ambes .ij. & au chief de chascune deuers
the causeways both two and at-the head of each toward

sorelois auoit vne tour haute & fort. & en chascune auoit
sorelois had-it a tower high and strong and in each had-it
.j. cheualier le millor que len pooit trouer. & .x. serians
a knight the best that one could find and ten sergeants
a haches & a espees & a glaiues. Chil estoient aussi
with axes and with swords and with lances Those were also
en chascune tour por pris & honor conquerre. & por
in each tower for prize and honor to-conquer and for
hautes soldees que il en atendoient. Et se cheualiers
high wages that they thereof awaited And if knight
estraignes venoit a le cauchie por passer outre combatre
strange came to the causeway to pass beyond to-fight
le couenoit au cheualier & as .x. serians. & sil
him behooved with-the knight and with-the ten sergeants and if-he
pooit passer outre a forche. sestoit mis ses nons ens escris
could pass beyond by force so-was put his name in written
laiens. Si pooit tous iours mais passer sans combatre. Et
in-there So could-he all days more pass without fighting And
sil estoit conquis. il remanoit en la merci au cheualier
if-he was conquered he remained in the mercy of-the knight
& as .x. serians qui gardoient la cauchie. Et ceste garde
and of-the ten sergeants who guarded the causeway And this guard
lor couenoit faire .j. an entier. & si dist li contes que
them behooved to-do a year entire and so says the tale that
au tans que merlins profetisa les auentures qui deuoient
at-the time that Merlin prophesied the adventures which were-to
auenir. fist faire les .ij. cauchies li rois lohoz. li peires au
happen had made the two causeways the king Lohot the father of-the
roi gloier qui a chel tans estoit sires de sorelois. por ce
king Gloier who at that time was lord of sorelois for this
quil doutoit la destruction de sorelois qui sa terre estoit.
that-he feared the destruction of sorelois which his land was

Et neporquant anchois que les auentures commenchassent
And nevertheless before that the adventures began
a auenir auoit sor chele aigue asses autres passages de
to happen had-it upon that water enough other passages of
fust. & nes passans. Mais si tost com eles commencherent
wood and ships passing But as soon as they began
si furent tout abatu. Que onques nus hons estraignes
so were-they all thrown-down So-that ever any man strange
ni passa se par ches .ij. cauchies non.
not-there passed except by these two causeways not
En chele terre qui si estoit close & fors. sen ala
In that land which so was enclosed and strong himself-thence went
seiourner galahos entre lui & son compaignon & les
to-sojourn Galehaut between-them him and his companion and the
autres gens de son ostel. Mais che fu plus priueement
other people of his household But this was more privately
quil ne soloit. Car a son pooir se couroit que nus
than-he — was-wont For to his power himself watched that any
hom son couine napercheust. ne nus hom ne sauoit le
man his condition not-should-perceive nor any man not knew the
non son compaignon. Que seulement li doi roi qui
name (of-)his companion But only the two kings who
auoient este si plege. Ensi seiournerent grant piece en
had been his pledges Thus sojourned-they great while in
sorelois. si orent asses deduis de riuieres & de bois. Mais
sorelois so had-they enough delights of rivers and of woods But
nus deduis ne plaisoit a lancelot. quant il ne pooit ueoir
any delight not pleased to Lancelot when he not could see
chele a qui il estoit tous ne a autre chose ne pensoit.
her to whom he was all nor on other thing not thought-he
Ne galahos qui moult estoit angoisseus de sa mesaise. le
Nor Galehaut who very was anguished at his discomfort him

comforte moult. & disoit quil ne sesmaiast mie. Car
comforts much and said that-he not himself-should-dismay at-all For
par tans orroient vraies noueles des assamblees. Dedens
in time would-they-hear true news of-the assemblies Within
le mois quil i furent venu enuoia la damoisele del lac
the month that-they there were come sent the damsel of-the lake
a lancelot .j. damoisel. Et li manda que il le retenist
to Lancelot a youth And to-him sent-word that he him should-keep
tant que il voldroit estre cheualiers. Et lancelos le retint.
until that he should-wish to-be knight And Lancelot him kept
& moult en fist grant ioie & moult le tint chier
and much thereof made great joy and much him held dear
por sa damoisele qui li manda. que autresi chier le
for his damsel who to-him sent-word that as dear him
tenist comme son cors. & il si faisoit. Car autretant
he-should-hold as his body and he so did For as-much
namoit nul uallet. ne ne creoit. & galahos meismes
not-loved-he any lad nor not believed and Galehaut himself
por le valet qui moult estoit biax & preus. & cousins
for the lad who very was fair and valiant and cousin
germains lancelot. & fu fiex au roy boort de gannes qui
german (of-)Lancelot and was son of-the king Bors of gannes who
oncles lancelot auoit este. & freres au roy ban. Et quant
uncle (of-)Lancelot had been and brother of-the king Ban And when
lancelos sot qui il estoit si lama asses plus. Car la
Lancelot knew who he was so him-loved-he by-far more For the
ioie de son carnel ami li fait grant partie de ses max
joy of his kinsman friend to-him makes great part of his ills
oublier. si fu asses grans la ioie que li vns cousins fist
forget so was by-far great the joy that the one cousin made
de lautre. li valles ot non lyoniax por vne grant merueille
of the-other the lad had name Lionel for a great marvel

qui auint a son naistre. Car si tost com il issi del
which befell at his birth For as soon as he went-out from-the
ventre sa meire. si troua on vne taque vermeille en mi
womb (of-)his mother so found one a mark red in middle
son pis qui estoit en forme dun lyon. & li enfes lauoit
his chest which was in form of-a lion and the child it-had
embrachie a .ij. bras & parmi le col autresi com por
embraced with two arms and through the neck just as for
estrangler. Ceste chose fu esgardee a merueilles. & por
strangling This thing was looked-at with marvel and for
che fu apeles li enfes lyoniax. qui puis fist asses de
this was called the child Lionel who afterward did enough of
hautes proeches si comme li contes de sa vie le tesmoigne.
high prowesses so as the tale of his life it witnesses
& moult dura le taque en mi son pis. Moult fist
and long lasted the mark in middle his chest Much made
lancelos grant ioie de son cousin. Et atant se taist ore
Lancelot great joy of his cousin And thereupon itself is-silent now
li contes de galahos que plus nen parole chi endroit.
the tale of Galehaut so-that more not-thereof speaks here in-place
Et retourne au roi artu qui estoit repairies en sa terre.
And returns to-the king Arthur who was returned into his land

The Companions of the Quest

XLIV

Arthur sojourns in his towns as his master taught, while the queen and the Lady of Malehaut talk of their loves. Gawain recovers. At Carlisle the king falls into thought at the table, and when Gawain and five others send to ask why, he answers that he thinks of their shame: they swore not to return without the knight of the red arms, and came back perjured. Gawain swears he will not enter the king's house until he has found him, and nineteen arm to follow him. Arthur and the court beg him on their knees to stay, but he will not, and the queen privately tells him to seek Galehaut, for the knight is Lancelot of the Lake. At the Perron Merlin, Gawain bids them ride each alone, shields hung reversed, and meet at the next assembly in Logres; at a fork fifteen part, and Gawain, Yvain, Kay, Sagremor and Giflet ride together a long while before they too separate.

A chel tans che dist li contes que li roys artus fu repairies
At that time this says the tale that the king Arthur was returned
en sa terre se pena moult de sa gent honerer. si tint
into his land himself took-pains much of his people to-honor so held-he
les grans festes & les riches cours. & doune asses plus
the great feasts and the rich courts and gives enough more
que il ne seut. si va partout ses boines villes seiournant.
than he — was-wont so goes everywhere his good towns sojourning
& fait les enseignemens de son maistre. si mainent moult
and does the teachings of his master so lead very
boine vie entre la roine & la dame de malahaut. si
good life between-them the queen and the lady of malehaut so
les veisies souent ans .ij. ensamble por ce que fin amors
them might-you-see often both two together for this that pure love
les tient si courtes que asses y pensoient plus que a
them holds so short that enough there thought-they more than on
tout le remenant. & se li dui resont a malaise en lontain
all the remnant and if the two are-again at unease in distant

pais de riens ne se doiuent plaindre. Car il ne sunt
country of anything not themselves ought complain For they not are
mie a repos. ne a riens ne se delitent que a parler
at-all at rest nor in anything not themselves delight but in speaking
de lor amors. quant aise les met ensamble. & a penser
of their loves when ease them puts together and in thinking
quant lune nest aueuc lautre. Apres che que li rois fu
when the-one not-is with the-other After this that the king was
repairies ne demoura gaires que mesire Gauuain fu auques
returned not tarried-it much that my-lord Gawain was somewhat
garis. si quil cheualcha & aloit en bois & en autres
healed so that-he rode and went into wood and into other
deduis & moult li fu sa forche reuenue & sa biautes.
sports and much to-him was his strength returned and his beauty
& neporquant onques puis ne fu en autresi grant uiguer
and nevertheless ever after not was-he in as great vigor
ne en sante com il auoit este deuant. Et si fist il puis
nor in health as he had been before And so did he after
maint biau colp & despee & de lanche. Moult fu grans
many fair blow both of-sword and of lance Very was great
la ioie en la court le roi artu quant on le vit gari &
the joy in the court (of-)the king Arthur when one him saw healed and
respasse. Quant li rois ot este a logres & a camaalot &
recovered When the king had been at logres and at camelot and
a carlion & a maintes autres boines villes. si li retraist
at caerleon and at many other good towns so to-him drew-back
li cuers vers carduel. Car che estoit la vile ou il plus
the heart toward carlisle For this was the town where he most
uolentiers seiournoit. car trop estoit bien seans & aaisie.
willingly sojourned for too was-it well situated and well-furnished
Mais anchois quil y uenist fist sauoir quil y seroit
But before that-he there came made-he known that-he there would-be

& quil y tenroit court de plait. & commanda que tout
and that-he there would-hold court of plea and commanded that all
si grant affaire y venissent de partout. Apres che vint
his great affairs there should-come from everywhere After this came
li rois a moult grant compaignie. & i demoura .xv.
the king with very great company and there remained fifteen
iors entiers. & chascun iour tint cort esforchie & riche
days entire and each day held court full and rich
& chascun iour miex & miex. & ne fu onques puis
and each day better and better and not was ever after
ior quil ne dounast tant que tous li mondes sen
day that-he not gave so-much that all the world itself-thereof
meruelloit ou toutes ches riqueches estoient prinses que il
marveled where all these riches were taken which he
donoit. & chascun iour enforchoit sa court. & de dons
gave and each day strengthened his court both with gifts
& de uiandes. Ains que les .xv. iors fuissent acompli.
and with meats Before that the fifteen days were accomplished
furent auques si grant affaire trait a chief. car il auoit
were somewhat his great affairs drawn to end for he had
tex gens en sa compaignie qui volentiers traioient les drois
such people in his company who willingly drew the rights
auant. & boutoient ariere les tors. si tost com la parole
forward and pushed back the wrongs as soon as the word
estoit oie couenoit que li drois fust porsieuis. Au chief
was heard it-behooved that the right were pursued At-the end
des .xv. Iors fu .j. mardis. & dist li contes que entre
of-the fifteen Days was a Tuesday and says the tale that between-them
la roine & la dame de malohot deuoient le ior porcachier
the queen and the lady of malehaut were-to the day contrive
& esmouoir parole dune assamblee. por parler a lor
and move word of-an assembly to speak with their

amis. Mais vns destorbiers lor vint seure. Car chi dist
friends But a hindrance to-them came upon For here says
li contes que quant li rois se seoit al mengier & il
the tale that when the king himself sat at-the meal and he
ot le tierch mes eu. si cai en .j. penser si grant que il
had the third course had so fell-he into a thought so great that he
en oublia & la feste & le mengier & tous cheus qui
thereof forgot both the feast and the meal and all those who
y estoient. & commencha a souspirer & a plorer des
there were and began to sigh and to weep from-the
iex del chief. & fu apoies sour .j. coutel. Et en ceste
eyes of-the head and was leaning on a knife And in this
maniere demora moult longuement tant que mesire kex li
manner remained-he very long until that my-lord Kay the
senescaus sen prist garde. sel monstra a monseignor
seneschal himself-thereof took heed so-it showed to my-lord
Gauuain & a monseignor ywain & a lucan le boutellier
Gawain and to my-lord Yvain and to Lucan the butler
& a seigremor le desree & a gifflet le fil do. Chil .vi.
and to Sagremor the unruly and to Giflet the son (of-)Do Those six
seruoient tout par le palais. & quant il virent le roi
served all through the palace and when they saw the king
ensi penser si en furent tout esbahi. & mesire Gauuain
thus think so thereof were-they all amazed and my-lord Gawain
dist quil en penseroit bien. lors si apele .j. valet &
says that-he thereof would-think well then so calls-he a lad and
si li dist. va tost a chele damoisele qui sert deuant
so to-him says go quickly to that damsel who serves before
monseignor de la coupe. si li di que ele viegne a
my-lord with the cup so to-her say that she may-come to
moi parler. & tien la coupe tant quele reuiegne ariere.
me speak and hold the cup until that-she come-back back

A chel tans estoit venue a cort vne damoisele qui auoit
At that time was come to court a damsel who had
non lore de cardueil. por ce que a cardueil auoit este nee.
name Laure of carlisle for this that at carlisle had-she been born
si estoit fille le roi de norbellande de la seror le
so was-she daughter (of-)the king of northumberland by the sister (of-)the
roi artu. si auoit ses peires este maistres bouteilliers de la
king Arthur so had her father been master butler of the
terre de logres. & cele prinst le mestier si tost com ele
land of logres and she took the office as soon as she
vint a court. Et ele estoit vne des plus beles damoiseles
came to court And she was one of-the most fair damsels
del monde. li escuiers vint a la pucele & si li dist les
of-the world the squire came to the maiden and so to-her says the
paroles monseignor Gauuain & ele li baille le coupe si
words (of-)my-lord Gawain and she to-him hands the cup so
sen uient a monseignor Gauuain & il li dist. bele
herself-thence comes to my-lord Gawain and he to-her says fair
cousine ales a monseignor le roi & si li dites que nous
cousin go to my-lord the king and so to-him say that we
li mandons par la foy que il nous doit qui nos sires
to-him send-word by the faith that he us owes who our lord
est & nous si homme; quil nous die porquoi il a si
is and we his men that-he us may-tell wherefore he has so
longuement pense & quil le nous mant. autresi com il
long thought and that-he it to-us send-word just as he
velt sauoir les nos pensers. Et la damoisele vient deuant
wishes to-know the our thoughts And the damsel comes before
le roi si saienoille. & ne sot comment ele lost
the king so herself-kneels and not knew how she him-should-dare
araisnier. Et il se fu apoies sor le coutelet si que toute
address And he himself was leaning upon the little-knife so that all

la lemele en fu ploie. si nauoit laiens cheualier qui de
the blade thereof was bent so not-had-it in-there knight who at
son penser ne fust tous esbahis. li plusor en auoient
his thought not were all amazed the most thereof had
laissie le mengier. lors prinst la damoisele le nape sel trait
left the eating then took the damsel the cloth so-it draws
a lui. & li coutiax escape. & le main le roi fiert sor
to her and the knife slips and the hand (of-)the king strikes upon
la table. & il laisse le penser si regarde entor lui. & la
the table and he leaves the thought so looks around him and the
damoisele li dist. sire cha menuoie mesire Gauuain &
damsel to-him says lord here me-sends my-lord Gawain and
chil .v. cheualier qui auoec li sont. si vous mandent que
those five knights who with him are so you send-word that
par la foi que vous lor deues. que vous lor mandes
by the faith that you to-them owe that you to-them send-word
a quoi vous aues si longuement pense. Car il le veullent
on what you have so long thought For they it wish
sauoir autresi com vous voles sauoir lor pensees. & li rois
to-know just as you wish to-know their thoughts and the king
le regarde moult esfreement si li dist. Or ales si lor
her looks-at very frightenedly so to-her says Now go so to-them
dites que il men laissent atant ester. Car sil sauoient a
tell that they me let thereupon be For if-they knew on
quoi iai pense il nen demanderoient ia. la damoisele
what I-have thought they not-thereof would-ask ever the damsel
vient as cheualiers si lor dist la parole le roi. si
comes to-the knights so to-them tells the word (of-)the king so
en sont moult esbahi. & mesire Gauuain dist que ensi
thereof are-they much amazed and my-lord Gawain says that thus
ne remanra il pas. bele cousine fait il ales ariere & dites
not will-remain it at-all fair cousin says he go back and tell

a monseignor le roi que encore li requerons nous sor
to my-lord the king that yet him require we upon
la foi quil nous doit. quil nous mant a quoi il a si
the faith that-he us owes that-he us send-word on what he has so
durement pense. Et cele vient au roi si li dist. & li
hard thought And she comes to-the king so to-him says and the
rois fist plus laide chiere que deuant nauoit fait. & dist
king made more ugly cheer than before had-he made and says
puis quil ne men veullent laissier estre Ie lor manderai.
since that-they not me wish to-let be I them shall-send-word
ales fait il & si lor dites que ie pensoie a lor grans
go says he and so to-them say that I thought on their great
hontes. & la pucele lor va dire. Et quant il loient
shames and the maiden to-them goes say And when they it-hear
si en sont si esbahi quil ne dient mot dune grant
so thereof are-they so amazed that-they not say word for-a great
pieche. Et lors dist mesire ywain ensi nel deuons nous
while And then said my-lord Yvain thus not-it ought we
pas laissier. Mais alons deuant li. si orrons comment il
at-all leave But let-us-go before him so shall-we-hear how he
a ensi pense a nostre grant honte. Et il se tienent
has thus thought of our great shame And they themselves hold
tout a son conseil si sen vienent deuant le roi.
all to his counsel so themselves-thence come before the king
Lors li dient sire vous nous aues mande que vous
Then to-him say-they lord you us have sent-word that you
aues pense a nostre grant honte. & nous vous prions
have thought of our great shame and we you beg
& requerons comme a nostre seignor lige & sor la foi
and require as to our lord liege and upon the faith
que vous nous deues que vous nous dites comment che
that you us owe that you us tell how this

est nos grans hontes. Chertes fait li rois se uous men
is our great shame Certainly says the king if you me-thereof
crees vous le laires ester atant. Car la chose si est si
believe you it will-leave be thereupon For the thing so is so
grans que vous nen pories amender. & chil respondent
great that you not-thereof could amend and they answer
que ensi ne le lairont il mie a lor pooir. & toute uoies
that thus not it will-leave they at-all to their power and all ways
li requierent que il lor die. Et iel vous dirai fait
of-him require that be to-them may-tell And I-it you shall-tell says
li rois puis que vous nel voleis laissier ester. Il est voirs
the king since that you not-it wish to-let be It is true
que ie pensoie a vos grans hontes. Dont ne vous menbre
that I thought of your great shames Then not you remembers
il que vous fustes .xl. des millors cheualiers de ma maison
it that you were forty of-the best knights of my house
tout eslit par sairement por aler querre le cheualier as
all chosen by oath to go seek the knight with-the
armes vermeilles qui lassamblee uenqui de moi & de
arms red who the-assembly won of me and of
galahot. & lautre apres aussi com ie quit. vous iurastes
Galehaut and the-other after likewise as I think you swore
tout .xl. que vous ne venries sans le cheualier ou sans
all forty that you not would-come without the knight or without
vraies enseignes de lui. si vous en reuenistes tout .xl.
true tokens of him so you thereof came-back all forty
que onques le cheualier ne mamenastes ne enseignes vraies
so-that ever the knight not me-brought-you nor tokens true
nen aportastes nencore nen sai ie nule chertaine
not-thereof brought-you nor-yet not-thereof know I any certain
chose. si vous en apel tous faillis & recreant & pariurs.
thing so you thereof call-I all failed and recreant and perjured

& cest la honte a quoi ie pensoie. Certes fait mesire
and this-is the shame on which I thought Certainly says my-lord
Gauuain. vous aueis droit & voir dites vous. si nest pas
Gawain you have right and truth say you so not-is at-all
drois que vous nous souffres en vostre compaignie puis que
right that you us suffer in your company since that
nous somes honi. Mais endroit moi ne vous ferai ie plus
we are shamed But in-respect-of me not you shall-do I more
honte. lors se traist a vne fenestre & tent sa main a
shame then himself drew-he to a window and holds-out his hand to
.j. moustier que il voit. & dist si haut com loit par
a minster that he sees and says so loud as one-it-heard through
toute la sale. Ensi mait diex & li saint ie nenterrai
all the hall So me-may-help God and the saints I not-shall-enter
mais en la maison mon seignor le roi a mon pooir deuant
more into the house (of-)my lord the king to my power before
che que iaie le cheualier troue se troues puet estre. Et
this that I-have the knight found if found he-can be And
vous seigneur cheualier qui chaiens estes. Ie vous di a tous
you lords knights who in-here are I you say to all
sor vos honors que vous me sieues car ie men vois.
upon your honors that you me follow for I myself-thence go
Lors sempart mesire Gauuain & sen vait a
Then himself-thence-parts my-lord Gawain and himself-thence goes to
son ostel. Et tout li .v. qui auoec lui estoient uenu
his lodging And all the five who with him were come
sen vont a lor ostex. & la parole sespant par
themselves-thence go to their lodgings and the word spreads through
laiens. si que par toute la sale sot on porquoi mesire
in-there so that through all the hall knew one wherefore my-lord
Gauuain sen ala. si loirent vne partie des cheualiers
Gawain himself-thence went so it-heard a part of-the knights

qui en la queste auoient este. & en salirent bien sus
who in the quest had been and thence leapt well up
iusca .xiiij. plus nen auoit laiens. li autre estoient en
up-to fourteen more not-thereof had-it in-there the others were in
lor pais & en lor affaires. Cil .xiiij. se coururent
their countries and in their affairs Those fourteen themselves ran
armer apres les autres .vj. qui ia sarmoient. & li rois
to-arm after the other six who already armed-themselves and the king
fu remes moult esbahis. & saperchoit bien que il auoit
was remained very amazed and perceives well that he had
folement pense. si sen repent moult uolentiers sil
foolishly thought so himself-thereof repents very willingly if-he
peust. Mais il seit bien que par soi ne les retenra
could But he knows well that by himself not them will-hold-back
il pas. si a tel duel que par .j. poi quil nesrage. si
he at-all so has-he such grief that by a little that-he not-goes-mad so
saut fors de la table & vient a la roine grant aleure si
leaps-he out of the table and comes to the queen great pace so
li conte. & dist quele y mete paine a li retenir. Et
to-her tells and says that-she there put pain in him to-hold-back And
ele dist que ele le retenra. Lors sadrece la roine &
she says that she him will-hold-back Then directs-herself the queen and
sen vient a lostel monseignor Gauuain si voit quil
herself-thence comes to the-lodging (of-)my-lord Gawain so sees that-he
est ia tos armes fors des mains & sa teste. Et quant
is already all armed except of-the hands and his head And when
il la voit si li cort encontre a lie chiere. comme chil
he her sees so to-her runs toward with glad cheer as that-one
qui nule fois nen est esbahis. Et la roine li dist. biax
who any time not-thereof is amazed And the queen to-him says fair
nies vous en ales en chele queste. dame fait il voire. Or
nephew you thence go into that quest lady says he truly Now

vous pri ie fait ele par la foi que vous deues monseignor
you beg I says she by the faith that you owe my-lord
le roi & a moi que vous me dones .j. don que ie vous
the king and to me that you me give a gift that I you
demanderai. Dame fait mesire Gauuain il me souient bien
shall-ask Lady says my-lord Gawain it me remembers well
dun don que vous me demandastes le Ior que mesire li
of-a gift that you me asked the Day that my-lord the
rois creanta a la damoisele chaitiue a garantir .j. an &
king promised to the damsel wretched to guarantee a year and
.j. ior. si me demandastes que ie remansisse de lost. &
a day so me asked-you that I should-remain from the-host and
ie remes comme fax. si vi tel eure que ie volsisse
I remained as false so saw-I such hour that I would-have-wished
miex estre mors & hounis. Mais bien sachies que il nest
better to-be dead and shamed But well know that it not-is
riens pourquoi ie remansisse orendroit; Car par la foi que
anything wherefore I would-remain right-now For by the faith that
ie vous doi. se ie le vous auoie creante si vous en fauroie
I you owe if I it you had promised so you thereof would-fail
ie. Et quant la roine loit si seit bien que proiere
I And when the queen it-hears so knows-she well that prayer
ni auoit mestier. Mais toute uoies li dist. biax nies
not-there had use But all ways to-him says fair nephew
fait ele vous ires querre & si ne saues qui. & si laissies
says she you will-go to-seek and so not know whom and so leave
vostre oncle le roi si dolant & si esbahi. que onques mais
your uncle the king so sorrowful and so amazed that ever more
si dolans ne fu. ne tout li cheualier qui furent en ceste
so sorrowful not was-he nor all the knights who were in this

queste ni sont mie. Mais faites bien si remanes tant que
quest not-there are at-all But do well so remain until that
vostre compaignon y soient tot. si metes le roi a aise.
your companions there be all so put the king at ease
Dame fait il des compaignons qui en la queste furent
Lady says he of-the companions who in the quest were
a il chaiens vne partie. & chascuns i doit estre por
has it in-here a part and each there ought be for
soi esloiauter. Car mesire li rois nous a tous tenus por
himself to-clear For my-lord the king us has all held for
traitors. & qui voldra il y vendra. Mais par la foi que
traitors and who will-wish he there will-come But by the faith that
ie vos doi. morir puis ie en la queste. que ie nenterai
I you owe die can I in the quest for I not-shall-enter
iamais en la maison monseignor le roi deuant que iaie
ever-more into the house (of-)my-lord the king before that I-have
troue le cheualier. & en aporterai tex enseignes que
found the knight and thereof shall-bring such tokens that
ien deurai bien estre creus. & si ne sai ie qui il
I-thereof ought well to-be believed and so not know I who he
est. ne en quel lieu ie le trouerai. Tant fait la roine
is nor in what place I him shall-find So-much says the queen
faites por moi que vous uenes deuant le roi ains que
do for me that you come before the king before that
vous aies vostre hiaume lachie. si parlera a vous &
you may-have your helm laced so will-speak with you and
il li otrie. Et la roine apele vne soie pucele & si li
he it grants And the queen calls a her maiden and so to-her
dist que ele aille dire au roi que ele ne puet metre fin
says that she go tell to-the king that she not can put end
a monseignor Gauuain retenir. & que il li face crier
to my-lord Gawain holding-back and that he to-him make cry

merci a tote la cort. & ele li va dire. Et li rois apele
mercy to all the court and she to-him goes tell And the king calls
ses cheualiers si lor conte son grant anui. & lor dit
his knights so to-them tells his great trouble and to-them says
que chascuns soit tous appareillies de monseignor Gauuain
that each be all ready for my-lord Gawain
retenir par proieres & por losenges. Et chil vienent
to-hold-back by prayers and by flatteries And those come
apres lui fors de la sale. & voient monseignor Gauuain
after him out of the hall and see my-lord Gawain
arme fors de la teste & des mains Et li rois li vient
armed except of the head and of-the hands And the king to-him comes
a lencontre. si li prie de tout son pooir que il remaigne
to the-meeting so him begs with all his power that he remain
tant seulement que li autre soient laiens qui en la
so-much only that the others be in-there who in the
queste auoient este. Car il sen failloit bien la moitie.
quest had been For it itself-thereof lacked well the half
Mais mesire Gauuain ne len puet de riens escouter.
But my-lord Gawain not him-thereof can in anything listen
& li rois regarde les cheualiers qui deriere li venoient.
and the king looks-at the knights who behind him came
& il se laissent maintenant tout caoir a terre deuant
and they themselves let at-once all fall to ground before
lui. Quant il voit ce si est si dolans que par .j. poi quil
him When he sees this so is-he so sorrowful that by a little that-he
nerrage. & autresi se furent toutes ius mises les
not-goes-mad and likewise themselves were all down put the
dames & les damoiseles. & tout li crient merci. &
ladies and the damsels and all to-him cry mercy and
li proient quil remaigne. & il dist que por noient le
him beg that-he remain and he says that for nothing it

font. que nule riens ne le retenroit. que seulement li
they-do for any thing not him would-hold-back but only the
desiritemens & la honte son seignor le roi. por ces .ij.
disinheriting and the shame (of-)his lord the king for these two
choses remanroie ie. Mais ie ne voi ne lun ne lautre.
things would-remain I But I not see neither the-one nor the-other
Atant demande son hiaume & lon li baille & li
Thereupon asks-he his helm and one to-him hands and him
lache len. & illuec furent appareillie si compaignon qui
laces one and there were prepared his companions who
deuoient mouoir auoec lui. Et quant li rois voit que il
were-to set-out with him And when the king sees that he
sen va si a chertes si a paor que il ne lait
himself-thence goes so in earnest so has-he fear that he — him-has
perdu a tous iors mais. si li crie merchi si durement
lost for all days more so to-him cries mercy so hard
comme il plus puet. & se veut a ses pies laissier caoir
as he most can and himself wishes at his feet to-let fall
Et mesire Gauuain le prent entre ses bras & li crie
And my-lord Gawain him takes between his arms and to-him cries
por dieu merci. ne me retenes mie contre monor. & se
for God mercy not me hold-back at-all against my-honor and if
vous voles ie remanrai. Mais par les sains de chele eglize
you wish I shall-remain But by the saints of that church
si tent ses mains vers vne capele le roi. & ie
so holds-out-he his hands toward a chapel (of-)the king and I
mochirai demain tantost com ien porai auoir aise.
myself-shall-kill tomorrow as-soon as I-thereof shall-be-able have ease
& se vous men laissies aler ie reuenrai si tost com ie
and if you me-thence let go I shall-return as soon as I
porai vraies enseignes aporter. Sire fait la roine laissies
shall-be-able true tokens bring Lord says the queen let

le aler puis que ses cuers y est. en maintes autres
him go since that his heart there is in many other
questes a il este. dont il est reuenus dieu merci. si
quests has he been from-which he is returned God thanks so
fera il de ceste se dieu plaist. dame fait il cest voirs.
will-do he from this-one if God please lady says he this-is true
Mais li cuers me dit que iamais nel reuerrai. Et
But the heart me tells that ever-more not-him shall-I-see-again And
lors se fiert en vne cambre si se laist caoir en .j.
then himself flings-he into a chamber so himself lets fall on a
lit. si fait tel duel que riens nel puet comforter. &
bed so makes such grief that anything not-him can comfort and
la roine est remeise auoec monseignor Gauuain. & quant
the queen is remained with my-lord Gawain and when
ele voit quil sen va a chertes. si lapele a vne
she sees that-he himself-thence goes in earnest so him-calls-she to a
part & dist. biax nies vous en ales & si ne saues
part and says fair nephew you thence go and so not know
ou. Dame fait il vous dites voir. Ie vous dirai comment
where Lady says he you say true I you shall-tell how
vous troueres le cheualier. Mais vous me creanteres que
you will-find the knight But you me will-promise that
vous nen acointeres homme ne feme ne ore ne autre
you not-thereof will-acquaint man nor woman neither now nor other
fois; & il li creante. Vous ires fait ele la ou vous
time and he to-her promises You will-go says she there where you
quideres trouer galahos. & sachies que vous troueres en sa
will-think to-find Galehaut and know that you will-find in his
compaignie le cheualier. se en nul lieu le deues trouer.
company the knight if in any place him you-ought find
& sachies que chou est lancelot del lac. & quant il
and know that this is Lancelot of-the lake and when he

loit si en a si grant ioie que tart li est que il
it-bears so thereof has-he so great joy that late to-him is-it that he
soit montes. & dist que lancelot connoist il bien. Atant
be mounted and says that Lancelot knows he well Thereupon
sen part de la roine. & pent son escu a son col.
himself-thence parts-he from the queen and hangs his shield at his neck
& prent sa lanche de son escuier si sen tourne lui
and takes his lance from his squire so himself-thence turns himself
vintisme de tex cheualiers com vous orres. Il y fu mesire
twentieth of such knights as you will-hear It there was my-lord
ywains li grans. & mesire brandalis. & kex li senescax.
Yvain the great and my-lord Brandelis and Kay the seneschal
& sagremors li desrees & gasoains destranz & gifles li
and Sagremor the unruly and Gasoain of-estranz and Giflet the
fiex do. & gladoains de caermuzin. & galegantis li galois
son (of-)Do and Gladoain of caermuzin and Galegantin the Welsh
& karadex bries bras & caradigais. et ywains del lyonel.
and Caradoc Short Arm and Caradigais and Yvain of-the Lionel
et dus tarillas. & canus de caee. & li rois cheualiers de
and duke Taulas and Canut of caee and the king knight of
Ienne. & dains li biax. & gales li caus. & li valles de
Genne and Dain the fair and Gales the bald and the squire of
norz & li rois yders. de tous les .xl. qui en la queste
norz and the king Yder of all the forty who in the quest
auoient este nauoit a chele eure plus en la court nen
had been not-had-it at that hour more in the court nor-in
lostel le roi. Car li autre estoient tout en lor terres
the-lodging (of-)the king For the others were all in their lands
& en lor grans affaires de tex y auoit. & la roine
and in their great affairs of such there had-it and the queen
commande & dieu monseignor Gauuain auant. & apres les
commends to God my-lord Gawain before and after the

autres. si sont li cheualier qui remainent tout anoie & tout
others so are the knights who remain all annoyed and all
angoisseus. & mesire Gauuain se porpense dune chose
anguished and my-lord Gawain himself bethinks of-a thing
dont il fu moult proisies comme chil qui tous les biens
for-which he was much prized as that-one who all the goods
sauoit. & dist a la roine & as cheualiers qui remainent.
knew and says to the queen and to-the knights who remain

Dame dame. & vous seignor qui remanes. Ie voeil que
Lady lady and you lords who remain I wish that
vous sachies que nous en alons en cest affaire. & acoillons
you know that we thence go in this affair and gather
en nostre queste cheax qui y furent a lautre fois auoeques
into our quest those who there were at the-other time with
nous. Car il ni peuent ore pas estre. & sil auient que
us For they not-there can now at-all be and if-it happens that
nous achieuons de ceste chose. nous volons que il en
we achieve of this thing we wish that they thereof
aient achieue. & se nous falons por che ne remaigne que
have achieved and if we fail for this not let-it-remain that
chascun daus sonor ni querre. & vous seignor lotroies
each of-them his-honor not-there seek and you lords it-grant
qui estes compaignon de ceste queste. & chil lotroient. Et
who are companions of this quest and they it-grant And
lors si senpartent & laissent le roi & sa compaignie
then so themselves-thence-part-they and leave the king and his company
si dolant quil ne peuent plus. & quant il ont eslongie
so sorrowful that-they not can more and when they have gone-far-from
carduel tant quil nen voient mais point. si vienent a
carlisle so-long that-they not-thereof see more anything so come-they to
vne piere qui a a non li perons merlin. la ou merlins
a stone which has to name the perron Merlin there where Merlin

ochist les .ij. encanteors. lors parla mesire Gauuain & dist.
killed the two enchanters then spoke my-lord Gawain and said
Seignor nous en alons en vne des greignors besoignes que
Lords we thence go into one of-the greatest affairs that
nous fesimes onques mais. & il nous en couient en tel
we did ever more and it us thereof behooves in such
maniere penser que nous nen soions plus hontex. si mest
manner to-think that we not-thereof be more ashamed so to-me-is
auis quil seroit boin que nous alisiens chascuns par lui.
opinion that-it would-be good that we should-go each by himself
si acheuerons plus tost de la queste que se nous estiemes
so shall-achieve-we more soon of the quest than if we were
tout ensamble & il lotroient tuit. & il cheualchent tant
all together and they it-grant all and they ride so-long
quil trouent voies forkies & se departent ensi comme
that-they find ways forked and themselves part thus as
mesire Gauuain lor commande. qui il tienent a seignor.
my-lord Gawain them commands whom they hold for lord
& il lor dist si com il sen partent. que en
and he to-them says so as they themselves-thence part that in
tous les liex dont il orront noueles dun cheualier errant
all the places of-which they will-hear news of-a knight errant
quil se traient chele part. Car ensi fait il porrons
that-they themselves draw that way For thus says he shall-be-able-we
trouer li .j. lautre. & gardes que a la premiere assamblee
find the one the-other and see that at the first assembly
qui sera el roialme de logres que vous y vengies tuit.
which will-be in-the kingdom of logres that you there come all
& la saura li vns comment li autres aura esploitie &
and there will-know the one how the other will-have achieved and
quex ques armes que chascuns aura aporte ou vex ou
what soever arms that each will-have brought either old or

nueues. & gardes que al plus que vos porres vous coures
new and see that at-the most that you will-be-able you hide
que la maisnie monseignor le roi ne vous connoissent.
that the household (of-)my-lord the king not you know
Et por chou que nous nous desconnoisons li .j. des
And for this that we us shall-not-know the one from-the
autres. si gardes que chascuns ait pendu son escu a
others so see that each may-have hung his shield at
son col che dedens defors. ensi nous entreconnoistrons.
his neck the inside outside thus us shall-know-each-other
Ensi se departent iusqua .xv. dax. & li .v. en
Thus themselves part up-to fifteen of-them and the five thence
cheualchent ensamble. mesire Gauuain & mesire ywain &
ride together my-lord Gawain and my-lord Yvain and
kex li senescax. & sagremors li desrees. & giffles li
Kay the seneschal and Sagremor the unruly and Giflet the
fiex do. Ichil cheualchent ensamble moult longement. Car
son (of-)Do These ride together very long For
moult sentramoient. & toute uois se departent en la
much loved-each-other-they and all ways themselves part in the
fin. Si se taist atant li contes dax tous fors que de
end So itself is-silent thereupon the tale of-them all except that of
monseignor Gauuain por ce quil esploita de cele queste.
my-lord Gawain for this that-he achieved of that quest
& neporquant chascuns de ces .xx. cheualiers a son conte
and nevertheless each of these twenty knights has his tale
tout entier qui sont branques de monseignor Gauuain. car
all entire which are branches of my-lord Gawain for
chou est li chies. & a chestui les couient en la fin
this is the head and to this-one them behooves in the end
tous ahurter. por che que il issent tuit de cestui.
all to-converge for this that they go-out all from this-one

The Knight Under the Pine

XLV

Gawain rides alone two days and on the third comes into a heath where four armed knights wait: Sagremor charges him but checks his horse at the last moment, and with Yvain, Kay and Giflet they make great joy and ride on together. In a valley with a single pine and a fountain a squire sets lances round the pine and hangs a black shield with silver drops on it. A knight comes to drink, sees the shield, and weeps and rejoices by turns. Sagremor, Kay, Giflet and Yvain each demand the cause and each is struck down, his horse chased off. A hunchbacked dwarf beats the knight with a staff and leads him off unresisting, and Gawain, vowing to learn why, rides after them.

Li contes dist chi endroit que mesire Gauuain cheualche
The tale says here in-place that my-lord Gawain rides
seus & pensis .ij. iors entiers. que il ne troua auenture
alone and thoughtful two days entire so-that he not found adventure
dont a parler face. Et tant a ale que li langages
of-which to speak one-should-make And so-far has-he gone that the language
li cange si & enforce. que a paines puet mais les gens
to-him changes so and grows-strong that with pains can-he more the people
entendre. Et dist li contes que au tier iour fu moult
understand And says the tale that at-the third day was-he very
main leues. & cheualche toute la matinee tant que vint
early risen and rides all the morning until that came-it
a eure de prime. & che fu en este el mois de Iugnet.
to hour of prime and this was in summer in-the month of July
si faisoit trop bele matinee. & estoient li arbre uert &
so made-it too fair morning and were the trees green and
foillu. & li prei couert derbe & de flors. & li chant
leafy and the meadows covered with-grass and with flowers and the songs
des plusors oisiax retendisoient par ches boscages. &
of-the many birds resounded through these thickets and

tant que mesires Gauuain vint esperonant fors dune forest.
so-much that my-lord Gawain came spurring out of-a forest
& entra en vne moult grant lande moult large & moult
and entered into a very great heath very wide and very
bele. si duroit bien demie lieue galeche en tos sens. Et
fair so lasted-it well half league Welsh in all directions And
quant il fu entres en la lande. si cheualcha toute la dreite
when he was entered into the heath so rode-he all the straight
voie ferroie contremont. Et quant il se regarde si voit
way iron-shod up And when he himself looks so sees-he
ens el chief de cele lande .iiij. cheualiers tous armes.
in in-the head of that heath four knights all armed
les escus as cols. les hiaumes lachies sor les testes. tous
the shields at-the necks the helms laced upon the heads all
appareillies de lor cors desfendre & dautrui assaillir. Quant
ready for their bodies to-defend and others to-assail When
il virent monseignor Gauuain sel commencha a monstrer
they saw my-lord Gawain so-him began to show
li vns a lautre. & ne demoura gaires que li vns des
the one to the-other and not tarried-it much that the one of-the
.iiij. sen part & vient encontre monseignor Gauuain
four himself-thence parts and comes against my-lord Gawain
les grans galos la lanche droite. Et quant il aproche si
the great gallops the lance upright And when he approaches so
met la lance sos laissele. & lescu deuant le pis. & va
puts-he the lance under the-armpit and the-shield before the chest and goes
si tost comme li cheuax pot aler. tous apparellies de ferir.
as fast as the horse could go all ready for striking
Et mesire Gauuain sapareille de soi desfendre. & quant
And my-lord Gawain makes-ready of himself defending and when
li cheualiers est tous enteses de ferir sa lanche. si sache
the knight is all intent on striking his lance so pulls-he

son frain si durement que par .j. poi que il & li cheuax
his bridle so hard that by a little that he and the horse
ne volent tout en .j. mont. & mesire Gauuain resache le
not fly all in one heap and my-lord Gawain pulls-again the
sien. si sentreconnoissent. & voit mesire Gauuain que chest
his so recognize-each-other-they and sees my-lord Gawain that this-is
sagremoirs li desrees. & sagremoirs en a moult grant
Sagremor the unruly and Sagremor thereof has very great
honte de ce quil en a fait. si dist; ha sire merci. chertes
shame of this that-he thereof has done so says ah lord mercy certainly
sire ie ne vous connoissoie pas. Iel sai bien fait mesire
lord I not you knew at-all I-it know well says my-lord
Gauuain lors sentracolent & font moult grant ioie.
Gawain then embrace-each-other-they and make very great joy
& li troi qui apres li fierent si sen merueillent
and the three who after him strike so themselves-thereof marvel
moult dont cele amor y est venue. si sen vienent
much whence that love there is come so themselves-thence come
gabant li vns a lautre. & mesire Gauuain demande.
jesting the one with the-other and my-lord Gawain asks
qui sont chist. ha biau sire fait il che est mesire ywains
who are these ah fair lord says he this is my-lord Yvain
& mesire kex & giffles Et comment fait il vous estes
and my-lord Kay and Giflet And how says he you are
vous entretroues. sire fait il la desous a .j. quarefor des
you met-each-other lord says he there below at a crossroads of
ces voies. si nous y amena orendroit auenture tous .iiij.
these ways so us there brought just-now adventure all four
ensamble. & il seront ia moult lie quant il vous verront.
together and they will-be soon very glad when they you will-see

Atant vienent li troi les grans galos. Car moult lor
Thereupon come the three the great gallops For much to-them
estoit tart quil seussent dont si grans acointemens estoit
was late that-they should-know whence so great acquaintance was
venus a ches .ij. cheualiers. que quil disoient che si
come to these two knights for while-they said this so
esgardent. si connurent tout monseignor Gauuain si li
look-they so knew all my-lord Gawain so to-him
courent tuit les bras tendus comme a chelui qui il tenoient
run all the arms stretched-out as to him whom they held
tout a seignor. si font moult grant ioie li .j. de lautre.
all for lord so make very great joy the one of the-other
si gabent asses & rient entrax des talens quil auoient
so jest enough and laugh among-them at-the intentions that-they had
quant il le virent el chief de la lande. & de cels que il
when they him saw in-the head of the heath and at those that they
ont ore. Car il ni auoit celui qui ne vous volsist
have now For it not-there had that-one who not you would-have-wished
auoir abatu a chele eure. Et dist kex li senescax que
to-have struck-down at that hour And says Kay the seneschal that
onques mais iouste si apparellie ne vit remanoir sans
ever more joust so prepared not saw-he remain without
caoir ou sans faillir. Ensi parolent longement & gabent.
falling or without failing Thus speak-they long and jest
& mesire ywains dist. des que diex nous a mis ensamble.
and my-lord Yvain says since that God us has put together
nous ne nous departirons mais iusca tant que nous aurons
we not us shall-part more up-to so-much that we shall-have
troue aucune auenture. Et mesire Gauuain lotroie. Atant
found some adventure And my-lord Gawain it-grants Thereupon
sen tornent tout .v. ensamble. & quant il vindrent
themselves-thence turn all five together and when they came

el chief de la lande si puient .j. mont. & cheualchent
into-the head of the heath so climb a mount and ride
tot .v. le tertre contremont. Tant quil coisissent desous
all five the hill up So-long that-they espy below
.j. grant val clos de bois entor & de tertres de .iij. pars.
a great vale enclosed with wood around and with hills on three parts
La valee estoit bele & grans tote plaine derbe & de
The valley was fair and great all full of-grass and of
flors entremellee. ne tant com ele duroit ni auoit arbre
flowers intermingled nor as-far as it lasted not-there had-it tree
que .j. seul. & ce estoit .j. des plus biax pins del monde.
but a single and this was one of-the most fair pines of-the world
Cis pins estoit droitement ens en mi le valee. & desous
This pine was right in in middle the valley and under
cel pin sordoit vne fontaine grans & bele. si lapeloient chil
that pine sprang a fountain great and fair so it-called those
de la terre la fontaine del pin. de chele fontaine issoit
of the land the fountain of-the pine from that fountain went-out
.j. ruisiax dont toute la valee estoit plus bele & plus
a brook by-which all the valley was more fair and more
plaisans. Cele part cheualchent li .v. compaignon. & quant
pleasant That way ride the five companions and when
il orent auale del tertre el val. si esgarde mesire
they had descended from-the hill into-the vale so looks my-lord
Gauuain qui premiers aloit entre lui & monseigneur ywain
Gawain who first went between him and my-lord Yvain
son compaignon & son cousin. si esgardent & voient
his companion and his cousin so look-they and see
venir .j. escuier sor .j. ronchi. si tost com li ronchis le
come a squire upon a nag as fast as the nag him
puet porter. vne grant liace de lances a son col. si se
could carry a great bundle of lances at his neck so himself

part de la forest & sen entre en la lande la droite
parts from the forest and himself-thence enters into the heath the straight
voie. si vient au pin & descent del ronci moult tost
way so comes to-the pine and dismounts from-the nag very quickly
& isnelement. Et puis deslie les lances. si esteque tout
and swiftly And then unties-he the lances so fixes all
enuiron le pin. les fers deseure. puis oste de son col
around the pine the irons above then removes-he from his neck
.j. escu quil y auoit pendu. si estoit li escus noirs.
a shield which-he there had hung so was the shield black
dargent goutes menuement. & li valles le prent par le
with-silver drops finely and the lad it takes by the
guige sel pent a vne des branches del pin. & quant
strap so-it hangs on one of-the branches of-the pine and when
il a che fait si sen retorne ferant des esperons.
he has this done so himself-thence returns striking with-the spurs
si se fiert en la forest la ou il le voit plus pres. Et
so himself strikes into the forest there where he it sees most near And
quant mesire Gauuain uoit ce si sache a lui son fraim &
when my-lord Gawain sees this so draws to him his bridle and
se met ariere el bois sor le costil dun tertre. & si
himself puts back in-the wood upon the slope of-a hill and his
compaignon autresi. & dist quil ne se mouera tant que
companions likewise and says that-he not himself will-move until that
il voie que ce voldra estre. Et quant il ont iluec vne
he see what this will-wish to-be And when they have there a
piece este si voient venir .j. cheualier tout arme. le hiaume
while been so see-they come a knight all armed the helm
sor la teste. sor .j. destrier grant & fort & tost alant.
upon the head upon a steed big and strong and fast going
si vient tout droit au pin grant aleure. si commenche
so comes-he all straight to-the pine great pace so begins

a regarder les lanches. & puis deschent de son cheual
to look-at the lances and then dismounts from his horse
& vient a la fontaine si deslache son hiaume & met les
and comes to the fountain so unlaces his helm and puts the
ienols a terre & boit grant trait. Et quant il a beu si
knees to ground and drinks great draft And when he has drunk so
se redreche & prent son hiaume en sa main. & quant
himself raises-again and takes his helm in his hand and when
il le vaut metre en sa teste si auint chose quil hurta au
he it wished to-put on his head so befell thing that-he struck at-the
pie de lescu qui au pin estoit pendus. & li cheualiers
foot of the-shield which on-the pine was hung and the knight
regarde en haut si voit lescu pendre. Et lors commenche
looks on high so sees the-shield hang And then begins
.j. duel si grant comme il plus puet. & pleure & crie
a grief so great as he most can and weeps and cries
& fiert lun puing en lautre. et maldist leure que il fu
and strikes the-one fist on the-other and cursed the-hour that he was
onques nes. Et quant il a grant pieche tel duel fait si
ever born And when he has great while such grief made so
se recommence a comforter. & se blasme de ce quil
himself begins-again to comfort and himself blames for this that-he
a tant dolose. & commenche a faire autresi grant ioie
has so-much lamented and begins to make as great joy
comme il auoit fait dueil. ou plus grant. & quant il a
as he had made grief or more great and when he has
fait vne grant pieche ioie. si recommenche le duel autresi
made a great while joy so begins-again the grief as
grant com il auoit fait deuant. Et ne demora gaires quil
great as he had made before And not tarried-it much that-he
recommencha a faire ioie de rechief. & en ceste maniere
began-again to make joy of fresh and in this manner

fist bien .vij. fois ou .viij. vne fois le duel & lautre
did-he well seven times or eight the-one time the grief and the-other
le ioie. Et quant li .v. cheualier le voient. si se
the joy And when the five knights it see so themselves
merueillent moult que che puet estre. & kex li senescax a
marvel much what this can be and Kay the seneschal has
dit. En non dieu se ci na .j. fol cheualier dont nen
said In name (of-)God if here not-has a mad knight then not-thereof
a il nul el monde. Que vne eure pleure & autre rit.
has it any in-the world For one hour he-weeps and another laughs
Certes fait mesire Gauuain cest vne des grignors merueilles
Certainly says my-lord Gawain this-is one of-the greatest marvels
que ie ueisse mais piecha. & moult volentiers sauroie
that I saw more long-ago and very willingly would-know-I
porquoi il ploure & rit. Et kex dist que il lira
wherefore he weeps and laughs And Kay says that he him-will-go
demander. & sil ne li veut dire. il se combatera a lui.
ask and if-he not it wishes to-tell he himself will-fight with him
Or ales fait mesire Gauuain si li dites que nous
Now go says my-lord Gawain so to-him say that we
sommes .v. cheualier errant. si li dites que nous li
are five knights errant so to-him say that we to-him
mandons par deboinairete quil nous die porquoi il fait
send-word by graciousness that-he us may-tell wherefore he makes
& duel & ioie si grant. & kex dist que si fera il &
both grief and joy so great and Kay says that so will-do he and
se il ne le me dit. il le comperra. lors sen torne.
if he not it me tells he it will-pay then himself-thence turns-he
& sagremors li cort au fraim. estes mesire kex vous
and Sagremor to-him runs at-the bridle stay my-lord Kay you
nires mie. Car vous saues bien que li desroi sont mien
not-will-go at-all For you know well that the unrulinesses are mine

de la maison le roi artu. & por ce ai ie non li desrees.
of the house (of-)the king Arthur and for this have I name the unruly
si est drois que iaie cestui. & li autre dient que ce est
so is-it right that I-have this-one and the others say that this is
drois. & kex remest qui mais nen puet. si sen va
right and Kay remained who more not-thereof can so himself-thence goes
sagremors au cheualier. qui encore se demente desous le
Sagremor to-the knight who yet himself laments under the
pin ensi com il auoit commenchie. & quant il vint deuant
pine thus as he had begun and when he came before
lui si li dist. Sire cheualier cha menuoient .iiij. cheualier
him so to-him says Lord knight here me-send four knights
qui la sus sont en cele lande. si vos mandent que vous
who there above are in that heath so you send-word that you
me dites qui vous estes & porquoi vous faites & dueil
me tell who you are and wherefore you make both grief
& ioie. Et li cheualiers le regarde en trauers & moult
and joy And the knight him looks-at in sidelong and much
li anuie & dist a saigremor. biau sire quen ont il
it-him annoys and says to Sagremor fair lord what-thereof have they
a faire ne qui ie soie. Chertes ie nel diroie ne a vous
to do nor who I may-be Certainly I not-it would-tell neither to you
ne a aus. Mais laissies moi ester que de vostre compaignie
nor to them But let me be for of your company
nai ie cure ne de la lor en cest point. En non dieu
not-have I care nor of the theirs at this point In name (of-)God
fait sagremors ensi nel lairai ie mie. Comment dont fait
says Sagremor thus not-it shall-leave I at-all How then says
li cheualiers. en non dieu fait saigremors a vous me
the knight in name (of-)God says Sagremor with you me
couenra meller se vous nel me dites deboinairement. Que
will-behoove to-fight if you not-it me tell graciously What

dites vous fait li cheualiers ce seroit outrage se ie mon
say you says the knight this would-be outrage if I my
pensei disoie a force. Ne onques mais noi que por
thought told by force Nor ever more not-heard-I that for
tel querele fust bataille entre .ij. cheualiers. Mais encore
such quarrel were battle between two knights But yet
ne voi ie cheualier por qui iel desisse. En non dieu fait
not see I knight for whom I-it should-tell In name (of-)God says
saigremors dont vous conuient il combatre a moi. Chertes
Sagremor then you behooves it to-fight with me Certainly
fait li cheualiers de che ne vous meleres ia se dieu plest.
says the knight of this not you will-meddle ever if God please
& neporquant anchois me combaterai ie que iel vous die.
and nevertheless sooner me shall-fight I than I-it you may-tell
Quant ce oi saigremors si sesloigne en mi les pres. &
When this heard Sagremor so goes-far into middle the meadows and
dist quil se gart que il le ferra des ore mais. & li
says that-he himself guard for he him will-strike from now on and the
cheualiers fait samblant que moult petit len caille. Mais
knight makes semblance that very little him-thereof cares But
son hiaume lache & oste .j. escu blanc de son col a .j.
his helm laces-he and removes a shield white from his neck with a
noir quartier sel pent au pin deiouste lautre. & puis a
black quarter so-it hangs on-the pine beside the-other and then has
pris lautre sel pent a son col parmi la guige si durement
taken the-other so-it hangs at his neck by the strap so hard
plorant & plaignant que il est auis quil doie de son
weeping and lamenting that it is opinion that-he ought from his
sens issir. puis a prins vne glaiue tout le plus fort
wits to-go-out then has-he taken a lance all the most strong
que il treuue entor le pin. si trestorne a saigremor que il
that he finds around the pine so turns to Sagremor whom he

voit venir tout aparellie de iouster. si sentreuienent de si
sees come all ready for jousting so come-at-each-other-they with so
grant aleure comme li cheual les peuent plus tost porter.
great pace as the horses them can most fast carry
Saigremors fiert auant le cheualier si pechoie son glaiue.
Sagremor strikes first the knight so breaks his lance
& li cheualiers fiert lui si durement quil le porte a terre
and the knight strikes him so hard that-he him bears to ground
sans demorer. puis a prins le cheual. si lenmaine iusque
without delaying then has-he taken the horse so him-leads up-to
desous le pin. lors li abat le fraim & fiert le cheual
under the pine then to-him strikes-off the bridle and strikes the horse
parmi la crupe del fraim meismes. & le cache en uoies.
across the croup with-the bridle itself and him chases on ways
& li cheuals senfuit grant aleure & se fiert en la forest.
and the horse flees great pace and itself strikes into the forest
& li cheualiers iete le frain desous le pin. & recommenche
and the knight throws the bridle under the pine and begins-again
son duel & sa ioie si comme il seut. lors est saigremors
his grief and his joy so as he was-wont then is Sagremor
sailli en pies. & quant il voit que li cheualiers sen est
leapt on feet and when he sees that the knight himself-thence is
ensi partis si est dolans & hontex de sa mesqueanche. Mais
thus parted so is-he sorrowful and ashamed at his mischance But
a keu le senescal nen poise mie. Ains dist a monseignor
to Kay the seneschal not-it grieves at-all Rather says-he to my-lord
Gauuain sire por noient se hastoit ore ains saigremors
Gawain lord for nothing himself hastened now before Sagremor
si; que encore i peust ore venir tout a tans. lors fiert
so that yet there could now come all in time then strikes-he
le cheual des esperons par dales saigremor droit vers le
the horse with-the spurs by beside Sagremor straight toward the

cheualier. si li dist quil sen retort que bien la
knight so to-him says that-he himself-thence return for well it-has
fait. & cil si fait tous hontex. si troeue les compaignons
done and that-one so does all ashamed so finds the companions
tous dolans de lui & corecies. & dist mesire Gauuain. que
all sorrowful for him and angered and says my-lord Gawain that
moult se doit preudome garder destoltie commenchier. Car
much himself ought worthy-man to-guard from-folly to-begin For
il ne seit a quel chief il en pora venir. Atant vient
he not knows to what end he thereof will-be-able come Thereupon comes
kex au cheualier. & si li dist aussi com saigremors li
Kay to-the knight and so to-him says just as Sagremor to-him
auoit dit. & quant il vit que rien ne len rendist que
had said and when he saw that anything not him-thereof he-returned that
bien se gart de lui quil le ferra. & chil iouste
well himself he-guard from him for-he him will-strike and that-one jousts
a lui autresi comme il auoit fait a saigremor. & autresi
with him just as he had done to Sagremor and likewise
cacha le cheual en uoie. & mist le fraim desous le pin.
chased the horse on way and put the bridle under the pine
Atant li vient giffles. & li dist autretel comme
Thereupon to-him comes Giflet and to-him says the-same as
li doi compaignon auoient fait. & en la fin le abati
the two companions had done and in the end him struck-down
li cheualiers com il auoit fait les autres .ij. lors fu mesire
the knight as he had done the other two then was my-lord
Gauuain moult dolans. & dist que moult est preudom li
Gawain very sorrowful and says that much is worthy the
cheualiers. qui .iij. des compaignons le roi a abatus. sire
knight who three of-the companions (of-)the king has struck-down lord
fait mesire ywains la cose fu commenchie folement. nous ne
says my-lord Yvain the thing was begun foolishly we not

le poons mie atant laissier a nostre honor. Et ie i irai.
it can at-all thereupon leave with our honor And I there shall-go
Car miex voeil que li cheualiers mabate que ie ni
For better wish-I that the knight me-strike-down than-that I not-there
aille. lors sempart & vient au cheualier qui auoit son
go then himself-thence-parts-he and comes to-the knight who had his
dueil recommenchie les le fontaine. si iousterent en la fin
grief begun-again beside the fountain so jousted-they in the end
entrax .ij. & labati li cheualiers autresi com il auoit
between-them two and him-struck-down the knight just as he had
fait les autres. lors est mesire Gauuain si corecies que plus
done the others then is my-lord Gawain so angered that more
ne puet. Car trop aime monseignor ywain. si en a tel
not can-he For too-much he-loves my-lord Yvain so thereof has-he such
duel que les larmes li kient contreual la fache desous le
grief that the tears to-him fall down the face under the
hiaume. & dist que moult se puet vanter li cheualiers.
helm and says that much himself can boast the knight
que .iiij. des plus preudomes del monde a abatus. Or
that four of-the most worthy-men of-the world he-has struck-down Now
ni a il mais a abatre que moi. & se dieu plaist deuant
not-there has it more to strike-down but me and if God please before
moi nauront il ia honte ne mal que ie ni parte.
me not-will-have they ever shame nor ill that I not-there share
Atant sen ist de la ou il estoit embuissies.
Thereupon himself-thence goes-out-he from there where he was ambushed
si sen ua tout le pas son glaiue empoignie par
so himself-thence goes all the pace his lance gripped by
milieu. & esgarde el chief del val. & voit venir
middle and looks into-the head of-the vale and sees come
.j. nain gros & bochu sor .j. grandisme cheual ensele
a dwarf fat and humpbacked upon a huge horse saddled

a or. Et tient sor son col .j. gros baston de cesne
with gold And holds upon his neck a thick staff of oak
freschement colpe. li nains vint esperonant tout le val
freshly cut the dwarf came spurring all the vale
droitement au cheualier qui son duel demenoit sor la
straight to-the knight who his grief made upon the
fontaine. & gifflet qui le voit. cort prendre monseignor
fountain and Giflet who it sees runs to-take my-lord
Gauuain par le frain. & dist sire por dieu or atendes
Gawain by the bridle and says lord for God now wait
tant que nous veions que chis nains fera. & il sareste
until that we see what this dwarf will-do and he himself-stops
por esgarder. & voient que li nains sen vient au
to watch and see-they that the dwarf himself-thence comes to-the
cheualier qui entent a son duel faire si sarreste dales lui.
knight who attends to his grief making so himself-stops beside him
si se hauche sor ses estriers. & hauche a .ij. puins le
so himself raises upon his stirrups and raises with two fists the
baston & fiert le cheualier au regarder quil fist sor le
staff and strikes the knight at-the looking that-he made upon the
nassal del hiaume de son pooir. si que il li embarra
nasal of-the helm with his power so that he to-him dented
tout. & li cheualiers se regarda tantost. & li nains
all and the knight himself looked at-once and the dwarf
rehauche le baston & fiert le cheualier parmi les espaules
raises-again the staff and strikes the knight across the shoulders
grans cols & sor le col & sor le hiaume tant que
great blows and upon the neck and upon the helm so-much that
li neis sen sent & li visages. & fiert & refiert
the nose himself-thereof feels and the face and strikes and strikes-again
tant com li plot conques li cheualiers ne se mut.
as-much as him pleased that-ever the knight not himself moved

ains iut le teste embronchie por les cols quil a eus en
rather lay-he the head bowed for the blows that-he has had in
mi le vis. & quant li nains la batu del blestron
middle the face and when the dwarf him-has beaten with-the cudgel
tant quil est tout las. sel prent par le fraim si le
so-much that-he is all weary so-him takes-he by the bridle so him
maine toute la voie que il estoit venus sans contredit que
leads all the way that he was come without objection that
li cheualiers y meist. Et quant ce voit mesire Gauuain
the knight there put And when this sees my-lord Gawain
& si compaignon si en sont trop esbais. par foi fait
and his companions so thereof are-they too dismayed by faith says
mesire Gauuain ce est vne des plus grans merueilles que
my-lord Gawain this is one of-the most great marvels that
ie onques mais veisse. Conques mais si preudome com
I ever more saw That-ever more so worthy-man as
chist est par si viel faiture ne fu si laidengies. ne onques
this-one is by so vile creature not was so mistreated nor ever
contredit ni mist. Mais tant creant ie a dieu que
objection not-there put But so-much promise I to God that
iamais ne finerai derrer tant que ie sace qui li
ever-more not shall-cease from-wandering until that I know who the
cheualiers est. & porquoi il a tant plore & ioie fait.
knight is and wherefore he has so-much wept and joy made
& porquoi li nains le bati & mena sans contredit
and wherefore the dwarf him beat and led without objection
metre. & se ie le peusse honereement assaillir Il ne
to-put and if I him could honorably assail He not
sen alast mie quil ne mabatist ou ie lui. Mais
himself-thence would-go at-all that-he not me-strike-down or I him But
il est prisons. Et qui prison assaut bien a il toutes lois
he is prisoner And who prisoner assails well has he all laws

perdues. sire fait kex car faites tant que vous preignies
lost lord says Kay now make so-much that you take
.j. de nos cheuax. Car autrement remandrons nous chi a
one of our horses For otherwise shall-remain we here on
pie. & nous vous sieurons si tost com nous porrons estre
foot and we you shall-follow as soon as we shall-be-able be
tous montees. & il li baillent .j. des frains de desus
all mounted and they to-him hand one of-the bridles from above
le pin. & il cache tant par la forest que il prent le
the pine and he chases so-far through the forest that he takes the
cheual monseignor ywain. si li amaine & li baille.
horse (of-)my-lord Yvain so to-him brings and to-him hands
Et maintenant les commande a dieu & lor dist. cal
And at-once them commends-he to God and to-them says that-at-the
plustost que il porront le sieuent. & il dient que si
most-soon that they will-be-able him they-follow and they say that so
feront il. & ensi remainent tout li .iiij. Mais atant se
will-do they and thus remain all the four But thereupon itself
taist ore li contes daus que plus nen parole ains
is-silent now the tale of-them so-that more not-thereof speaks rather
parlera auant vne grant piece de monseignor Gauuain.
will-speak before a great while of my-lord Gawain

The Dwarf's Tale

XLVI

Gawain follows the tracks to a pavilion where a damsel lies being combed, who reviles him as one of the cowards who watched the good knight beaten. The dwarf kills Gawain's horse with a sword, Gawain seizes him, and the dwarf, to save himself, agrees to explain if Gawain will fight the knight. The knight is Hector, who loves the dwarf's niece, left in his keeping by his dying brother. Segurades, refused in marriage, has wasted the lady of the land, who has promised to take him if no champion beats him within a year. Hector dreamed he would win, but the niece had bound him not to fight without leave, and the dwarf sent after him the black shield she had made, a sign he had angered her; hence his grief and his joy.

Or dist li contes que mesire Gauuain sen ua. &
Now says the tale that my-lord Gawain himself-thence goes and
sieut les esclos au cheualier & au nain. si ot toute ior
follows the tracks of-the knight and of-the dwarf so had-he all day
ale sans auenture trouer. la nuit iut en la forest. & au
gone without adventure finding the night lay-he in the forest and at-the
matin se lieue & se remet ens esclos des cheuax. Si
morning himself rises and himself puts-again in tracks of-the horses So
cheualche tant la matinee quil estoit eure de tierche. Et
rides-he so-long the morning that-it was hour of tierce And
lors ist de la forest. & vient en vne grant prairie. &
then goes-out-be from the forest and comes into a great meadow and
voit en mi la prairie .j. pauillon tendu moult bel & moult
sees in middle the meadow a pavilion pitched very fair and very
riche. Chele part cheualche mesire Gauuain tant quil vient
rich That way rides my-lord Gawain so-long that-be comes
a luis du pauillon. si met ens sa teste tout a cheual. &
to the-door of-the pavilion so puts in his head all on horse and
voit el milieu du paueillon vne couce aornee de moult
sees in-the middle of-the pavilion a couch adorned with very

grant riquece. En chele couche gisoit vne damoisele. de
great richness On that couch lay a damsel of
moult grant biaute. ses cheuex par ses espaules qui moult
very great beauty her hair over her shoulders which very
estoient bel. & deriere li estoit vne pucele qui le pignoit
were fair and behind her was a maiden who her combed
a .j. pigne diuoire sororei & par deuant en rauoit vne
with a comb of-ivory gilded and by before thereof had-it-again one
qui li tenoit .j. mireor & .j. chapel. Quant mesire Gauuain
who to-her held a mirror and a chaplet When my-lord Gawain
voit la damoisele si li dist. que boin ior li doinst diex &
sees the damsel so to-her says that good day her may-give God and
ele li respont. & diex vous beneie sire cheualiers. se vous
she to-him answers and God you may-bless lord knight if you
nestes des maluais cheualiers & des recreans qui virent le
not-are of-the bad knights and of-the recreants who saw the
boin cheualier batre & laidengier. ne onques ne li aidierent.
good knight beaten and mistreated nor ever not him helped
Quant mesire Gauuain oi che si se fiert dedens le
When my-lord Gawain heard this so himself strikes within the
paueillon tout a cheual & dist. ha damoisele qui que ie
pavilion all on horse and says ah damsel whoever that I
soie por dieu vous pri que vos me dites qui li cheualiers
may-be for God you I-beg that you me tell who the knight
est. & porquoi il faisoit & duel & ioie. fi; fait ele
is and wherefore he made both grief and joy fie says she
taisies vous. que ie sai bien que vous estes des maluais
be-silent you for I know well that you are of-the bad
faillis. Damoisele fait il por la pitie dieu dites le moi
failed-ones Damsel says he for the pity (of-)God tell it me
par .j. couent que ie serai vostres cheualiers tout mon
on a covenant that I shall-be your knight all my

viuant. Tant fait ele vous dirai ie. que male honte vous
life So-much says she you shall-tell I that evil shame you
doinst diex anchois que vous i remues vos pies de chi.
may-give God before that you there move your feet from here
Si tost com ele ce dit si tressaut li cheuax monseignor
As soon as she this says so starts the horse (of-)my-lord
Gauuain sous lui & se detort. si cune des renes ront.
Gawain under him and itself twists so-that one of-the reins breaks
& il regarde deriere lui si voit le nain qui auoit batu le
and he looks behind him so sees the dwarf who had beaten the
cheualier. si tenoit a .ij. puins vne espee toute sanglente
knight so held-he with two fists a sword all bloody
dont il auoit feru le cheual parmi les costes. Et mesire
with-which he had struck the horse through the ribs And my-lord
Gauuain saut sus si corechies qua poi quil ne desue. si
Gawain leaps up so angered that-by little that-he not goes-mad so
aert le nain parmi les espaules. & puis par les temples
seizes the dwarf by the shoulders and then by the temples
& le lieue en haut por ferir a lestace du pauellon. &
and him lifts on high to strike on the-post of-the pavilion and
li nains commenche a crier & dist. Or mest auenu ce
the dwarf begins to cry and says Now to-me-is happened this
que ma mere me deuina. que fu che fait mesire Gauuain.
that my mother me foretold what was this says my-lord Gawain
Certes fait il ele me dist que maluaise merde me tueroit.
Certainly says he she me told that wicked dung me would-kill
& ie sai bien que li pires crestiens del monde me
and I know well that the worst Christian of-the world me
tient a ses .ij. mains. Certes fait mesires Gauuain mors
holds in his two hands Certainly says my-lord Gawain dead
estes vous. se vous ne me dites orendroit qui li cheualiers
are you if you not me tell right-now who the knight

est qui ploroit & rioit sor la fontaine. & porquoi il
is who wept and laughed upon the fountain and wherefore he
faisoit & duel & ioie. & porquoi vous le batistes. &
made both grief and joy and wherefore you him beat and
lenmenastes sans desfense quil y meist. Iel te dirai
him-led-away without defense that-he there put I-it thee shall-tell
fait li nains par .j. couenent que tu te combateras a
says the dwarf on a covenant that thou thyself wilt-fight with
lui. Et si auras encor droit de la querele. & mesire
him And so wilt-have still right of the quarrel and my-lord
Gauuain pense vn petit & dist. que cil a moult grant
Gawain thinks a little and says that that-one has very great
auantage qui se combat a son droit. Mais puis quil
advantage who himself fights for his right But since that-he
est venus a cest offre il se combatra che dist. anchois
is come to this offer he himself will-fight this says-he sooner
quil ne sache ce que il a tant cachie a sauoir. Si
than-he — may-know this that he has so-much chased to know So
creante au nain che quil li a demande & nonchie.
promises-he to-the dwarf this that-he of-him has asked and announced
Or te dirai fait li nains ce que tu demandes. &
Now thee shall-tell-I says the dwarf this that thou askest and
si te monsterai le cheualier. comme .j. des plus biax &
so thee shall-show the knight as one of-the most fair and
des millors que tu onques veisses. Or di dont fait mesire
of-the best that thou ever saw Now say then says my-lord
Gauuain au nain. lors commande li nain a la pucele qui
Gawain to-the dwarf then commands the dwarf to the maiden who
tenoit le mireor & le capel quele laille querre. & ele lieue le
held the mirror and the chaplet that-she him-go seek and she lifts the
pan del paueillon si sen entre en vne goue sous terre.
flap of-the pavilion so herself-thence enters into a cave under ground

& maintenant vient fors li cheualiers qui moult estoit biax
and at-once comes out the knight who very was fair
& gens & blons. Et encore estoit moult forment camoisies
and noble and blond And yet was-he very greatly bruised
des mailles del hauberc. & sauoit sa cote armoire
from-the mail-rings of-the hauberk and himself-had his coat armorial
vestue. & est par samblant moult hontex & moult esbahis.
put-on and is by semblance very ashamed and very amazed
lors parole li nains a monseignor Gauuain & dist. vois tu
then speaks the dwarf to my-lord Gawain and says seest thou
chel cheualier cest chil a qui tu te combatras. ou a
that knight this-is that-one with whom thou thyself wilt-fight or with
.j. millor se tu veus. & saches que cest vns des mieudres
one better if thou wishest and know that this-is one of-the best
del monde & a a non hector. Et chele puchele que tu
of-the world and has to name Hector And that maiden whom thou
vois la pignier si est ma nieche fille dun mien frere
seest there combing so is my niece daughter of-a my brother
asseis haut homme & gentil. Et sestoit aisnes de moi. Si
very high man and noble And so-was-he elder than me So
auint chose que mes freres sacoucha el lit de la mort. que
befell thing that my brother lay-down in-the bed of the death for
il auoit este naures en vne guerre que la damoisele de cest
he had been wounded in a war which the damsel of this
pais a vers .j. des millors cheualiers qui orendroit viue.
country has against one of-the best knights who right-now live
Quant mes freres qui moult estoit biax cheualiers & preus
When my brother who very was fair knight and valiant
vit quil se moroit si menuoia querre. Car il nauoit plus
saw that-he himself was-dying so me-sent to-seek For he not-had more
de freres. & quant ie ving deuant lui. si me bailla ceste
of brothers and when I came before him so to-me gave-he this

damoisele chi qui sa fille estoit. ne il nauoit plus de tous
damsel here who his daughter was nor he not-had more of all
enfans. Et che estoit la rien viuant que il plus amoit. si
children And this was the thing living that he most loved so
me pria si chier com ie lauoie que ie le gardasse autresi
me begged-he as dear as I him-held that I her should-keep just
com ie feroie mon enfant. & me saisi de toute la terre
as I would-do my child and me seized-he of all the land
que il auoit. qui moult estoit bele & riche. Mes freires ala
that he had which very was fair and rich My brother went
tantost de vie a mort. & ma nieche ama cest cheualier
at-once from life to death and my niece loved this knight
sor toute riens & aime encore. & il lui sor toutes femes.
above all thing and loves yet and he her above all women
& quant iel soi. si desfendi a ma nieche si chier com
and when I-it knew so forbade-I to my niece as dear as
ele auoit mamor & la son peire & sonor meisme que
she had my-love and that-of her father and her-honor itself that
plus ne feist de ceste amor se par moi non. & se
more not she-should-do of this love except by me not and if
ele nel faisoit. ele ne seroit iamais tenans de chose que
she not-it did she not would-be ever holder of thing that
ses peires eust tenu. & tous iors auroit perdue moi
her father had held and all days would-have-she lost me
& maide. Et autresi le desfendi au cheualier. & lors dis
and my-aid And likewise it forbade-I to-the knight and then said-I
que sensi le faisoient que ie feroie auoir ioie lun de
that if-thus it they-did that I would-make them-have joy the-one of
lautre a lor viuant. Et il ainsi le me creanterent ambe
the-other in their life And they thus it me promised both
doi. Cele dame de qui guerre ie tai dit dont mes freres
two That lady of whose war I thee-have told whereby my brother

fu mors estoit mal dun sien voisin. qui estoit li mieudres
was dead was ill with-a her neighbor who was the best
cheualiers du monde & li plus hardis & li plus doutes.
knight of-the world and the most bold and the most feared
& a a non segurades. & chele haine vient par chou que
and has to name Segurades and that hatred comes by this that
il lauoit fait requerre de prendre a feme. & ele nel vaut
he her-had made request to take for wife and she not-it wished
mie. Car trop ert haute feme enuers lui & asses plus
at-all For too was-she high woman toward him and by-far more
ione. Et quant chil vit que ele le refusa si en ot
young And when that-one saw that she him refused so thereof had-he
duel & honte. & le commencha a guerroier. non mie par
grief and shame and her began to war not at-all by
forche de terre ne de parente que il eust. Mais par chou
force of land nor of kindred that he had But by this
que il estoit boins cheualiers & larges. si venoient a lui
that he was good knight and generous so came to him
tout li legier bacheler. & laissoient madame por li. nis
all the nimble bachelors and left my-lady for him even
chil de sa terre. Et moult volsissent volentiers quele
those of her land And much would-have-wished-they willingly that-she
le presist. & ele estoit orfeline de peire & de meire. Et
him should-take and she was orphan of father and of mother And
grant partie de ses carnex amis estoient mort & naure de
great part of her blood friends were dead and wounded by
la soie guerre. & de la guerre le roi artu qui feme ele
the her war and by the war (of-)the king Arthur whose woman she
est lige. & maintes fois li fu loe que ele le preist.
is liege and many times to-her was advised that she him should-take

Mais ele ne le pot onques amer. ne onques ne fu
But she not him could ever love nor ever not was-she
si lie se ele en oi parler que ele nen fust dolante.
so glad if she thereof heard speak that she not-thereof were grieved
Li cheualiers guerroia madame moult longuement. tant
The knight warred my-lady very long until
que par ses hommes qui li sont failli li a destruit
that by her men who to-her are failed to-her has-he destroyed
toute sa terre & ochis toute sa gent. Ne nus fors de
all her land and killed all her people Nor anyone out of
forterece nosoit issir. Tant que la menue gent crierent
fortress not-dared go-out Until that the common people cried
a madame a vne vois que se ele nel prennoit il
to my-lady with one voice that if she not-him took they
senfuiroient ou il se renderoient a lui en sa merci. Et
would-flee or they themselves would-surrender to him into his mercy And
ele dist quele sen conseilleroit come cele qui tant
she said that-she herself-thereof would-take-counsel as she who so-much
auoit duel que plus nen pooit auoir. Quant ele ot
had grief that more not-thereof could-she have When she had
assamble tout son conseil. si dist que ele nel prenderoit
assembled all her council so said-she that she not-him would-take
por tot le monde. vns siens oncles li dist qui moult
for all the world a her uncle to-her said who very
estoit de grant eage quil le conseilleroit selonc ce quele
was of great age that-he her would-counsel according-to this that-she
disoit outre chou que nus nele conseilleroit se ele se
said beyond this that anyone not-her would-counsel if she herself
voloit a lui tenir & ele li creante que si feroit ele.
wished to him to-hold and she to-him promises that so would-do she
Nieche dist il puis que li mariages ne vous plaist il ne
Niece says he since that the marriage not you pleases it not

sera mie. Mais toute voies manderois au cheualier que
will-be at-all But all ways you-will-send-word to-the knight that
vous estes conseillie. & que volentiers le prendrois par
you are counseled and that willingly him you-will-take on
si que il vous donra respit iusca .j. an & por ce que
condition that he you will-give respite up-to a year and for this that
vous ne soies blamee de lui prendre por ce quil nest mie
you not be blamed for him taking for this that-he not-is at-all
si haus hom ne si poisant comme furent vostre anchisor.
so high man nor so mighty as were your ancestors
si vaudrois que il face tant por vous & vostre amor.
so will-you-wish that he may-do so-much for you and your love
quil se combatera a tous les cheualiers qui dedens le
that-he himself will-fight with all the knights who within the
terme vous oseront desraisnier au combatre encontre lui. &
term you will-dare to-vindicate to fight against him and
sil estoit outres par aucun cheualier. vous vaudries que il
if-he were overcome by some knight you would-wish that he
& sa terre fust a vostre merci. & par auenture il sera
and his land were at your mercy and by chance he will-be
dedens le terme mors ou outres darmes. ou vous seres
within the term dead or overcome in-arms or you will-be
morte dautre part. Ensi serois deliure li .j. de lautre. &
dead of-other part Thus will-you-be freed the one from the-other and
se il outre tous les cheualiers dusqua son terme. puis ne
if he overcomes all the knights up-to his term then not
feres vous que de lespouser ou de rendre a vne abeie.
will-do you but of him-marrying or of giving-yourself to an abbey
A chest conseil se tint la dame a qui ie sui. si furent
At this counsel herself held the lady to whom I am so were
ensi li sairement creante & dune part & dautre. & dist
thus the oaths promised both on-one side and on-other and said

li cheualiers sil auoit toute espousee. si feroit il chou por
the knight if-he had all espoused so would-do he this for
samor sele len requeroit. Ensi fu la pais establie de
her-love if-she him-thereof required Thus was the peace established between
ma dame & de segurades. & neporquant tuit si cheualier
my lady and of Segurades and nevertheless all his knights
& si seriant gardent tout les passages dentor la terre
and his sergeants guard all the passages around the land
ma dame. que cheualiers errans ni entre. Quant ches
(of-)my lady so-that knight errant not-there enters When these
couenences furent faites. ie vi ma nieche & chel cheualier
covenants were made I saw my niece and that knight
regarder lun sor lautre quil nosoient parler ensamble
look the-one upon the-other for-they not-dared speak together
por moi ne de bouce ne par message. si ving a eus &
for me neither by mouth nor by message so came-I to them and
lor dis quil souffresissent iusqua .j. an ambedui. &
to-them said that-they should-endure up-to a year both and
lors seussent il de voir quil feroit ioie auoir lun de
then would-know they of truth that-I would-make joy have the-one of
lautre. si lor fu chis termes trop lontains. Et ma nieche
the-other so to-them was this term too far And my niece
demanda a hector se il se combateroit a segurades se
asked of Hector if he himself would-fight with Segurades if
ele voloit. & il dist que il voldroit auoir done .j. des iex
she wished and he said that he would-wish to-have given one of-the eyes
de sa teste par couent que il fust ia el camp encontre
of his head on covenant that he were already in-the field against
lui. Et ele li fist fiancier que il ni combateroit sans
him And she him made pledge that he not-there would-fight without
congie. Et neporquant moult a demore li termes. &
leave And nevertheless much has tarried the term and

plus li greua de ior en ior. & souent prioit a ma
more him grieved from day to day and often begged-he to my
nieche que ele souffreist que il se combatist por sa ioie
niece that she should-suffer that he himself should-fight for his joy
auoir. Tant que ele le douta a perdre. si li fist faire
to-have So-much that she him feared to lose so to-him had made
cel escu noir goute dor & dargent. & li commanda
that shield black dropped with-gold and with-silver and him commanded
si chier com il auoit son cors. que la ou il seroit de
as dear as he held his body that there where he should-be by
li mesfais. gardast que iamais autre escu ne portast
her wronged he-should-take-care that ever-more other shield not he-bore
tant quil fust a li racordes. li noirs senefie duel. & les
so-long that-he were to her reconciled the black signifies grief and the
goutes dargent senefient larmes. Car por duel pleure lon.
drops of-silver signify tears For for grief weeps one
Quant chis cheualiers sot que il auroit samie a leure
When this knight knew that he would-have his-beloved at the-hour
que segurades seroit outres. si li fu auis que tant
that Segurades should-be overcome so to-him was opinion that so-much
se fioit en amors. que se il pooit venir en lieu ou
himself trusted-he in love that if he could come into place where
il fust il loutreroit bien darmes. & tant com il estoit
he were he him-would-overcome well in-arms and as-long as he was
en ceste pensee. si auint vne nuit quil soigna .j. soigne
in this thought so happened-it one night that-he dreamed a dream
quil estoit al pin de la fontaine la ou ie le prins
that-he was at-the pine of the fountain there where I him took
ier. si y estoit venus por vne grant assamblee qui estre
yesterday so there was-he come for a great assembly which to-be
y deuoit. se i deuoit trouer segurades. si estoit moult
there was-to so there was-to find Segurades so was-he very

lies & moult ioians. & quant il venoit desous le pin.
glad and very joyful and when he came under the pine
si esgardoit en haut & veoit vne nue plaine de menues
so looked-he on high and saw a cloud full of small
estoiles sans clarte. si le conreoit si chele nue que il
stars without brightness so him arrayed so that cloud that he
ne veoit se moult petit non. & neporquant il vencoit
not saw except very little not and nevertheless he won
lassamblee toute. De cest soigne fu il moult lies si le dist
the-assembly all Of this dream was he very glad so it told
a ma nieche. & ele respondi que ce nestoit se folie non.
to my niece and she answered that this not-was except folly not
& bien seust il quencore nestoit mie li cheualier nes
and well should-know he that-still not-was at-all the knight born
par qui segurades seroit conquis. & chil en ot moult
by whom Segurades would-be conquered and that-one thereof had very
grant duel qui forche damors dounoit cuer & hardement.
great grief whom force of-love gave heart and boldness
Et dist en son cuer meisme que ce proueroit il par tans.
And said in his heart itself that this would-prove he in time
lendemain se leua il bien matin & ie fui ia ales al
the-next-day himself rose he well early and I was already gone to-the
moustier. & il prinst ses armes si les fist porter hors
minster and he took his arms so them had carried out
dun mien castel ou nous estions si que ie nen sauoie
of-a my castle where we were so that I not-thereof knew
rien. Mais ma nieche le sot. si vint a moi al moustier
anything But my niece it knew so came to me at-the minster
& me dist que ensi sen aloit hector a la fontaine
and me told that thus himself-thence went Hector to the fountain
del pin. & ie ne voloie mie perdre la messe. Car ie
of-the pine and I not wished at-all to-lose the mass For I

ne la perdi onques dont moi souiegne. si fis .j. de mes
not it lost ever that me remember so made-I one of my
garchons monter sor vn de mes meillors cheuax. & si y
boys mount upon one of my best horses and so there
fis porter les lanches que tu veis & lescu noir. por
made-I carry the lances which thou sawest and the-shield black for
ce que ie sauoie bien que quant il verroit les lances quil
this that I knew well that when he should-see the lances that-he
saresteroit. & quant il verroit lescu lors niroit il mais
would-stop and when he should-see the-shield then not-would-go he more
auant. Et li valles vint a la fontaine anchois que hector.
forward And the lad came to the fountain before that Hector
car il sarmoit auant. si apoia li valles les lanches au
for he armed-himself before so leaned the lad the lances on-the
pin & si y pendi lescu. Et quant hector i fu venus
pine and so there hung the-shield And when Hector there was come
& il vit lescu si sauoit bien quil ot mal esploitie. &
and he saw the-shield so knew-he well that-he had ill achieved and
che fu la noire nue que il auoit soignie. Car tantost fu
this was the black cloud that he had dreamed For at-once was-he
si esbahis quil ne sauoit ou il estoit. si aperchut bien
so amazed that-he not knew where he was so perceived-he well
quil auoit le courous ma nieche & le mien. & lors
that-he had the anger (of-)my niece and the mine and then
commencha son dueil a faire si grant com tu veis. &
began-he his grief to make so great as thou sawest and
quant il ot son duel longuement mene si pensa que moult
when he had his grief long led so thought-he that very
estoit maluais qui teil duel faisoit. Car ce auroit amende
was-he bad who such grief made For this would-have amended
si tost com il auroit tue segurades que il ne doutoit
as soon as he should-have killed Segurades for he not doubted

mie que il bien nel conqueist par armes. & lors auroit
at-all that he well him should-conquer by arms and then would-have
il sa ioie qui pramise li estoit. Ainsi li sambloit il
he his joy which promised to-him was Thus to-him seemed it
que il eust ia conquis segurades. Tant le faisoit lie
that he had already conquered Segurades So-much him made glad
la ioie quil atendoit. Et por ce faisoit la ioie tant com
the joy that-he awaited And for this made-he the joy as-long as
il li menbroit de samie qui estoit mal de lui. & que
it to-him came-to-mind of his-beloved who was ill with him and that
lescu noir li couenoit porter. si en auoit teil angoisse
the-shield black him behooved to-bear so thereof had-he such anguish
quil recommenchoit son duel a faire. Et apres repensoit
that-he began-again his grief to make And after thought-again-he
que samie estoit tant loiax & ie auoec que il ne seroit
that his-beloved was so loyal and I with-her that he not would-be
ia fausses de sa promesse. por che refaisoit ioie.
ever deceived of his promise for this made-he-again joy

Ensi faisoit le dueil & le ioie que tu veis. & iou qui
Thus made-he the grief and the joy that thou sawest and I who
moult eusse grant duel se ie perdisse tel cheualier montai
much would-have great grief if I should-lose such knight mounted
si tost com iai oie la messe. si le trouai en tel maniere
as soon as I-have heard the mass so him found-I in such manner
com tu veis & le bati. comme chelui dont ie pooie
as thou sawest and him beat as one with-whom I could
faire ma volente. Car ie sai bien que il me doute seur tous
do my will For I know well that he me fears above all
homes. Et ie len amenai que onques desfense ni
men And I him-thence brought for ever defense not-there
mist. Or as oi comment li cheualiers a a non. &
put-he Now hast-thou heard how the knight has to name and

porcoi il rioit & ploroit. et porquoi iel bati & enmenai
wherefore he laughed and wept and wherefore him-I beat and led-away
sans conterdit. & porcoi il porta lescu. & tu mas en
without objection and wherefore he bore the-shield and thou me-hast in
couent que tu te combatras a li ou a vn millor de
covenant that thou thyself wilt-fight with him or with one better than
lui. Mais ie dout que tu ne tenfuies. Car ie sai bien que
him But I fear that thou — thyself-flee For I know well that
tu es li pires hom del monde. & mesires Gauuain ne dist
thou art the worst man of-the world and my-lord Gawain not says
mot. Mais moult est dolans de son cheual qui ochis est.
word But very is-he sorrowful for his horse which killed is

Hector

XLVII

A maiden brings the dwarf letters: the lady wants Gawain brought to fight Segurades at the end of her term, and the dwarf mocks her, offering instead the worst knight who ever bore shield, Gawain himself, unrecognized. They ride toward Roestoc. Hector's damsel makes him pledge not to fight without her leave. On the way Hector routs two knights at a hedge, three at a causeway and thirty sergeants at a bridge, while the dwarf jeers that Gawain holds the horses for the knights who do the deeds. Gawain says nothing, and Hector, ashamed of the dwarf, prizes him for his patience. The maiden goes ahead to tell her lady.

Atant vint vns valles hors de le caue. & dist que
Thereupon came a lad out of the cave and says that
tous li mengiers est appareillies. si fait li nains desarmer
all the meal is made-ready so has the dwarf disarmed
monseignor Gauuain puis sassient al mangier. & quant il
my-lord Gawain then sit-they at-the meal and when they

ont .j. petit mangie si esgarde li nains tout aual les pres.
have a little eaten so looks the dwarf all down the meadows
& voit venir vne damoisele moult tost sor .j. palefroi qui
and sees come a damsel very fast upon a palfrey which
tous est tressues. Et dist a sa nieche & a hector que par
all is sweating And says to his niece and to Hector that in
tans orront noueles. Maintenant descendi la pucele. asses
time will-they-hear news At-once dismounted the maiden enough
fu qui recueilli son palefroi. Et ele salue le nain & sa
was-there who received her palfrey And she greets the dwarf and his
nieche de par sa dame. & si li baille vnes letres. &
niece on behalf-of her lady and so to-him hands some letters and
quant il les ot leutes si commencha a rire de felonie. &
when he them had read so began-he to laugh with spite and
maldist corage de feme & qui nule en croit. Sire fait
cursed heart of woman and whoever any thereof believes Lord says
sa nieche porquoi dites vous che. vous noes mie fait il que
his niece wherefore say you this you not-hear at-all says he that
madame me mande que ses termes aproche. & que ie aille
my-lady me sends-word that her term approaches and that I go
a la cort le roi artu ferrant des esperons. & que ie
to the court (of-)the king Arthur striking with-the spurs and that I
li amaing monseignor gauuain por combatre a segurades.
to-her bring my-lord Gawain to fight with Segurades
si quide bien que aussi legierement soit fait com ele le
so thinks-she well that as lightly it-be done as she it
commande. se ie mouuoie orendroit si ni seroie ie mie
commands if I set-out right-now so not-there would-be I at-all
sa paines non al terme quele y a mis. ne che
except-with pains not at-the term that-she there has put nor this
nest mie legiere cose de monseignor Gauuain trouer. Car en
not-is at-all light thing of my-lord Gawain to-find For in

.v. ans nest il mie en la maison le roi artu son oncle
five years not-is he at-all in the house (of-)the king Arthur his uncle
.ij. fois ou .iij. ains va cherquant toutes les dures auentures.
two times or three rather goes searching all the hard adventures
Comme le plus preudome del monde. Mais iou li menrai
As the most worthy-man of-the world But I to-her shall-bring
en escange por monseignor Gauuain le pior cheualier qui
in exchange for my-lord Gawain the worst knight who
onques portast escu. chest chis cheualiers qui chi est. &
ever bore shield this-is this knight who here is and
mesire Gauuain ne dist mot. ne de riens nule ne li
my-lord Gawain not says word nor about thing any not to-him
caut que li nains die. Mais a hector en poise molt.
cares what the dwarf may-say But to Hector thereof grieves much
Atant fait li nains aporter les armes hector & les
Thereupon has the dwarf brought the arms (of-)Hector and those
monsignor Gauuain & commande a sa nieche quele y
(of-)my-lord Gawain and commands to his niece that-she there
voist & les puceles aussi. & dist a monseignor Gauuain.
go and the maidens also and says to my-lord Gawain
sire maluais cheualiers moult voldries ore que vous
lord bad knight much would-wish-you now that you
remanissies por cheual dont vous naues point. mais non
might-remain for horse of-which you not-have any but not
ferois. Car ie vous baillerai millor del vostre. Ensi le
will-you For I you shall-give better than-the yours Thus him
fait armer. & li fait amener le cheual & il i monte.
has-he armed and to-him has brought the horse and he there mounts
& hector & sa damoisele & li escuier & les puceles. si
and Hector and his damsel and the squires and the maidens so
porte li vns lescu hector & li autres porte .v. lanches
carries the one the-shield (of-)Hector and the other carries five lances

roides & fors si se partent tout del pauellon que
stiff and strong so themselves part all from-the pavilion so-that
nus ni ramaint par samblant. Ensi cheuauchierent grant
anyone not-there remains by semblance Thus rode-they great
piece & la damoisele apele hector si li dist. hector vous
while and the damsel calls Hector so to-him says Hector you
me fiancherois loialment comme loiax cheualiers que vous ne
me will-pledge loyally as loyal knight that you not
vous combatrois se par moi non. & se vous le faites bien
you will-fight except by me not and if you it do well
sachies qua mamor aues vous failli a tous iors mais. & il
know that-of my-love have you failed for all days more and he
li fianche. Lors vient hectors a monseignor Gauuain si li
to-her pledges Then comes Hector to my-lord Gawain so him
prie & requiert que ia ne li caille de chose que li nains
begs and requires that ever not him care of thing that the dwarf
die. & il respont que il ne len caut voirement. Lors
may-say and he answers that it not him-thereof cares truly Then
a apele li nains la pucele qui les lettres auoit aportees
has called the dwarf the maiden who the letters had brought
si li demande ou sa dame est. & ele li dist quele
so of-her asks where her lady is and she to-him says that-she
est a .j. sien castel qui a a non roestoc & est .j. moult
is at a her castle which has to name roestoc and is a very
fors castiax. dont ne girons nous mie fait il a sa nieche
strong castle then not shall-lie we at-all says he to his niece
as champs. issi cheuauchent toute ior sans auenture
in-the fields thus ride-they all day without adventure
trouer dont li contes parole. tant que il vienent a lor
finding of-which the tale speaks until that they come to their
giste. lendemain sont moult matin leue. & quant il ont
lodging the-next-day are-they very early risen and when they have

messe oie si se metent a la voie & cheualchent tant
mass heard so themselves put on the way and ride so-long
quil est pres de tierche. & lors aprochent des marches
that-it is near to tierce and then approach-they the marches
sa dame & des segurades si vienent a .j. trespas dune
(of-)her lady and of Segurades so come-they to a passage of-a
haie. & li nains esgarde. si voit venir .ij. cheualiers &
hedge and the dwarf looks so sees come two knights and
.iij. serians. si estoient li cheualier arme de toutes armes
three sergeants so were the knights armed with all arms
fors tant que il auoient capiax en lieu de hiaumes. &
except so-much that they had caps in place of helms and
li seriant auoient haches & espees & haubergons.
the sergeants had axes and swords and habergeons

Lors apela li nains hector & li dist. hector chist
Then called the dwarf Hector and to-him says Hector these
sont de la maisnie segurades. or si nous desfendes. Car il
are of the household (of-)Segurades now so us defend For it
en est or bien mestier. Car par chelui cheualier ne serons
thereof is now well needful For by that knight not shall-be
nous ia desfendu. car il ne vaut pas vne camberiere. Or
we ever defended for he not is-worth at-all a chambermaid Now
ne vos esmaies fait hector mais cheualchies seurement. puis
not you dismay says Hector but ride surely then
dist a monseignor Gauuain. sire ne vous corechies mie
says-he to my-lord Gawain lord not you anger at-all
de ses paroles. Mais souffres que vous aues asses a faire.
at his words But endure for you have enough to do
lors demande a sa damoisele congie & ele li otrie.
then asks-he of his damsel leave and she to-him grants
& il demande son escu & on li doune. & il le pent
and he asks-for his shield and one to-him gives and he it hangs

a son col. & prent vne glaiue dun sien escuier si se
at his neck and takes a lance from-a his squire so himself
met el chief de la haie deuers les cheualiers qui vienent
puts in-the head of the hedge toward the knights who come
ferrant as esperons. si pechoient andui lor glaiues sor
striking with-the spurs so break both their lances upon
son escu. & il en fiert .j. si durement que il le porte
his shield and he thereof strikes one so hard that he him bears
tout enuers a terre & lui & le cheual. & se glaiue
all backward to ground both him and the horse and his lance
pechoie. & il met main a lespee si cort as autres
breaks and he puts hand to the-sword so runs at-the others
sus si vistement que tout sen esbahissent. & il
upon so swiftly that all themselves-thereof are-amazed and they
li guerpissent plache. & ni a .j. seul qui i ost
to-him yield place and not-there has a single who there dares
metre contredit. ains senfuient li .iiij. parmi les champs
put objection rather flee the four through the fields
en trauers. & il les encauche vne grant piece. tant
in crosswise and he them pursues a great while so-long
quil se flatissent en la forest. & il sentorne.
that-they themselves dash in the forest and he himself-thence-turns
& chil qui queus fu si tost com il pot releuer si se
and that-one who fallen was as soon as he could rise so himself
traist el bois a garison. lors dist li nains que moult
drew into-the wood to safety then says the dwarf that much
a preudome en hector. si li dist quant il est reuenus.
has worthy-man in Hector so to-him says when he is returned
hector ne le vous disoie ie bien & se vous ne fuissies
Hector not it you said I well and if you not had-been
nous fuissons ia mal uenu. que chis caitis cheualiers
we would-be already ill come for this wretched knight

ni meist ia desfense. & mesire Gauuain se taist.
not-there would-put ever defense and my-lord Gawain himself is-silent
& hector en est moult dolans & moult hontex. si le
and Hector thereof is very sorrowful and very ashamed so him
prise moult de ce que il se taist si deboinairement.
prizes much for this that he himself is-silent so graciously

Ensi cheualchent longuement tant que il vienent a vne
Thus ride-they long until that they come to a
cauchie aprochant qui est entre .j. plaiseis & .j. marois.
causeway approaching which is between a hedged-enclosure and a marsh
si voit li nains el chief de la cauchie .iij. cheualiers &
so sees the dwarf in-the head of the causeway three knights and
.v. serians. si estoient li cheualier autresi arme comme li
five sergeants so were the knights likewise armed as the
autre. & il dist a hector. hector se vous ne nous desfendes
others and he says to Hector Hector if you not us defend
or sommes nous tout pris. Car cist sont de la gent
now are we all taken For these are of the people
segurades. ne nostre cheualier ni ferra ia colp. sire
(of-)Segurades nor our knight not-there will-strike ever blow lord
dist il au nain cheualchies & naies garde. puis reuient
says he to-the dwarf ride and not-have fear then comes-back-he
a monseignor Gauuain & li dist que ne li caille des
to my-lord Gawain and to-him says that not him care of-the
paroles au nain. & il dist que non fait il. Lors redemande
words of-the dwarf and he says that not does it Then asks-again
hector son escu. & prent vne glaiue de lescuier qui les
Hector his shield and takes a lance from the-squire who the
autres porte. & prent congie a samie. puis se met tous
others carries and takes leave of his-beloved then himself puts all
premiers es destrois de la cauchie. & fiert le cheual
first into-the narrows of the causeway and strikes the horse

des esperons si va parmi aux tous ferir .j. cheualier tant
with-the spurs so goes through them all to-strike a knight so-much
quil le porte a terre. & li autres le prent au frein.
that-he him bears to ground and the other him takes by-the bridle
& li autres a traite lespee si len doune grans colps
and the other has drawn the-sword so him-thereof gives great blows
amont el hiaume. & autresi font li seriant. Et il met
up on-the helm and likewise do the sergeants And he puts
tantost main a lespee & fiert chelui qui le tient par le
at-once hand to the-sword and strikes him who him holds by the
fraim sor le main que il len mehaigne. puis auise le
bridle upon the hand so-that he him-thereof maims then sights-he the
tiers cheualier & le fiert parmi le vis. si que il le trenche
third knight and him strikes across the face so that he him splits
tout dusques as oreilles. & il chiet a terre. & lors
all up-to to-the ears and he falls to ground and then
se desconfissent li autre por cest colp. si sen
themselves discomfit the others for this blow so themselves-thence
tornent fuiant. & il les cache vne piece puis reuient en
turn fleeing and he them chases a while then comes-back into
son chemin. si oste son escu & son hiaume. Car moult
his road so removes his shield and his helm For very
estoit caut tans. & mesire Gauuain lesgarde si le prise
was hot weather and my-lord Gawain him-watches so him prizes
moult en son cuer. tant com il puet ioule homme faire.
much in his heart as-much as he can young man do
Ensi cheualchent tant quil fu basse noune. & lors
Thus ride-they so-long that-it was low nones and then
aprochent dun ponchel qui est sor vne petite reuiere par
approach-they a little-bridge which is over a small river by
ou il les couenoit passer. & quant il sont pres si voient
where it them behooved to-pass and when they are near so see-they

el chief del pont .j. cheualier arme le hiaume en la teste
in-the head of-the bridge a knight armed the helm on the head
lescu au col le glaiue en la main. & auoec li seriant
the-shield at-the neck the lance in the hand and with him sergeants
armes iusca .xxx. de hauberions de glaiues & despees
armed up-to thirty with habergeons with lances and with-swords
comme vilain. & li nains dist a hector or est il mestier
as churls and the dwarf says to Hector now is it needful
que vous nous deliures. ou nous somes tot prins. Car de
that you us deliver or we are all taken For from
chestui naurons nous ia aide. Car chest li plus recreans
this-one not-shall-have we ever aid For this-is the most recreant
hom qui viue. & hector respont que il nont garde. lors
man who lives and Hector answers that they not-have fear then
dist a monseignor Gauuain. que il ne li caille de chose
says-he to my-lord Gawain that it not him care of thing
que li nains die. Que se vous esties mesire gauuains
that the dwarf may-say For if you were my-lord Gawain
sauries uous trop a faire. Mais ie vous pri que vous
you-would-know you too-much to do But I you beg that you
maidies se vous vees que mestier est. & mesire Gauuain
me-help if you see that need is and my-lord Gawain
dist que si feroit il moult volentiers. lors prent hector son
says that so would-do he very willingly then takes Hector his
hiaume & le lache & met son escu a son col. & prent
helm and it laces and puts his shield at his neck and takes
vne glaiue toute le plus fort que il pot coisir. & quant il
a lance all the most strong that he could choose and when he
est pres del ponchel si cheualche tant comme li cheuax
is near to-the little-bridge so rides-he as-fast as the horse
li pot aler. & li seriant qui deuant sont apoie metent le
him could go and the sergeants who before are leaning put the

fers des glaiues auant si len fierent tant sor son escu
irons of-the lances forward so him-thereof strike so-much upon his shield
que tout len cueurent. Et il parmi aus tous fiert si le
that all him-thereof they-cover And he through them all strikes so the
cheualier que il le porte en laigue desous le pont. Mais
knight that he him bears into the-water under the bridge But
li vilain lont si cargie de lor glaiues que il portent en
the churls him-have so loaded with their lances that they bear in
.j. mont & lui & le cheual a terre. & il resaut sus
one heap both him and the horse to ground and he leaps-again up
moult vistement si laist le cheual tout estraier & met le
very swiftly so leaves the horse all riderless and puts the
main a lespee. si lor cort sus si durement que il ni
hand to the-sword so to-them runs upon so hard that they not-there
seiuent metre conseil fors del fuir. & il les encauche
know-how-to put counsel except of-the fleeing and he them pursues
moult durement & si en bleche maint & mahaigne. &
very hard and so thereof wounds many and maims and
li cheualiers qui abatus estoit auoit son cheual recoure
the knight who struck-down was had his horse recovered
& i fu montes si senfuioit moult durement naure el
and there was mounted so fled-he very hard wounded in-the
brach & en le mamele. & hector repaire quant il les ot
arm and in the breast and Hector returns when he them had
encauchies. & treuue monseignor Gauuain qui li tient
pursued and finds my-lord Gawain who to-him holds
son cheual. si li dist grant mercis. Comment fait li
his horse so to-him says great thanks How says the
nains. sire cheualiers que maldite soit leure que vous fustes
dwarf lord knight that cursed be the-hour that you were
nes. gaaignent ensi li cheualier de vostre pais que il
born gain thus the knights of your country that they

tienent les cheuax as cheualiers qui font les proeches &
hold the horses for-the knights who do the prowesses and
les cheualeries. Et hector li prie quil ne se coureche.
the deeds-of-knighthood And Hector him begs that-he not himself anger
Atant cheualchent toute le uespree. tant que il vienent
Thereupon ride-they all the evening until that they come
a .j. chastel a la dame que il aloient secoure si se
to a castle of the lady whom they went to-succor so themselves
herbergent la nuit. & lendemain se sont matin leue
lodge the night and the-next-day themselves are early risen
por messe oir. & puis se metent a la voie. &
for mass to-hear and then themselves put on the way and
cheualchent tant quil narestent iusca eure de tierce.
ride so-long that-they not-stop up-to hour of tierce
lors treuuent vne fontaine moult bele. si tornent iluec por
then find-they a fountain very fair so turn-they there for
disner. & quant il ont disne si dist li nains a la pucele
dining and when they have dined so says the dwarf to the maiden
qui les lettres aporta quele sen aille auant. & die a
who the letters brought that-she herself-thence go before and may-tell to
sa dame quil vienent en tel maniere. & si li amaine
her lady that-they come in such manner and so to-her he-brings
ou lieu de monseignor Gauuain le pior cheualier qui
in-the place of my-lord Gawain the worst knight who
onques fust. Apres li a dit a conseil. dites a madame
ever was After to-her has-he said in counsel tell to my-lady
que ie li mant quele viegne encontre nous. & priet
that I to-her send-word that-she may-come to-meet us and beg
a ma nieche quele laist hector combattre por li. Car vous
to my niece that-she let Hector fight for her For you
aues bien veu quels cheualiers il est. Atant sempart
have well seen what knight he is Thereupon herself-thence-parts

la damoisele. & erra tant que ele vint a roestoc. si
the damsel and traveled so-far that she came to roestoc so
troeue le senescal deuant la sale. si li demande de
finds the seneschal before the hall so of-her asks of
sa dame. chertes fait il ele ne menga onques puis que
her lady certainly says he she not ate ever since that
vous en alastes. Mais quex noueles de groadain le nain.
you thence went But what news of Groadain the dwarf
sire fait ele il vient chi & sa nieche & hector & .j.
lord says she he comes here and his niece and Hector and a
cheualier que li nains tient al plus maluais del siecle.
knight whom the dwarf holds for-the most bad of-the world

The Lady of Roestoc

XLVIII

The Lady of Roestoc rides out to meet them and begs her cousin to let Hector fight; the cousin refuses outright. Gawain, asked what he thinks of the battle, says he does not know, and the lady despairs until her seneschal comforts her. At dinner a black, bristly squire of Segurades comes to say his lord will fight in three days, and the seneschal answers for the weary knight. Gawain chooses the stoutest of sixty lances and looks to every strap. On the day the lady gives him a belt and a clasp, and he asks, as a boon, that his name not be asked for seven days. Segurades comes, a huge, scarred knight, and Gawain challenges him before the people.

Atant lenmaine li senescax a sa dame. & quant ele le
Thereupon her-leads the seneschal to his lady and when she her
voit si ne pot mot dire de paor de maluaises noueles oir.
sees so not could-she word say for fear of wicked news to-hear
Dame fait ele groadains li nains vous salue & sa nieche
Lady says she Groadain the dwarf you greets and his niece

vostre cousine & hector qui chi vient. & si vous amaine
your cousin and Hector who here comes and so you brings
.j. cheualier en lieu de monseignor Gauuain mais ie ne sai
a knight in place of my-lord Gawain but I not know
quil. mais vous le verrois bien. ha! lasse fait ele com sui
what-he-is but you him will-see well ah alas says she how am-I
morte. Dame fait ele il vous mande priueement que vous
dead Lady says she he you sends-word privately that you
aillies encontre eus. & que vous prijes a vostre cousine
go to-meet them and that you beg to your cousin
quele laist hector combatre por vous. car cest .j. des millors
that-she let Hector fight for you for this-is one of-the best
cheualiers du monde. & li senescax li loe. lors fait la
knights of-the world and the seneschal to-her advises then has the
dame enseler son palefroi si est montee & li senescax &
lady saddled her palfrey so is mounted and the seneschal and
autre cheualier. & seriant a grant plente. si sont issu de
other knights and sergeants in great plenty so are-they gone-out from
roestoc encontre chex qui vienent. si les encontrent loing
roestoc to-meet those who come so them meet-they far
del castel bien .ij. lieues englesches. si encontrent auant
from-the castle well two leagues English so meet-they first
les escuiers & puis monseignor Gauuain. si trespassent tous
the squires and then my-lord Gawain so pass all
tant que il vienent au nain & a sa nieche. si sentrefont
until that they come to-the dwarf and to his niece so make-each-other
moult grant ioie. Dame fait li nains vous me mandastes que
very great joy Lady says the dwarf you me sent-word that
ie vous alaisse querre monseignor Gauuain. Mais ce nestoit
I you should-go seek my-lord Gawain But this not-was
mie preste cose. Car il nest mie souent a cort. & si estoit
at-all ready thing For he not-is at-all often at court and so was

li termes trop cors Mais ie vous amaine .j. tel cheualier
the term too short But I you bring a such knight
com ie le puis auoir. celi qui cheualce auoec ses escuiers.
as I him can have that-one who rides with his squires
lors dist la dame a sa cousine. bele cousine ie vous merchi
then says the lady to her cousin fair cousin I you thank
moult de ce que vous estes chi venue. & iai en vous
much for this that you are here come and I-have in you
moult grant fianche. Car se tous li mondes me failloit si me
very great trust For if all the world me failed so me
deuries vous aidier. Chertes bele dame fait ele ie vous aiderai
ought you help Certainly fair lady says she I you shall-help
de che que ie porrai. Mais porquoi le dites vous. por
with this that I shall-be-able But wherefore it say you for
ce fait ele que ie vous pri por dieu que vous faites hector
this says she that I you beg for God that you make Hector
combatre por moi. Dame fait ele de che ne vous fies ia en
fight for me Lady says she in this not you trust ever in
moi. que si mait diex & ses vrais cors. ie vaudroie miex
me for so me-may-help God and his true body I would-wish better
auoir dieu renoie que iel fesisse combatre a segurades.
to-have God denied than-that I-it should-make fight with Segurades
par couent que tous fust armes. & segurades fust desarmes.
on covenant that all were-he armed and Segurades were disarmed
A chest mot sache la dame son fraim. & fiert lun
At this word pulls the lady her bridle and strikes the-one
puing en lautre de dueil & dist. ha! lasse com sui morte.
fist on the-other with grief and says ah alas how am-I dead
quant la riens ou ie plus me fioie mest faillie. & li
since the thing where I most myself trusted to-me-is failed and the
senescax le prent si li dist. Dame fait il chis cheualiers
seneschal her takes so to-her says Lady says he this knight

la est venus por vostre besoigne. & ie vous loeroie que
there is come for your business and I you would-advise that
vous alisies a li. si le merchisies de che quil sest mis
you should-go to him so him should-thank for this that-he himself-has put
del tout en tout en vostre seruice. lors si orrois que
of-the whole in all in your service then so will-hear-you what
il vous dira. Atant sen vient la dame a monseignor
he you will-say Thereupon herself-thence comes the lady to my-lord
Gauuain. si sacoste les lui & dist Sire bien soies vous
Gawain so draws-near beside him and says Lord well be you
venus. & il respont que diex li doinst boine auenture.
come and he answers that God her may-give good fortune
sire ie vous merchie moult de ce que vous estes chi venus
lord I you thank much for this that you are here come
por ma bataille faire. Dame fait il che sachies que che &
for my battle to-do Lady says he this know that this and
autre cose feroie ie por vous. Certes sire fait ele vous me
other thing would-do I for you Certainly lord says she you me
monstres bien que vous feries por moi. Quant vous estes
show well what you would-do for me Since you are
venus combatre au millor cheualier del monde. Mais
come to-fight with-the best knight of-the world But
por dieu que vous en est auis. quoi dame fait il Chertes
for God what you thereof is opinion what lady says he Certainly
ie ne sai coi. ne saues. lasse. lors sache son fraim. &
I not know what not know-you alas then pulls-she her bridle and
commenche son duel si grant que plus grans ne peust estre.
begins her grief so great that more great not could be
& li senescax i est venus poignant & li demande
and the seneschal there is come spurring and of-her asks
que ele a. Et ele respont quele a asses duel & angoisse.
what she has And she answers that-she has enough grief and anguish

Dame fait il que dist dont li cheualiers. coi fait ele. il dist
Lady says he what said then the knight what says she he said
quil ne seit combatre. & il li en quiert comment
that-he not knows-how to-fight and he of-her thereof asks how
ce fu. & ele li dist comment ele li auoit demande
this was and she to-him says how she him had asked
que il li en estoit auis. & quil li auoit dit que
what it him thereof was opinion and that-he to-her had said that
il ne sauoit quoi. Comment dame fait li senescaus voles
he not knew what How lady says the seneschal wish
vous que il vous die que il le vaintra. li cheualiers
you that he you may-tell that he him will-vanquish the knight
a dit que sages & que vaillans. Mais vous nestes mie
has spoken as wise and as worthy But you not-are at-all
sage qui por noient vous ochies. Quar nostre sires est
wise who for nothing you kill For our Lord is
moult poissant de vous aidier. ne il ne vous oubliera ia.
very mighty to you help nor he not you will-forget ever
Ensi le comforte & castie li senescax. si cheualchent
Thus her comforts and admonishes the seneschal so ride-they
tant que il vienent a roestoc. si descendent al pie de
so-long that they come to roestoc so dismount at-the foot of
la sale. si se desarment entre hector & monseignor
the hall so themselves disarm between-them Hector and my-lord
Gauuain. Apres reuienent en la sale qui fu ioinchie de
Gawain After return-they into the hall which was strewn with
fres ions si troeuent la dame couchie sor vne couce si
fresh rushes so find-they the lady lying upon a couch so
morte & si esperdue com cele qui mot ne dist. & li
dead and so distraught as she who word not says and the
senescaus siet a ses pies & se paine moult de lui
seneschal sits at her feet and himself takes-pains much of her

comforter. dautre part rest li nains & sa nieche. si
comforting of-other part is-again the dwarf and his niece so
sassient entre hector & monseignor Gauuain & com
sit-down between-them Hector and my-lord Gawain and as
plus lesgarde hector & plus le prise. que onques mais ne
more him-looks-at Hector and more him prizes-he for ever more —
vit cheualier de si bel contenement ne de si seur. Mais
saw-he knight of so fair bearing nor of so sure But
de son couine ne li ose enquerre que a vilonie ne
of his condition not him dares-he inquire for-fear-that for villainy —
le tenist. Ensi demeurent illuec grant pieche tant que
it he-should-hold Thus remain-they there great while until that
li mangiers est atornes. si metent les tables & assient la
the meal is arrayed so set-they the tables and seat the
dame & sa compaignie La ou ele seoit al mangier
lady and her company There where she sat at-the meal
vint laiens vns escuiers grans & noirs & hirechies sor .j.
came in-there a squire big and black and bristly upon a
grant ronci & vint tous montes dusques deuant la table.
great nag and came all mounted up-to before the table
Et quant la dame le voit si est tele conree de paour
And when the lady him sees so is-she so arrayed with fear
que ele nel puet nis esgarder. & li escuiers parole &
that she not-him can even look-at and the squire speaks and
dist. Dame chi menuoie messires. si vous mande quil a
says Lady hither me-sends my-lord so you sends-word that-he has
oi dire que vous aues .j. cheualier qui desraisnier vous
heard say that you have a knight who to-vindicate you
est venus. si vous mande mesire que il est tous aparellies
is come so you sends-word my-lord that he is all ready
de la bataille faire orendroit. & si veut bien que vous
for the battle to-do right-now and so wishes well that you

sachies & cist cheualier qui chi sont que de hui en tierc
know and these knights who here are that from today in third
ior sera ses termes. lors prent li senescaus la parole sor
day will-be his term then takes the seneschal the word upon
lui por sa dame & dist au messagier. biax sire che
himself for his lady and says to-the messenger fair lord this
poes dire a vostre seignor que nostre cheualiers est las
can-you say to your lord that our knight is weary
& traueillies de grans iornees & de dures besoignes
and troubled from great days-journeys and from hard tasks
si a mestier de reposer. Mais a son droit terme le
so has-he need of resting But at his right term him
pora trouer en la place. ne na mie paor. que
will-be-able-he find in the place nor not-has-he at-all fear that
li cheualiers ne senfuira mie. ne ia por che mar se
the knight — will-flee at-all nor ever for this ill himself
hastera. Que se dieu plaist tout a tans i pora venir.
will-hasten For if God please all in time there will-be-able-he come
De ce que li senescax a dit fu mesire Gauuain moult
At this that the seneschal has said was my-lord Gawain very
lie & merueillos gre len sot. & si amast
glad and marvelous thanks to-him-thereof knew-he and so would-have-loved
il autretant maintenant la bataille com au tier ior. Mais
he as-much now the battle as at-the third day But
li daarains iors le mist a aise. Et li escuiers a dit
the last day him put at ease And the squire has said
au senescal. Comment sire fait il. si est vostres cheualiers
to-the seneschal How lord says he so is your knight
las & traueillies de vaintre .j. ou .ij. ou .iij. de nos
weary and troubled from vanquishing one or two or three of our
cheualiers. biaus sire fait li senescax ce poes dire a
knights fair lord says the seneschal this can-you say to

vostre seignor que ensi li mande madame quele seiorne
your lord that thus to-him sends-word my-lady that-she rests
sen cheualier tout a aise. & a enuoie querre tous chax
her knight all at ease and has sent to-seek all those
que ele puet auoir por veoir la bataille. Quar bataille de
whom she can have for to-see the battle For battle of
si grant chose ne doit pas estre chelee. & par auenture
so great thing not ought at-all be concealed and by chance
tex la desiree. qui encore y pora a tans venir.
such it-has desired who yet there will-be-able in time come
Atant sen torne li escuiers manechant le senescal
Thereupon himself-thence turns the squire threatening the seneschal
& le cheualier. & chil meniuent toutes uoies. & quant il
and the knight and those eat all ways and when they
ont mengie. si se lieue mesire Gauuain & vient al chief
have eaten so himself rises my-lord Gawain and comes to-the head
de la table. si voit bien .lx. glaiues. & en prent vne. toute
of the table so sees well sixty lances and thereof takes one all
le plus grose & la plus fort que il i quide. si torque &
the most thick and the most strong that he there thinks so twists-it both
le fer & le hanste de chief en chief voiant tous chaus
the iron and the shaft from head to head in-sight-of all those
qui la sont. & puis le roigne .ij. grant pies. Atant vient
who there are and then it trims two great feet Thereupon comes-he
a ses armes si garde bien que riens ni faille. ne
to his arms so looks well that anything not-there fail neither
coroie ne guige ne enarme. ne chose qui mestier ait
strap nor guige nor shield-strap nor thing which need may-have
a son harnois. si len prise moult hectors & tout li
for his harness so him-thereof prizes much Hector and all the
autre. & moult plaist & siet au senescal ce que il fait.
others and much pleases and suits to-the seneschal this that he does

Ensi passent chelui ior & lendemain. Et comme plus
Thus pass-they that day and the-next-day And as more
lesgardent tuit & plus lor siet. ne onques riens de
him-look-at all-men and more to-them suits-he nor ever anything of
son couine ne li enquisent. Car il doutent que il ne
his condition not of-him inquired-they For they fear that it —
li anuit. & quant vint au tier ior si fu mesire Gauuain
him annoy and when came to-the third day so was my-lord Gawain
matin leues. & fu ales au moustier. & quant la dame le
early risen and was gone to-the minster and when the lady it
sot si vait apres. si le troua deuant le cruchifis a ienols.
knew so goes-she after so him found before the crucifix on knees
si le vit de moult bel contenement. si li plaisoit plus
so him saw of very fair bearing so to-her pleased-he more
asses que onques mais ne fist. Et li senescax li dist;
by-far than ever more — did-he And the seneschal to-her says
Dame dame vous ne saues qui chis cheualiers est. mais
Lady lady you not know who this knight is but
moult resamble bien preudom. ie vous loeroie que vous
very resembles-he well worthy-man I you would-advise that you
li donisies aucune druerie. & par auenture cuers li
to-him should-give some love-token and by chance heart to-him
croisteroit. Car dames ont aidie a faire maint preudome.
would-grow For ladies have helped to make many worthy-man
& ele si acorde bien. lors apele vne soie pucele si li
and she so agrees well then calls-she a her maiden so to-her
commande a aporter .j. sien escrin. si en trait hors
commands to bring a her casket so thereof draws-she out
vne coroie a menbres dor moult bien ouree a .j. firmal
a belt with mounts of-gold very well wrought with a clasp
dor arabien. dont les pieres estoient safier & esmeraudes.
of-gold Arabian of-which the stones were sapphire and emeralds

puis vient a monseignor Gauuain. si li dist que diex
then comes-she to my-lord Gawain so to-him says that God
li doinst boin ior. dame fait il diex vous fache lie. &
him may-give good day lady says he God you may-make glad and
coi que soit des autres iors. hui sai ie bien que vous
whatever that be of-the other days today know I well that you
uoldries que biens mauenist. Chertes ore & autres fois
would-wish that good to-me-should-happen Certainly now and other times
le vaudroie ie fait ele. Car vous aues pour moi empris a
it would-wish I says she For you have for me undertaken to
faire che que ie ne poroie deseruir. si vous aport de mes
do this that I not could deserve so you I-bring of my
drueries & vous pri que vos les portes en ramenbrance
love-tokens and you I-beg that you them wear in remembrance
de moi. Et sachies que ie sui toute vostre. or si vous
of me And know that I am all yours now so you
combates por vostre amie durement. lors li baille le
fight for your beloved hard then to-him gives-she the
coroie & le fremal. & il le chaint & met le fremal a
belt and the clasp and he it girds and puts the clasp at
son col. & la dame li chiet al pie & li prie moult
his neck and the lady to-him falls at-the foot and him begs much
de li. & il cort si le relieue & li dist que toute
of her and he runs so her raises and to-her says that all
seure soit que ele na garde. & quant li nains loit si
sure she-be that she not-has fear and when the dwarf it-hears so
commencha a rire & dist. en non dieu se chis cheualiers
began-be to laugh and said in name (of-)God if this knight
nest iures ou fol nais dont ne connus iou onques iure ne
not-is drunk or mad born then not knew I ever drunk nor
fol. Atant est la messe commenchie si le vont oir. apres
mad Thereupon is the mass begun so it go-they hear after

la messe reuienent a la cort. si encontrent .ij. cheualiers
the mass return-they to the court so meet two knights
de grant eage sor .ij. palefrois si dient a la dame. Dame
of great age upon two palfreys so say-they to the lady Lady
messires vous atent la fors des hui matin. & li senescaus
my-lord you awaits there outside since this morning and the seneschal
qui moult est sages lor dist quil iront orendroit.
who very is wise to-them says that-they will-go right-now
Lors sen partent li doi cheualier. & hector &
Then themselves-thence part the two knights and Hector and
li senescaus vont armer monseignor Gauuain & quant il
the seneschal go arm my-lord Gawain and when he
est armes fors du chief & des mains. si vest vne
is armed except of-the head and of-the hands so puts-on-he a
cape a pluie par desus & len li amaine .j. palefroi &
cape for rain by above and one to-him brings a palfrey and
il i monte. & vallet sont appareillie qui li portent
he there mounts and lads are ready who to-him carry
son escu & son glaiue & mainent son cheual lors est
his shield and his lance and lead his horse then is
la dame montee auoeques lui. & cheualier & seriant &
the lady mounted with him and knights and sergeants and
dames & damoiseles si issent hors de la vile. Et mesire
ladies and damsels so go-out out of the town And my-lord
Gauuain cheualche dales la dame. & li senescaus ne
Gawain rides beside the lady and the seneschal not
se puet tenir de lui esgarder ne saouler. Car trop se
himself can hold from him watching nor sating For very himself
contient seurement. si sacoste dales sa dame & li dist.
bears-he surely so draws-near beside his lady and to-her says
Ie ne quidoie mie que chis cheualiers fust si preudom. Et
I not thought at-all that this knight were so worthy And

nous auons tot moult mal fait quant nous nauons demande
we have all very ill done since we not-have asked
son non. Ceste parole entendi mesire Gauuain. si cheualche
his name This word heard my-lord Gawain so rides-he
.j. poi auant & fist samblant que riens nen eust oi.
a little before and made semblance that anything not-thereof he-had heard
& la dame dist quele li demanderoit ains quil auroit
and the lady says that-she him would-ask before that-he should-have
le hiaume en la teste. Atant cheualchent iusquen la
the helm on the head Thereupon ride-they up-to-into the
plache. Si voient moult grant plente de gent & dune part
place So see-they very great plenty of people both on-one side
& dautre pour la bataille veoir. lors sareste la dame &
and on-other for the battle to-see then stops the lady and
li sien. & mesire Gauuain vient a li si li dist. Dame
the hers and my-lord Gawain comes to her so to-her says Lady
ie sui chi appareillies por vostre bataille faire a laide
I am here ready for your battle to-do with the-aid
de dieu. si vous pri & requier por toutes mes seruices
of God so you beg-I and ask for all my services
que vous me dounes .j. don que ie vous demanderai sans
that you me give a gift that I you shall-ask without
coustement. & ele li creante. Dame fait il vous maues
cost and she to-him promises Lady says he you me-have
done. & ie vous demant que mes nons ne me soit
given and I you ask that my name not me be
demandes deuant .vij. iors. & ele li otrie. or sachies fait
asked before seven days and she to-him grants now know says
ele que che fust la premiere chose que ie vous demandasse.
she that this was the first thing that I you should-have-asked

Quant che oit li senescaus si en est trop dolans. &
When this hears the seneschal so thereof is-he too sorrowful and
la dame meisme sen tient trop a decheue.
the lady herself herself-thereof holds too-much for deceived
Atant voit venir .iij. hommes a cheual. si orent li doi
Thereupon sees-she come three men on horse so had the two
vestu capes a pluie. & li tiers cheualche en milieu. si fu
put-on capes for rain and the third rides in middle so was
armes de cauches & de hauberc. & sa ventaille abatue. &
armed with greaves and with hauberk and his ventail lowered and
ses manicles. si ot vne cote armoire uestue a bendes dor
his sleeves so had-he a coat armorial put-on with bends of-gold
& daisur autant de lun comme de lautre. Li cheualiers fu
and of-azure as-much of the-one as of the-other The knight was
grans & corsus & bien taillies si ot les pies voltis. &
big and stout and well shaped so had-he the feet arched and
les iambes longues & droites. si fu bien furni de rains
the legs long and straight so was-he well furnished in loins
& par les flans grailes & menus. si ot le pis espes &
and by the flanks slender and slim so had-he the chest thick and
haut & les bras gros & lons & furnis par le cor des os.
high and the arms thick and long and furnished by the body of-the bones
& les puins bien quares. si ot les espaules amples &
and the fists well square so had-he the shoulders ample and
lees & la color bien auenant au cors. & la teste grosse
broad and the color well becoming to-the body and the head big
& noire & entremelles de caignes. Et le vis fronchis &
and black and mingled with grays And the face wrinkled and
plain de plaies si est anchiens. li cheualiers cheualche la
full of wounds so is old the knight rides there
ou il voit la dame. & chascuns dist cest segurades. si
where he sees the lady and each says this-is Segurades so

sen vient entor la dame qui miex miex por oir
themselves-thence come around the lady who better better for to-hear
quil dira. & il parole si haut que grant partie de la
what-he will-say and he speaks so loud that great part of the
gent lentendent. & dist dame ie voeil que vous sachies &
people it-hear and says lady I wish that you know and
tuit chil qui chi sont que hui est la fins & li termes de
all those who here are that today is the end and the term of
nos couenenches. & si tost comme iaurai uencu uostre
our covenants and as soon as I-shall-have vanquished your
cheualier me doiuent estre mes couenenches rendues. & la
knight to-me ought be my covenants rendered and the
dame est si esbahie quele ne pot parler. tant li anuie.
lady is so amazed that-she not could speak so-much it-her annoys
lors se traist auant mesire Gauuain & dist. biau sire
then himself draws forward my-lord Gawain and says fair lord
nous volons que ches couenenches soient recordees deuant
we wish that these covenants be recalled before
madame & deuant ches gens qui a li sont. & segurades
my-lady and before these people who with her are and Segurades
respont chertes ie ne sui mie aiournes de plait. ne ie ne le
answers certainly I not am at-all summoned to plea nor I not it
redirai mie ore. par foi fait mesire Gauuain. dont li
shall-say-again at-all now by faith says my-lord Gawain then to-her
feres vous tort se vous recorder nel voles sel sauront chil
will-do you wrong if you to-recall not-it wish so-it will-know those
qui ore nel seiuent. Mait diex fait il vous nel saures
who now not-it know May-help God says he you not-it will-know
ia a vous que tient. Quoi fait mesire Gauuain ie di que
ever to you what it-holds What says my-lord Gawain I say that
bien aues terre trouee. que vous quidies auoir a force
well have-you land found which you think to-have by force

vne des plus beles puceles du monde & des plus hautes
one of-the most fair maidens of-the world and of-the most high
femes. Chertes fait il se vous lauies iure sor sains & tout
women Certainly says he if you it-had sworn upon relics and all
chil de vostre pais si aurai ie mes couenences. en non
those of your country so shall-have I my covenants in name
dieu fait mesire Gauuain. en mon pais a de teus qui
(of-)God says my-lord Gawain in my country has-it of such who
bien vous i poroient nuire. & ie les met tous en mon
well you there could harm and I them put all to my
nuisement nis Gauuain le fil au roi loth se il i estoit
harm even Gawain the son of-the king Lot if he there were
ore. & quant mesire Gauuain oit que il le met en ses
now and when my-lord Gawain hears that he him puts into his
haatines si li escauffe le vis & li cuers li engrosse
challenges so to-him heats the face and the heart to-him swells
si se dreche sor ses estriers & dist a segurades que
so himself raises upon his stirrups and says to Segurades that
maint lont oi que ches couenenches nataindra il ia por
many it-have heard that these covenants not-will-reach he ever for
pooir quil ait. que asses ert qui le desfendra.
power that-he may-have for enough will-be-there who her will-defend

Segurades

XLIX

Gawain and Segurades unhorse each other in the first course and fight on foot through the morning until their arms are hacked and their shields are gone. Toward midday Segurades gains on Gawain, whose strength, by his custom, ebbed toward noon and returns doubled after it, and Segurades, weakened by the loss of blood and the heat, gives ground. Gawain bears him down, unlaces his helm and beats his face with the pommel, and Segurades begs that the lady be asked to have mercy. Gawain puts him at her mercy, and she, overjoyed, takes his submission; then all hurry back to the castle with the prisoner, and Gawain is left almost alone in the field.

Quant segurades loit si sen torne sans plus dire
When Segurades it-hears so himself-thence turns without more to-say
& li cheualier qui auoec li vindrent. si manachent moult
and the knights who with him came so threaten much
le cheualier qui a parle. mais a petit len est. & lors
the knight who has spoken but to little him-thereof is and then
prent la dame congie de monseignor Gauuain & li crie
takes the lady leave of my-lord Gawain and to-him cries
merci de sa terre & de sa uie tout en plorant. Et il le
mercy for her land and for her life all in weeping And he her
prent entre ses bras & dist que ele nait paor. & que
takes between his arms and says that she not-have fear and that
ne perdra hui rien por homme que ele ait hui
she-not will-lose today anything for man whom she may-have today
veu. lors sentorne la dame loing a vne part auoec les
seen then herself-thence-turns the lady far to a part with the
autres damoiseles. & li nains dist En non dieu onques
other damsels and the dwarf says In name (of-)God ever
nus ne fu lies contre sa mort se chis fols cheualier non.
anyone not was glad against his death except this mad knight not

Atant met mesire Gauuain sa uentaille & ses manicles &
Thereupon puts my-lord Gawain his ventail and his sleeves and
hector li lache son hiaume & li senescaus li baille
Hector to-him laces his helm and the seneschal to-him hands
son cheual & il i est montes. & hector li porte son
his horse and he there is mounted and Hector to-him carries his
escu & li senescaus se glaiue. tant quil vienent as
shield and the seneschal his lance so-long that-they come to-the
bonnes ou la bataille deuoit estre. Et quant il i ont .j.
bounds where the battle was-to be And when they there have a
poi este si voient venir segurades le hiaume lachie lescu
little been so see-they come Segurades the helm laced the-shield
prins par les enarmes comme chis qui bien le sot faire.
taken by the straps as he who well it knew to-do
& vient les galos toute la lande qui moult estoit bele &
and comes the gallops all the heath which very was fair and
grans. Comme chil qui ia ni quidoit estre a tans. Et
great As that-one who ever not-there thought to-be in time And
quant il aproche si baille hectors monseignor Gauuain son
when he approaches so hands Hector to-my-lord Gawain his
escu. & li senescaus li baille se glaiue. Et hectors li
shield and the seneschal to-him hands his lance And Hector to-him
dist. Nous nous en alons cha. que nous ne poons chi
says We us thence go here for we not can here
plus demorer. vees segurades. Mais por dieu souiegne vous
more stay see Segurades But for God remember you
donor & qui vous estes. Et il lor respont. ales ales si
of-honor and who you are And he to-them answers go go so
naies garde. lors acole ans deus & puis les commande
not-have fear then embraces-he both two and then them commends

a dieu. & chil sen merueillent moult andui qui
to God and they themselves-thereof marvel much both who
chis hons puet estre. qui si seurement se contient.
this man can be who so surely himself bears
Lors saproche segurades. & mesire Gauuain se ioint
Then approaches Segurades and my-lord Gawain himself joins
& met son escu deuant son pis & met le glaiue sous
and puts his shield before his chest and puts the lance under
laissele. Et fiert le cheual des esperons. & autresi fait
the-armpit And strikes the horse with-the spurs and likewise does
segurades. si sentreuienent si tost comme li cheual
Segurades so come-at-each-other-they as fast as the horses
peuent plus aler. & sentrefierent si durement sor les escus
can most go and strike-each-other so hard upon the shields
que les glaiues uolent em pieches. & quant eles sont
that the lances fly in pieces and when they are
pechoies si sentrehurtent si durement des cors & des
broken so collide-they so hard with-the bodies and with-the
vis que tout li oeil lor estinchelent. & tous li plus
faces that all the eyes to-them sparkle and all the most
fors se desconroie. si sentreportent tout estordi en mi
strong itself disarrays so bear-each-other-they all stunned into middle
le camp. & iurent tant a terre que de chascune partie
the field and lay so-long on ground that from each part
quidoient que il fuissent mort. si le volsist bien la
they-thought that they were dead so it would-have-wished well the
dame por estre deliure de son anemi. premierement sali
lady for to-be freed from her enemy first leapt
sus mesire Gauuain & met le main a lespee & court sus
up my-lord Gawain and puts the hand to the-sword and runs upon
a segurades la ou il le quide trouer. Mais il gist encore
to Segurades there where he him thinks to-find But he lies yet

a le terre tous estordis & blechies de le dure encontree
on the ground all stunned and hurt from the hard encounter
quil a eue. & del fais des armes & del caoir
that-he has had and from-the weight of-the arms and from-the falling
a la terre. Car il estoit .j. des greignors cheualiers del
to the ground For he was one of-the biggest knights of-the
monde & des plus corsus. Et quant il ot pooir de releuer
world and of-the most stout And when he had power of rising
si sailli sus & mist le main a lespee si se cueure de
so leapt-he up and put the hand to the-sword so himself covers with
son escu car bien le sot faire. & cort sus a monseignor
his shield for well it he-knew to-do and runs upon to my-lord
Gauuain la ou il le voit. & mesire Gauuain a lui. si
Gawain there where he him sees and my-lord Gawain at him so
se decolpent les escus as espees desous & deseure.
themselves back the shields with-the swords below and above
& desmaillent les blans haubers & les faussient. &
and unmail the white hauberks and them pierce and
enbairent les hiaumes souent & menu la ou les espees
dent the helms often and thick there where the swords
fierent. si se font en plusors lieus le sanc saillir apres
strike so themselves make in several places the blood gush after
les cols des espees. Si est la mellee daus .ij. si dure & si
the blows of-the swords So is the melee of-them two so hard and so
felenesse que tout chil qui le uoient sen esbahissent.
fierce that all those who it see themselves-thereof are-amazed
Moult est felenesse la bataille & moult sont andui
Very is fierce the battle and much are-they both
de grant cuer & de grant pooir. Et se tienent andui
of great heart and of great power And themselves hold both
si paringal que nus nen seit a droit iugier liquex
so equal that anyone not-thereof knows by right to-judge which-one

en a le miex ne le pis tant quil vint grant pieche
thereof has the better nor the worse so-long that-it came great while
apres eure de tierce. lors est a chascun sa force moult
after hour of tierce then is to each his strength much
descreue si lor lassent moult li brach & les espaules.
decreased so to-them weary much the arms and the shoulders
si lor acourchent les alaines. ne ni a si fort qui
so to-them shorten the breaths nor not-there has-it so strong who
nait mestier de reposer. & lor armes sont si empiries.
not-have need of resting and their arms are so worsened
que parmi les haubers lor perent les chars mal mises
that through the hauberks to-them appear the flesh ill placed
& plaies ou les espees ont hurte. Et li heaume sont si
and wounds where the swords have struck And the helms are so
atorne que moult petit peuent mais valoir. que en maint
arrayed that very little can-they more avail for in many
lieu sont mal mis li pot & li chercle. & li nazal
place are ill put the crowns and the circlets and the nasals
decolpe & detrenchie. que les espees i sont maintes
cut and hacked so-that the swords there are many
fois deschendues iusquens cheruelieres. si est merueille
times descended up-to-into brain-caps so is-it marvel
comment il durent tant as fais des grans cols quil
how they lasted so-long at-the weights of-the great blows that-they
sentrepaient. Ne des escus ne lor est tant remes
pay-each-other Nor of-the shields not to-them is so-much remained
dont il puissent courir lor visages qui trop sont nu
wherewith they may cover their faces which too are naked
& descouers. Car il les ont fendus & detaillies & par
and uncovered For they them have split and cut-up both by
desous & par deseure a lescremie des espees si que
below and by above with-the fencing of-the swords so that

moult petit en i a mais entor les borcles. si reusent
very little thereof there has-it more around the bosses so draw-off-they
souent & recourent li vns sor lautre si com il recourent
often and charge-again the one upon the-other so as they recover
leur alaines & lor forches. si ni a si hardi que
their breaths and their strengths so not-there has-it so bold who
toute paor nait de perdre lonor & la vie a tous iors.
all fear not-have of losing the-honor and the life for all days
En ceste maniere se contienent li .j. bien li
In this manner themselves bear the one well the
autres maluaisement tant que eure de miedi aproche. &
other badly until that hour of midday approaches and
lors commence segurades terre a prendre sor monseignor
then begins Segurades ground to take upon my-lord
Gauuain. si est moult empiries au samblant des gens de
Gawain so is-he much worsened to-the semblance of-the people from
si grant bonte com il auoit toute ior eue. si que tout chil
so great goodness as he had all day had so that all those
de sa partie en ont & paor & pesanche. Car il ne fait
of his part thereof have both fear and heaviness For he not does
mais se souffrir non ce lor samble. Mais teus estoit
more except suffer not this to-them seems But such was
sa coustume que tous iors empiroit sa force a eure de
his custom that all days worsened his strength at hour of
miedi. & si tost que miedis tornoit si li retornoit au
midday and as soon as midday turned so to-him returned-it at-the
double & cuer & seurte. & forche recouroit. & lors
double and heart and sureness and strength recovered-he and then
i parut bien. Quar si tost que midis torna. le virent
there appeared-it well For as soon as midday turned him saw
tout chil qui lesgardoient autresi fort & autresi viste com
all those who him-watched as strong and as quick as

il auoit este au commenchement de la mellee. si en
he had been at-the beginning of the melee so thereof
furent aise chil & cheles qui doeil en auoient eu.
were at-ease those-men and those-women who grief thereof had had
si recourt sus a segurades si vistement que tot chil qui
so charges-he-again upon to Segurades so swiftly that all those who
le voient sen esbaissent chil de la mainie segurades.
it see themselves-thereof are-amazed those of the household (of-)Segurades
Car il le voient tel conree que il le quidoit bien auoir
For they him see so arrayed that he him thought well to-have
mene iusca la mort. ou iusca outrage. Mais or le troeue
led up-to the death or up-to outrage But now him finds-he
plus fort & plus seur que il nauoit deuant fait. quant
more strong and more sure than he had before done when
il estoit sains & haities de cors & darmes. si ne li
he was sound and well of body and of-arms so not to-him
samble pas quil se combate a homme carnel mais a
seems-it at-all that-he himself fights with man carnal but with
fantosme. Car el monde nauoit si poissant cheualier que
phantom For in-the world not-had-it so mighty knight that
il ne quidast auoir conquis ou mort en tant de terme.
he not would-think to-have conquered or killed in so-much of time
si ne uoit mie comment il puisse des ore mais auoir
so not sees-he at-all how he may from now on have
duree. & neporquant tout met en abandon. & cuer &
endurance and nevertheless all puts-he in abandon both heart and
cors. Et durement se deffent selonc ce que sa force
body And hard himself defends according-to this that his strength
puet souffrir. qui moult est afeblie. sel tient moult en
can suffer which very is enfeebled so-him holds much in
grant uertu li renons de sa bonte que il auoit tous iors
great virtue the renown of his goodness which he had all days

eu. & la paor que il auoit de perdre la riens que plus
had and the fear that he had of losing the thing that most
auoit desiree. Chou est la dame de roestoc. & li grans
he-had desired This is the lady of roestoc and the great
cuers dont il nauoit onques este poures. ces choses le
heart of-which he not-had ever been poor these things him
tienent moult longuement en sa vertu. Tant que a forche
hold very long in his virtue Until that by force
li failli & cors & menbre. si li greua trop li sans
to-him failed both body and limbs so him grieved too-much the blood
dont il auoit perdu grant masse. & la caure du soleil
of-which he had lost great mass and the heat of-the sun
qui moult fu aspres. Si commencha a guenchir as
which very was harsh So began-he to swerve from-the
cols monsignor Gauuain & guerpir plache contre son gre.
blows (of-)my-lord Gawain and yield place against his will
Et mesire Gauuain le hastoit moult durement. si quil
And my-lord Gawain him pressed very hard so that-he
nauoit pooir de salaine reprendre ne de terre recourer. &
not-had power of his-breath to-take-again nor of ground to-recover and
ia estoit bien eure de noune aprochie. & lors li cort
already was well hour of nones approached and then him runs
mesire Gauuain seure. si li paie moult grans cols de
my-lord Gawain upon so to-him pays very great blows with
lespee parmi le hiaume. si le carge si de cols que il ne
the-sword through the helm so him loads so with blows that he not
se puet mais soustenir sor ses pies. ains canchele tous
himself can more sustain upon his feet rather staggers all
si quil sapoie a terre de lune des palmes. Et quant il
so that-he himself-leans to ground with one of-the palms And when he
se quide releuer si li cort sus mesire Gauuain & le
himself thinks to-rise-again so him runs upon my-lord Gawain and him

fiert de cors & de lescu au releuer. si quil le fait
strikes with body and with the-shield at-the rising so that-he him makes
a terre couchier de tout le cors. Et puis se laist caoir
to ground lie with all the body And then himself lets fall
sor lui. si li ront sans demorance les las del hiaume
upon him so to-him breaks without delay the laces of-the helm
& li sache de la teste & le fiert el vis & el
and to-him pulls-it from the head and him strikes in-the face and in-the
front grans cols del pomel de sespee. si que mainte des
forehead great blows with-the pommel of his-sword so that many of-the
mailles li sont entrees en la teste. & il auoit les iex
mail-rings to-him are entered into the head and he had the eyes
si plaines de sanc que il ne veoit mais goute. si voit bien
so full of blood that he not saw more a-drop so sees-he well
que desfense ni a mestier. si crie merci a monseignor
that defense not-there has use so cries mercy to my-lord
Gauuain. & mesire Gauuain li dist quil ni a
Gawain and my-lord Gawain to-him says that-it not-there has
riens de merchi se il ne se claime conquis ou recreans
anything of mercy if he not himself declares conquered or recreant
outreement. Car autrement ne le puis ie faire honereement.
utterly For otherwise not it can I do honorably
Ha! ientiex cheualiers fait segurades ia estes vous le
Ah noble knight says Segurades already are you the
plus preudom qui viue. Et qui en aura dont merci se li
most worthy-man who lives And who thereof will-have then mercy if the
plus preudom del monde ne la. Ne souffres que ie die
most worthy-man of-the world not it-has Not suffer that I may-say
mot qui me hounisse. Mais faites por dieu & por pitie que
word which me shames But do for God and for pity that
vous priies madame de moi. si maurries fait moult grant
you beg my-lady for me so me-would-have-you done very great

manaie. & il dist que moult volentiers. lors fu la dame
mercy and he says that very willingly then was the lady
mande. & ele i vint si lie que plus ne puet. & la ele
sent-for and she there came so glad that more not can-she and there she
voit monseignor Gauuain. si se laist caoir dedens ses bras.
sees my-lord Gawain so herself lets fall within his arms
si li baisse les mailles de la cauche sor le iambe moult
so to-him kisses the mail-rings of the greave upon the leg very
durement & les esperons des pies & dist. ha sire leure
hard and the spurs of-the feet and says ah lord the-hour
soit beneoite que vous fustes nes. qui ma grant ioie maues
be blessed that you were born who me-has great joy you-have
rendue. & mesire Gauuain la fait auant venir. si li dist.
rendered and my-lord Gawain her makes forward come so to-her says
Dame fait il chis cheualiers vous crie merci. & vous uees
Lady says he this knight you cries mercy and you see
bien comment il est. sire fait ele vous en feres vostre
well how he is lord says she you thereof will-do your
plaisir que ie nen sai que faire. Dame fait il non ferai.
pleasure for I not-thereof know what to-do Lady says he not shall-do-I
car la querele nest mie moie. Mais ie sui vostres cheualiers
for the quarrel not-is at-all mine But I am your knight
si vous pri de lui. & bien sachies que chou est .j. des
so you beg-I for him and well know that this is one of-the
plus preudomes que ie onques veisse. si vous pri que vous
most worthy-men that I ever saw so you beg-I that you
ne le souffres a hounir deuant vous. sire fait ele vous en
not him suffer to shame before you lord says she you thereof
deues estre sires car vous laues desraisnie. ne ia se dieu
ought be lord for you her-have vindicated nor ever if God
plaist ne men entremetrai sor vous. Mais quanques vous
please not me-thereof shall-meddle over you But whatever you

en voldrois faire iel tenrai. Dame fait il sil se veut
thereof will-wish to-do I-it shall-hold Lady says he if-he himself wishes
metre en vostre merci ie vous lo bien que vous len
to-put in your mercy I you counsel well that you him-thereof
prenes sans plus faire. Et ele dist que si fera ele volentiers.
take without more doing And she says that so will-do she willingly
& segurades si met del tout & mesire Gauuain li dist.
and Segurades so puts of-the whole and my-lord Gawain to-her says
Dame ne dites mie que ie naie fait de la bataille tant
Lady not say at-all that I not-have done of the battle as-much
com ie doi. Car sil nest a vostre gre. ie sui pres que plus
as I ought For if-it not-is to your liking I am ready that more
en fache. Chertes sire fait ele moult plus en aues fait
thereof I-do Certainly lord says she much more thereof have-you done
que ie ne poroie deseruir & ie men tieng a bien paie.
than I — could deserve and I myself-thereof hold for well paid
Atant se lieue mesire Gauuain & hector & li senescaus
Thereupon himself rises my-lord Gawain and Hector and the seneschal
prenent segurades si lenmainent au chastel isnelement & la
take Segurades so him-lead-away to-the castle swiftly and the
dame vait apres corant. qui si est lie que de nul anui que
lady goes after running who so is glad that of any trouble that
ele ait eu ne li souient. & grant partie du peuple
she may-have had not to-her it-remembers and great part of-the people
cort apres por veoir que len fera de segurades. si en
runs after for to-see what one will-do with Segurades so thereof
remaint moult petit en la place auoec monseignor Gauuain.
remains very little in the place with my-lord Gawain

Gawain Vanishes

L

Seeing himself forgotten, Gawain rides into the forest, where he defeats Tanaguin, Segurades' nephew, who meant to take him weary, and sends him to the lady's prison. The lady, finding her knight gone, turns back in grief, and Hector and more than sixty riders search the forest in vain. A youth of the country, who held Gawain's horse, follows him and begs him to lodge in his house by the Severn, where none can find him. The lady swears she will not rest until she learns who the knight was; she sets out for Arthur's court with Segurades, Hector and the dwarf Groadain, whom she will drag at her palfrey's tail through every town for the shame he spoke.

Illuec estoit .j. vallet du pais moult biax & moult
There was a youth of-the country very fair and very
preus. qui le cheual monseignor Gauuain tenoit si li
valiant who the horse (of-)my-lord Gawain held so to-him
amaine & le aide a monter. Et quant mesire Gauuain
brings and him helps to mount And when my-lord Gawain
voit que la dame & lautre gent sen vont faisant
sees that the lady and the-other people themselves-thence go making
ioie si seit bien que oublie lont. si sen torne
joy so knows-he well that forgotten him-they-have so himself-thence turns
en la forest qui estoit a mains de .ij. archies loins de
into the forest which was at less than two bowshots far from
la plache. Et li valles li dist. sire cha sont li autre.
the place And the youth to-him says lord here are the others
& mesire Gauuain li dist. amis atendes me chi. que
and my-lord Gawain to-him says friend wait-for me here for
iai a faire en chest bois. ne ie ne reuenrai se par chi
I-have to do in this wood nor I not shall-return except by here
non. lors sen part. & li valles latent qui quide
not then himself-thence parts-he and the youth him-awaits who thinks

quil voist el bois por autre besoig ne que il ni
that-he go into-the wood for other need nor that he not-there
ait. Et quant il voit quil ne reuient si fiert apres
has And when he sees that-he not comes-back so strikes-he after
des esperons tous les esclos que il troeue. tant quil a
with-the spurs all the tracks that he finds so-long that-he has
bien ale demie lieue galesse. Et lors esgarde el fons
well gone half league Welsh And then looks-he into-the bottom
dun val & voit monseignor Gauuain qui se combat a
of-a vale and sees my-lord Gawain who himself fights with
.j. cheualier arme. si la tant batu del hiaume au
a knight armed so him-has so-much beaten with-the helm of-the
cheualier meisme quil la tout couert de sanc. & quil
knight himself that-he him-has all covered with blood and that-he
crie merci comme chil qui mais ne puet. Et mesire
cries mercy as that-one who more not can And my-lord
Gauuain li fait fianchier quil se metra en la merci &
Gawain him makes pledge that-he himself will-put in the mercy and
en la prison la dame de roestoc de par lui. & li
in the prison (of-)the lady of roestoc on behalf-of him and to-her
contera comment il a este conquis & chil li fianche.
will-tell how he has been conquered and that-one to-him pledges
Et puis a prins son hiaume & met sespee ens el
And then has-he taken his helm and puts his-sword in in-the
feure si sen torne grant aleure. Et quant li valles
sheath so himself-thence turns great pace And when the youth
le voit venir si se fiche el bois quil ne le voie.
him sees come so himself thrusts into-the wood so-that-he not him see
& li cheualiers conquis sen passe outre & tient le
and the knight conquered himself-thence passes beyond and holds the
droite voie a roestoc. & la dame qui sen aloit apres
straight way to roestoc and the lady who herself-thence went after

son prison ot ataint cheus qui lenmenoient. & hector si
her prisoner had overtaken those who him-led-away and Hector so
le regarde & li dist. Dame ou est uostre cheualiers.
her looks-at and to-her says Lady where is your knight
& ele regarde si nel voit point. ha! lasse fait ele com
and she looks so not-him sees anywhere ah alas says she how
sui hounie que si preudomme ai oublie. lors torne ariere
am-I shamed that so worthy-man have-I forgotten then turns-she back
grant aleure & seriant & cheualier asses auoeques lui.
great pace and sergeants and knights enough with her
Et ele encontre cheus qui vienent apres si leur demande
And she meets those who come after so of-them asks
noueles del cheualier qui combatus sestoit por li. & il
news of-the knight who fought had-himself for her and they
li dient quil sen estoit ales. Ales lasse caitiue fait
to-her say that-he himself-thence was gone Gone alas wretch says
ele. lors fiert lun puing en lautre & fait tant grant
she then strikes-she the-one fist on the-other and makes as great
duel comme ele puet grignor. lors sen uient apres
grief as she can greater then herself-thence comes-she after
hector & apres cheus qui segurades mainent si lor conte
Hector and after those who Segurades lead so to-them tells
son grant anui. & dist que iamais naura ioie deuant
her great trouble and says that ever-more not-will-she-have joy before
quele uoie le cheualier. lors saut hectors en .j. cheual &
that-she see the knight then leaps Hector onto a horse and
seriant & cheualier auoeques lui por monseignor Gauuain
sergeants and knights with him for my-lord Gawain
aler querre. & quant li cheualiers conquis entre en la
to-go seek and when the knight conquered enters into the

court. son hiaume en sa main si blechies com il estoit.
court his helm in his hand so hurt as he was
si descent & vient deuant la dame. si saienoille & dist.
so dismounts-he and comes before the lady so himself-kneels and says
Dame ie sui vostre prisons. de par chelui qui conquist
Lady I am your prisoner on behalf-of that-one who conquered
orains mon oncle segurades. Et quant segurades loit si
just-now my uncle Segurades And when Segurades it-hears so
oeure les iex & voit que chest tanagues ses nies. lors
opens-he the eyes and sees that this-is Tanaguin his nephew then
li demande hector comment il auoit este conquis. Certes
of-him asks Hector how he had been conquered Certainly
fait il voirs fu que quant ie vi quil ot conquis mon
says he true was-it that when I saw that-he had conquered my
oncle. si mapensai que ie men iroie au deuant de
uncle so bethought-I-myself that I myself-thence would-go to-the front of
lui en chele forest ou il sestoit mis. si le conquerroie
him into that forest where he himself-was put so him would-conquer
legierement. Car il estoit las & uains. si lassailli &
lightly For he was weary and faint so him-assailed-I and
pechoiai ma lanche sor li. & trais ma espee si li
broke my lance upon him and drew my sword so to-him
courus sus. & il ne deigna onques la soie traire. Ains
ran upon and he not deigned ever the his to-draw Rather
me sacha mon hiaume de ma teste si men conrea ensi
me pulled-he my helm from my head so me-thereof arrayed thus
comme vous uees. Et me fist fianchier que ie de par li
as you see And me made pledge that I on behalf-of him
en la prison madame me meteroie. Et quant la dame loit
into the prison (of-)my-lady me would-put And when the lady it-hears
si se saigne. & dist. ha! lasse com sui morte. qui par
so herself crosses and says ah alas how am-I dead who by

ma grant mesauenture ai perdu chelui qui ioie & honor
my great mishap have lost that-one who joy and honor
mauoit rendue. Et tanagues respont que il ne seroit mie
me-had rendered And Tanaguin answers that he not would-be at-all
legierement troues. car moult sen va grant aleure. &
lightly found for much himself-thence goes great pace and
toutes uoies point hectors apres. & auoec lui plus de .lx.
all ways spurs Hector after and with him more than sixty
Et li valles qui monseignor Gauuain auoit sieui cheualche
And the youth who my-lord Gawain had followed rides
tant que il la ataint si li dist. Sire sire boine nuit
so-long that he him-has overtaken so to-him says Lord lord good night
vous doinst diex. Car hui en cest ior aues vous eu asses
you may-give God For today on this day have you had enough
paine & plus honor. & mesire Gauuain li rent son
pain and more honor and my-lord Gawain to-him returns his
salu si li demande qui il est. sire fait il ie sui li
greeting so of-him asks who he is lord says he I am the
valles qui or ains vous rendi vostre cheual. Si sui nes
youth who now just you rendered your horse So am-I born
de cest pais. dun mien castel qui est cha auant que len
of this country of-a my castle which is here ahead which one
apele taningues. si vous pri por dieu & por vous aaisier.
calls taningues so you beg-I for God and for you to-ease
que vous herbergies o moi anuit mais. Et tant sil vous
that you lodge with me tonight more And so-long if-it you
plaist que vos plaies soient garies. Et il mest auis que
pleases that your wounds be healed And it to-me-is opinion that
del retorner ariere la dont nous venons naues vous talent.
of-the returning back there whence we come not-have you desire
& ie vous herbergerai el plus priue lieu & el plus
and I you shall-lodge in-the most private place and in-the most

aaisie que vous onques veissies. & vous aues de repos
comfortable that you ever saw and you have of rest
moult grant mestier. Amis fait mesire Gauuain grans mercis.
very great need Friend says my-lord Gawain great thanks
Mais il nest mie encore tans de herbergier a homme
But it not-is at-all yet time of lodging for man
qui tant a a faire comme iai. ne ie nai mie plaies
who so-much has to do as I-have nor I not-have at-all wounds
seiournans. & mes cheuaus est dieu merci & fors & fres
requiring-rest and my horse is God thanks both strong and fresh
si porai cheualchier encore moult longuement. Sire fait
so shall-be-able-I ride yet very long Lord says
li valles li liex la ou ie vous herbergerai nest mie pres
the youth the place there where I you shall-lodge not-is at-all near
de chi. ains ert anchois noire nuis que nous i
from here rather will-it-be sooner black night than-that we there
soions venu. & ie vous i menrai si a droit comme se la
be come and I you there shall-lead so at right as if the
ligne i estoit tendue sans tenir voie. ne ia par homme
line there were stretched without keeping way nor ever by man
qui vous sieue ni seres troues ne en voie ne en
who you follow not-there will-you-be found neither on way nor in
ostel. & ie vous pri sire que vous i vengies. Car moult
lodging and I you beg lord that you there come For much
i aurai grant honor suns si preudom com vous estes
there shall-have-I great honor if-a so worthy-man as you are
se herberge o moi. & mesire Gauuain li otrie se
himself lodges with me and my-lord Gawain to-him grants if
il vienent la de tele eure que il soit tans de herbergier.
they come there at such hour that it be time of lodging

Et li valles lenmaine parmi le bois au trauers dunes
And the youth him-leads through the wood at-the crosswise of-some
gastines. Comme chil qui les fores sauoit miex que nus.
wastelands As that-one who the forests knew better than any
Tant ont cheualchie quil vienent grant pieche de
So-long have-they ridden that-they come great while of
nuit a vne soie maison fort. qui estoit a .ij. lieues de
night to a his house strong which was at two leagues from
taningues sor la riuiere de sauuerne. si estoit vne des miex
taningues upon the river of severn so was-it one of-the best
seans maisons del monde. & si fors comme nule maisons
situated houses of-the world and as strong as any house
puet estre plus de bois & diaue Et quant il aprochent
can be more of wood and of-water And when they approach
si li dist li valles. sire ma maisons est chi pres qui
so to-him says the youth lord my house is here near which
moult est aaisie & loing de gent. & il est anuit mais
very is comfortable and far from people and it is tonight more
tans de herbergier. Et sachies quil nest hom ne feme
time of lodging And know that-there not-is man nor woman
crestiene tant com vous i ualdrois cheler qui ia vous
Christian so-long as you there will-wish to-conceal who ever you
i sache. Et il respont quil le quide a si sage &
there may-know And he answers that-he him thinks for so wise and
a tant cortois que il remandra mais anuit. Et li valles
for so courteous that he will-remain more tonight And the youth
len merchie qui trop en a grant ioie. Et hector
him-thereof thanks who too-much thereof has great joy And Hector
& si compaignon cheualchent a esperons tant quil
and his companions ride at spurs so-long that-they
aproche de la nuit. & quil ont tous les esclos perdus.
approach to the night and that-they have all the tracks lost

si sen retornent sans enseignes aporter. Et treuuent
so themselves-thence return without tokens to-bring And find
la dame si corechie comme ele puet plus & quant ele
the lady so angered as she can most and when she
oit que nules noueles nen aportent. si dist que iamais
hears that any news not-thereof they-bring so says-she that ever-more
ioie naura qui cestui duel li face oublier tant que
joy not-will-she-have which this grief to-her make forget until that
ele sache qui li cheualiers est. & dist ha! lasse comme
she may-know who the knight is and says ah alas how
sui engingnie qui le plus preudome del monde auoie ne
am-I tricked who the most worthy-man of-the world had nor
onques amor ne li fis ne compaignie. biaus sire diex
ever love not to-him did-I nor company fair Lord God
qui puet il estre. tant volentiers le vaudroie ore sauoir.
who can he be so willingly it would-wish-I now to-know
Moult se demente la dame del cheualier & li
Much herself laments the lady for-the knight and the
senescaus li dist. Chertes dame bien poes veoir que
seneschal to-her says Certainly lady well can-you see that
il estoit preudom. que onques de chose que il oist ne
he was worthy for ever at thing that he heard not
sesbahi. si li dist groadains li nains tant de
himself-was-amazed so to-him said Groadain the dwarf so-much of
vilonie que onques tant nen fu dite a cheualier. si com
villainy that ever so-much not-thereof was said to knight so as
chil le mont dit qui en sa compaignie vindrent. Et puis
that-one it me-has said who in his company came And since
quil fu hui matin leues li oi ie dire uilounie asses. O
that-he was today morning risen to-him heard I say villainy enough Oh
fait la dame por ce lai ie perdu. Mais si mait li
says the lady for this him-have I lost But so me-may-help the

cors dieu. ien prendrai asses cruel ueniance. Maintenant
body (of-)God I-thereof shall-take enough cruel vengeance At-once
commande que li nains soit prins. si le baille on au
commands-she that the dwarf be taken so him hands one to-the
senescal sor quanques il a. Et lendemain fist segurades son
seneschal upon whatever he has And the-next-day did Segurades his
homage & tout chil qui de lui tenoient terre. Apres dist
homage and all those who from him held land After says
la dame que ele ne poroit pas estre lie se ele ne sauoit la
the lady that she not could at-all be glad if she not knew the
uerite del cheualier. & dist quele sest porpensee. & veut
truth of-the knight and says that-she herself-is bethought and wishes
aler a la court le roi artu por oir de li enseignes. Car
to-go to the court (of-)the king Arthur for to-hear of him tokens For
la repairent tout li boin cheualier. Si i venrois vous fait
there resort all the good knights So there will-come you says
ele a segurades & vostre mire. car nous irons a petites
she to Segurades and your physician for we shall-go by little
iournees. & vous fait ele a hector & mes senescaus &
days-journeys and you says she to Hector and my seneschal and
ma cousine & groadains li nains. Et si sache que por
my cousin and Groadain the dwarf And so let-him-know that for
la honte quil dist au cheualier en prendrai ie ueniance.
the shame that-he said to-the knight thereof shall-take I vengeance
Que a toutes gens que ie enconterai & a lentree de
For to all people whom I shall-meet and at the-entrance of
toutes les viles ou ie venrai. li ferai lijer .j. cauestre
all the towns where I shall-come to-him shall-I-have tied a halter
au col & a la coe de mon palefroi si le trainerai apres
at-the neck and to the tail of my palfrey so him shall-drag after
moi. Ne ia pour lui napeticherai maleure. Et se ie nen
me Nor ever for him not-shall-lessen-I my-ill-hour And if I not-thereof

oi noueles a la court le roi artu. ie le querrai par
hear news at the court (of-)the king Arthur I him shall-seek through
toutes terres tant que ie le trouerai. & partout venra li
all lands until that I him shall-find and everywhere will-come the
nains ensi comme iai dit. Ensi parole la dame de son
dwarf thus as I-have said Thus speaks the lady of her
oire. & li nains a moult grant paor. Mais as autres nen
journey and the dwarf has very great fear But to-the others not-it
poise gaires. Ains lor tarde moult quele mueue. Car moult
grieves much Rather to-them is-late much that-she set-out For much
lor tardent les noueles a oir del cheualier qui il est. &
to-them is-late the news to hear of-the knight who he is and
segurades le desire plus a veoir que tout li autre. & ele
Segurades him desires more to see than all the others and she
muet lendemain sans plus atendre a grant compaignie de
sets-out the-next-day without more waiting with great company of
gent. & enquiert noueles du cheualier partout la ou
people and inquires news of-the knight everywhere there where
ele vient. Mais ore se taist li contes de lui & de sa
she comes But now itself is-silent the tale of her and of her
compaignie chi endroit si retorne a monseignor Gauuain.
company here in-place so returns to my-lord Gawain

Helain of Taningues

LI

The youth's sister heals Gawain's wounds. The youth tells Gawain that twelve years ago he dreamed that the fairest knight in the world took him by the nose and promised to make him knight, saying he was Gawain, and that he has sought him five times at Arthur's court. Gawain agrees to knight him in the morning; the youth keeps vigil, and Gawain, made whole by the damsel's ointment, knights Helain of Taningues after mass and tells him his name. Helain asks for the arms Gawain brought from Roestoc in exchange for his own. Gawain gives the damsel the lady's belt and clasp, crosses the Severn into North Wales toward Galehaut's land, and Helain finds the Lady of Roestoc gone.

Or dist li contes que mesire Gauuain & li valles qui
Now says the tale that my-lord Gawain and the youth who
lenmaine sont a lostel venu. Et li valles la desarme &
him-leads are to the-lodging come And the youth him disarms and
si laaise de toutes les choses quil couient a cheualier las
so him-eases with all the things that-it befits to knight weary
& naure. li valles auoit vne seror moult bele qui pucele
and wounded the youth had a sister very fair who maiden
estoit. si sauoit autant de plaies garir comme toutes cheles
was so knew-she as-much of wounds healing as all those
del monde. si regarde les plaies monseignor Gauuain moult
of-the world so looks-at-she the wounds (of-)my-lord Gawain very
doucement. & dist quil nauoit plaie nule qui moult legiere
gently and says that-he not-had wound any which very light
ne soit a garir. si les atorne si bien & si bel que moult
not be to heal so them dresses-she so well and so fairly that much
li asouage. Quant vint apres souper li ostes araisoune
to-him it-soothes When came after supper the host addresses
monseignor Gauuain & dist. sire ie sui moult lies de che
my-lord Gawain and says lord I am very glad of this

que diex vous a doune chaiens herbergier. Car vous estes
that God you has given in-here to-lodge For you are
li plus preudons de tous les autres. & ie vous prieroie
the most worthy-man of all the others and I you would-beg
volentiers pour dieu que vous me conseillisies dun mien
willingly for God that you me should-counsel of-a my
affaire. Car ie sui grans varles & riches si me blasme mes
affair For I am big youth and rich so me blames my
lignages de che que ie ne sui cheualiers. Et madame meisme
lineage for this that I not am knight And my-lady herself
de roestoc men blasme qui hom ie sui. Et si mauint
of roestoc me-thereof blames whose man I am And so to-me-happened
plus a de .xij. ans que ie me gisoie en mon lit. si vint
more has-it than twelve years that I me lay in my bed so came
deuant moi li plus biaus cheualiers del monde. si mestoit
before me the most fair knight of-the world so me-was
auis quil me tenoit par le neis. & ie li disoie ha sire
opinion that-he me held by the nose and I to-him said ah lord
cheualiers comme aues ore fait grant vasselage qui vous
knight how have-you now done great prowess who you
prenes a .j. enfant. & me prenoit si me disoit or ne vous
take to a child and me took-he so me said-he now not you
caut que chertes iel vous amenderai moult hautement. car
care for certainly I-it you shall-amend very highly for
ie vous ferai cheualier. & ie li demandoie qui estes
I you shall-make knight and I of-him asked who are
vous sire qui me ferois cheualier. Ie sui fait il Gauuain li
you lord who me will-make knight I am says he Gawain the
nies au roi artu. ha sire faisoie ie bien soies vous venu.
nephew of-the king Arthur ah lord said I well be you come

Atant mesueillai si dis a ma meire mon auision. &
Thereupon I-awoke so told-I to my mother my vision and
ele en fu moult lie. si me fist creanter que ie ne seroie
she thereof was very glad so me made promise that I not would-be
cheualiers se il ne le me faisoit estre. Et iai puis este
knight if he not it me made be And I-have since been
bien .v. fois a le court le roi artu. ne onques ne le
well five times at the court (of-)the king Arthur nor ever not him
trouai & na pas tier ior que ie en ving si me dist
found and not-has at-all third day that I thence came so me told
len que il queroit .j. merueillous cheualier soi vintisme de
one that he sought a marvelous knight himself twentieth of
compaignons. ne ie ne puis auoir respit de ma dame que
companions nor I not can have respite from my lady that
ie ne soie cheualiers. si vous voldroie proier pour dieu que
I not may-be knight so you would-wish-I to-beg for God that
vous cheualier me voeillies faire. Car a plus preudomme ne
you knight me should-wish to-make For to more worthy-man not
me poroie ie complaindre & mesire Gauuain respont que
me could I complain and my-lord Gawain answers that
si fera il moult volentiers. Mais fait il vous estes moult
so will-do he very willingly But says he you are very
riches hom. si quit que vous ne voldrois estre cheualiers en
rich man so think-I that you not would-wish to-be knight in
si grant haste. Ie ne demouroie chaiens por nul plait tant
so great haste I not would-stay in-here for any plea until
que ie i fusse seus. Car iai trop grant affaire empris si
that I there were alone For I-have too great affair undertaken so
me couient haster. sire fait il si mait diex ie ne demant
me behooves to-hasten lord says he so me-may-help God I not ask
autre compaignie de vous. Et nous auons chaiens quanque
other company than you And we have in-here whatever

mestier nous est la capele & le chapelain. & armes ai
need to-us is the chapel and the chaplain and arms have
ie toutes prestes. si me sera plus grans comfors de ce
I all ready so to-me will-be more great comfort from this
que vous maurois fait cheualier que se ie lestoie outre
that you me-will-have made knight than if I it-were beyond
mon gre. Car de vostre main ne puet nus prendre colee
my will For from your hand not can anyone take accolade
que preudom ne fust. Or soit dont fait mesire Gauuain
that worthy-man not should-be Now be-it then says my-lord Gawain
el non de dieu. Car le matin men couenra aillors aler.
in-the name of God For the morning me-thence will-behoove elsewhere to-go
Atant commande le vallet aler veillier. & chil si fist
Thereupon commands-be the youth to-go keep-vigil and that-one so did
toute nuit. Car moult auoit grant ioie de lonor que diex
all night For much had-he great joy of the-honor that God
li auoit enuoie si prestement. la nuit fu mesire Gauuain
to-him had sent so promptly the night was my-lord Gawain
herbergies com il li plot. Car tant fu la vaillans
lodged as it to-him pleased For so-much was the worthy
damoisele deuant li quil sendormi. Et quant vint al
damsel before him that-he fell-asleep And when came at-the
matin si fu si alegies de ses plaies & de ses blecheures
morning so was-he so relieved of his wounds and of his bruises
que nule nen senti se il ne les veist. si se leua si
that any not-thereof felt-he if he not them might-see so himself rose so
matin com il vit le iour. & la damoisele fu aparellie qui de
early as he saw the day and the damsel was ready who with
trop riche oignement le raoint. Apres alerent oir messe.
too rich ointment him anointed-again After went-they hear mass
& apres a fait mesire Gauuain le vallet cheualier. si li
and after has made my-lord Gawain the youth knight so to-him

chaint lespee. & li caucha le destre esperon si com il
girds the-sword and to-him put-on the right spur so as it
estoit costume. Mais anchois li demande son non. & il
was custom But before of-him asks-he his name and he
dist quil auoit non helains de taningues. Quant il li ot
said that-he had name Helain of taningues When he to-him had
doune lordere de cheualerie si comme droiture le requerroit
given the-order of chivalry so as righteousness it required
& il orent oi le seruiche si demanda mesire Gauuain ses
and they had heard the service so asked my-lord Gawain his
armes. Et li cheualiers nouiaus li requiert que il remaigne
arms And the knight new him requires that he remain
tant quil soit .j. poi respasses. Mais il nel veut otroier.
so-long that-he be a little recovered But he not-it wishes to-grant
Apres li prie tant quil remaint iusquapres mangier. &
After him begs-he so-much that-he remains up-to-after eating and
quant il ont mengie si ni a plus proiere mestier. &
when they have eaten so not-there has more prayer use and
il demande ses armes por aler ent. & li nouiaus cheualiers
he asks his arms for to-go thence and the new knight
vient a lui si li dist. Sire sire vous en irois. si vous
comes to him so to-him says Lord lord you thence will-go so you
proi por dieu que vous me dites vostre non sil vous vient
beg-I for God that you me tell your name if-it you comes
a plaisir. & que ie sace dire a madame quant ie le
to pleasure and that I know-how to-tell to my-lady when I her
verrai & a autres qui maura fait cheualier. si en seroit
shall-see and to others who me-will-have made knight so thereof would-be
mes cuers plus a aise. Tout seurement dites fait il a tous
my heart more at ease All surely say says he to all
cheus qui le vous demanderont. que gauuains le nies le
those who it you will-ask that Gawain the nephew (of-)the

roi artu vous a fait cheualier. Et quant helains lentent. si
king Arthur you has made knight And when Helain it-hears so
a teil ioie que grignor ne puet auoir. Et dist que tous
has-he such joy that greater not can-be have And says that all
ses desirs li a diex done a vne fie. Ne ore na il mie
his desires to-him has God given at one time Nor now not-has he at-all
paor que il preudom ne soit. quant il est cheualier de la
fear that he worthy-man — be since he is knight from the
main au plus preudome del monde. puis li a dit.
hand of-the most worthy-man of-the world then to-him has-he said
sire ie sai bien que ie ne vous retenroie mie legierement.
lord I know well that I not you would-retain at-all lightly
ce poise moi. Mais por dieu le premier don que ie vous
this grieves me But for God the first gift that I you
requerai apres ma cheualerie me dounes. cest que vous
shall-require after my chivalry me give this-is that you
me laissies les armes que vous aues aportees de roestoc.
me leave the arms that you have brought from roestoc
& vous emportes les moies qui moult sont boines &
and you carry-away the mine which very are good and
beles. si me tesmoigneront les voes que cheualier maues
fair so me will-witness the yours that knight me-have-you
fait. ne vous ne me pories riens doner que ie amasse
made nor you not me could anything give that I would-love
tant. Et mesire Gauuain li otrie moult volentiers.
so-much And my-lord Gawain to-him grants very willingly

Lors furent aportees les armes helain. si estoit li
Then were brought the arms (of-)Helain so was the
haubers .j. des millors que mesire Gauuain eust onques
hauberk one of-the best that my-lord Gawain had ever
veu. & li escus tous blans comme nois. si comme a
seen and the shield all white as snow so as at

chel tans estoit coustume. que cheualiers nouiax portoit
that time was custom that knights new bore
escu dun seul taint le premier an que il lestoit. & li
shield of-a single tint the first year that they it-were and the
heaumes estoit & boins & biax. si fu mesire Gauuain
helm was both good and fair so was my-lord Gawain
moult bien armes des armes & moult li sistrent
very well armed with-the arms and much to-him suited
bien. Et il ot sa coroie ostee & son fermal que la dame
well And he had his belt removed and his clasp which the lady
de roestoc li auoit donee. & dist a la damoisele. tenes
of roestoc to-him had given and says to the damsel take
che que madame de roestoc me douna par boine druerie.
this that my-lady of roestoc me gave by good love-token
& ie par boine druerie le vous doing. & ele la prent &
and I by good love-token it you give and she it takes and
moult len merchie. lors a demande son cheual. si
much him-thereof thanks then has-he asked-for his horse so
monte & les commande a dieu. Et dist a la pucele que
mounts and them commends to God And says to the maiden that
bien sache ele quil est ses cheualiers & sera toute sa
well may-know she that-he is her knight and will-be all his
vie & ele en a moult grant ioie. lors fu aparellies vns
life and she thereof has very great joy then was made-ready a
cheuax si monte helains por monseignor Gauuain conuoier.
horse so mounts Helain for my-lord Gawain to-escort
& quant il lot grant pieche conuoie. si passa mesire
and when he him-had great while escorted so passed my-lord
Gauuain sauuerne por aler parmi la terre de norgales. si
Gawain severn for to-go through the land of north-wales so
comme helains li dist que la droite voie i estoit por
as Helain to-him said that the straight way there was for

aler en la terre galahot. & lors se part helains de
to-go into the land (of-)Galehaut and then himself parts Helain from
lui si sentrecommandent a dieu. si sen repaire helains
him so commend-each-other to God so himself-thence returns Helain
a son ostel. & mande ses amis & ses voisins por faire
to his lodging and sends-for his friends and his neighbors for to-make
feste de sonor. si lor conte comment diex li a tous
feast of his-honor so to-them tells how God to-him has all
ses ioies enuoies & que chest mesire Gauuain. En teil ioie
his joys sent and that this-is my-lord Gawain In such joy
& en teil feste demorerent .ij. iors ensamble. Au tiers ior
and in such feast remained-they two days together At-the third day
sen va helains a roestoc. mais il ni treuue mie
himself-thence goes Helain to roestoc but he not-there finds at-all
la dame. Ains li dient que ele sen va a la cort
the lady Rather to-him say-they that she herself-thence goes to the court
le roi artu. & est meue .ij. iors a. Et quant il loit
(of-)the king Arthur and is set-out two days ago And when he it-hears
si senretorne a taningues son castel. Mais ore se taist
so himself-thence-returns to taningues his castle But now itself is-silent
li contes vn poi a parler de lui. & retorne a la dame
the tale a little to speak of him and returns to the lady
de roestoc. qui vait querre le cheualier qui se combati
of roestoc who goes to-seek the knight who himself fought
por lui a segurades. Qui dist que iamais naura ioie
for her with Segurades Who says that ever-more not-will-she-have joy
tant que ele laura troue. & quele saura son non.
until that she him-will-have found and that-she will-know his name

The Dwarf's Niece

LII

The Lady of Roestoc comes to Arthur at Quimper-Corentin with Groadain the dwarf, seeking the knight who fought Segurades for her and rode off unthanked after the dwarf had reviled him; Arthur guesses it may be Gawain. The dwarf, whom the lady blames, begs the queen's help. The lady will pardon him only if his niece sends her friend Hector on the quest, and the niece swears she never will. The queen tricks them both by asking each for a gift, so that the lady must free the dwarf and the damsel must beg Hector to go. The damsel leaves in a fury, refusing on her oath, and Hector, learning the cause from the dwarf, resolves to plead with her for leave to go.

Or dist li contes chi briefment que la dame de roestoc
Now says the tale here briefly that the lady of roestoc
sen vait a la cort le roi artu entre lui & sa
herself-thence goes to the court (of-)the king Arthur between her and her
compaignie. sa tant cheualchie que ele a troue le roi artu
company so-has so-long ridden that she has found the king Arthur
a quincprecorentin. si la rechut li rois & la roine a moult
at quimper-corentin so her received the king and the queen with very
grant ioie & moult se painent de li honerer. Car moult
great joy and much themselves take-pains of her honoring For very
estoit haute feme. la nuit apres souper. furent entre soi & la
was-she high woman the night after supper were between herself and the
roine assis sor vne couche & le roi aussi. si li demandent
queen seated upon a couch and the king also so of-her ask
quel besoig ele auoit eue qui si loig estoit a cort venue. Et
what need she had had who so far was to court come And
ele lor en dist la verite. sire fait ele chis cheualiers que
she to-them thereof told the truth lord says she this knight whom
vous vees la me guerroioit. si li monstre segurades &
you see there me warred so to-him shows-she Segurades and

li deuise les couenenches. lautrier fait ele sire si mamena
to-him describes the covenants the-other-day says she lord so me-brought
groadains li nains chis nains que vous uees la .j. cheualier a
Groadain the dwarf this dwarf whom you see there a knight to
qui il dist toutes les hontes que len poroit a home dire. &
whom he said all the shames that one could to man say and
chil cheualiers se combati a segurades por moi tant que il
that knight himself fought with Segurades for me so-long that he
loutra. & por che oi ie mes couenenches. Quant ie le ui
him-overcame and for this had I my covenants When I him saw
conquis si oi tel ioie que tout en oubliai le cheualier qui
conquered so had-I such joy that all thereof I-forgot the knight who
conquis lauoit. & il sen ala si que nus de mes hommes
conquered him-had and he himself-thence went so that anyone of my men
ne sot ou il ala. si sai bien que ce fu por le honte que
not knew where he went so know-I well that this was for the shame that
li nains li dist. si en estoie cha uenue por oir aucunes
the dwarf to-him said so thereof was-I here come for to-hear some
enseignes de lui. Car chaiens repairent tout li preudome.
tokens of him For in-here resort all the worthy-men
Lors li demande li roine lestre & le couigne du
Then of-her asks the queen the-being and the condition of-the
cheualier & son samblant. & quant ele li a dit. si li
knight and his semblance and when she to-her has told so to-her
dist li rois que il ne seit qui il puet estre se che nest mesire
says the king that he not knows who he can be if this not-is my-lord
Gauuain. Car il est de chaiens partis moult grant piece a.
Gawain For he is from in-here parted very great while ago
& quiert .j. des plus preudomes del monde soi vintisme
and seeks one of-the most worthy-men of-the world himself twentieth
de cheualiers. Diex aie dame fait ele se che est mesire
of knights God help lady says she if this is my-lord

Gauuain dont sui ie hounie. que onques honor ne li fis.
Gawain then am I shamed for ever honor not to-him did-I
Et ie voldroie aussi volentiers estre morte por la honte que
And I would-wish as willingly to-be dead for the shame that
ie en auroie. Ne li rois ne la roine ne len seiuent de
I thereof would-have Nor the king nor the queen not her-thereof know to
plus asener. si en laissent la parole atant. si sen vait
more inform so thereof leave-they the word thereupon so herself-thence goes
la dame & sa compaignie a son ostel por reposer car moult
the lady and her company to her lodging for to-rest for very
ert lasse. Et groadains li nains prie au senescal a qui
was-she weary And Groadain the dwarf begs to-the seneschal in whose
il est en garde. que il li face tant que compaignie li
he is in keeping that he for-him do so-much that company to-him
tiegne tant que il parle a la roine. & il si fait car moult
he-keep until that he speak to the queen and he so does for very
estoit preudom & sages. Atant vienent andoi deuant la
was-he worthy and wise Thereupon come both before the
roine. si li crie li nains merci & dist. ha dame secoures
queen so to-her cries the dwarf mercy and says ah lady succor
moi. Car en vous est tous li secors & li consaus. & la
me For in you is all the succor and the counsel and the
roine li demande de quoi. Dame fait il ie sui li nains
queen of-him asks of what Lady says he I am the dwarf
qui menai a madame de roestoc le cheualier qui sa bataille
who led to my-lady of roestoc the knight who her battle
li uenqui. si quidai sans faille que che fust li plus couars
for-her won so thought-I without fail that this were the most cowardly
cheualiers del monde. si le ramprousnai por le samblant
knight of-the world so him reviled-I for the semblance
que il faisoit de maluaistie. Or si dist madame que ele la
that he made of wickedness Now so says my-lady that she him-has

perdu par moi. si dist quele misme lira tant querre
lost through me so says that-she herself him-will-go so-long seek
par toutes terres que ele le trouera. Et si dist que ele
through all lands until-that she him will-find And so says that she
me menra auoeques li. & a tous cheus que ele trouera me
me will-lead with her and to all those whom she will-find me
fera esgarder. que ie aurai .j. cauestre au col lije & a
will-make look-at so-that I shall-have a halter at-the neck tied and to
la coe de son palefroi. & autresi a toutes les viles ou ele
the tail of her palfrey and likewise to all the towns where she
entera. Et ensi ma ele amene puis que ele mut de son
will-enter And thus me-has she led since that she set-out from her
pais. & ie seroie mors se ele me menoit plus ensi. si vous
country and I would-be dead if she me led more thus so you
pri dame por dieu que vos i metes conseil. Car toutes uoies
beg-I lady for God that you there put counsel For all ways
sui ie ientiex hom combien que ie soie chaitis de cors. &
am I noble man however-much that I be wretched of body and
la roine dist que si feroit ele. Et naies garde fait ele que
the queen says that so would-do she And not-have fear says she for
se ie puis vous serois deliures ains que vostre dame sen
if I can you will-be freed before that your lady herself-thence
aille de cest pais. Dame fait il grans mercis de dieu.
go from this country Lady says he great thanks from God
Atant sentornent a lostel entre li & le senescal.
Thereupon themselves-thence-turn to the-lodging between him and the seneschal
& lendemain reuient la dame veoir le roi & la roine. si
and the-next-day comes-back the lady to-see the king and the queen so
parolent ensamble longuement. & la roine li demande .j.
speak-they together long and the queen of-her asks a
don. & ele li otroie. vous maues done. & ie vous demant
gift and she to-her grants you me-have given and I you ask

que vous pardones au nain vostre maltalent. Dame fait ele
that you forgive to-the dwarf your ill-will Lady says she
ie ne hai mie le nain por soi. Mais il a vne pucele sa niece
I not hate at-all the dwarf for himself But he has a maiden his niece
& est ma cousine. si li proiai a mon grant besoig que ele
and she-is my cousin so her begged-I in my great need that she
laissast por moi combatre chel cheualier que vous uees la
should-let for me fight that knight whom you see there
qui ses amis est. Et ele dist que ele renoieroit anchois dieu.
who her friend is And she said that she would-deny sooner God
& ie le quidoie tant esmaier que ele enuoiast son ami en
and I her thought so-much to-dismay that she would-send her friend on
la queste de cel cheualier por son oncle deliurer. Car ie le
the quest of that knight for her uncle to-free For I her
corecheroie volentiers de la riens que ele plus aime. En non
would-anger willingly in the thing that she most loves In name
dieu fait la roine. se ele de chou faut a son oncle. dont
(of-)God says the queen if she in this fails to her uncle then
nest il nus qui hair ne len deust. lors apele la roine
not-is there anyone who to-hate not her-thereof ought then calls the queen
le nain si li dist. nains iai porcachie vostre deliurance
the dwarf so to-him says dwarf I-have contrived your freeing
se vostre niece veut tant faire por vous que ele enuoit son
if your niece wishes so-much to-do for you that she send her
ami querre le cheualier qui venqui la bataille. ne autre pais
friend to-seek the knight who won the battle nor other peace
ne puis ie trouer. Chertes dame fait il ie ne quit mie quele
not can I find Certainly lady says he I not think at-all that-she
le fache. Mais toutes voies lassaierai ie. lors vient li nains a
it do But all ways it-shall-try I then comes the dwarf to
sa nieche si li dist. bele nieche ie sui mors se vous ne me
his niece so to-her says fair niece I am dead if you not me

secoures. comment fait ele. se vous ne me prestes hector por
succor how says she if you not me lend Hector for
aler querre le cheualier qui conquist segurades. & se che
to-go to-seek the knight who conquered Segurades and if this
non madame me trainera apres li si com ele a commenchie
not my-lady me will-drag after her so as she has begun
tant quele laura troue. Et ele dist que ia diex ne li
so-long that-she him-will-have found And she says that ever God not her
ait se hectors i va par son congie ne par son boin. Et
may-help if Hector there goes by her leave nor by her will And
quant li nains lentent si a tel paor. que par .j. poi que il
when the dwarf it-hears so has-he such fear that by a little that he
ne se pasme. & vient a la roine & dist que nul conseil
not himself swoons and comes to the queen and says that any counsel
ni puet trouer. Dame fait chele de roestoc. Iel sauoie
not-there can-be find Lady says she of roestoc I-it knew
bien. chest la plus desloiax creature qui onques fust nee.
well this-is the most disloyal creature who ever was born
Or ne vous en caut fait la roine que ie li ferai
Now not you thereof care says the queen for I to-her shall-make
sa felounie comparer. lors li dist a conseil vous ne vous
her felony pay then to-her says-she in counsel you not you
mouerois demain. & anquenuit si dites a vostre maisnie que
will-move tomorrow and tonight so tell to your household that
ie vous ai moult proie de remanoir. & ie la decheurai si
I you have much begged to remain and I her shall-deceive so
belement comme vous orres. lors sen vient la dame a
fairly as you will-hear then herself-thence comes the lady to
son ostel & dist la nuit a sa maisnie si comme la roine
her lodging and says the night to her household so as the queen
li auoit dit. Mais ie ne remanrai mie fait ele. lendemain
to-her had said But I not shall-remain at-all says she the-next-day

reuient a la cort. & la roine li prie de ramenoir oiant
comes-back-she to the court and the queen her begs to remain in-bearing
toute sa gent. mais ele dist que ce ne puet estre. Atant
all her people but she says that this not can be Thereupon
se lieuent toutes & vont le roi veoir. & li rois lor
themselves rise all-the-women and go the king to-see and the king to-them
saut a lencontre si prent la dame de roestoc par la main &
leaps to the-meeting so takes the lady of roestoc by the hand and
la roine prent lamie hector si li dist. Se vous ne maidies
the queen takes the-beloved (of-)Hector so to-her says If you not me-help
vostre dame a engingnier. ie ne vous amerai iamais. Dame fait
your lady to trick I not you shall-love ever-more Lady says
ele comment. ele ma requis fait ele que ie ne li prie
she how she me-has required says she that I not to-her should-beg
pas por le nain mais si ferai. & ele quidera que ie li prieche
at-all for the dwarf but so shall-I-do and she will-think that I her beg
de remanoir. & ele ma dit que ele ne remanra pas se vous
to remain and she me-has said that she not will-remain at-all if you
ne remanes. & se ie vous demant .j. don que vous le me
not remain and if I you ask a gift that you it me
dounes. & ele lotriera apres qui quidera que ie le prieche de
give and she it-will-grant after who will-think that I her beg to
remanoir. Mais ie ferai tant que li nains sera deliures che
remain But I shall-do so-much that the dwarf will-be freed this
sachies vous. ha! dame fait la puchele com vous aues bien dit.
know you ah lady says the maiden how you have well said
Atant le laisse. & la roine vient a la dame de
Thereupon her leaves-she and the queen comes to the lady of
roestoc si li demande .j. don. Et ele li dist dame ne
roestoc so of-her asks a gift And she to-her says lady not
me demandes mie outrage. Car vees chi vne damoisele qui
me ask at-all outrage For see here a damsel who

moult a a faire en son pais. ne vous esmaies fait ele que
much has to do in her country not you dismay says she for
vous ne saues que ie voeil demander. & la dame dist quele
you not know what I wish to-ask and the lady says that-she
lotriera se la damoisele lotrie auant. & la roine le fait
it-will-grant if the damsel it-grants first and the queen it makes
otroier a la damoisele. & puis en prent la foi de lune
grant to the damsel and then thereof takes-she the faith of the-one
& de lautre. Saues fait ele a la dame que vous maues
and of the-other Know-you says she to the lady that you me-have
otroie. que li nains est deliures vers vous del maltalent
granted that the dwarf is freed toward you from-the ill-will
& de la haine & de che que vous li demandez por
and from the hatred and from this that you of-him ask for
le cheualier qui segurades conquist. Et vous fait ele a la
the knight who Segurades conquered And you says she to the
damoisele maues creante que vous proieres hector que il aille
damsel me-have promised that you will-beg Hector that he go
querre le cheualier. tant quil le truise. & tant ferois
seek the knight so-long that-he him find and so-much will-do
que il ira. Quant ele loit si est tant esbaie que ele ne
that he will-go When she it-hears so is-she so dismayed that she not
puet parler dune grant piece & tuit cil qui loient en
can speak for-a great while and all those who it-hear thereof
sunt lie. Mes sa dame de rohestoc en est liee sor tos &
are glad But her lady of roestoc thereof is glad above all and
quant la damoisele pot parler si li dist. ha! dame roine
when the damsel could speak so to-her says ah lady queen
chertes il na pas tant de bien en vous comme len
certainly there not-has at-all so-much of good in you as one
tesmoigne. & moult aues ore poi gaaignie en vne pucele
bears-witness and much have-you now little gained in a maiden

decheuoir. & neporquant decheue ne maues vous mie. que
deceiving and nevertheless deceived not me-have you at-all for
al ior ne mait diex que ie li proierai que il i aille.
to-the day not me-may-help God that I him shall-beg that he there go
Ne par les sains de chele capele ia nen sera proies de
Nor by the saints of that chapel ever not-thereof will-be-be begged by
moi. anchois me lairoie toute desmembrer. Chertes fait la
me sooner me would-let-I all dismember Certainly says the
roine ie croi bien. que dont ne series vous mie nieche au
queen I believe well that then not would-be you at-all niece to-the
nain se vous nesties plus felenesse dautre feme. Et bien
dwarf if you not-were more fierce than-other woman And well
sacies que el pooir monseignor le roi ne a ceste dame
know that in-the power (of-)my-lord the king nor of this lady
qui chi est naurois vous iamais terre deuant que chis
who here is not-will-have you ever-more land before that this
couenens soit aquites. Dame fait ele ie nen puis mais.
covenant be acquitted Lady says she I not-thereof can more
dont nen serai ie iamais tenans. Que che sera a faire
then not-thereof shall-be I ever-more holder For this will-be to do
au ior del iuise. Gardes fait la roine que vous nen
at-the day of-the judgment See says the queen that you not-thereof
faites riens se par force non que toutes voies le ferois
do anything except by force not for all ways it will-do
vous mais que bien vous poist & anuit. chertes fait ele
you but that much you may-weigh and annoy certainly says she
or i para. Atant se lieue. & la roine dist a la
now there will-appear-it Thereupon herself rises-she and the queen says to the
dame de roestoc. que si chier comme ele a son cors que
lady of roestoc that as dear as she holds her body that
ele nait baillie de riens qui soit en son pooir sor le foi
she not-have power of anything which be in her power on the faith

& le sairement quele doit au roi artu qui feme ele est.
and the oath that-she owes to-the king Arthur whose woman she is
& ele li otrie en samblant destre corechie. mais moult
and she to-her grants in semblance of-being angered but much
en est lie. & apres le redist la dame au nain qui de
thereof is-she glad and after it says-again the lady to-the dwarf who of
tout est saisis. & sen prent le sairement. & dist que sil
all is seized and thereof takes the oath and says that if-he
sen pariuroit bien sache il que ele le conreroit tel
himself-thereof perjured well may-know he that she him would-array such
que il ne li remanroit roie de terre ne autre auoir nul.
that he not to-him would-remain furrow of land nor other wealth any
Atant sen ist la damoisele de la cambre moult
Thereupon herself-thence goes-out the damsel from the chamber very
corechie & moult plorant durement. & encontre hector en
angered and very weeping hard and meets Hector in
son venir si li demande quele a. & ele ne veut mot dire.
his coming so of-her asks what-she has and she not wishes word to-say
fors tant que a soi meisme dist en alant. a lasse com
except so-much that to her self said-she in going ah alas how
ma decheue chele qui tout dechoit. ne plus nen puet
me-has deceived she who all deceives nor more not-thereof can
traire hectors por nule proiere que il li fache. si la sieut
draw Hector for any prayer that he to-her make so her follows-he
en tel guise iusca lostel. & ele sest couchie en .j. lit
in such guise up-to the-lodging and she herself-is laid-down on a bed
& fait tel duel que nus nen puet parole traire. Quant
and makes such grief that anyone not-thereof can word draw When
hector voit quele ne li veut dire locoison de son duel si
Hector sees that-she not to-him wishes to-tell the-occasion of her grief so
vient au nain si li demande que chou est. & li nains
comes-he to-the dwarf so of-him asks what this is and the dwarf

li en conte la verite & le sairement quele a fait.
to-him thereof tells the truth and the oath that-she has made
ha! fait hector por dieu venes a li. & si li proies que ele
ah says Hector for God come to her and so her beg that she
seuffre que gi aille. Car tout sans commandement iroie
suffer that I-there go For all without commandment would-go
ie anchois quele perdist sa terre. se ie nen quidoie
I sooner than-that-she should-lose her land if I not-thereof thought
auoir sa haine. & ie vous pri & por vostre preu & por
to-have her hatred and I you beg both for your profit and for
le sien que vous li priies aussi com ie ferai. que ele soefre
the hers that you her beg also as I shall-do that she suffer
que ie i aille por sa proiere puis que la roine le veut. &
that I there go for her prayer since that the queen it wishes and
ele men priera puis que ie le vaurai si com ie quit. & li
she me-thereof will-beg since that I it shall-wish so as I think and the
nains dist que il est pres que il len chient andui al
dwarf says that he is ready so-that they her-thereof fall both at-the
pie. Mais iel sai a si felenesse que a paines le fera ele
foot But I-her know for so fierce that with pains it will-do she
puis quele si est ahurtee. Che assaierons nous ce dist hectors.
since that-she so is set That shall-try we this says Hector